

LINGVA LATINA

A Companion to *Roma Aeterna*

Based on Hans Ørberg's *Instructions*,
with Vocabulary and Grammar

Jeanne Marie Neumann



VISIT...

LANZAROTE
Caliente.COM

LINGVA
LATINA

A Companion to
Roma Aeterna

Based on Hans Ørberg's *Instructions*, with Vocabulary and Grammar

LINGVA
LATINA

A Companion to
Roma Aeterna

Based on Hans Ørberg's *Instructions*, with Vocabulary and Grammar

Jeanne Marie Neumann

focus an imprint of
Hackett Publishing Company, Inc.
Indianapolis/Cambridge

In memoriam
David Morgan
1960–2013
excepto quod non simul esses, cetera laeta

A Focus book

Focus an imprint of
Hackett Publishing Company

Copyright © 2017 by Hackett Publishing Company, Inc.

All rights reserved

Printed in the United States of America

10 19 18 17 1 2 3 4 5 6 7

For further information, please address

Hackett Publishing Company, Inc.

P.O. Box 44937

Indianapolis, Indiana 46244-0937

www.hackettpublishing.com

Cover design by Brian Rak

Interior design by Elizabeth L. Wilson

Composition by Integrated Composition Systems

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Names: Neumann, Jeanne Marie, author. | Oerberg, Hans H. (Hans Henning),

1920–2010. Instructions. | Oerberg, Hans H. (Hans Henning), 1920–2010.

Lingua Latina per se illustrata. Pars II, Roma Aeterna.

Title: Lingua latina : a companion to Roma aeterna : based on Hans Ørberg's
Instructions, with vocabulary and grammar / Jeanne Marie Neumann.

Description: Indianapolis ; Cambridge : Hackett Publishing Company, Inc., 201y. |
"A Focus book."

Identifiers: LCCN 2016032292 | ISBN 9781585108411 (pbk.)

Subjects: LCSH: Latin language—Grammar. | Latin language—Textbooks.

Classification: LCC PA2080.2 .N48 2016 | DDC 478.2/421—dc23

LC record available at <http://lccn.loc.gov/2016032292>

Adobe PDF ebook ISBN: 978-1-58510-842-8

Table of Contents

Introduction	xxi
Overview of <i>RŌMA AETERNA</i>	xxi
Key Foundations of the <i>RŌMA AETERNA</i> Text	xxii
The Companion	xxiii
Pacing for <i>RŌMA AETERNA</i>	xxv
Using <i>RŌMA AETERNA</i> for Review	xxvi
Abridging <i>RŌMA AETERNA</i>	xxvii
Partitioning the Book and Thematic Readings	xxx
To the Student: Reading Long Sentences	xxxiii
Style	xxxv
Stylistic Analysis of Latin Prose: A Checklist	xxxviii

PARS PRIMA

XXXVI: TRICESIMVM SEXTVM: <i>RŌMA AETERNA</i>	1
I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE: NEW SYNTAX	1
Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse	1
Dative of Purpose (<i>dativus finālis</i>)	2
II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE: EXPANSION AND REFINEMENT OF SYNTAX INTRODUCED ELSEWHERE	3
Gerund/Gerundive	3
<i>Dīcitur</i> and <i>nārrātur</i> with Nominative + Infinitive Perfect	4
Ablative of Place	5
Ablative of Separation (<i>ablātivus sēparātiōnis</i>)	5
Comparison of Adjectives	6

III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM: EXPLANATION OF WORDS AND PHRASES AT THE LEXICAL LEVEL	6
<i>Vēnīre, vēndēre perīre, perdēre</i>	6
<i>Fierī potest</i>	7
1st Declension Dative/Ablative in <i>-ābus</i>	7
<i>Summus, medius, infimus</i>	8
IV. RECĒNSIŌ: REVIEW MATERIAL	8
Genitive of Description (<i>genetīvus quālitātis</i>)	8
<i>Ut</i> Clauses	9
Meter	10
V. POINTS OF STYLE: INFORMATION ABOUT THE LANGUAGE OF THE AUTHOR UNDER CONSIDERATION	10
Accumulation of Genitives	10
XXXVII: TRICESIMVM SEPTIMVM: TROIA CAPTA (Vergil)	11
I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE	11
Historical Present	11
Origin (<i>ablātīvus originis</i>)	12
Origin (<i>ablātīvus causālis</i>)	12
II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE	12
Temporal Conjunctions	12
<i>Dum</i>	12
<i>Ubi</i>	13
<i>Ut</i>	13
<i>Priusquam</i> and <i>antequam</i>	14
<i>Cum</i>	14
Noun Clauses of Result	16
Alternate 2nd Person Singular Ending <i>-re = -ris</i>	16
Greek Names	18
Dative with Compound Verbs	18
Dative of Interest/Reference	19
III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM	20
<i>Iuvāre</i>	20
Verbs Formed from the Adjective <i>plēnus</i>	20
<i>Poenās dare</i>	20
<i>Fās</i>	21
Dative with the Impersonal <i>certum</i>	21

IV. RECĒNSIŌ	21
Dative with Adjectives	21
Summary of Temporal Conjunctions	22
<i>Alter...alter</i> and <i>alius...alius</i>	22
Indirect Commands	23
V. POINTS OF STYLE	24
XXXVIII: DVODEQVADRAGESIMVM: PIVS AENEAS (Vergil)	25
II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE	25
Reflexive Pronouns in Indirect Questions	25
Dative of Separation/Disadvantage	25
III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM	26
Verbs That Take an Ablative of Means	26
<i>Praestāre</i>	27
Verbal Nouns	27
Greek Names in Latin	28
<i>Prōnōmen -cumque</i>	29
<i>Prōnōmen -met</i>	29
Adjectives with the Genitive	29
<i>Certiōrem facere/certiōr fieri</i>	30
XXXIX: VNDEQVADRAGESIMVM: KARTHAGO (Vergil)	31
I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE	31
Relative Clauses with the Subjunctive (To Be Continued in Further Chapters)	31
Relative Clauses of Purpose: <i>Quī = ut is</i>	31
Relative Causal Clauses: <i>Quī = cum is</i>	32
Descriptive Relative Clauses	32
<i>Ut</i> as an Interrogative Adverb	33
II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE	33
Wishes	33
Accusative of Exclamation	34
Ablative of Respect	35
Ablative of Comparison	35
III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM	36
<i>Obviam ire</i>	36
Ablative with <i>comitātus</i>	36

XL: QVADRAGESIMVM: INFELIX DIDO (Vergil)	37
II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE	37
Impersonal Passive of Intransitive Verbs	37
Impersonal Verbs	38
<i>Dubitāre</i> (<i>nōn dubitō quīn</i>)	39
<i>Posse</i>	40
Wishes	41
Personal Pronouns: Genitives	41
<i>Quīn</i>	42
<i>Dum</i> + the Subjunctive	43
III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM	43
Compounds of <i>stāre</i>	43
IV. RECĒNSIŌ	44
Locative	44
Interrogative Pronouns in Exclamations	44
V. POINTS OF STYLE	45
Understanding Participles	45
XLI: VNVM ET QVADRAGESIMVM: ORIGINES (Livy)	46
I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE	46
Potential Subjunctive (Negative: <i>nōn</i>)	46
Indefinite Potential Subjunctive	46
II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE	47
Subjunctive in Conditions	47
III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM	47
<i>Cōnstat</i> (Impersonal)	47
<i>Convenit</i> (Impersonal)	48
4th Declension Verbal Nouns (Continued)	48
IV. RECĒNSIŌ: USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE	49
In Independent Clauses	49
Rhetorical Questions	50
Summary of Conditions	50
Conditions in <i>ōrātiō obliqua</i> (Indirect Discourse)	52
Examples	52
V. POINTS OF STYLE	54
<i>Variātiō</i> (Variation of Expression)	54

XLII: ALTERVM ET QVADRAGESIMVM: BELLVM ET PAX (Livy)	55
II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE	55
Implied Indirect Discourse/Subjunctive of Reported Reason	55
Descriptive Relative Clauses (Continued from Cap. XXXIX)	55
<i>Priusquam/antequam</i> with Subjunctive	56
III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM	57
Indefinite Pronouns	57
<i>Cum...tum</i>	58
IV: RECĒNSIŌ	58
Result vs. Purpose	58
A Note on Sequence of Tense in Result Clauses	59
Summary of Expressions of Purpose	60
V. POINTS OF STYLE	62
Perfect Tense 3rd Person Plural	62
<i>-um = -ōrum</i>	62
Perfect Participles	63
<i>Uti/utī</i> for <i>ut</i>	64
XLIII: QVADRAGESIMVM TERTIVM: ROMA ET ALBA (Livy)	65
II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE	65
<i>Posse, oportēre, dēbēre</i>	65
<i>Fore/forem (esse)</i>	65
Conditions in <i>Ōrātiō obliqua</i>	66
Sequence of Tense	66
Ablative of Degree of Difference	67
Pronoun Change from Direct to Indirect Discourse	68
III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM	69
Superlatives in <i>-limus, -a, -um</i>	69
<i>Uter, uterque</i>	69
<i>Utrimque</i>	70
<i>Velut</i>	70
<i>Rēs repetere</i>	70
IV. POINTS OF STYLE	71
<i>Variātiō</i>	71

XLIV: QVADRAGESIMVM QVARTVM: REGES ET REGINAE (Livy)	72
I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE	72
Historical Infinitive	72
II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE	74
Omission of <i>esse</i>	74
Partitive Genitive with Neuter Pronoun	74
Dative by Attraction	74
Locative/Ablative of Plural Place Names	75
III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM	75
<i>Quam primum</i>	75
<i>Ferre</i>	75
IV. RECĒNSIŌ	76
Ablative Absolute	76
Impersonal Passive (Cap. XL): Examples	76
XLV: QVADRAGESIMVM QVINTVM: ROMA LIBERATA (Livy)	77
II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE	77
Gerund/Gerundive	77
Supine	78
<i>Futūrum esse ut/fore ut</i>	79
III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM	79
<i>Opus est</i> + ablative	79
<i>Difficulter</i>	79
IV. RECĒNSIŌ	80
Historical Infinitive (Cap. XLIV): Examples	80
Ablative Absolute: Examples	80
Adjectives with Genitive: Examples	81
XLVI: QVADRAGESIMVM SEXTUM: POST REGES EXACTOS (Eutropius)	82
I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE	82
Genitive of the Charge	82
II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE	82
Indicative in Contrafactual Conditions	82

V. POINTS OF STYLE	84
Indirect Commands: Resolutions of the Senate	84
The Language of Eutropius	84
<i>Tamquam/quasī</i>	84
Perfect/Pluperfect Passive	84
Gerundive for Future Passive Infinitive	85
XLVII: QVADRAGESIMVM SEPTIMVM: GRAECI ET ROMANI (Aulus Gellius)	87
III. DĒMONSTRATIŌ VERBŌRUM	87
Impersonal <i>constat</i>	87
Idioms	87
<i>Libra/pondus</i>	88
Comparative: “Too”	88
V. POINTS OF STYLE	88
Gerund/Gerundive: Archaic Spelling	88
Ablative: Examples	89
Euphemisms	90
<i>Variatio</i>	90
XLVIII: DVODEQVINQVAGESIMVM: BELLVM PVNICVM SECVNDVM (Livy)	91
I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE	91
Clauses of Hindering	91
II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE	91
Potential Subjunctive (Negative, <i>nōn</i>)	91
Relative Comparative Clauses	93
IV. RECĒNSIŌ	93
Fear Clauses	93
V. POINTS OF STYLE	94
Technical Vocabulary: <i>Referre, cēnsēre, sententia, senātūs cōnsultum</i>	94
Note on Style	94
XLIX: VNDEQVINQVAGESIMVM: HANNIBAL (Nepos)	95
II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE	95
<i>Quō</i> + Comparative + Subjunctive: Relative Purpose Clause	95
Syncopated Forms	95

III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM	96
<i>Dōnum/dōnāre/dōnō dare</i>	96
<i>Operam dare</i>	96
L: QVINQVAGESIMVM: GRAECIA LIBERATA (Livy)	98
II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE	98
Genitive of Possession: Characteristic	98
LI: VNVM ET QVINQVAGESIMVM: SCIPIO AEMILIANVS (Livy/Sallust)	99
III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM	99
<i>Dē vocābulis faciendīs</i>	99
V. POINTS OF STYLE	100
LII: ALTERVM ET QVINQVAGESIMVM: IVGVRTHA (Sallust)	101
III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM	101
<i>Potīrī</i>	101
Impersonal <i>rēferre</i>	101
<i>Dē vocābulis faciendīs</i>	102
IV. RECĒNSIŌ	102
<i>Quam</i> + Superlative: Examples	102
V. POINTS OF STYLE	102
Features of Sallust's Latin	102
LIII: QVINQVAGESIMVM TERTIVM: MARIVS ET SVLLA (Eutropius/Cicero)	104
II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE	104
Locative Ablative	104
III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM	104
Nouns in <i>-ennium</i>	104
Nouns in <i>-duum</i>	105
Numerical Adverbs	106
LIV: QVINQVAGESIMVM QVARTVM: CN. POMPEIVS MAGNVS (Cicero)	107
I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE	107
Heroclitic Nouns	107

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE	108
Rhetorical Questions	108
III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM	108
<i>Agitur dē, rēs agitur</i>	108
<i>Extrēmus</i>	108
<i>Cōsulere</i> + Dative	108
LV: QVINQVAGESIMVM QVINTVM: DE RE PVBLICA (Cicero)	109
II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE	109
<i>Velle</i> + Subjunctive	109
<i>Oportēre, necesse est</i> + Subjunctive	109
Ethical Dative	110
III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM	110
Semi-deponents	110
LVI: QVINQVAGESIMVM SEXTVM: SOMNIVM SCIPIONIS (Cicero/Horace)	111
I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE	111
Epexegetical Genitive	111
III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM	111
<i>Quaeso</i>	111
Impersonal Verb Interest	112
V. POINTS OF STYLE	112
Neuter for Adverb	112

PARS ALTERA

XXXVI: TRICESIMVM SEXTVM: ROMA AETERNA	113
I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION	113
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	114
<i>Palātium et Capitōlium</i> : 1–57	114
<i>Forum Rōmānum</i> : 58–184	115
<i>Urbs marmorea</i> : 185–263	116
<i>Urbis incendium et domus area Nerōnis</i> : 264–295	116

<i>Imperātōrēs Flāvīi</i> : 296–320	116
<i>Trāiānus et Hadriānus</i> : 321–352	116
<i>Orbis caput</i> : 353–370	116
III. VOCĀBULA	117
XXXVII: TRICESIMVM SEPTIMVM: TROIA CAPTA (Vergil)	122
I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION	122
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	123
<i>Aboriginēs</i> : 1–19	123
<i>Equus Trōiānus</i> : 20–88	123
<i>Somnium Aenēae</i> : 89–124	124
<i>Priamus</i> : 125–180	124
<i>Anchīsēs</i> : 181–240	125
<i>Creūsa</i> : 241–285	125
III. VOCĀBULA	126
XXXVIII: DVODEQVADRAGESIMVM: PIVS AENEAS (Vergil)	131
I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION	131
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	131
<i>Penātēs</i> : 1–47	131
<i>Mare Īonium</i> : 48–74	132
<i>Andromachē et Helenus</i> : 75–129	132
<i>Mōns Aetna</i> : 130–213	133
III. VOCĀBULA	133
XXXIX: VNDEQVADRAGESIMVM: KARTHAGO (Vergil)	137
I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION	137
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	138
<i>Iūnō</i> : 1–26	138
<i>Tempestās</i> : 27–90	138
<i>Venus genetrīx</i> : 91–156	139
<i>Dīdō rēgīna</i> : 157–268	140
<i>Cupīdō</i> : 269–316	141
III. VOCĀBULA	142

XL: QVADRAGESIMVM: INFELIX DIDO (Vergil)	147
I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION	147
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	148
<i>Flamma amōris</i> : 1–45	148
<i>Fāma vēlōx</i> : 46–69	149
<i>Nūntius deōrum</i> : 70–164	149
<i>Rogus Dīdōnis</i> : 165–268	150
<i>Excerpta Aenēidis</i> : 269–299	151
III. VOCĀBULA	152
XLI: VNVM ET QVADRAGESIMVM: ORIGINES (Livy)	156
I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION	156
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	157
<i>Trōiānī et Latīnī</i> : 1–48	157
<i>Alba condita</i> : 49–68	158
<i>Rōmulus et Remus</i> : 69–137	158
<i>Rōma condita</i> : 138–157	159
<i>Sacra Herculis institūta</i> : 158–196	159
<i>Gemellī expositī</i> : 197–231	160
III. VOCĀBULA	161
XLII: ALTERVM ET QVADRAGESIMVM: BELLVM ET PAX (Livy)	165
I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION	165
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	166
<i>Fascēs et secūrēs: insignia imperiī</i> : 1–19	166
<i>Sabīnae raptae</i> : 20–55	166
<i>Spolia opīma</i> : 56–97	167
<i>Bellum Sabīnum</i> : 98–173	167
<i>Fidēnātēs et Vēientēs victī</i> : 174–220	168
<i>Rōmulus cōsecrātus</i> : 221–253	169
<i>Interrēgnum</i> : 254–280	170
<i>Numa Pompilius rēx</i> : 281–353	170
<i>Rapina Sabīnārum</i> : 354–377	171
<i>Mulierēs pācem faciunt</i> : 378–393	171
III. VOCĀBULA	172

XLIII: QVADRAGESIMVM TERTIVM: ROMA ET ALBA (Livy)	178
I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION	178
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	179
<i>Albānīs bellum indictum</i> : 1–40	179
<i>Trigeminōrum pugna</i> : 41–121	180
<i>Amor immātūrus</i> : 122–181	180
<i>Mettiī perfidia ac supplicium</i> : 182–265	181
<i>Alba diruta</i> : 266–298	182
<i>Sabīnī dēvictī</i> : 299–318	183
<i>Tullus fulmine ictus</i> : 319–335	183
<i>Causa Horātiī</i> : 336–358	183
III. VOCĀBULA	184
XLIV: QVADRAGESIMVM QVARTVM: REGES ET REGINAE (Livy)	189
I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION	189
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	191
<i>Iūs fētiāle</i> : 1–90	191
<i>Lucumō et Tanaquil</i> : 91–139	192
<i>L. Tarquinius Prīscus rēx</i> : 140–223	193
<i>Iuvenis indolis rēgiae</i> : 224–246	195
<i>Servius Tullius rēx factus</i> : 247–306	195
<i>Cēnsus institūtus</i> : 307–357	196
<i>Tullia ferōx</i> : 358–451	197
<i>Fīlia Impia</i> (Ovidius: <i>Fāstī. Ex librō VI</i>): 452–473	198
III. VOCĀBULA	198
XLV: QVADRAGESIMVM QVINTVM: ROMA LIBERATA (Livy)	204
I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION	204
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	205
<i>Tarquinius Superbus</i> : 1–25	205
<i>Turnus Herdōnius</i> : 26–89	206
<i>Gabii dolō captī</i> : 90–167	207
<i>Respōnsum ōrāculī</i> : 168–195	209
<i>Uxor castissima</i> : 196–228	210

<i>Lucretia violata</i> : 229–273	211
<i>Rēgēs exāctī</i> : 274–343	212
<i>Hostis prō hospite</i> (Ovidius: <i>Fāstī. Ex librō II versūs</i> 785–852): 345–413	213
III. VOCĀBULA	214
XLVI: QVADRAGESIMVM SEXTVM: POST REGES EXACTOS (Eutropius)	219
I. ØRBERG’S INTRODUCTION	219
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	222
<i>Consuls et dictātōrēs</i> : 1–123	222
<i>Post urbem captam</i> : 124–180	224
<i>Samnītēs</i> : 181–214	225
<i>Pyrrhus</i> : 215–305	226
<i>Bellum Pūnicum primum</i> : 306–430	227
<i>Iānus iterum clausus</i> : 431–473	227
<i>Spolia Opima Tertia</i> (Aenēis VI.855–56): 475–477	227
III. VOCĀBULA	228
XLVII: QVADRAGESIMVM SEPTIMVM: GRAECI ET ROMANI (Aulus Gellius)	232
I. ØRBERG’S INTRODUCTION	232
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	233
<i>Graeci et Rōmānī</i> (Ex Aulī Gelliī ‘Noctium Atticārum’ <i>librō XVII capitulum XXI</i>): 1–165	233
<i>Librī Sibyllīnī</i> (Ex Aulī Gelliī ‘Noctium Atticārum’ <i>librō I</i> <i>capitulum XIX</i>): 166–193	235
<i>Dē iūre iūrandō</i> (Ex Aulī Gelliī ‘Noctium Atticārum’ <i>librō XI</i> <i>capitulum VI</i>): 194–206	235
III. VOCĀBULA	236
XLVIII: DVODEQVINQVAGESIMVM: BELLVM PVNICVM SECVNDVM (Livy)	239
I. ØRBERG’S INTRODUCTION	239
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	240
<i>Iūs iūrandum Hannibalis</i> [Ex librō XXI]: 1–90	240
<i>Saguntum excisum</i> : 91–218	241
<i>Bellum Carthāginiēnsibus indictum</i> : 219–253	243

<i>Iter Hannibalis in Italiam</i> : 254–271	244
<i>Lacus Trasumennus</i> [Ex periochā librī XXII et ex librō XXII]: 272–388	244
<i>Q. Fabius Māximus Cūnctātor</i> [Ex periochā librī XXII]: 389–406	247
<i>Cannae</i> [Ex Eutropiī Breviārīi librō III et ex Liviō librō XXII]: 407–592	247
<i>Māgō nūntius victōriae</i> [Ex librō XXIII]: 593–681	251
<i>Mārcellus et Scīpiō</i> [Ex Periochā librōrum XXIII–XXX]: 682–777	252
<i>Reditus Hannibalis atque clādēs</i> [Ex librō et Periochā librī XXX]: 778–865	253
III. VOCĀBULA	255
XLIX: VNDEQVINQVAGESIMVM: HANNIBAL (Nepos)	262
I. ØRBERG’S INTRODUCTION	262
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	263
<i>Hannibal, Hanilaris filius, Karthāginiēnis</i> : 1–255	263
<i>Scīpiō et Hannibal</i> [Ex T. Liviī librī XXXV Periochā]: 256–275	268
III. VOCĀBULA	269
L: QVINQVAGESIMVM: GRAECIA LIBERATA (Livy)	273
I. ØRBERG’S INTRODUCTION	273
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	274
<i>Philippus</i> [Ex librīs et periochā librōrum XXXI–XXXIV]: 1–97	274
<i>Triumphus Flāminīnī</i> [Ex librō XXXIV]: 98–128	276
<i>Antiochus</i> [Ex librīs et periochā librōrum XXXV–XXXVIII]: 129–275	277
<i>Perseus victus</i> [Ex librīs et periochā librōrum XL–XLV]: 276–383	280
<i>Perseus captus</i> [Ex librō XLV]: 384–506	282
<i>Macedonia prōvincia</i> [Ex librō XLV]: 507–601	285
<i>Fortūna pūblica et prīvāta</i> [Ex librīs et periochā librōrum XLV]: 602–676	288
<i>Graecia Capta</i> [Q. Horātius Flaccus: Epistulae II.1.156–157]: 677–680	289
III. VOCĀBULA	289

LI: VNVM ET QVINQVAGESIMVM: SCIPIO AEMILIANVS (Livy/Sallust)	294
I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION	294
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	296
<i>Bellum Pūnicum tertium</i> : 1–118	296
<i>Bellum Achāicum</i> : 119–138	298
<i>Hispānia pācāta</i> : 139–215	298
<i>Gracchī et lēgēs agrāriae</i> : 216–279	300
<i>Civitas Dilacerāta</i> [Ex C. Sallustii Crispī 'Bellō Iugurthinō']: 280–326	301
III. VOCĀBULA	302
LII: ALTERVM ET QVINQVAGESIMVM: IVGVRTHA (Sallust)	306
I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION	306
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	307
III. VOCĀBULA	319
LIII: CAPITVLVM QVINQVAGESIMVM TERTIVM: MARIVS ET SVLLA	324
I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION	324
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	325
<i>Bellum Cimbricum</i> : 1–28	325
<i>Bellum sociāle</i> : 29–48	325
<i>Bellum Mithridāticum primum</i> : 49–104	326
<i>Bellum cīvile</i> : 105–152	326
<i>Sertorius</i> : 153–187	326
<i>Bellum Mithridāticum tertium</i> : 188–275	326
<i>M. Tullius Cicerō</i> [Ex M. Tullii Cicerōnis 'Brūtō' sive 'Dē clāris ōrātōribus']: 276–412	327
III. VOCĀBULA	329
LIV: QVINQVAGESIMVM QVARTVM: CN. POMPEIVS MAGNVS (Cicero)	333
I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION	333
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	334
<i>Quirītēs!</i> 1–19	334
<i>Dē genere bellī</i> : 20–178	335

<i>Dē magnitudine bellī: 179–272</i>	338
<i>Dē imperātōre dēligendō: 273–536</i>	340
<i>Finis Mithridatis [Ex T. Livii librōrum C–CIII Periochīs]: 537–569</i>	345
<i>Finis Pompēii [Ex Eutropii Breviarii librō VI]: 570–617</i>	345
III. VOCĀBULA	346
LV: QVINQVAGESIMVM QVINTVM: DE RE PVBLICA (Cicero)	351
I. ØRBERG’S INTRODUCTION	351
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	352
<i>Persōnae: 1–10</i>	352
<i>Fēriae Latīnae (from Book I): 11–156</i>	353
<i>Dē tribus rērum pūblicārum generibus: 157–242</i>	356
<i>Dē vetere rē pūblicā Rōmānā (from Book II): 243–471</i>	357
III. VOCĀBULA	362
LVI: QVINQVAGESIMVM SEXTVM: SOMNIVM SCIPIONIS (Cicero/Horace)	367
I. ØRBERG’S INTRODUCTION	367
II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ	368
<i>Masinissa senex: 1–19</i>	368
<i>Fātōrum via: 20–60</i>	368
<i>Mors et vīta: 61–113</i>	369
<i>Cursūs stēllārum: 114–139</i>	370
<i>Cantus sphaerārum: 140–170</i>	370
<i>Angustiae terrārum: 171–231</i>	371
<i>Dē glōriā aeternā et animō immortalī: 232–298</i>	372
<i>Integer Vītae: 299–325</i>	374
III. VOCĀBULA	375
Ørberg’s Latin–English Vocabulary II	379
Ørberg’s Grammatica Latina	421
Index	459

Introduction

OVERVIEW OF *RŌMA AETERNA*

In the second book of his work *On Oratorical Education* (*Īnstitūtiō Ōrātōria*), Quintilian (*Mārcus Fabius Quintiliānus*, first century AD) suggests narratives for those beginning their rhetorical education:

I, in fact, would like [students] to read the best authors—both as first authors and for the rest of their lives, but further still, of those best authors I'd have them read all those most straightforward and particularly lucid: for example, I'd have them read Livy in their boyhood rather than Sallust. Although Sallust is the greater writer of history, one needs to be already advanced in order to understand him. Cicero, as it seems to me at least, is both delightful for those just starting out and is also fairly clear; he can not only advance their understanding but also become a favorite. Next, as Livy advises, I would choose authors based on resemblance of each to Cicero.

Ego optimōs quidem et statim et semper, sed tamen eōrum candidissimum quemque et maximē expositum velim, ut Līvium ā puerīs magis quam Sallustium (et hic historiae maior est auctor, ad quem tamen intellegendum iam prōfectū opus sit). Cicerō, ut mihi quidem vidētur, et iūcundus incipientibus quoque et apertus est satis, nec prōdesse tantum sed etiam amārī potest: tum, quem ad modum Līvius praecipit, ut quisque erit Cicerōnī simillimus.

Hans Ørberg's *RŌMA AETERNA* follows Quintilian's plan. The book begins with Ørberg's own admirable prose (Caps. XXXVI to XL). Cap. XXXVI helps the instructor assess student strengths and weaknesses. This chapter effortlessly brings students back to their Latin after the inevitable break from Latin over summer or winter vacations. It also introduces critical new syntax. Students

first learn, for example, about subordinate clauses in *indirect discourse* in Cap. XXXVI.

Caps. XXXVII–XL offer a prose retelling of the early books of Vergil's (*Pūblius Vergilius Marō*) *Aeneid*. These chapters are a good bridge from *FAMILIA RŌMĀNA* to the unadapted selections in *RŌMA AETERNA*. A prose narrative, instead of verse, is prudent: although students are often enticed into reading more Latin through the offer of poetry, without a solid foundation in Latin prose, they will not be able to appreciate the special voice that Latin verse offers. The prose is in part closely modeled on Vergil's language, interspersed with verse excerpts from the *Aeneid*.

Caps. XLI–XLV introduce the Roman historian Livy's (*Titus Līvius*) *ab Urbe Conditā*. Ørberg's adaptation enables the student to become gradually accustomed to Livy's prose style. The Latin grows increasingly less adapted until Cap. XLV.222, after which the student reads unadapted—although not unabridged—Livy. Cap. XLV is the transitional chapter, and, if one chapter is to introduce students to unadapted ancient texts, it is a good place to start.

While the predominant author for Caps. XLI to LI is Livy—either in his own words, Ørberg's adaptation, or the *periochae* (later summaries of the lost books of Livy's history)—we are also introduced to other authors who have contributed to our understanding of Roman history: *Eutropius* (Caps. XLVI and LIII), *Aulus Gellius* (Cap. XLVII), *Cornēlius Nepōs* (Cap. XLIX). While the styles of these writers differ from Livy's, the change from chapter to chapter will not present any obstacle to the reader.

At the end of Cap. LI, however, we are introduced to Sallust (*Sallustius Crīspus*), presented, as Quintilian advised, after the reader has a good amount of experience with Latin prose. Sallust is, as Quintilian warned, more difficult to understand. Some rudimentary remarks, not only about individual style but also about generic expectations, can be found in the section on style at the end of this introduction as well as in the Points of Style sections in individual chapters.

KEY FOUNDATIONS OF THE *RŌMA AETERNA* TEXT

Marginalia

The instructor might need to remind (read: hound) students about the *marginalia*, truly a *sine quā nōn* of reading the text as well as an invaluable aid to the mastery of Latin vocabulary. Synonyms in the margins connect new words with familiar ones and encourage students to absorb Latin as a genuine language instead of a lot of unrelated morphemes. The information in the margins also keeps the reader focused on Latin and not English translation.

Grammatica Latīna

The GRAMMATICA LATĪNA that conclude the chapters in *RŌMA AETERNA* differ from those of *FAMILIA RŌMĀNA*. The first GRAMMATICA LATĪNA section does not occur until Cap. XLVIII, in which it offers a synopsis of verb themes (*verbī themata*) of the principal parts;¹ Cap. XLIX, a synopsis of syncopation (*dē verbīs contractīs*);² and Cap. L, *ōrātiō oblīqua et recta*, indirect and direct speech).³ From Cap. LI onward, the sections offer useful information about the vocabulary formation (*dē vocābulīs faciendīs*):

- prefixes (*praeverbīa*, Cap. LI)
- suffixes and verbs from nouns (*suffīxa, verba ē nōminibus*, Cap. LII)
- adjectives from nouns (*adiectīva ē nōminibus*, Cap. LIII)
- nouns from verbs (*nōmina ē verbīs*, Cap. LIV)
- feminine abstract nouns from adjectives (*nōmina fēminīna ex adiectīvīs*, Cap. LV)
- inchoative verbs (*verba inchoātīva*, Cap. LVI)

This last GRAMMATICA LATĪNA section also contains an explanation of the Sapphic stanza, further explained here in the companion; a review of Cap. XXXIV of *FAMILIA RŌMĀNA* would be helpful to students.

The value of the GRAMMATICA LATĪNA lies not only in the useful information provided but also in its efficacy in showing students how to talk about Latin *Latīnē*. While the Companion has its own value, moving students toward the target language remains the essential objective of *LINGUA LATINA PER SE ILLUSTRATA* (LLPSI). The excerpt from Dōnātus's *Ars Minor* in Cap. XXXV of *FAMILIA RŌMĀNA* affords one model for the target language; the GRAMMATICA LATĪNA, however, remain the most important resource.

THE COMPANION

Format of the Companion

This book comprises two main parts: *RĒS GRAMMATICAE* for all chapters, followed by the reading helps, or *AUXILIA LEGENDĪ*, which are preceded by an INTRODUCTION to the chapter. As in the *Companion to FAMILIA RŌMĀNA*, a vocabulary concludes each chapter. A full vocabulary concludes the book.

1. See Cap. XXII of the *Companion to FAMILIA RŌMĀNA*.

2. See also Cap. XLII of this companion.

3. See also Cap. XLII of this companion.

Pars Prīma: Rēs Grammaticae

Students learned a great deal of Latin grammar in *FAMILIA RŌMĀNA*. There is still quite a bit to be introduced in *RŌMA AETERNA*. Some of the material fine-tunes what students have already learned; many concepts critical to the understanding of Latin are introduced here for the first time. The material in each chapter has been organized into five categories (note: not all chapters contain all five categories):

- I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE: new syntax.
- II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE: expansion and refinement of syntax introduced elsewhere.
- III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM: explanation of words and phrases at the lexical level.
- IV. RECĒNSIŌ: review material.
- V. POINTS OF STYLE: information about the language of the author under consideration.

Pars Prima and Pars Altera both contain new syntax. Pars Altera puts syntax into a larger context by referring students to what else they have learned elsewhere about, e.g., *cum* clauses (Cap. XXXVII). Although they will learn in Cap. XXXVII more about *cum* plus the subjunctive (which is “new” syntax), putting this in the context of what they already know about *cum* plus the indicative will foster a sense of larger perspective on how Latin works. Categorizing material has been, at times, difficult, and some may disagree with my decisions.

Pars Altera: Introduction and Auxilia Legendī

The introductions to each chapter come from Hans Ørberg. They have been in places altered and/or supplemented. The AUXILIA LEGENDĪ aim to be faithful to the spirit of the book. Historical and stylistic notes are limited to those that facilitate reading and expedite mastery of the language. Information contained in the marginalia is generally not repeated in the reading helps. In other words, the reading notes are just that: help in reading the text. The commentary is not scholarly and brings in contextual information only where it seemed necessary to understanding what is going on in the Latin text.

Vocābula can be found at the end of the reading notes for individual chapters (as well as a full vocabulary at the end of the book).

Notes on vocabulary presentation:

Nouns

- Gender is given for all 3rd declension nouns; for other declensions (since their gender is fairly regular), gender is given only if other than the norm (e.g., 1st declension masculine) or the noun is plural.
- Nouns that are substantives from the adjective are generally placed with adjectives, with a footnote giving their alternative status as nouns.

Verbs

- The principal parts of 1st and 4th conjugation verbs are quite regular. The full four parts are listed only when they deviate from the norm.
- For compound verbs, the root verb is given when needed to guide the formation of the secondary system (e.g., *circumdare* (< *dare*):
 - ▷ Principal parts will follow the root, with stem changes (e.g., *adigere* from *ad-agere*; *redimere* from *red-emere*).
 - ▷ Principal parts are given for compounds from an unfamiliar root.
 - ▷ An arbitrary exception has been made for the compounds from *cadere* (-*cidere*) and *caedere* (-*cīdere*).

PACING FOR *RŌMA AETERNA*

RŌMA AETERNA was composed as a continuation of *FAMILIA RŌMĀNA*. Although some readers will want—and have the necessary time—to read the text cover to cover, the companion is designed to facilitate selection. A good deal of repetition in the reading notes is one result: the companion does not take for granted that everyone has read and remembered everything that went before, and the notes will generally reference the chapter (of *RŌMA AETERNA* or *FAMILIA RŌMĀNA*) where a concept is discussed. Since the two parts of *Lingua Latīna* (*FAMILIA RŌMĀNA* and *RŌMA AETERNA*) were written sequentially, chapters are referred to by number alone. For example, in the following, XIII.52 means *FAMILIA RŌMĀNA*, Cap. XIII, line 52:

Lūna ‘nova’ esse dicitur (XIII.52): “the moon is said to be ‘new.’”

Caps. I–XXXV can be found in part one, *FAMILIA RŌMĀNA*, while Caps. XXXVI–LV are found in part two, *RŌMA AETERNA*.

When the reference is to chapter alone, more clarity is needed, e.g.:

- *dignus* + ablative (Cap. XIX)
- You learned the ablative of comparison in Cap. XXIV.
- *rēgnī rērumque tuārum*: genitive with *oblītōs* (Caps. XXV, XXXII):
i.e., Caps. XXV and XXXII

References to line numbers in the chapter under review appear without the chapter number. For example, if you are reviewing Cap. XXXVI in this volume, line references to *RŌMA AETERNA* Cap. XXXVI will appear as, e.g., “l.105,” for line 105 whereas line references to other chapters will include chapter number. For example, *FAMILIA RŌMĀNA* Cap. XXV, line 88 will appear as “XXV.88” and *RŌMA AETERNA* XL, line 50 will appear as “XL.50.”

RŌMA AETERNA can be approached in several ways. Ideally, the reader will make his or her way through the book at a comfortable pace, absorbing the Latin in the way Ørberg intended. This approach makes the most sense for an independent learner or for homeschooling. At the high school level, *RŌMA AETERNA* could provide material for Latin III (Caps. XXXVI–XLV/XLVI) and IV (Caps. XLVI/XLVII–LVI), complementing Latin I and II (*FAMILIA RŌMĀNA*). Those chapter breaks are somewhat arbitrary, but Cap. XXXVI provides an excellent review to begin the school year, as do either Cap. XLVI (Eutropius) or Cap. XLVII (Aulus Gellius). A two-year reading of *RŌMA AETERNA* provides a rigorous program of Latin.

USING *RŌMA AETERNA* FOR REVIEW

In addition to the valuable *PENSA* at the close of each chapter, *RŌMA AETERNA* supplies much material in itself to help students review. Sentences can be chosen and manipulated to remind students of the knowledge that might not be currently active in their minds. Here are some examples, for the sake of review, of different ways of construing a sentence:

At puer Ascanius ācrī equō vectus iam eōs praeterit aprum aut leōnem quaerēns. (Cap. XL.51–53)

- Participle → relative clause
 - ▷ *At puer Ascanius, qui ācrī equō vehebatur, iam eōs praeterit aprum aut leōnem quaerēns.*

- Participle → independent clause
 - ▷ *At puer Ascanius ācrī equō vectus iam eōs praeterit et aprum aut leōnem quaerit.*
- Participle → causal clause
 - ▷ *At puer Ascanius ācrī equō vectus iam eōs praeterit quia (or quod, propterea quod) aprum aut leōnem quaerit.*
- Participle → purpose (final) clause
 - ▷ *At puer Ascanius ācrī equō vectus iam eōs praeterit ut aprum aut leōnem quaerat.*⁴
- Direct statement → indirect statement
 - ▷ *Vergilius narrat puerum Ascanium ācrī equō vectum tum eōs praeterire aprum aut leōnem quaerentem.*
- Direct statement → indirect question
 - ▷ *Nescīmus cur puer Ascanius ācrī equō vectus iam eōs praetereat aprum aut leōnem quaerēns.*
- Direct statement → indirect command
 - ▷ *Pater Aeneas puerum Ascanium monet nē ācrī equō vectus sē iam praetereat aprum aut leōnem quaerēns.*
 - ▷ *Pater Aeneas puerō Ascaniō imperat nē ācrī equō vectus sē iam praetereat aprum aut leōnem quaerēns.*

Students can be asked to find syntax covered in *FAMILIA RŌMĀNA*, either singly or in groups.

ABRIDGING *RŌMA AETERNA*

RŌMA AETERNA is clearly not a book that can be read in one course. For those who must abridge the book, there are a variety of ways in which *RŌMA AETERNA* can be adapted. A selection might prove to be most useful for various environments, especially at the college level. The instructor will be able to pick and choose from the great wealth of material suitable for the intermediate level.

If *RŌMA AETERNA* is to be used following *FAMILIA RŌMĀNA* in a course of unadapted Latin, some important syntax from the early chapters needs to be mastered. The full reading of the early chapters can be omitted, and the com-

4. Sequence of tense after the historic present (as here in *praeterit*) sometimes follows the primary sequence (as above), sometimes the secondary.

panion can be used, in conjunction with the text, to teach the essential grammar. Cap. XXXVII, for example, can be used to review temporal clauses in addition to the new grammar. In teaching new grammar, it is helpful to use the examples in the Companion to go back to the text and read not only the sentence containing the new grammar but the context as well.

The instructor can choose an early chapter featuring necessary syntax as an introduction to the course and to essential grammar not found in *FAMILIA RŌMĀNA*. The instructor can manipulate sentences to introduce concepts not found in the chapter. For example, in Cap. XXXVI we read the following about the gates of the temple of Janus (ll.101–105):

Illa aedēs duās iānuās vel portās habet, quae tum dēmum clauduntur cum per tōtum imperium populī Rŏmānī terrā marīque pāx facta est—id quod per septingentōs annōs inter Rŏmulum et Augustum bis tantum ēvenit.

To demonstrate a few possibilities:

- *cum* circumstantial (Cap. XXXVII): The sentence above, as written, shows *cum* temporal with the indicative. Changed to circumstantial, it could read: *Cum Rŏmānī bella gerant, iānuae aedis Iānī patent.*
- Descriptive relative clause (Cap. XXXIX): *Nēmō est qui velit portās aedis Iānī aperīrī.*
- Wishes (Cap. XXXIX): *Utinam pax fiat et portae aedis Iānī claudantur!*

Instead of, or in addition to, manipulating sentences, the instructor could pick out illustrative examples of the grammar to be mastered from the text. Of course, the instructor could just use the Companion to find sentences, but it is more natural to see the sentences in context, perhaps looking at what precedes and follows. For example, the first part of the sentence above could be used to demonstrate *cum* temporal with the indicative:

Illa aedēs duās iānuās vel portās habet, quae tum dēmum clauduntur cum per tōtum imperium populī Rŏmānī terrā marīque pāx facta est.

And compared to the following sentences from Cap. XXXVII:

Graecī enim, cum urbem vī expugnāre nōn possent, dolō ūsī sunt
(ll.23–24)

*Trōiānī vērō, cum Graecōs Argōs in patriam suam āvectōs esse
arbitrārentur, tum dēmum post tot annōs portās aperuērunt
atque exīre ausī sunt. (ll.30–32)*

Another approach to abridging chapters uses excerpts from them in class as reading comprehension exercises. For example, Cap. XLI begins:

*Iam primum omnium cōstat Troiā captā Aenēam domō pro-
fugum primō in Macedoniam vēnisse, inde in Siciliam delātum
esse, ab Siciliā classe ad Laurentem agrum tenuisse. Ibi ēgressī
Troīānī, quibus ab immēnsō prope errore nihil praeter arma
et nāvēs supererat, cum praedam ex agrīs agerent, Latīnus rēx
Aborīginēsque quī tum ea tenēbant loca, ad arcendam vim
advenārū armātī ex urbe atque agrīs concurrunt.*

One way of approaching this passage without translating is to have students respond to questions. Projecting the text on a screen so that all are looking up and looking at it at the same time makes the exercise easier and quicker (and also saves you from seeing only the tops of students' heads). One way of doing this is:

1. Instructor reads aloud, slowly.
2. Student reads aloud, with (minimum) pronunciation correction from instructor.
3. Instructor reads aloud in a natural reading voice (that is, inflected for meaning).

Here is a sampling of questions to give a sense of things the instructor can ask (more examples, of course, can be gleaned from PENSUM C):

- *Versū secundō, quid significat “cōstat?”*
▷ (*inspice marginālia*)
- *Cur Aenēas profugus est?*
- *Quis Trōiām cēpit?*
▷ (must be remembered from previous chapters)
- *Quo primō vēnit Aenēas?*
- *Ad quōs aliōs locōs vēnit Aenēas?*

- *Versū quintō quid significat tenēre? Quod vocābulum subauditur?*
 - ▷ (*īnspice marginālia*)
- *Quid (versū quintō/sextō) significat ‘immēnsus error’?*
 - ▷ *Idem est ac ‘magnum iter,’ id est, Trōiānī errābant.*
- *Quid supererat iter/error?*
- *Quid significat ‘praeda’?*
- *Quis est Latīnus?*
- *Dīc (vv. 8–9) ‘ad arcendam vim’ aliō modō.*
 - ▷ (*īnspice marginālia*)
- *Dīc (v. 8) ‘loca tenēbant’ aliō modō.*
 - ▷ e.g., *in illīs locīs habitābant*
- *Advena est nōmen commūne (id est: et masculīnum et feminīnum). De quibus duōbus vocābulīs venit?*
 - ▷ *ad + venīre*
- *Dīc ‘virī armātī’ aliīs verbīs.*
 - ▷ *virī quī arma gerunt/portant, etc.*

PARTITIONING THE BOOK AND THEMATIC READINGS

At over four hundred pages, *Rōma Aeterna* seems a formidable tome. The following lists are offered as samples of how one might selectively approach the book.

Review and New Grammar

Five chapters (XXXVI–XL)

Cap. XXXVI: The City of Rome

Cap. XXXVII: Vergil, *Aeneid* II

Cap. XXXVIII: Vergil, *Aeneid* III

Cap. XXXIX: Vergil, *Aeneid* I

Cap. XL: Vergil, *Aeneid* IV

Introduction to Livy

Five chapters (XLI–XLV)

Cap. XLI: Livy, *ab Urbe Conditā* I/Ovid, *Fāstī*

Cap. XLII: Livy, *ab Urbe Conditā* I

Cap. XLIII: Livy, *ab Urbe Conditā* I/Cicero, *dē Inventiōne*

Cap. XLIV: Livy, *ab Urbe Conditā* I/Ovid, *Fāstī* VI

Cap. XLV: Livy, *ab Urbe Conditā* I/Ovid, *Fāstī* II

The Punic Wars: Hannibal

Two chapters (XLVIII–XLIX)

Cap. XLVIII: Livy, *ab Urbe Conditā* XXI–XXX

Cap. XLIX: Cornelius Nepos, *Hannibal* (unadapted)

Rome in the East

Three chapters (L–LII)

Cap. L: Livy, *ab Urbe Conditā* XXXI–XLV

Cap. LI: Livy, *ab Urbe Conditā* XLV

Cap. LII: Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthīnum*

Later Latin

Three + chapters (XLVI, XLVII, LIII, LIV)

Cap. XLVI: Eutropius, *Breviārum Historiae Rōmānae/Aeneid* VI

Cap. XLVII: Aulus Gellius, *Noctēs Atticae* I, XI

Caps. LIII and LIV: Eutropius, *Breviārum Historiae Rōmānae*

Cicero

Three chapters (LIV–LVI)

Cap. LIV: Cicero, *prō Lēge Māniliā*

Cap. LV: Cicero, *dē Rē Pūblicā*

Cap. LVI: Cicero, *Somnium Scīpiōnis*

Comparative Historical Style

Cap. XLVIII: Livy, *ab Urbe Conditā*

Cap. LII: Sallust, *Bellum Iugurthinum*

Comparative Genres

Cap. XLVIII/L: History

Cap. XLIX: Biography

Cap. LIV: Oratory

Cap. LV/LVI: Political Philosophy

The chapters on Hannibal and the Second Punic War (Caps. XLVIII and XLIX) could be treated as a separate book or combined with the three chapters on the Romans in the East (I–LII). The three chapters on Cicero, with or without additional passages, would make a great reader.

The late Latin writers might be kept on their own or compared to earlier prose. When we have both Livy and the *periochae*, students can learn much about Livy's style by comparing the two—as well as get a sense of how much a tragedy the lost books of Livy presents.

The presentation of history offers a good sweep of the events of the foundation and growth of Rome during the Republic. *RŌMA AETERNA* brings us from the mythological foundations (Aeneas) to Cicero's remarkable ideal of the *rēs pūblica* and his vision of the men who contributed to the state's flourishing. This scope cannot be achieved without abridging several books of Livy and at times focusing on a not particularly lively string of great men and their battles. An additional problem is the reliance on the *periochae* of Livy, the writing style of which is decidedly inferior to that of the historian himself. By presenting those chapters first and adding some extended passages (some of the highlights), the book would accomplish the goal of an overview of history while still engaging students in some interesting narratives. Supplementing the *periochae* in Cap. L with notable passages from Livy (perhaps in English) would enrich the narrative, for example:

Book XXXI.1: Livy on the long narrative of the war with Carthage and the transition to Macedon.

Book XXXI.7: Publius Sulpicius' speech on why the Romans should fight Philip (refers both to Hannibal and Pyrrhus).

Book XXXII.24: Flamininus attacks Elatia.

Book XXXIII.12: Quinctius and the safety of Greece (how to keep Greece strong enough after the Romans leave—good for thinking about political ramifications of intervention/imperialism).

Book XXXIII.21: Death (and eulogy) of Attalus.

Book XXXIII.32–33: Flamininus announces freedom for Greece at the Isthmian Games.

TO THE STUDENT: READING LONG SENTENCES

Consider the following sentence (Cap. XXXVI.10–15):

Palātium primum munitum est, sed ea moenia quadrata, quibus Rōmulus, primus rex Rōmānōrum, Palātium munivisse dicitur iam pridem periērunt, neque ūlla casa restat ex illā urbe antiquissimā, quae ā fōrmā moenium ‘Rōma quadrata’ appellābatur, praeter ‘casam Rōmulī’ strāmentō tectam.

What might seem daunting at first becomes simpler with rereading and compartmentalizing. Read through the sentence, taking note of endings and structure markers, such as:

- coordinating conjunctions (*et, atque/ac, sed, neque/nec, vel*, etc.)
- subordinating conjunctions (*antquam/postquam, cum, dum, si*, etc.)
- relative pronouns/relative clauses
- prepositional phrases
- words/phrases in apposition

Looking at endings and markers will help you determine the relationship of words to each other and the structure of the sentence. A single underline indicates subject (and its modifiers, including predicate nominatives and adjectives); a double marks the verb; words in **bold** are conjunctions and relative pronouns; parentheses mark prepositional phrases; and brackets mark off relative clauses:

*Palātium primum munitum est, **sed ea moenia quadrata**, [**quibus** Rōmulus, primus rex Rōmānōrum, Palātium munivisse dicitur] iam pridem periērunt, **neque ūlla casa restat** (ex illā urbe antiquissimā), [**quae** (ā fōrmā moenium) ‘Rōma quadrata’ appellābatur], (praeter ‘casam Rōmulī’ strāmentō tectam).*

With practice you will be able to “mark” (parse) sentences in your head as you read. By reading through even a very long and complex sentence carefully several times, you can arrive at its meaning without translating. A few more suggestions:

- Latin sentences are not random—they are designed to move as they do, expressing meaning in the order the author chooses.
- Focus at first on structure and endings, *before* English meaning of the word. Often students will go through and identify vocabulary and then make up a meaning that seems to fit the context.
- Do not fret about relative pronouns that are not nominative or accusative (e.g., *quibus* above—you won’t know that it’s an ablative until you understand the rest of the clause). It is often impossible to determine what their role in the sentence is until you have reviewed the rest of the clause.
- Do not write out an English translation!
 - ▷ Time consuming!
 - ▷ You will make mistakes. Once you have written out your translation, it will make sense to you, and you will have a harder time understanding how it can be wrong.
 - ▷ You will be tempted to look at your English instead of the Latin.
 - ▷ You won’t learn Latin by writing out and memorizing translations. You will learn Latin only by continuing to read Latin!
- Do not write the English meaning of a Latin word in your text! Your eye will go to the English, and you will learn nothing.

The following lengthy and complex sentence comes from Cicero’s speech in Cap. LIV.56–64:

Quī posteā cum māximās aedificāset ōrnāsetque classēs exercitūque permagnōs quibuscumque ex gentibus potuisset comparāset et sē Bosporānīs fīnitimīs suis bellum inferre similāret, usque in Hispāniam lēgātōs ac litterās mīsīt ad eōs ducēs quibuscum tum bellum gerēbāmus, ut, cum duōbus in locīs disiūctissimīs māximēque dīversīs ūnō cōnsiliō ā bīnīs hostium cōpiīs bellum terrā marīque gererētur, vōs ancipitī contentiōne districtī dē imperiō dīmīcārētis.

This complex period⁵ can be made easier by separating out the subordinate clauses; the following dissection of the period is offered as an example, in which there are parentheses around phrases, brackets around clauses; the subject is underlined once and the verb twice; important reading signals are bolded. The order has been changed to reflect levels of subordination:

- *Quī postea*
 - ▷ *cum* māximās aedificāset ōrnāset**que** *classēs exercitūs***que** *permagnōs* comparāset
 - [*quibuscumque* (*ex gentibus*) potuisset]
 - ▷ *et* similāret
 - *sē Bosporānīs fīnitimīs suīs bellum īferre*
- *usque* (*in Hispāniam*) *lēgātōs* **ac** *litterās* mīsīt
 - ▷ (*ad eōs ducēs*)
 - [*quibuscum tum bellum gerēbāmus*]
- **ut** vōs *ancipitī contentiōne districtī* (*dē imperiō*) dīmicārētis
 - ▷ *cum* (*duōbus in locīs disiūctissimīs* *māximē***que** *dīversīs*) *ūnō cōnsiliō* (*ā bīnīs hostium cōpiīs*) bellum (*terrā marī***que**) gererētur.

Here is a rewritten simplification of the sentence:

Mithradātēs maximās classēs aedificāvit ōrnāvitque; exercitusque permagnōs quibuscumque ex gentibus poterat comparāvit; simulāvit sē Bosporānīs fīnitimīs suīs bellum īferre. Deinde (i.e., postea) usque in Hispāniam lēgātōs ac litterās mīsīt ad eōs ducēs quibuscum tum bellum gerēbāmus. [Hoc fēcīt] ut, cum duōbus in locīs disiūctissimīs maximēque dīversīs ūnō cōnsiliō ā bīnīs hostium cōpiīs bellum terrā marīque gererētur, vōs ancipitī contentiōne districtī dē imperiō dīmicārētis.

STYLE

RŌMA AETERNA offers chronological glimpses into the history of the Roman Republic. The readings, however, fall into various genres: history (Livy, Sallust), historical epitome (Eutropius, *periochae*), oratory (Cicero), biography (Nepos), political philosophy (Cicero), and miscellany (Aulus Gellius).

5. A period signifies a long, carefully constructed sentence, often marked by several subordinate clauses, that generally does not complete the full thought until it has reached the end.

“Genre” stems from *genus*, “type”; genres are different categories of literature with particular stylistic expectations. The requirements of each genre differ, but each has its foundations in the principles of rhetoric. “Every speech, moreover,” wrote Quintilian, “consists of content and words: discovery (*inventiō*) must focus on the matter at hand, expression (*ēlocūtiō*) in the choice of words, arrangement (*conlocātiō*) in both, which memory (*memoria*) holds in its grasp (and) the delivery (*āctiō*) distinguishes.”⁶ Although Quintilian was writing about oratory, his words are broadly applicable. Each writer devises an argument from his sources, picks what he wants to say (*inventiō*), and arranges the material (*conlocātiō* or *distribūtiō*). Each must then choose the best way of phrasing his thoughts (*ēlocūtiō*, which also involves *conlocātiō*). Authors gave public readings of their works, and so, like the orator, the author needed to express himself not only with vocal intonation but also with appropriate gesture. Delivery was physically strenuous.

Despite public readings, some genres are directed more toward a listening audience and others toward readers. Livy’s style, for example, is very different from that of Sallust. Quintilian calls Livy’s smooth abundance “milky richness” (*illa Livi lactea ūbertās*). He labels Sallust’s style compressed and choppy—“*illa Sallustiāna brevitās et abruptum sermōnis genus*”—a style that would sail over the heads of listeners but be less likely to trip up a reader with plenty of time to digest his meaning (“*quod ōtiōsum fortasse lēctōrem minus fallat, audientem trānsuolat*”). You can notice for yourself the difference between works primarily meant to be heard instead of read when you read Cicero’s speech for Pompey in Cap. LIV.

We should look for variation of style within a genre, even within the work of one author. Livy’s books, for example, are usually talked about in “decades,” referring not to time but to groups of books. Caps. XLI–XLV in your reading come from the first decade (indeed, from the first book) and are considered more poetic in style than the later books. You can decide what that might mean by comparing the styles for yourself.

Livy and Sallust differ in the goal of their history as well. Livy’s continuous history begins from the foundation of the city (*ab Urbe Condītā*), while Sallust’s history of the war with Jugurtha focuses on a political narrative of Rome’s war against Numidia (111–105 BC). In contrast to both, Eutropius’s fourth-century *Breviārium Historiae Rōmānae* aims to narrate the greatest amount of history as succinctly as possible (the *periochae* are brief, like the *Breviārium*, but their aim is to summarize Livy’s *ab Urbe Condītā*).

6. *Institūtiō Ōrātōria* 8.preface: *Ōrātiōnem porrō omnem constāre rēbus et verbis: in rēbus intuendam inventiōnem, in verbis ēlocūtiōnem, in utrāque conlocātiōnem, quae memoria complecteretur, āctiō commendāret.*

All of our authors received training in rhetoric, sound principles applicable not only to speeches but to any kind of composition. Consider Cicero's statement (a bit fuller than that of Quintilian above) in a youthful work on rhetoric, *dē Inventiōne*: *inventiō* is the "thinking out" of things that are true or very like the truth, which can make the case credible; *dispositiō* is the orderly arrangement of those things that have been "thought out"; *ēlocūtiō* is the adapting of words and sentences to the material as thought out; *memoria* is the mind's solid grasp of the arguments and words pertaining to the material as thought out; *prōnuntiātiō* is the physical adaptation of the body to the voice in accordance with the dignity of the arguments and words.⁷

Sometimes we have other ancient sources with which to compare our texts and thus get some idea of the *inventiō* and *dispositiō* of our authors. For the most part, however, a narrower scope confines our evaluation of prose style: the *dispositiō* of material within a section of a work (What does the author include? What might he have included that he did not? What other ways might he have arranged it?) and the *ēlocūtiō*, or choice and arrangement of words and expression of ideas. As for performance, we have only our imaginations to help us. When reading, consider the arrangement of the material: How does Livy, for example, present episodes from early Roman history for their greatest dramatic effect? What details does he include, and in what order? How does he embellish the narrative? What view of Roman history does his work present?

You know by experience that, although Latin word order is much more fluid than that of English, there are definite patterns. The subject and its modifiers tend to come first (S), then the object and its modifiers (O), while the verb and its modifiers tend to come last (V). Latin word order can express emphasis in a way similar to that of the human voice. The emphatic parts of a sentence are the beginning and the end. A variety of ways of transposing natural word order, known as *hyperbaton* (Greek: ὑπερβατόν) or *trānsgressiō* (Latin), renders Latin flexible and pleasing. As Quintilian says, it's important to find the place in the sentence where words fit most effectively (*Īnstitūtiō Ōrātōria* 8.62).

Writers also made use of various figures of expression that call attention to language by altering accustomed usage. There were many handbooks of figures (*figūrae*, Latin; σχῆμα, Greek). The enumeration and elucidation of figures lie beyond the scope of this introduction, but some of them you can notice without formal training. For example, you will be able to mark in your reading lists

7. *Inventiō est excōgitātiō rērum vērārum aut vēri similium, quae causam probābilem reddant; dispositiō est rērum inventārum in ordinem distribūtiō; ēlocūtiō est idōneōrum verbōrum [et sentiētiarum] ad inventiōnem accommodātiō; memoria est firma animi rērum ac verbōrum ad inventiōnem perceptiō; prōnuntiātiō est ex rērum et verbōrum dignitāte vōcis et corporis moderātiō.*

without conjunctions (asyndeton) or lists with an abundance of conjunctions (polysyndeton).

The best way to determine the prose style of an author is to, first, pay attention to the way each author expresses himself and then compare the mode of one with another. And the best way to know how an author expresses himself is to ask questions. Professor Timothy J. Moore, the John and Penelope Biggs Distinguished Professor of Classics at Washington University in St. Louis, kindly has permitted me to reprint his checklist for considering Latin prose style (below).

RŌMA AETERNA gives you a variety of prose styles that will greatly enhance your appreciation of Latin verse: once you are familiar with the way prose authors tend to write, you will be able to see how much word order contributes to the beauty of poetry, whose word choice and word order is more varied than that of prose.

STYLISTIC ANALYSIS OF LATIN PROSE: A CHECKLIST

I. Morphology and Orthography

- What choices has the author made between alternate forms and spelling (e.g., *ere* or *erunt* in the 3rd plural perfect active indicative; *is* or *es* in the accusative plural 3rd declension)?
- Are any forms or spelling used which you might not expect in a prose author of this period (e.g., *quum* for *cum*, *qui* for *quo*)?

II. Diction

- Are words or phrases used here which are rare elsewhere in this author? in this period? in this genre? in prose? in Latin?
- Are there words or phrases which seem to reflect the formulaic language of law, diplomacy, government, or religion?
- Are there words or phrases which seem archaic, poetic, or colloquial?
- Are any words or phrases repeated in the passage, or is diction deliberately varied?
- To what extent does the author use metaphorical expressions?
- Are any expressions particularly effective in their imagery?
- What words does the author choose to make transitions from one sentence to another?

- Does the author prefer abstract or concrete nouns?
- What choices has the author made between synonyms?

III. Syntax

- What syntactical features stand out (e.g., historical infinitives, impersonal passives, repeated grammatical elements)?
- Which sentences are long, which short?
- How are the longer sentences constructed?
 - ▷ Are clauses strung along paratactically, or hypotactically?
 - ▷ How are clauses subordinated (e.g., with participles, or with conjunctions)?
 - ▷ Which thoughts occur in the main clauses, which in subordinate clauses?
 - ▷ Do the clauses follow one another by an easily comprehensible logic, or must the reader work to piece the sentences together?
 - ▷ Are the sentences “periodic,” i.e., longer, carefully constructed sentences whose full meaning is kept somewhat in suspense until the end of the sentence?
 - ▷ How are clauses arranged according to rhythm and length?
 - ▷ Has the author placed the longest clauses last?
 - ▷ Does the author show concern for the rhythm of phrases, especially the last phrase of each sentence (clausula)?
 - ▷ Does the author use pairs, tricola, or other numbers of clauses?
 - ▷ To what extent does the author use parallelism in arranging his clauses?
- Word order
 - ▷ How are words, phrases, and clauses arranged for emphasis? Remember that the first and last positions in the sentence are most emphatic.
 - ▷ What other effects has the author produced through manipulation of the order of words (e.g., juxtaposition of contrasting words, hyperbaton, chiasmus)?

IV. General

- Does the passage provide echoes of previous authors in diction or phraseology? Do these echoes seem to be deliberate or unconscious?
- Has the author said only what is necessary to make his point (*brevitas*), or are unnecessary words, phrases, and sentences added (*copia*)?
- Reported speech
 - ▷ Which speeches in the passage are reported indirectly, which directly?
 - ▷ To what extent are the syntax and diction of the speeches manipulated to characterize speakers?
- Aside from reported speeches, does the author provide the perspective of anyone besides himself (e.g., through descriptions of reactions)?
- Does the author use any rhetorical tropes (e.g., anaphora, apostrophe, asyndeton, zeugma)?

V. What Is the Effect of All This?

Some passages for comparison:

1. Second Punic War vs. War with Jugurtha
 - a. Livy: Cap. XLVIII.1–11
 - b. Sallust: Cap. LII.1–6
2. Comparison of Character
 - a. Livy on Hannibal: Cap. XLVIII.43–58
 - b. Sallust on Jugurtha: Cap. LII.24–31
3. Military Qualities
 - a. Sallust representing the speech of C. Marius: Cap. LII.457–518
 - b. Cicero on Pompey: Cap. LIV.286–345
4. Livy vs. Periochae
 - a. Periochae: Cap. XLVIII.274–275
Hannibal, per continuās vigiliās in palūdibus oculō āmissō, in Etrūriam vēnit.

b. Livy: Book XXII.2.10

Ipse Hannibal aeger oculis ex vernā primum intemperie variante calōrēs frīgoraque, elephantō, quī ūnus superfuerat, quō altius ab aquā exstāret, vectus, vigiliis tamen et noctūrnō ūmōre palustrīque caelō gravante caput et quia medendī nec locus nec tempus erat alterō oculō capitur.

Vocabulary

vernus, -a, -um: springtime (< *ver, veris* (n.))

intemperies, -ēi (f.): inclemency

variāre: to change, to vary (*varius*)

ex-stāre: stand above

ūmor, -ōris (m.): liquid, moisture

paluster, -tris, -tre: swampy

gravāre: to burden, oppress (*gravis*)

PARS PRIMA

XXXVI: TRICESIMVM SEXTVM: RŌMA AETERNA¹

I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE: NEW SYNTAX

Subordinate Clauses in Indirect Discourse

When an indirect discourse (known as *ōrātiō obliqua*)² contains a subordinate relative clause, the verb in that clause will be in the subjunctive,³ following the rule you learned in Cap. XXVIII, repeated here.

If the main verb is primary (present, future, sometimes perfect),⁴ the verb in the subordinate subjunctive clause will be either present (incomplete action) or perfect (completed action).

If the main verb is secondary (imperfect, perfect, pluperfect), the verb in the subordinate subjunctive clause will be either imperfect (incomplete action) or pluperfect (completed action). Secondary sequence is also called historical, that is, referring to the past.

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

2. That is, an indirect statement, which you first learned as the accusative and infinitive construction.

3. The verb can be in the indicative even in indirect statement, when the speaker wishes to stress the factual basis of the clause or when the clause just explains something in the indirect statement (so doesn't really belong to the indirect statement).

4. When the perfect tense emphasizes the current state resulting from the action, it is a primary tense; e.g., *fenestra clausa est*: the window has been closed (secondary) the window is closed (primary).

In table form:

Main Clause Verb(s)	Subordinate Clause Verb(s)	
	Incomplete Action	Completed Action
Primary Tense	Present Subjunctive	Perfect Subjunctive
Secondary Tense	Imperfect Subjunctive	Pluperfect Subjunctive

E.g.:

[Augustus] *glōriātus sit* ‘marmoream sē relinquere urbem quam latericiam accēpisset’ (ll.229–230)

Accēpisset is

subjunctive because:

- it is the verb in a subordinate clause in indirect statement introduced by *glōriātus sit*.

pluperfect because:

- the main verb *glōriātus sit* is perfect.
- the action of the subordinate verb (*accēpisset*) is prior (completed) to the action of the main verb.

Dative of Purpose (*datīvus fīnālis*)

Latin can combine two datives, a dative of purpose (*datīvus fīnālis*) and a dative of reference, into a construction called “double dative.” Most often the double dative is found with a form of the verb *esse*. In this chapter, we see it with *venīre*:

[*Castor et Pollux*] *saepius Rōmānīs in proeliīs auxiliō vērunt*.
(ll.139–140)

The dative *auxiliō* shows for what purpose Castor and Pollux have come, and the dative *Rōmānīs* shows the people for whom they have come. *Auxiliō* is one of the words commonly found in the double dative. Some other examples of the double dative are:

cui bonō est?: for whom (*cui*: reference) is it good/an advantage
(*bonō*: purpose)?

praesidiō exercituī esse: to be a source of protection (*praesidiō*:
purpose) to the army (*exercituī*: reference)

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE: EXPANSION AND REFINEMENT OF SYNTAX INTRODUCED ELSEWHERE

Gerund/Gerundive

You first met the gerund, or verbal noun, in Cap. XXV:

Ibi nāvis mea parāta est ad nāvigandum (XXV.93–94): “for sailing”

Parāta sum ad fugiendum (XXV.97)

In addition to *ad* + the accusative of the gerund to express purpose (as above), the gerund is found in the genitive, dative,⁵ and as an ablative of cause or, as below, of means:

Rōmānī cotīdiē in thermās illās celebrēs lavātum eunt atque ibīdem corpora exercent natandō, currendō, luctandō (ll.247–249): “...They exercise by swimming, running, wrestling.”⁶

You first met the gerundive, or verbal adjective, in Cap. XXXI. There you learned that the gerundive is a passive adjective that expresses an action that the noun is suited for or fit for, e.g.:

Vivant omnēs fēminae amandae (XXXI.172–173): *amandae* here means “lovable,” “fit to be loved.”

The gerundive can also be joined with a form of the verb “to be,” a construction which indicates something that is to be done. This construction, often called the passive periphrastic, can be impersonal (the first example below) and personal (the second example):

In summā Sacrā viā infrā clivum Palātīnum est arcus Titī, dē quō mox dīcendum erit (ll.171–172):

dīcendum est is impersonal: literally the relative clause means, “about which there will soon have to be a speaking.”

5. The gerund is rare in the dative case.

6. In the example above, *lavātum* is a **SUPINE** (Cap. XXII). *Lavātum eunt* means (literally) “they go for the purpose of washing” or, in better English, “they go to wash.”

*Inter cētera Domitiānī opera memorandum est stadium in campō
Mārtiō factum* (ll.318–319):

“Among the rest of Domitian’s works, the running track
made in the Campus Martius must be mentioned
(*stadium memorandum est*).”

We also see the gerundive used in this way—expressing what is to be done to something—when used with the object of certain verbs. In this chapter, we see several examples of the gerundive used with the object of *cūrāre*:

Pompēius...theātrum aedificandum cūrāvit (ll.196–197): Pompey “attended to a theatre which was to be built” conveys roughly the same idea as *Pompeius cūrāvit ut theātrum aedificāretur*.

viam Appiam mūniendam cūrāvit (l.253)

novum forum faciendum cūrāvit (l.325)

In Cap. XXXVII, you’ll see the same construction with the verbs *dare* and *offerre*:

[*Euandrō*] *Faunus...arva colenda dedit*. (ll.12–14)

Tum subitō māter Venus...filiō sē videndam obtulit. (ll.186–187)

***Dīcitur* and *nārrātur* with Nominative + Infinitive Perfect**

In Cap. XIII, you learned that with passive verbs of speaking, hearing, etc.,⁷ we find nominative and infinitive instead of accusative and infinitive:

Lūna ‘nova’ esse dīcitur (XIII.52, “the moon is said to be ‘new’”)

In this chapter, we find the same construction with the perfect infinitive. The passives *dīcitur* and *nārrātur* with nominative and infinitive perfect state what is reported to have taken place, e.g.:

Rōmulus...Palātium mūnīvisse dīcitur (ll.11–12): “Romulus...is said to have fortified the Palatine.”

quī sē...praecipitāvisse nārrātur (ll.65–66)

ōlīm rēgēs Rōmānī habitāvisse dīcuntur (ll.117–118)

7. That is, the verbs that will introduce an accusative and infinitive construction.

Aedēs Concordiae antiqua eō tempore aedificāta esse dīcitur.
(ll.147–148)

gēns Iūlia ā Venere orta esse dīcitur (ll.209–210)

Nerō...dīcitur iniisse domesticam scaenam et cecinisse Trōiae incendium. (ll.266–269)

The same construction is seen with other verbs that introduce indirect statement:

Templum Mārtis Ultōris nōminātum est, quod ille deus mortem Caesaris ultus esse pūtābatur. (ll.221–223)

Ablative of Place

Although place where is usually expressed by the ablative with a preposition, in a few phrases in Latin, the preposition *in* is not used. One of these phrases is:

terrā marique (l.103, “on land and sea”)

Ablative of Separation (*ablātīvus sēparātiōnis*)

The ablative of separation⁸ is generally found with a preposition. There are many instances, however, when the ablative alone (without a preposition) is used for separation:

Mēdus surgere cōnātur, nec vērō sē locō movēre potest.
(XVI.140–141)

Īnfāns neque somnō neque cibō carēre potest (XX.5–6)

Iūlia dīcit “sē patre suō carēre nōlle.” (XX.140–141)

servīs meīs imperābō ut tē agrīs meīs pellant (XXVII.89)

servitūte liberābantur (XXXII.6)

In this chapter, we find more examples of the ablative of separation without a preposition:

...tōta vallis...domibus vacua facta esset (ll.277–278)

Iuppiter, arce suā cum tōtum spectat in orbem (l.362): “from his citadel.”

8. Caps. VI, XVI, XX, XXVII, XXXII.

Comparison of Adjectives

In this chapter, we meet adjectives whose comparatives and/or superlatives deviate from the general rule.⁹ These forms follow rules as well (which are given only when of practical use):

Magnificus, -a, -um:

comparative: *magnificentior* (ll.44, 245)

superlative: *magnificentissimus* (l.19)

vetus (stem *veter-*):¹⁰

superlative: *veterrimus* (l.100)

Adjectives in *-eus*, *-ius*, and *-uus* (except *-quus*) are compared using *magis* and *māximē*:

magis necessārius

māximē idōneus

māximē arduus (l.27)

III. DĒMONSTRATIŌ VERBŌRUM: EXPLANATION OF WORDS AND PHRASES AT THE LEXICAL LEVEL

Vēnīre, vēndēre || *perīre, perdēre*

The verb *vēn-īre* (“to be sold”) serves as passive of *vēn-dere* (“to sell”). The two verbs are compounds of *īre* and *dare* with *vēnum*, “sale,” so *vēnīre*¹¹ means “to go to sale” or “be sold” and *vēndere* means “to give to sale” or “sell.”

Nunc autem mercēs in vicīs et in aliīs forīs vēneunt (ll.75–76):

“Now however, merchandise is sold in the streets (i.e., neighborhoods) and in other squares.”

...bovēs aliaeque pecudēs vēneunt (ll.177–178): “are sold”

9. Caps. XII, XIII, XVIII (including RĒCĒNSIŌ), XIX, XXIV.

10. *Vetus* (“old”) is a 3rd declension adjective (Cap. XXXI) of one termination (Cap. XIX).

11. *Vēnīre*, “to sell,” is distinguished from *vēnīre*, “to come,” by the long vowel in the present system. (In the perfect system, *vēnīre* also has a long vowel in the stem [*vēnisse*], but context easily gives the sense.)

You have met another pair of verbs that works the same way: *perdere* (Cap. XXIII) and *perīre* (Cap. XXVII). *Perīre*, “to be destroyed,” is the passive of *perdere*, “to destroy”:

Nōne tibi satis fuit vestem tuam novam perdere? (XXIII.72–73)

Nōlō pecūniam meam perdere! (XXIII.146–147)

“Pereat quī nescit amāre! Bis tantō pereat quisquis amāre vetat!”
(XXXI.196–197)

Nec omnēs infantēs expositī pereunt (XXXI.148)

Fierī potest

The regular way in Latin to say “is possible” is *fierī potest*, literally “it is able to become/happen”:¹²

tantīs divitiīs exōrnāvit ut nihil magnificentius fierī posset
(II.43–44)

neque vērō id sine auxiliō deōrum, praecipuē Mārtis, fierī posse
arbitrābātur (I.213)

Both of these sentences are completed by a direct object (*nihil, id*), but *fierī posse* can also be completed by a noun clause:

fierī potest ut: “it is possible (that)”
non fierī potest ut: “it is impossible (that)”

1st Declension Dative/Ablative in -ābus

In Cap. XIV, you learned that the dative and ablative plural of *duo, duae, duo* is *duōbus, duābus, duōbus*. The ending -ābus also distinguishes the gender of two easily confused nouns: *deus/dea* and *filius/filia*. The ending -ābus in dative and ablative plural of *dea* and *filia* makes it possible to distinguish between the feminine and masculine:

Iūnōnī et Minervae, duābus māximīs deābus (II.39–40)

Sex virginēs Vestālēs ex filiābus Rōmānōrum illūstrium (II.111–112)

porticus duodecim diīs et deābus cōnsecrāta (II.160–161)

12. *Possibilis, possibile* first appears in Quintilian (first century AD) to translate the Greek δυνατός; it does not, in classical Latin, replace *fierī posse*.

Summus, medius, infimus

The adjectives *summus* (“top of”), *medius* (“middle of”), and *infimus* (“bottom of”) agree with their noun:

medius

in mediō marī: “in the middle of the sea”

in mediō forō (ll.63, 329)

summus

summum Iāniculum (l.26): “the top of Janiculum”

in summā Arce (l.53)

in summā Sacrā viā (l.171)

in summā columnā (l.336)

infimus

in infimō Capitoliō (ll.55–56): “at the foot of the Capitol”

ad infimum Argiletum (l.100)

IV. RECĒNSIŌ: REVIEW MATERIAL**Genitive of Description (*genetivus quālitātis*)**

You met the genitive of quality/description in Cap. XIX. A noun and adjective in the genitive case add a qualifying description, often giving details of number or measurement:

Quīntus est puer septem annōrum. (XIX.33–34)

adulēscēns vīgintī duōrum annōrum erat (XIX.39–40)

In this chapter, we meet more examples, also detailing measurement:

opus arcuātum passuum sexāgintā (ll.257–258)

*...habet longitudinem passuum quadrāgintā sex mīlium
quadringentōrum sex* (ll.260–261)

Ut Clauses

The two-letter *ut* offers several interpretative possibilities, three included in this chapter:

Adverb of manner (Cap. IX) (see also *ut...ita*: Cap. XIX)

*Nec vērō ‘arx’ nōmen huius montis proprium est, nam aliī quoque montēs arduū nātūrā et opere mūnītī ‘arcēs’ dīcuntur, **ut** summum Iāniculum, quod trāns Tiberim situm est. (ll.23–26)*

*Caesar enim, **ut** plērīque principēs Rōmānī, post mortem in deōrum numerō habētur et ‘dīvus’ vocātur. (ll.123–124)*

*Hoc templum antīquissimum SENATVS POPVLVSQVE ROMANVS INCENDIO CONSUMPTVM RESTITVIT, **ut** in fronte īnscriptum est. (ll.134–137)*

*Multae viae ex omnibus urbis partibus in forum ferunt, **ut** Argilētum, Sacra via, Nova via (ll.166–167)*

*...**ut** versibus nārrat Ovidius (l.184)*

*...**ut** suprā dictum est (ll.317–318)*

Purpose clauses (Cap. XXVIII)

*Ad hoc templum imperātor victor post triumphum ascendit, **ut** Iovī Optimō Māximō sacrificium faciat. (ll.48–50)*

*Multī ōrātōrēs illūstrēs in Rōstra ascendērunt, **ut** ōrātiōnēs ad populum habērent. (ll.91–93)*

Result clauses (Cap. XXIX)

*Postrēmō Domitiānus templum Iovis Capitōlinī incendiō cōsumptum refēcit atque **tantīs** dīvitiīs exōrnāvit **ut** nihil magnificentius fierī posset (ll.42–44).*

*...**tot et tanta** nova opera marmorea aedificāvit **ut** iūre glōriātus sit ‘marmoream sē relinquere urbem quam latericiam accēpisset’ (ll.228–230).*

...*quae ita aurō atque gemmīs splendēbat ut iūre ‘domus aurea’ nōminārētur* (ll.280–281).

Nerō ipse domum suam perfectam ita probāvit ut ‘se’ diceret ‘quasi hominem tandem habitāre coepisse!’ (ll.287–289)

Videāmus nunc quōmodo haec urbs mīrābilis ā parvā orīgine ad tantam magnitudinem tantamque glōriam pervēnit ut caput orbis terrārum appellētur (ll.335–338).

Meter

There is a good amount of original verse in this and the following chapters. You should review Cap. XXXIV before proceeding. Here, to assist you in learning to read two common Latin meters, are some of the lines scanned:

ll.164–165: dactylic hexameter

*Iūnō, Vēstā, Mīnervā, Cērēs, Diānā, Vēnūs, Mārs,
Mērcūrīūs, Iōvī, Nēptūnūs, Vulcānūs, Āpōllō.*¹³

ll.182–183: elegiac couplet

cōstitūtquē sībī quā ‘Māximā’ dīcītūr ārām (hexameter)
hīc ūbī pārs ūrbīs || dē bōvē nōmēn hābēt (pentameter)

V. POINTS OF STYLE: INFORMATION ABOUT THE LANGUAGE OF THE AUTHOR UNDER CONSIDERATION

Accumulation of Genitives

A genitive can depend on another genitive. A good example can be seen in the expression:

cum multitudine omnis generis pecudum ac ferarum (ll.286–287)

The genitive of description *omnis generis* qualifies *pecudum ac ferarum*, which are partitive genitives: a great number of farm animal and wild animals (partitive) of every type (quality/description).

13. Although *Iuppiter* is the usual nominative, *Iovis* is also occasionally found. At the time that Ennius was writing (turn of the third to the second century BC), the final *s* was often unpronounced if the next word began with a consonant.

XXXVII: TRICESIMVM SEPTIMVM: TROIA CAPTA (Vergil)¹

I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE

Historical Present

In an account of past or “historical” events, the verbs are normally in the past tense or preterite (whether perfect, imperfect, or pluperfect). Occasionally, the present tense (called the “historical present”) is used in main clauses to make the description more vivid and dramatic. The tense in dependent clauses is often past (and always past when the conjunction is *cum*). English conversation often employs a vivid present as well, switching from the past to the present for vivid and dramatic narration: “We were finished eating when we heard a noise. So I go outside to see what is happening. And I hear more noises. And then I see...”

The narration of the serpents attacking *Lāocoōn* in line 53 and those following opens with a perfect tense (*turbātī sunt*) but then moves to the historical present: *natant, prōspiciunt, petunt, edunt*, etc. Note that the preterite returns in the dependent clauses, an acknowledgment that the action takes place in the past:²

Cum terram attigissent...Trōiānōs perterritōs prōspiciunt
(ll.57–58)

...tum patrem ipsum, quī miserīs filiīs auxiliō veniēbat, corripiunt (ll.60–61)

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

2. The use of secondary tenses (imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive), does not, therefore, break the rule for the Sequence of Tense as outlined in Cap. XXXVI.

Origin (*ablātīvus origīnis*)

The ablative of source or origin is a subset of the ablative of separation.

Anchīsā et Venere deā nātus (l.91): “born ‘from’ Anchises and Venus”

nāte deā (l.99): “born of/from a goddess”

Origin (*ablātīvus causālis*)

The ablative of cause is used without a preposition, often with verbs of emotion; it is a subset of the ablative of means.³

īrā permōtus (l.169): “moved by anger”

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE**Temporal Conjunctions*****Dum***

The conjunction *dum* (first introduced in Cap. X) generally takes the present tense (indicative),⁴ even if the main clause is in the preterite:

Dum Latīnus in Italiā in pāce diūturnā rēgnat, Trōia seu Īlium, clārissima Asiae urbs, post bellum decem annōrum tandem ā Graecīs capta est. (ll.21–23)

Ita dum populus incertus in contrāriās sententiās dīviditur, Lāocoōn, Neptunī sacerdos, ab summā arce dēcurrēns cīvēs suos monuit nē Danaīs cōnfiderent. (ll.41–43)

Dum Lāocoōn ad āram taurum immolat, subitō duo anguēs ingentēs ab īsulā Tenedō per mare tranquillū ad litus natant. (ll.54–56)

Dum haec aguntur, Trōiānī sine cūrā dormiēbant. (l.90)

Ergō parte mūrōrum dēstrūctā māchina illa hostibus armātīs plēna magnō labōre in urbem trahitur fūnibus, dum puerī

3. Cf. Cap. XXVI: the gerund can be used as an ablative of means or emotion: *fessus sum ambulāndō*, XXVI.24.

4. In Cap. XLI, you will learn that the conjunction *dum* can also take the subjunctive, when it looks toward a future action that it anticipated (“until,” “long enough for”).

puellaeque carmina sacra canunt et fūnem manū contingere gaudent. (ll.72–75)

*Quā rē perturbātus dum Aenēās celeriter ē nōtā viā discēdit,
Creūsa incerta cōstitit neque maritum aberrantem sequi
potuit.* (ll.251–253)

*Tālia dicēs fixus eōdem locō haerēbat, dum filius et parvus
nepōs omnisque domus multīs cum lacrimīs eī suādent ‘nē
omnēs suōs sēcum perderet’* (ll.199–202)⁵

Ubi

We have already seen *ubi* as a temporal conjunction with the indicative in the combination *ubi primum* (= *cum primum*, “as soon as”):

Ubi primum redēptus est, ipse nāvēs armāvit.
(XXXII.175–177)

*sed ubi primum equum ligneum in litore collocātum vidērunt,
stupentēs cōstitērunt et mōlem equī mīrābantur.* (ll.34–36)

Ubi by itself can also mean “when,” as we see in this chapter:

*Ubi iam ad antiquam domum patriam pervēnit, Anchīsēs
pater...ex patriā captā fugere recūsāvit.* (ll.193–195)

*Haec ubi dicta dedit, lacrimantem et multa volentem / dicere
dēseruit, tenuēsque recessit in aurās.* (ll.276–277)

Ut

The conjunction *ut* and *ut primum* may be used in the same way as *ubi* and *ubi primum*:

*Rēx Priamus senex, ut primum forēs frāctās et hostēs in mediīs
aedibus vidit, manibus infirmīs arma capit.* (ll.150–151)

*Ut Aenēam cōspexit venientem et arma Trōiāna agnōvit,
rē incrēdibilī exterrita palluit animusque eam reliquit.*
(XXXVIII.83–85)

5. In this last example, the verb in the indirect command (*perderet*) is in secondary sequence, even though *suādent* is in the present. The main verb (*haerēbat*) is past, and the sequence follows the main verb (instead of the subordinate *dum* clause).

Priusquam and antequam⁶

You first met *priusquam* in Cap. XXXI. There it was used with the future perfect indicative:

Profectō eum verberābō atque omnibus modīs cruciābō, sī eum invēnerō priusquam Italiam reliquerit. (XXXI.63–65)

Neque enim mihi fās est rēs sacrās tangere priusquam manūs caede cruentās flūmine vivō lāverō. (XXXVII.238–240)

Like *postquam*, however, *priusquam* is often found with the perfect, just like *antequam*:⁷

Caesar autem, priusquam ita necātus est, nōn solum vetera opera refecerat, sed etiam nova cōstituerat. (XXXVI.204–205)

Ergō Mārti deō templum vōvit priusquam proelium commisit cum Brūtō et Cassiō. (XXXVI.213–215)

Antequam illae basilicae exstrūctae sunt, tabernae in forō erant... (XXXVI.72–73)

Priusquam, *antequam*, and *postquam* are often split:

Nec prius respexit quam ad tumulum templumque Cereris pervēnit. (XXXVII.253–255)

...tum omnem gregem in silvam ēgit, nec prius dēstitit quam septem ingentia corpora humī iacēbant. (XXXIX.71–72)

*Sed velim prius terra mē dēvoret vel Iuppiter mē fulmine percutiat, quam pudōrem solvō aut fidem fallō.*⁸ (XL.15–17)

Cum

The conjunction *cum* (Cap. XXIX) is both temporal and causal and merits a fuller explanation than the conjunctions above.

Cum is followed by the **indicative** when it:

refers to the present or future and means “when” (often almost the same as “if”):

6. In Cap. XLII you will learn that *antequam* and *priusquam* also take the subjunctive.

7. Cap. XV. Note that *antequam* and *priusquam* can also take the present tense in positive sentences (i.e., those without a negative).

8. The present tense with *antequam/priusquam* is rare.

Cum avis volat, ālae moventur. (X.15)

Cum syllabae iunguntur, vocābula fiunt. (XVIII.29)

Cum vocābula coniunguntur, sententiae fiunt.
(XVIII.29–30)

refers strictly to “the time when”; you will sometimes find temporal markers in the sentence as well (e.g., *eō tempore*, *tum*, *tunc*, *iam*, etc.):

*Quī nūper Athēnās vēnerat neque ibi fuerat cum urbs ā
rēge Mīnōe expugnāta est.* (XXV.52–53)

*Aedēs Concordiae antīqua eō tempore aedificāta esse
dīcitur cum post longam discordiam quae populum
Rōmānum dīvīserat in duās factiōnēs.* (XXXVI.147–149)

refers to repeated action (*cum iterātivum*) and means “when” in the sense of “whenever” (Cap. XXIX):

Semper gaudeō cum dē liberīs meīs cōgitō. (XXIX.47)

...tū numquam mē salūtābās, cum mē vidēbās
(XIX.99–100)

signals that the focus of the sentence is the *cum* clause, not the main clause; the *cum* clause in this construction, called *cum inversum*, follows the main clause and often marks a sudden occurrence:⁹

*Tālia exclāmāns omnem domum gemitū complēbat—cum
subitō mirābile prōdigium vīsum est.* (II.218–219)

*Iam portīs appropinquābant atque salvī esse vidēbantur,
cum Anchīsēs per umbram prōspiciēns “Fuge, mī fili!”
exclāmat.* (II.248–250)

Cum is followed by the **subjunctive** when it refers to:

the circumstances (*cum* circumstantial): the clause tells us what took place at the same time as (imperfect) or previous to (pluperfect) something else, as in this example:

*Cum iam sōl occidisset et nox obscūra terram tegetet,
Trōiānī fessī somnō sē dedērunt.* (II.83–84)

9. Compare the force of the two English sentences: “When I was reading, the phone rang,” and “I was reading when the phone rang.” In both sentences, the focus of the sentence is on the phone ringing.

Occidisset shows prior time—the sun had set—while *tegeret* shows the night was covering the earth at the same time as the Trojans went to sleep.

the cause (*cum causāle*): when the *cum* clause explains the reason (can take any tense of the subjunctive):

*Graeci enim, cum urbem vi expugnare non possent, dolō
ūsi sunt.* (ll.23–24)

*nunc omnis aura, omnis sonus terret, cum pariter filiō
patrīque timeat* (l.247)

concessive/adversative: when *cum* means “although” (often *tamen* is found in the main clause). Otherwise, context will show whether *cum* is adversative.

Noun Clauses of Result

In Cap. XXVII, you learned about subjunctive noun clauses with *verba cūrandī*, such as *facere ut* and *efficere ut*. These clauses are consecutive and explanatory: they grow out of and explain their introductory words. *Mōs est ut* will also introduce a noun clause of result:

*mōs Rōmānōrum est ut mēse Decembrī diēbus fēstīs quī
dicuntur Sātūrnālīa servī in convīviis cum dominīs discumbant.*
(XXXVII.6–8)

The clause *ut discumbant* explains what the custom (*mōs*) is. Some other examples of phrases that are followed by these clauses are:

accidit ut: “it happens that” (perfect: *accidit ut*, “it happened that”)
evenit ut: “it turns out, results that” (perfect: *evenit ut*, “it turned out that”)
fit ut: “it happens that”
fieri potest ut: “it is possible that”

Alternate 2nd Person Singular Ending *-re* = *-ris*

The 2nd person singular passive has an alternate ending *-re* instead of *-ris*. Hecuba ends her summons to Priam to take refuge by the altar with these words:

Haec āra tuēbitur omnēs—aut moriēre simul! (ll.158–159)

The *ē* of *moriēre* is long because *moriēre* is the future tense of the deponent verb *morī*, while *moriĕre* would be the present tense.

Possibilities for a verb ending in *-ēre* (remember to check for contextual clues!):

All conjugations

3rd person plural perfect active indicative (alternate ending: see Cap. XXXIX, XLII):

- *conticuēre* (XXXIX.304) = *conticuērunt* (syncopated ending)

2nd conjugation

present active infinitive:

- *habēre*: “to have”
- *movēre*: “to move”

2nd person singular present passive/deponent:

- *habēre*: “you are considered”¹⁰ = *habēris*
- *cōnfitēre*: “you confess” (deponent: *cōnfitērī*) = *cōnfitēris*

present passive/deponent imperative, singular:

- *cōnfitēre*: “confess!”

3rd conjugation

2nd person singular future passive/deponent:

- *sequēre*: “you will follow” = *sequēris*
- *moriēre*: “you will die” = *moriēris*
- *amplectēre*: “you will embrace” = *amplectēris*

Possibilities for a verb ending in *-ere* (3rd conjugation)

present active infinitive:

īnspicere: “to examine”
corripere: “to seize”

2nd person singular present passive/deponent:

corripere: “you are being seized” = *corriperis*
sequere: “you are following” = *sequeris*
morire: “you are dying” = *morieris*
amplectere: “you are embracing” = *amplecteris*

10. Remember that *habērī* (Cap. XXVIII) often means “be held,” “be considered.” Cf. XXXVI.30, 125.

present passive/deponent imperative, singular:

sequere: “follow!”

amplectere: “embrace!”

Greek Names

1. In *-ās* (e.g., *Aenēās*), most follow the 1st declension in Latin:

acc.	-am or -an	<i>Aenēam</i> (or <i>Aenēan</i>)
gen./dat.	-ae	<i>Aenēae</i>
abl.	-ā	<i>Aenēā</i>
voc.	-ā	<i>Aenēā</i>

In *-ēs*

Most (e.g., *Herculēs*, *Achillēs*, *Ulixēs*—Greek *Hēraklēs*, *Achilleus*, *Odysseus*) follow the 3rd declension:

acc.	-em or -ēn	<i>Herculem</i> (or <i>Herculēn</i>)
gen.	-is	<i>Herculis</i>
dat.	-ī	<i>Herculī</i>
voc.	-ē	<i>Herculē</i>

Some (e.g., *Anchīsēs*) follow the 1st declension

acc.	-ēn or -am	<i>Anchīsēn</i> (or <i>Anchīsan</i>)
gen./dat.	-ae	<i>Anchīsae</i>
abl.	-ā or -e	<i>Anchīsā</i> (or <i>Anchīse</i>)

Dative with Compound Verbs

Compound verbs (i.e., verbs that consist of a stem and a prefix) often take a dative. This is true of both transitive and intransitive verbs.

Intransitive verbs (like *superesse*, “survive”) will take the dative alone:

superesse: *Nōlō urbī captāe superesse*, “I refuse to outlive a captured city.” (l.198)

prōdesse: *Nihil enim vineīs magis prōdest quam sōl et calor.*
(XXVII.121–122)

praeesse: Agricola...ipse nōn sum, sed multis agricolis praesum.
(XXX.32–33)

deesse: Certus ac vērū amīcus est quī numquam amicō suō
deest. (XXXII.115–116)

Transitive verbs (like *circumdare*, “surround”) take an accusative (the object of the transitive verb) and a dative:

circumdare: [anguēs] collō longa corpora sua circumdant (l.63):
“the snakes wrap their long bodies [accusative] around his
neck [dative].”¹¹

*Praeficere*¹² (“put x [accusative] in charge of y [dative]”):

[Milites armati] quibus praefecti erant Ulixēs et Pyrrhus.
(ll.26–27)

Pontifex māximus...ceteris omnibus sacerdotibus Rōmānīs
praefectus est. (XXXVI.118–120)

addere: Si tibi certum est Trōiae peritūrae tē tuōsque addere.
(XVIII.204–205)

Dative of Interest/Reference

The dative case shows that someone or something has a stake in the sentence. Grammar books have many subcategories for the dative case, but if you keep in mind the idea that the verb concerns or affects the person invoked in the dative case, you can work out the best relationship. For example:

...cum pariter filiō patrique timeat (l.247): “...because he fears
equally *for* his son and father.”

Aeneas is afraid, and his father and son are the people *for whom* he is afraid. Compare Laocoon’s words:

Quidquid id est, timeō Danaōs—et dōna ferentēs! (l.49)

In this sentence, *timēre* takes an accusative: Laocoon fears the Greeks; were the case dative (i.e., *timeo Danaīs*), he would fear *for* them.

11. With the ablative, the same idea would be expressed differently: *collum longis corporibus* (ablative of means) *suis circumdant*: “they wrap around his neck with their long bodies.”

12. In the examples from our text, there is no accusative because the verb is passive.

III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM

Iuvāre

Iuvāre can mean “to help,” as you have already seen:

Dīs iuvantibus spērō eum brevī sānum fore. (XXXIV.9–10)

When *iuvāre* means “to be of use” and “to please,” it is generally used impersonally:

Quid iuvat deōs invocāre. (XXVI.32)

Quid iuvat mē lūgēre, ō dulcis coniūnx. (I.268)

Sī pereō, hominum manibus periisse iuvābit. (XXXVIII.174)

Sīc, sīc iuvat ire sub umbrās. (XL.263)

Verbs Formed from the Adjective *plēnus*

You have already learned (Cap. VII) that the adjective *plēnus* can take either the genitive or the ablative, e.g.:

māchina...hostibus armātīs plēna (II.72–73)

hic saccus plēnus mālōrum est (VII.43–44)

Verbs formed from *plēnus* can also take a genitive or an ablative, e.g., *complēre* (Cap. XXX), *supplēre* (Cap. XLIII), *implēre* (Cap. XVI):

militibus armātīs complēvērunt (II.25–26)

rēgia tōta hostibus armātīs complētur (II.148–149)

Poenās dare

The noun *poena* denotes the penalty paid for an offense; the plural is used in the phrase *poenās dare* (+ dative: “pay the penalty to”) which is equal to the passive *pūnīrī* (+ *ab*... “be punished by”), e.g.:

servus fugitīvus dominō poenās dat

= *servus fugitīvus ab dominō pūnītur.*

‘Lāocoontem poenās meritās Minervae dedisse’ dīcunt (I.69)

‘poenās Minervae dedisse’ = ā Minervā pūnītum esse.

Fās

The indeclinable neuter *fās* denotes what is right by divine law, the will of the gods; it occurs mainly in the impersonal phrase *fās est* (“it is right/fitting”), which introduces an accusative + infinitive construction like that of indirect discourse.

*Neque enim mihi fās est rēs sacrās tangere priusquam manūs
caede cruentās flūmine vīvō lāverō.* (ll.238–240)

*Nōn sine nūmine deōrum haec ēveniunt, nec fās est tē hinc
comitem portāre Creūsam.* (ll.268–270)

Dative with the Impersonal *certum*

Certum est = “it is decided” + dative (“by whom”). In the phrase *certum mihi est* + infinitive (“I have decided”), the dative shows who made the decision:

Sī tibi certum est Trōiae peritūrae tē tuōsque addere.
(ll.204–205)

IV. RECĒNSIŌ**Dative with Adjectives**

The same principle (the dative indicating reference) can be seen with some adjectives: many of the Latin adjectives with the dative are coupled with *to* or *for* in English as well.

You are already familiar with the following adjectives that take the dative:

amīcus (“friendly to”)
inimīcus (“hostile to”)
necessārius (“necessary to/for”)
nōtus (“known to”)
ignōtus (“unknown to”)
grātus (“pleasing to/grateful to”)
proximus (“near to/next to”)
cārus (“dear to”)

In this chapter, we see more examples:

*mātūrus: sōla in rēgiā erat filia, nōmine Lāvīnia, iam mātūra
virō. (ll.16–17)*

benignus: Minervae, deae Trōiānīs benignae. (ll.36–37)

gravis: nec mihi grave erit hoc onus. (ll.233–234)

*sacer: In mediō marī Aegaeō est īnsula Apollinī sacra, nōmine
Dēlos. (XXXVIII.18)*

Summary of Temporal Conjunctions

Conjunction	Meaning	Usual tense of the indicative ¹³
<i>antequam</i>	before	perfect, future perfect
<i>cum primum</i>	as soon as	perfect
<i>dum</i>	while	present
<i>postquam</i>	after	perfect
<i>priusquam</i>	before	perfect, future perfect
<i>simul atque</i>	as soon as	perfect
<i>ubi</i>	when	perfect
<i>ubi primum</i>	as soon as	perfect
<i>ut</i>	when	perfect
<i>ut primum</i>	as soon as	perfect

Alter...alter and *alius...alius*

You first met the idiom *alius...alius* in Cap. X, where you learned that the idiom means “some...others” as in this chapter, where *aliī...aliī...aliī* offers several sets of reactions to the same situation:

*Aliī eum ut dōnum Minervae, deae Trōiānīs benignae, sacrātum
intrā mūrōs dūcī et in arce locārī iubēbant, aliī dōnum Graecōrum
suspectum in mare praecipitandum et flammīs ūrendum esse
cēnsēbant, aliī interiōrem equī partem īnspicere volēbant.
(ll.36–40)*

13. *antequam*, *priusquam*, and *dum* also take the subjunctive (Cap. XLI: *dum*, and Cap. XLII: *antequam*, *priusquam*).

Alter, altera, alterum (Cap. XIV) (“one...the other”) can be used, as in this chapter, to mean “one another”:

*Ascanium puerum et patrem meum uxōremque alterum
in alterius sanguine trucidātōs.* (ll.210–211)

Aeneas does not want to see his son, father, and wife killed, *one in the blood of another*.¹⁴

Indirect Commands

You encountered *verba postulandī* (verbs that require or command) in Cap. XXVII:

*Ille graviter gemēns Aenēam monuit ‘ut deōs Penātēs urbis
Trōiae caperet atque ex urbe incēnsā fugeret’* (ll.96–98)

*Hōc auditō Aenēās iuvenēs audācēs, quōs pugnandī cupidōs
videt, paucīs verbīs hortātur ut sē arment et strictīs gladiīs
in media hostium arma moritūrī sē praecipitent.* (ll.115–118)

...ēique suāsīt ut celeriter domum ad suōs fugeret (ll.187–188)

*Lāocoōn, Neptunī sacerdotēs, ab summā arce dēcurrēns cīvēs suōs
monuit nē Danaīs cōnfiderent.* (ll.41–42)

These noun clauses, introduced by *ut* or *nē* and completed by the subjunctive (present or imperfect, as the clause represents incomplete action), are signaled by a word of asking, requiring, or demanding. The case depends on the verb used. It is helpful to memorize the constructions as phrases:

- Dative (intransitive verbs): *imperāre eī ut; persuādēre eī ut*
- Ablative + *ab* (the following verbs suggest “seek from”): *quaerere ab eō ut; petere ab eō ut; postulāre ab eō ut*
- Accusative: *rogāre eum ut; ōrāre eum ut; monēre eum ut; hortārī eum ut*

14. As you learned in Cap. XIV, *alter* refers to one of two options; although three are listed here, it translates “one in the blood of the other.”

V. POINTS OF STYLE

The Latin “sandwich”: Latin word order helps you to read phrases for meaning, often enclosing words that go together with a clause in the middle. This creates bookends or, in a different image, a kind of sandwich effect. A new thought does not start until the current one closes.

Alii eum ut (dōnum Minervae, deae Trōiānīs benignae, sacrātum) intrā mūrōs dūcī et in arce locārī iubēbant, aliī (dōnum Graecōrum suspectum) in mare praecipitandum et flammīs ūrendum esse cēnsēbant, aliī interiōrem equī partem īnspicere volēbant. (ll.36–40)

Everything between *dōnum* and *sacrātum* belongs to the same thought and forms the subject of *dūcī* and *locārī*; similarly, *Graecōrum* falls between *dōnum* and *suspectum* (the subject of *praecipitandum* and *ūrendum*) because it is part of the same thought.

parva duōrum filiōrum corpora complexī (l.59)

The object of *complexī* is *parva corpora*; putting *duōrum filiōrum* between the noun and the adjective facilitates the sense.

Ergō (parte mūrōrum dēstrūctā) (māchina illa hostibus armātīs plēna) magnō labōre in urbem trahitur fūnibus. (ll.72–73)

Cassandra, filia Priamī virgō (cui rēs futurās praedīcentī) nēmō umquam crēdēbat. (l.78)

The relative pronoun and present participle enclose the object of the participle and complete a thought (l.78).

XXXVIII: DVODEQVADRAGESIMVM: PIVS AENEAS (Vergil)¹

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE

Reflexive Pronouns in Indirect Questions

You learned about indirect questions in Cap. XXIX. In indirect questions, as in indirect commands, a reflexive pronoun refers to the subject of the main verb (the person asking):

Māter interrogat 'cūr sē vocet filia sua?' = Māter: "Cūr mē vocat filia mea?"

Aeneas...quaesivit 'quae perīcula sibi vitanda essent?' (ll.101–103) = Quae perīcula mihi vitanda sunt?

Dative of Separation/Disadvantage

The dative of reference when used with verbs that mean “take away” such as *adimere* (l.69), can mean “from”:

...clipeum, quem cuidam hostī adēmerat: “the shield, which he had taken away *from* a certain enemy”

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM

Verbs That Take an Ablative of Means

There are five deponent verbs that are completed by an ablative of means. In Caps. XXVII and XXX, you learned two of them, *ūtī* and *frui*:

Quī arat arātrō ūtitur; quī metit falce ūtitur; quī serit manū suā ūtitur. (XXVII.20–22)

Orontēs...vītā rūsticā nōn fruitur. (XXX.35)

In this chapter, you find two more deponent verbs with the ablative, *potīrī* (“take possession of”) and *vescī* (“feed on”):

Polydōrum obtruncāvit et aurō vī potītus est. (I.14)

Helenium, Priamī filium, rēgnō Ēpīrī potītum esse (I.76–77)

Helenium Chāoniā, parte Ēpīrī extrēmā, potītum esse (I.95)

Polyphēmus, quī carne et sanguine hominum miserōrum vescitur (I.181)

The fifth, *fungī* (“discharge,” “complete”), you will meet in Cap. XLIII (in a compound, *dēfungī*) and XLIV:

Et ille dēfungī proeliō festīnat (XLIII.106–107).

Māiōrem partem aetātis eius quā cīvīlibus officiīs fungantur.
(XLIV.152–153)

Summary:

<i>ūtor, ūtī, ūsum esse</i>	use, enjoy
<i>fruor, frui, fructum esse</i>	enjoy
<i>fungor, fungī, functum esse</i>	discharge, complete
<i>potior, potīrī, potītum esse</i>	take possession of
<i>vescor, vescī</i>	feed (on), eat

Praestāre

Like *iuuāre* (Cap. XXXVII), *praestāre* can also be used personally and impersonally:

Personally:

Officium meum praestābō sicut cēterī milītēs Rōmānī
(XXXIII.80–81): “I will fulfill my duty just as the rest of
the Roman soldiers.”

...ex tribus primīs generibus longē praestat...rēgium (LIV.217–
218): “Monarchy is by far the best of the three types.”

When used impersonally, *praestāre* means “it is preferable/better”:

Praestat tōtam Siciliam longō cursū circumīre quam semel
Scyllam infōrmem vidēre et saxa illa resonantia experīrī.
(II.118–120)

Verbal Nouns

Instead of *postquam sōl occidit*, you find *post sōlis occāsum* (II.132–133), and instead of *antequam sōl ortus est*, you find *ante sōlis ortum* (I.163). The sense is the same, but *occāsus*, *-ūs* and *ortus*, *-ūs* are 4th declension nouns formed from the supine stems of the verbs *occidere* and *orīrī*. These nouns look like the perfect passive participle; for example, *metus*, *-ūs* (fear) looks like the participle of *metuere* (to fear).

In this way, many verbal nouns are formed, e.g.:

cantus, *-ūs* < *canere*: “singing,” “music”
cursus, *-ūs* < *currere*: “running,” “race,” “course”
cāsus, *-ūs* < *cadere*: “fall,” “chance,” “accident”
exitus, *-ūs* < *exīre*: “exit,” “end”
rīsus, *-ūs* < *rīdēre*: “laughter,” “laugh”
ductus, *-ūs* < *dūcere*: “leadership,” “command”
gemitus, *-ūs* < *gemere*: “groan”
ululātus, *-ūs* < *ululāre*: “howling”
lūctus, *-ūs* < *lūgēre*: “grief, mourning”
flētus, *-ūs* < *flēre* (I.169): “weeping”
versus, *-ūs* < *vertere* (“line,” i.e., a “turn” in writing): “verse”

Greek Names in Latin

The Latin ending *-us* (2nd declension) corresponds to Greek *-os* (ος). Usually Greek names in *-os* have *-us* in Latin and follow the 2nd declension. The gender of the following Greek *places* is *feminine*, of the Greek men's *names*, *masculine*:

Olympus, -ī (f.)
Rhodus, -ī (f.)
Ēpīrus, -ī (f.)
Daedalus, -ī (m.)
Īcarus, -ī (m.)
Priamus, -ī (m.)

Sometimes *-os* is retained in Latin, as we have seen in the names of some Greek islands. When the *-os* is retained, the accusative also has the Greek ending *-on*. Note that the gender of these nouns is *feminine*:

Samos, -ī (f.)
Chios, -ī (f.)
Lesbos, -ī (f.)
Lēmnos, -ī (f.)
Tenedos, -ī (f.)
Dēlos, -ī (f.) (l.19)
Zacynthos, -ī (f.) (l.63)

Most Latinized Greek names of islands, towns, and countries ending in *-us* and *-os* are feminine:

Dēlō relictā (l.23)

Greek nouns in Latin may end in *-a* (1st declension), e.g.:

Eurōpa
Crēta
Ariadna
Helena

Or in -ē, e.g.:

Samē
Andromachē

Greek nouns in -ē have the following endings:

genitive in -ēs: *Samēs, Andromachēs*
accusative in -ēn: *Samēn, Andromachēn*
ablative in -ē: *Samē, Andromachē*

Prōnōmen -cumque

Adding -cumque to *quī, quae*, and *quod* makes the pronoun (or adjective) indefinite:

In quāscumque terrās mē abdūcite! (Il.170–171): “Take me away to whatever lands you want!...to any lands whatever!”

Quaecumque es, sis nōbīs fēlīx (l.104): “Whoever you are...”

Quicumque es, dīs caelestibus cārus esse vidēris. (l.143)

Prōnōmen -met

The ending -met can be added to personal pronouns for emphasis, e.g.:

Egomēt vīdī eum in mediō antrō iacentem. (l.182)

Dūrāte, et vōsmet rēbus servāte secundīs! (XXXIX.86)

et ipsa mēmēt super eōs iēcissem (XL.232)

Adjectives with the Genitive

Of adjectives that take the genitive, you know *plēnus* (Cap. VII), *cupidus* (Cap. XXV), and *studiōsus* (Cap. XXVI). Now you find the genitive with:

potēns (“powerful,” “having power over,” “having control of”):
dī maris et terrae tempestātumque potentēs (l.141)

ignārus (“ignorant of”): *ignārī viae* (l.156)

memor (“remembering,” “mindful of”): *memor veteris bellī*
(XXXIX.7)

Certiōrem facere/certiōr fierī

The idiom *certiōrem facere/certiōr fierī* means “to inform/to be informed”; some of the common constructions that complete *certiōrem facere aliquem* (*aliquem* = person informed) are:

absolutely (by itself):

mē certiōrem faciet: “he will inform me.”

dē + the ablative:

patrem suum dē rē certiōrem facit (l.43): “he informed his father about (*dē* + ablative) the matter.”

alicuius reī (genitive):

certiorem me sui consilii fēcit: “He informed me of his intention.” (Cicero, *Ad Atticum* 9.2)

accusative and infinitive:

Iūlia patrem suum certiōrem facit sē domī esse: “Julia informed her father that she was home.”

Remember (Cap. XXVI) that the passive of *facere* is *fieri*:

cum ā virō ipsō certior fierī cuperet classe in portū relictā ad urbem prōgrediēbātur. (l.79)

XXXIX: VNDEQVADRAGESIMVM: KARTHAGO (Vergil)¹

I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE

Relative Clauses with the Subjunctive (To Be Continued in Further Chapters)

There is a good reason why you learned relative clauses so early in your study of Latin (Cap. III): they are ubiquitous in Latin; in order to read Latin well, you might as well get used to them early! In relative clauses, the verb is normally in the indicative, but the subjunctive is used in relative clauses in several circumstances. For example, relative clause can further explain:

purpose (relative clauses of purpose)

reason (relative causal clauses)

result or tendency (relative clauses of result/tendency)

Relative Clauses of Purpose: *Quī* = *ut* is

You have learned that the meaning of *quī*, *quae*, and *quod* can carry more weight than just “who” or “that.” At the beginning of a sentence, *quī* acts as a connective and a demonstrative (*quī* = *et is*, Cap. XXV):

Quī postquam ad rēgīnam adductī sunt, Īlioneus, māximus eōrum, sīc ōrsus est (l.203) = “And after they...”

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

Quī can also mean *ut is* (“who” = “so that he”); when *quī* = *ut is*, the verb is in the subjunctive, just as it is in “regular” purpose clauses. In the following sentence, for example, *quī* does not describe Achates; it tells us Aeneas’s purpose in sending him ahead to the ships:

*Aenēās autem ad nāvēs praemittit Achātēn, quī Ascaniō haec
nūntiet eumque in urbem dūcat.* (ll.263–264)
= *ut Ascaniō haec nuntiet...dūcat*

Relative Causal Clauses: *Quī* = *cum is*

When a relative clause gives the reason (*quī* = *cum is*) behind the main clause, the verb is in the subjunctive.²

*...dīs caelestibus cārus esse vidēris, quī ad urbem Karthāginem
advēneris* (ll.144–145): “...you seem to be dear to the heavenly
gods, since you have come to the city of Carthage” (*quī...*
advēneris = *quoniam...advenisti*).

Descriptive Relative Clauses

The subjunctive is also found in a relative clause referring to the general character of the antecedent. Such clauses are also called Generic Clauses, Relative Clauses of Characteristic, and Relative Clauses of Tendency.³

This type of clause is especially common with indefinite or negative antecedents, as in Cap. XXXVI.363: *nīl nisi Rōmānum quod tueātur habet*.

Other triggers for generic descriptive clauses:

est quī/sunt quī:

Ille est quī hoc dicit: “That is the man who is saying this”
(states the fact: indicative).

Est quī hoc dīcat: “There is the kind of man who would
say this” (states a tendency: subjunctive).

nēmō est quī:

nēmō est quī hoc dīcat: “There is no one who would say
this.”

2. Compare the causal use of *cum*, which also takes the subjunctive (see Cap. XXXVII).

3. These are originally derived from the potential subjunctive, about which you will learn in Cap. XLI.

Notā bene:

Indirect questions can *look* like a relative clause with the subjunctive. In both examples below, the clauses represent questions:

*Posterō diē, ut primum lūx orta est, pius Aenēās exīre cōstituit
et nova loca explōrāre atque quaerere quī hominēs incolerent.*
(ll.92–94): “Aeneas decided...to find out what people lived
there” (“What people live here?”).

*Quaecumque es...doceās nōs quō sub caelō et quibus in ōrīs
versēmur.* (ll.104–105)

Ut as an Interrogative Adverb

Ut may be used as an interrogative adverb (= *quōmodo*, e.g., *ut valēs?* “how are you?”), chiefly in indirect questions explaining how something has happened—or just stating the fact that it has happened, e.g.:

*(Aenēās) nārrāvit quae ipse viderat: ut Graecī Trōiam īnsidiīs
cēpissent atque incendissent, ut ipse...fūgisset et...errāvisset*
(ll.311–314): “...how the Greeks had taken Troy by artifice and
set it afire, how he himself had fled...and wandered.”

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE

Wishes

The present subjunctive is used to express wishes for the future:

Vivat fortissimus quisque! Vivant omnēs fēminae amandae!
(XXXI.172–173): We would say, “Long live every very brave
man! Long live all lovable women!”

*Quisquis amat valeat! Pereat quī nescit amāre! Bis tantō pereat
quisquis amāre vetat!* (XXXI.196–197)

sīs nōbīs fēlīx (l.104): “May you be propitious to us!”

Wishes are often introduced by *ut* or *utinam*:

Utinam aliquandō liber patriam videam! (XXXII.157)

Utinam salvī in Graeciam perveniant! (XXXII.223)

Utinam nē pīrātae mē...occīdant! (XXXII.179–180)

The imperfect subjunctive is used to express an unfulfilled wish (one that didn't come true) in the present (as you learned in Cap. XXXIII):

Atque utinam rēx ipse...afforet Aenēās! (II.227–228)⁴

“And I wish that King Aeneas himself...were here” (but he isn't).

“Would that King Aeneas himself...were here.”

The pluperfect subjunctive indicates a wish that didn't come true in the past (Cap. XXXIII):

Utinam ego quoque in campīs Īliacīs animam prō patriā effūdissem! (II.36–37)

“I wish that I too had poured out my life for my fatherland on the fields of Troy” (but I didn't).”

“Would that I had,” etc.

In the next chapter (XL), you will see that *velle ut* can also express a wish (or act of will).

Accusative of Exclamation

You learned the accusative of exclamation in *FAMILIA RŌMĀNA*:

Exclāmat magister: “Ō, discipulōs improbōs...!” (XV.23)

Mē miseram! (XXXIV.74)

4. The imperfect subjunctive of *esse* (i.e.: *essem, essēe, esset*, etc.) has an alternate form, shown here in the compound *afforet* (= *ad* + *foret*: *forem, forme, foret*, etc.). *Fore* (without endings) = *futūrum esse* (Cap. XXXIII).

The accusative + infinitive can be used in the same way. The wounded and vindictive goddess Juno, who has seen Minerva sink the ships of Ajax because he raped Cassandra in her temple, exclaims:

“*Mēne rēgem Teucrōrum ab Italiā āvertere nōn posse?*” (ll.16–17):
 “Am I not able...?!”

Ablative of Respect

You are already familiar with the ablative of respect:

Nec modo pede, sed etiam capite aeger est. (XI.55)
Ille vir pessimus tē dignus nōn erat! (XIX.110)
Nympham suam fōrmā pulcherrimam (ll.25–26)
Dīdō rēgīna, fōrmā pulcherrima (l.193)

The ablative of respect points to the specific point in which the adjective is true. It can also be used with verbs:

(*Hannibal*) *praestitisse cēterōs imperātōrēs prudentiā* (XLIX.4–5):
 “Hannibal surpassed all other generals in intelligence.”

One important use of the ablative of respect is with the supine, familiar to you from Cap. XXII:

Nōmen meum nōn est facile dictū (XXII.43) = “My name
 is not easy to say.”
mīrābile dictū! (l.167) = “miraculous to tell about!”

Ablative of Comparison

You learned the ablative of comparison in Cap. XXIV:

Nunc pēs dexter māior est pede laevō. (XXIV.30)
dictō citius (l.56): “sooner than spoken”

The ablative of comparison can be used, as in the examples below, as a different way of giving a superlative:

Aenēā nēmō fortior fuit (“no one was braver than Aeneas”) =
Aenēās omnium fortissimus fuit.

*Aenēās, quō nēmō iūstior fuit nec...fortior = quī omnium
 iūstissimus fuit et fortissimus.* (ll.210–211)

Fāma quā nōn aliud malum ūllum vėlōcius est (XL.62–63)

III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM

Obviam īre

Obviam (*ob viam*) is an adverb (“toward”) frequently used with forms of *īre*:

Cui māter Venus in media silvā obviam iit (ll.96–97)

Ablative with *comitātus*

Comitārī is a deponent verb meaning “to accompany.” The participle *comitātus*, -a, -um can be used in a passive sense with the ablative to mean “accompanied by”:

ipse ūnō Achātē comitātus graditur (l.95)

magnā iuvenum catervā comitāta (l.194)

XL: QVADRAGESIMVM: INFELIX DIDO (Vergil)¹

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE

Impersonal Passive of Intransitive Verbs

Intransitive verbs, like *venīre*, *pugnāre*, and *tacēre*, as you know, are not completed by an accusative direct object. Therefore, they are not normally found in the passive voice, unless, as in the examples below, they are being used impersonally (Cap. XXXIII):

Cum complūrēs hōrās...pugnātum esset (XXXIII.119–121):

“When there had been fighting for many hours (literally: it had been fought).”

Hīc vērō ācerrimē pugnābātur (XXXVII.135): “But here there was very fierce fighting” (literally: “It was being very vehemently fought”).

Postquam in altōs montēs ventum est... (l.50)

The impersonal passive is also found in the gerundive, e.g., the passive periphrastic:

Tacendum est (XXXI.178)

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

Impersonal Verbs

You have learned (Cap. XXIII) the impersonal verb *pudēre*, one of a small group of verbs (see below for list) that are used impersonally and construed with the accusative and either the genitive or infinitive. In other words, we find:

3rd person singular verb + accusative of person concerned
(or “subject”) and either:
a genitive of person/thing affected (or “object”)
an infinitive that completes the thought

With the accusative of person and infinitive:

*Nōnne tē pudet hoc fēcisse? Profectō mē pudet hoc ā meō filiō
factum esse.* (XXIII.79–80)

Nōnne tē pudet pauperī magistrō mercēdem negāre?
(XXIII.138–139)

With the accusative of person and genitive of thing:

Puerum pudet factī suī. (XXIII.82)

Other verbs that follow the pattern of *pudet* are:

taedet (expressing disgust)

Taedet eam vitae (I.167) = *taedet eam vivere*: “she is tired
of life.”

*Fēminae Trōiānae, cum eās longī erroris taedēret, nāvēs
incendērunt.* (II.281–282)

paenitet (expressing regret)

nec tē paenitēbit nobīs auxilium tulisse (XXXIX.212–213):
“it will not cause you regret to have brought us aid.”

Numquam, rēgīna...mē paenitēbit tuī meminisse (tuī here
is the objective genitive with *meminisse*, not *paenitēbit*)
(II.123–124)

*Aenēas plērāsque fēminās, quamquam eās iam factī suī
paenitēbat, in Siciliā reliquit...* (II.283–286)

piget (expressing revulsion or displeasure)

Sī vōs piget cōnūbī inter vōs, in nōs vertite irās.
(XLII.155–156)

(see also example under *miseret*)

miseret (expressing pity)²

mea mater, tuī mē miseret; meī piget: “My mother, I pity
you, I am chagrined at myself” (Cicero, quoting the
poet Ennius in *de Divinatione*, Book I.66).

Although we don’t find the impersonal *miseret* in our book, we do find the verb *miserērī* (“have pity on”).³ Like *oblīvīscī* (Cap. XXV) and *meminisse* (Cap. XXXII), *miserērī* is followed by an objective genitive:

“*miserēre meī*” (I.112): “Take pity on me!”

Dubitāre (nōn dubitō quīn)

You are accustomed to seeing *dubitāre* used as both an intransitive and a transitive verb:

*lūlius, quī Mārcum discipulum pigerrimum esse scit, iam
dē verbīs eius dubitāre incipit. Aemilia vērō nihil dubitat,
sed omnia crēdit!* (XXI.129–131)

Hoc nōn dubitō (XXV.69)

And with indirect questions:

dubitō num haec fābula vēra sit (XXIX.116–117)
original question: *num haec fābula vēra est?*

Dubitō num ego tam diū famem ferre possim. (XXX.45–46)
valdē dubitō num pecūniā suā mē redimere velint (XXXII.98–99)
Ego quoque dubitāre coeperam num nūntius vērū dīxisset.
(XXXIII.112–113)

2. Only the active *misereor*, *miserērī*, occurs in *FAMILIA RŌMĀNA* or *RŌMA AETERNA*, not the impersonal *miseret*.

3. See above on the impersonal use of the active form *miseret*, which also takes the genitive.

In this chapter, you see a different construction, *nōn dubitō + quīn*⁴ and an indirect question:

Equidem nōn dubitō quīn deā nātus sit (1.8): “Indeed, I have no doubt that he is born of a goddess.”

Taken as separate clauses, you can see how the construction arose:

quīn deā nātus sit?: “why shouldn’t he be born of a goddess?”

equidem nōn dubitō: “I am certainly not in doubt.”

Summary:

- *Dubitō num* suggests *nōn crēdō*; *num* tells you that the original interrogative (see first example above) was “*num*,” expecting a “no” answer.
- *Dubitō an*, like *haud sciō an* and *nesciō an* (XXXII.84), suggests “I am inclined to think.” *An* is a disjunctive conjunction, meaning it states or implies two choices (“is the story true or false?”). If we are given only one option instead of two, that is probably the option the speaker thinks is the case, e.g.:
 - ▷ *dubitō num haec fābula vēra sit* = “This story isn’t true is it?”
“I doubt that it is true.”
 - ▷ *dubitō an haec fābula vēra sit* = “I am inclined to think that it is true.”
 - ▷ *Nōn dubitō quīn* is equivalent to *crēdō*.

Posse

The subjunctive can be used to signal possibility (as you will learn in Cap. XLI). But because *posse* (“to be able”) has the force of possibility in its meaning, we often find it in the indicative where we might expect the subjunctive. So, for example, in the present contrafactual condition in lines 10–12:

*Nisi certum mihi esset nulli virō coniugiō mē iungere, postquam
primus amor mē morte fefellit, huius ūniūs amōrī forsitan suc-
cumbere potui!*

4. For *quīn*, see Cap. XXII and below, under adverbs.

We might expect the imperfect subjunctive *possem* (instead of the perfect indicative *potuī*) to complete the contrafactual thought. Because *potuī* means “I could have,” it implies “I could have (but in fact I didn’t).”

We saw a similar example of this use of *posse* in the indicative instead of subjunctive in Cap. XXIV:

Mīror tē crūs nōn frēgisse. Facile os frangere potuistī. (ll.32–33)

While an English translation would run “I am amazed that you did not break your leg. You could have easily broken a bone,” the Latin actually says, “You were able to break a bone.” The implication is that, although there was the possibility of breaking a bone in the past, it didn’t happen.

Wishes

The RECĒNSIŌ at the end of Cap. XXXIX reviewed wishes. In this chapter, you see another way of expressing a wish: the subjunctive of *velle* with the subjunctive (with or without the conjunction *ut*):

Sed velim prius terra mē dēvoret vel Iuppiter mē fulmine percutiat, quam pudōrem solvō aut fidem fallō. (ll.15–17)

Personal Pronouns: Genitives

In Cap. XXIX, you learned that the personal pronouns show two forms for the genitive plural:

nostrum, vestrum: partitive
nostrī, vestrī: objective

Whether partitive (Cap. XII) or objective (Cap. XXV), we use the same form for the singular: *meī, tuī*. You have already seen that the genitive of personal pronouns is used for the partitive:

quis vestrum? “Who of you?”

...vīta omnium nostrum servāta est: “the life of all of us”
 (XXIX.37–38)

nēmō nostrum periit: “no one of us” (XXIX.39)

But the genitive of the personal pronouns is mostly used in the objective sense:

memoriam tuī: “memory of you” (l.119)

meī...imāgō: “an image (i.e., ghost) of me” (l.257)

Remember that instead of a possessive genitive, Latin uses the possessive adjectives *meus*, *tuus*, *noster*, *vester*.

Quīn

The adverb *quīn*:

With the 2nd person of the present indicative, *quīn* expresses a request or order (= *age*, *cur nōn?*):

Quīn aperiēs? = aperī! (XXII.29)

When followed by an imperative, *quīn* is emphatic (= *cur nōn?*), as when Dido bids herself:

Quīn morere, ut merita es. (l.197)

Quīn mē admittis? (XXII.32)

With *etiam*, *quīn* shows emphasis (“indeed”):

*Quīn etiam hībernō tempore classem ōrnās et per mediōs
Aquilōnēs nāvigāre properās!* (II.108–109)

*Quīn etiam clāmāre ausus est maestusque ‘Creūsam’
iterum iterumque vocāvit.* (XXXVII.264–265)

As a conjunction (meaning “but that, but”), *quīn* occurs after negative expressions of doubt and is followed by the subjunctive, e.g.:

Equidem nōn dubitō quīn deā nātus sit. (l.8, see above on *dubitāre*)

***Dum* + the Subjunctive**

Cap. XXXVII reviewed the syntax of the conjunction *dum* with the indicative, meaning “when” in the sense of “while.” The subjunctive, not the indicative, follows the conjunction *dum* when the clause indicates what is expected or intended. Here it means “when” in the sense of “until,” “long enough for”:

Quid moror? an dum frāter Pygmalion mea moenia dēstruat aut Iarbās, rēx Gaetūlōrum, captam mē abdūcat?: “What am I waiting for? Or (should I wait) until my brother Pygmalion destroys my walls or Iarbas, the king of the Gaetuli, leads me away captured?” (ll.115–117)

Moram brevem petit ‘dum fortūna sē dolēre doceat’: not “while” but “until” (l.162)

In these examples, *dum* looks toward an anticipated event rather than focusing on an event going on at the same time as another event (as it does with the indicative).

Dum with the subjunctive can also mean “as long as,” “provided that.” In this sense, *dum* is frequently accompanied by *modo*: *dummodo*. You will meet this construction in Cap. XLIV:

Tanaquil...oblītaque amōris patriae, dummodo virum honōrātum vidēret (XLIV.109–111): “Tanaquil...forgetful of her love of fatherland, provided that she might see her husband honored.”

III. DĒMONSTRATIŌ VERBŌRUM

Compounds of *stāre*

At the end of the chapter, you will notice that the principal parts for compounds do not always follow the same pattern of orthography. You will find:

(*obstō*) *obstāre*, *obstītisse*, *obstātum*
(*circumstō*) *circumstāre*, *circumstētisse*

The difference is in the preposition that compounds the verbs. Disyllabic prepositions, like *circum*, will have a third principal part in *-stetī* while monosyllabic prepositions, like *ob*, will have a third principal part in *-stitī*. These differences stem from natural Latin speech patterns.

IV. RECĒNSIŌ

Locative

Remember that for names of cities, towns, and small islands, as well as for *domus*, *rūs*, and *humus*, instead of *in* + the ablative, Latin uses the locative. A review of the locative endings:

Declension	Singular	Plural	Examples
1st	<i>ae</i>	<i>īs</i>	<i>Rōmae, Athēnīs</i>
2nd	<i>ī</i>	<i>īs</i>	<i>Tūsculī, humī</i>
3rd	<i>ī, ē</i>	<i>ibus</i>	<i>rūrī, Karthāgine, Gādibus</i>
4th			<i>domī</i>

Interrogative Pronouns in Exclamations

In Cap. VIII, you learned that *quam* used in exclamations means “how.” In Cap. XXVI and Cap. XXXVII, you saw that the interrogative pronouns and adjectives beginning with *qu-* may also be used in exclamations:

“*Ō, quot parvae insulae in mari ingenti sunt!*” (XXVI.91–92)

Ecce eī in somnō appāruit maestissimus Hector, fīlius Priamī mortuus—sed quālis erat, quantum mūtātus ab illō Hectore quī ex tot proeliīs victor redierat! (XXXVII.92–94)

This chapter offers more examples:

“*Quālis hospes tēctīs nostrīs successit, quam nōbilis, quam fortis!...quam ille fātīs iactātus est! Quae bella exhausta nārrābat!*” (II.7–10)

“*Quanta erit potentia Poenōrum, quanta glōria tua, soror, si cum duce Trōiānōrum tē coniūnxis!*” (II.29–30)

Quō tum dolōre Didō afficiēbātur...Quōs gemitūs dabat! (II.156–157)

V. POINTS OF STYLE

Understanding Participles

Remember you can adapt the way you interpret participles to fit the way your own language works:

Dum...rēx Gaetūlōrum, captam mē abdūcat:

Literally: “Until the king of the Gaetuli leads me, having been captured, away”

“Until the king of the Gaetuli leads me away as a captive”

“Until the king of the Gaetuli captures me and leads me away”

XLI: VNVM ET QVADRAGESIMVM: ORIGINES (Livy)¹

I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE

Potential Subjunctive (Negative: *nōn*)

Another important use of the independent subjunctive is the **potential subjunctive**. While the volitive subjunctive expresses will and the optative expresses desire, the potential subjunctive denotes possibility (what might or could happen).

Indefinite Potential Subjunctive

The potential subjunctive can be used to make a general statement not tied to any particular person. English generalizes by saying either “one” (e.g., “One needs to see the pyramids to appreciate how big they are”) or “you” (e.g., “you really had to be there” means “anyone who was not there wouldn’t get it”).

The generalizing potential in Latin is chiefly 2nd person singular and imperfect:

hīc ubi nunc fora sunt, lintrēs errāre vidērēs (l.207): “you/one might have seen...”

[*eōs*] *sēnsisse putārēs* (l.221): “you/one would have thought...”

The imperfect tense above suggests “you would have seen/thought had you been there”; that is, it refers to what might or could have been/happened.

Further uses of the potential subjunctive are introduced in Cap. XLVIII.

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE

Subjunctive in Conditions

You have already seen the subjunctive in contrafactual, or unreal, conditions (Cap. XXXIII), referring to the present (imperfect subjunctive) or the past (pluperfect subjunctive):

Si Mercurius essem ālāsque habērem...in Italiam volārem!
(XXXIII.73–75): “If I were Mercury and I had wings,
I would fly into Italy!”

*Si iam tum hoc intellēxissem, certē patrem audīvissem nec ad
bellum profectus essem* (XXXIII.181–182): “If I had at that
time understood this, I would certainly have listened to my
father and I would not have set out for war.”

The present subjunctive in a condition is potential and refers to a vague future, what might or could happen. Such conditions are variously labeled “future less vivid,” “ideal,” and, from their usual English translation, “should-would” conditions:

*Ō dea, si ā primā orīgine repetēns labōrēs nostrōs nārrem, ante
vesperum finem nōn faciam!* (XXXIX.133–135): “if I should
tell...I would not make an end.”

III. DĒMONSTRATIŌ VERBŌRUM

Cōstat (Impersonal)

In Cap. VIII, you learned one meaning of *cōstāre*: to cost:

Hic ānulus centum nummīs cōstat. (VIII.59)

The verb *cōstāre* can also be used impersonally; *cōstat* followed by accusative + infinitive states a fact: “it is certain,” “it is an established fact that...”:

cōstat Trōiā captā Aenēam domō profugum primō in Macedo-
niam vēnisse. (II.2–3)

Convenit (Impersonal)

You met *convenit* as “fit” in Cap. VIII:

Tanta gemma ad tam parvum ānulum nōn convenit (VIII.81–82): “Such a big jewel does not fit such a small ring” (“is not suitable for”)

...sciēbat et tempus quō ipse eōs sustulisset ad id tempus convenire (II.120–121)

Also note the impersonal use of *convenire* about an agreement between two people:

inter frātrēs convēnit ut (I.145): “it was agreed between the brothers,” “the brothers agreed that...”

That which is agreed upon may be the subject of *convenire*, e.g.:

Pāx ita convēnerat ut Etrūscīs Latīnīsque fluvius Albula, quem nunc Tiberim vocant, fīnis esset (II.66–68): “peace had been agreed on in such a way that...”

Both of the examples given show the construction as *convenit ut*, but, as is true of many Latin verbs, *convenit* will be found with more than one construction (e.g., accusative and infinitive).

lacrimāre puerō Rōmānō nōn convenit (XV.63–64): “it is not fitting/suitable, for a Roman boy to cry.”

4th Declension Verbal Nouns (Continued)

This chapter introduces more 4th declension verbal nouns (see Cap. XXXVIII):

discessus < *discēdere*

adventus < *advenire*

partus < *parere*

vāgītus < *vāgīre*

Some 4th declension verbal nouns are found only in the ablative (ablative of cause, Cap. XXXVII) with a genitive or possessive pronoun: for example, *iussū*:

iussū rēgis (l.119)

iussū meō

IV. RECĒNSIŌ: USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE

In Independent Clauses

You have already learned several uses for the independent subjunctive.

- Deliberative questions (Cap. XXIX); negative: *nōn*
Quid faciam? Quid spērem? (XXIX.22–23): “what should I do? What can I hope for?”
Quid facerem? = “What was I to do?”
- Negative commands (Cap. XXXII); negative: *nē*
Nē timueris! Nē timueritis!! (XXXII.215, 199 = *nōlī/nōlīte timēre*): “Don’t be afraid!”
- Volitive subjunctive:² act of will; negative: *nē*

Hortatory subjunctive (Cap. XXX)

Triclinium intrēmus! (XXX.86–87): “Let’s go into the dining room!”

Gaudeāmus atque amēmus (XXXI.173): “Let us rejoice and let us love”

Jussive subjunctive (Cap. XXXI)

Quisquis fēminās amat, pōculum tollat et bibat mēcum! (XXXI.176–177): “Whoever loves women, let him lift his cup and drink with me!”

- Optative subjunctive: wish/desire (Cap. XXXI); negative: *nē*

Vivat fortissimus quisque! Vivant omnēs fēminae amandae! (XXXI.172–173)

2. Jussive and hortatory are both *volitive* subjunctives; they express an act of will (hortatory in 1st person, jussive in 3rd).

Utinam salvī in Graeciam perveniant! (XXXII.223): “I hope they arrive safe into Greece!”/“May they arrive safe into Greece.”

Utinam nē pīrātae mē...occīdant! (XXXII.179–180): “May the pirates not kill me”/“I hope the pirates don’t kill me.”

Utinam ego Rōmae essem! (XXXIII.67): “I wish I were at Rome”/“Would that I were at Rome.”

Utinam patrem audīvissem! (XXXIII.66): “I wish I had listened to my father”/“Would that I had listened to my father.”

Rhetorical Questions

In Cap. XXIX, you learned about **deliberative** questions. **Rhetorical** questions are also usually in the subjunctive; the subjunctive here is potential and the assumed answer is “no” or “no one,” i.e., “Who could ____?” “No one.”

Quis enim rem tam veterem prō certō affirmet? (II.53–54): “For who could confirm such an old affair for certain?”

Quis crēdat puerīs nōn nocuisse feram? (I.228): “Who would believe that a wild beast did not harm the boys?”

Quis genus Aenēadum, quis Trōiae nesciat urbem? (XXXIX.219): “Who could not know the family of the Aeneadii, who could not know the city of Troy?”

Summary of Conditions

Conditions refer to the present, past, or future. When they refer to facts, they take the indicative; otherwise they take the subjunctive. The difference between the indicative and the subjunctive in a condition can be seen in the excerpt from Ovid’s *Fāstī* that concludes the book (II.213–216). When the slaves bring the newborns Romulus and Remus to the bank of the Tiber, one exclaims (II.397–400):

*Sī genus arguitur vultū, nisi fallit imāgō,
nescioquem in vōbīs suspīcor esse deum.*

*At sī quis vestrae deus esset orīginis auctor
in tam praecipitī tempore ferret opem.*

The first sentence is a statement of fact and uses the indicative: based on their appearance, the slave suspects the children have some sort of divine parentage. In the second (present contrafactual), the slave expresses doubt about the divinity of Romulus and Remus: if they were the children of a god, that god would bring help.

Conditions can be summarized as follows:

Type	Time	Mood and Tense of Conditional Clauses	Translation helps
General	present	present indicative <i>Sī hunc librum legit, multa cognoscit.</i>	“is...is” If she is reading this book, she is learning many things.
	past	imperfect or perfect indicative <i>a. Sī hunc librum lēgit, multa cognōvit.</i> <i>b. Sī hunc librum lēgēbat, multa cognoscēbat.</i>	“was...was” a. If she read this book, she learned many things. b. If she was reading this book, she was learning many things.
	future	future (protasis often future perfect) indicative <i>a. Sī hunc librum lēgerit, multa cognoscet.</i> <i>b. Sī hunc librum leget, multa cognoscet.</i>	“(present)...will” a. If she reads/will have read this book, she will learn many things. b. If she reads this book, she will learn many things.
Ideal	future	present subjunctive in both <i>Sī hunc librum legat, multa cognoscat.</i>	“should...would” If she should read this book, she would learn many things.
Contrary-to-fact	present	imperfect subjunctive <i>a. Sī hunc librum legeret, multa cognosceret.</i>	“were...would be” If she were reading this book, she would be learning many things.
	past	pluperfect subjunctive <i>Sī hunc librum lēgisset, multa cognōvisset.</i>	“had...would have” If she had read this book, she would have learned many things.

Conditions in *ōrātiō obliqua* (Indirect Discourse)

In Cap. XXXVI you learned that in indirect discourse the verb in a subordinate clause will be in the subjunctive according to sequence of tense. When conditions are reported, they generally follow this same rule:

- The apodosis (the “then” clause) is a main clause so it changes to subject accusative and verb infinitive.
- The protasis (the “if” clause) is a subordinate clause and the verb goes into the subjunctive.

Sequence of Tense

Main Verb	Subordinate Verb	
	incomplete action	completed action
present & future tense	present subjunctive	perfect subjunctive
past tense	imperfect subjunctive	pluperfect subjunctive

Examples

Let’s look at some examples, based on a line from the Roman poet Horace:³ *Rēx est sī rectē facit*: “he is a king if he behaves correctly.”

Indicative Conditions

Present: The tense of the verb in the protasis depends on the main verb:

Rēx est sī rectē facit → *Putō eum rēgem esse sī rectē faciat.*
Rēx est sī rectē facit → *Putābam eum rēgem esse sī rectē faceret.*

Past: The tense of the verb in the protasis depends on the main verb.

Rēx erat sī rectē fēcit → *Putō eum rēgem fuisse sī rectē fēcisset.*
Rēx erat sī rectē fēcit → *Putābam eum rēgem fuisse sī rectē fēcisset.*

Future:

- Future in both clauses

Rēx erit sī rectē faciet → *Putō eum rēgem fore/futūrum esse sī rectē faciat.*
Rēx erit sī rectē faciet → *Putābam eum rēgem fore/futūrum esse sī rectē faceret.*

3. Horace *Epistles* I.1.59–60: *Rēx eris sī rectē faciēs*.

- Protasis future perfect/apodosis future (Cap. XLI):

*Rēx erit sī rectē fēcerit → Putō eum rēgem fore/futūrum esse
sī rectē fēcerit.*

*Rēx erit sī rectē fēcerit → Putābam eum rēgem fore/futūrum
esse sī rectē fēcisset.*

Notā bene: A protasis in the future perfect represents something that will happen before the action in the apodosis (Cap. XXX); in *ōrātiō obliqua* it becomes:

- perfect subjunctive in primary sequence
- pluperfect subjunctive in secondary sequence

Subjunctive Conditions

Ideal (“should...would”): present subjunctive in both clauses becomes:

*Rēx sit sī rectē faciat → Putō eum rēgem fore/futūrum esse sī rectē
faciat*

*Rēx sit sī rectē faciat → Putābam eum rēgem fore/futūrum esse sī rectē
faceret*

Notā bene: In *ōrātiō obliqua*, future indicative and future ideal conditions look the same.

Contrafactual Present (“were...would be”): imperfect subjunctive in both clauses becomes:

*Rēx esset sī rectē faceret → Putō eum rēgem futūrum fuisse sī rectē
faceret*

*Rēx esset sī rectē faceret → Putābam eum rēgem futūrum fuisse
sī rectē faceret*

Contrafactual Past (“were...would be”): pluperfect subjunctive in both clauses becomes:

*Rēx fuisset sī rectē fēcisset → Putō eum rēgem futūrum fuisse sī
rectē fēcisset*

*Rēx fuisset sī rectē fēcisset → Putābam eum rēgem futūrum fuisse
sī rectē fēcisset*

Notā bene:

- The form *futūrum fuisse* is used only here: in the apodoses of contrafactual conditions in *ōrātiō obliqua*.
- The rules for sequence of tense are violated in these conditions:
 - ▷ Present contrafactual keeps imperfect subjunctive in the protasis regardless of leading verb.
 - ▷ Past contrafactual keeps pluperfect subjunctive in the protasis regardless of leading verb.
- These oddities make recognizing a reported contrafactual condition quite easy.

Iterative Subjunctive: in general conditions, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive can be found in the protasis of a condition when the action is habitual or recurrent; the apodosis is indicative, e.g., Cap. LI.199–201:

Quem militem extrā ordinem dēprehendit, sī Rōmānus esset, vitibus, sī extrāneus (sc. esset), virgīs cecidit.

V. POINTS OF STYLE

Variātiō (Variation of Expression)

The 3rd person plural can be used in a general sense, as *vocant* here:

...fluviū Albula, quem nunc Tiberim vocant, finis esset (ll.66–68):
“...the river Albula, which they now call the Tiber”

“They (i.e., people) call” (cf. *ut aiunt*, XXIV.61). We do the same in English, e.g., “they say that...” when we don’t have anyone in particular in mind. The following are different ways of saying the same thing in Latin:

- *Priōrī Remō auspiciū vēnisse dīcitur* (l.147): “The bird sign is said to have come to Remus first” = *Priōrī Remō auspiciū vēnisse dicunt*: “They say that the bird sign came to Remus first.”
- *quem nunc Tiberim vocant* = *qui nunc Tiberis vocātur* (l.67)
- *Ea...mītis fuisse dīcitur* = *eam mītem fuisse nārrant* (ll.100–101)
- *Aenēam Trōiā vēnisse dīcitur/nārrātur* = *Aenēam Trōiā vēnisse dīcunt/nārrant*

XLII: ALTERVM ET QVADRAGESIMVM: BELLVM ET PAX (Livy)¹

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE

Implied Indirect Discourse/Subjunctive of Reported Reason

Indirect discourse (*ōrātiō obliqua*) does not always have a clear “signal” telling readers that a sentence is reporting another’s words or thoughts. We have already seen many examples of extended indirect discourse and examples where the reader needs to pay attention to the leading verb.

The subjunctive is frequently employed in causal clauses that would otherwise take the indicative to indicate that the writer offers someone else’s reason. In other words, the causal clause becomes a virtual indirect statement:

*Īdem nefāstōs diēs fāstōsque fēcit, quia aliquandō nihil cum
populō agī ūtile futūrum esset.* (ll.323–324)

Livy is reporting Numa’s reason for dividing the days into *fāstī* and *nefāstī*. Were Livy giving his *own* reason, he would have used the indicative (*futūrum est* or simply *erit*).

Descriptive Relative Clauses (Continued from Cap. XXXIX)

When relative clauses state facts about the antecedent, they are followed by the indicative. But as we have seen with both purpose and result clauses (Cap. XXXIX), *quī* can sometimes be the equivalent of *ut is*. Such clauses describe something about the nature of the antecedent, and, like result clauses, have their origin in the potential subjunctive. Descriptive relative clauses, like result clauses, do not describe a fact, but rather a tendency, quality, or design.

The best way to understand these clauses is to look at examples.

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

In some relative clauses, the subjunctive indicates result or quality, as in:

sōlī centum cīvēs nōbilēs erant quī senātōrēs creārī possent (l.17,
virtually the same as *tam nōbilēs...ut...possent*)

*Invēnī ratiōnem, Anna, quae mihi reddat eum aut amōre eius
mē solvat* (XL.175–177)

not “a way of thinking that is either returning Aeneas
to me or freeing me from love of him”

but “a way of thinking that could return...or free”
(*ratiōnem ut*)

After the adjective *dignus*, such a relative clause is common, as it describes the natural consequence of being worthy (or unworthy: *indignus*) (for natural consequence, see RECĒNSIŌ below):

*sī rēgem dignum quī secundus ab Rōmulō numerētur creāveritis,
auctōrēs fient* (ll.276–278): “worthy to be numbered second after
Romulus”

As you saw in Cap. XXXIX, descriptive relative clauses are especially common after indefinite antecedents:

*Fuisse crēdō tum quoque aliquōs quī ‘rēgem ā patribus
interēptum esse’ clam arguerent.* (ll.241–242)

***Priusquam/antequam* with Subjunctive**

You have already learned the temporal conjunctions *postquam*, *antequam*, and *priusquam* with the present or future perfect indicative (Cap. XXXI) and with the perfect indicative (Cap. XXXVII) to express what actually will happen or has happened before the action of the main clause. The conjunctions *priusquam* and *antequam* may be followed by the subjunctive to indicate what is anticipated; there is an element of purpose to the clause.

Prius/ante quam with the

Indicative →

- present/future perfect: what will happen before the action of the main verb
- perfect: what actually *did* happen before the action of the main verb

Subjunctive →

- present (primary sequence) or imperfect (secondary sequence) subjunctive: what *could* happen before the expected or anticipated action of the main verb occurs

Examples:

Fidēnātēs...priusquam (urbs) tam valida esset quam futūra esse vidēbātur, properant bellum facere (ll.184–186): “The people of Fidenae, before the city could become as strong as it seemed it would be, hasten to make war.”

Note here, as usual, the subjunctive is in secondary sequence because the present *properant* is historical (Cap. XXXVII).

Fidēnātēs, prius paene quam Rōmulus equitēsque quī cum eō erant circumagerent equōs, terga vertērunt atque oppidum repetēbant (ll.201–203): “The people of Fidenae, almost before Romulus and the cavalry who were with him could turn their horses around, turned their backs and were returning to the town.”

priusquam forēs portārum oppōnerentur, Rōmānī velut ūnō agmine in oppidum irrūpērunt. (ll.205–206)

Prius igitur quam alter—nec procul aberat—cōsequi posset, et alterum Cūriātium cōficit. (XLIII.107–109)

Priusquam inde dīgrederentur, Tullus Mettiō imperat... (XLIII.123)

III. DĒMONSTRATIŌ VERBŌRUM

Indefinite Pronouns

In addition to the indefinite pronouns *quicumque*, *quaecumque*, and *quodcumque*, “whoever, whatever” (Cap. XXXVIII), the pronouns *quī- quae- quod/ quid* can combine with other words as well to form other indefinite pronouns. These pronouns are variations on a theme and mean essentially the same thing: “whoever/whatever you please/want, anyone/anything”:

quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet/quidlibet = *quī- quae- quod/ quid* + *libet*

libet: “it is pleasing”

quīvīs, quāevīs, quodvīs/quidvīs = *quī-quae-quod/quid* + *vīs*

vīs: “you will/want”

As with the *-cumque* pronouns, *quicumque*, *quaecumque*, and *quodcumque*, only the *quī, quae, quod/quid* declines:

quīlibet homō (l.13): “any person you will” = “anyone at all”

cuilibet finitimārum civitātum bellō par (ll.21–22): “equal in war to whichever of the neighboring states.”

Cum...tum

The conjunctions *cum...tum* join two items, underscoring the second:

Cum vestem purpuream induit, tum lictōrēs duodecim sūmpsit, quī fascēs et secūrēs gerentēs rēgī anteīrent. (ll.6–8)

Movet rēs cum multitūdinem, tum ducēs. (l.160)

IV: RECĒNSIŌ

Result vs. Purpose

- *Purpose* clauses are also called “final” clauses because the clause indicates the *end* (*finis*) in sight for the action in the main clause. Purpose clauses are related to the volitive subjunctive (e.g., jussive and hortatory).
- *Result* clauses are also called “consecutive” clauses because the clause indicates what *follows* (*cōnsequī*) either actually or naturally from the action in the main clause. Result clauses come originally from the potential subjunctive (Cap. XLI); the clause states the natural potential of the main clause.

Notice that in purpose and result clauses the sequence is incomplete:

- A present/future tense main verb is followed by a present subjunctive.
- A past tense main verb is followed by an imperfect subjunctive.

Purpose clauses are negated by *nē*; result by *ut nōn*:

	Negative Purpose	Negative Result
that...not	<i>nē</i>	<i>ut...nōn</i>
that...no one	<i>nē quis</i>	<i>ut...nēmo</i>
that...nothing	<i>nē quid</i>	<i>ut...nihil</i>
that...never	<i>nē umquam</i>	<i>ut...numquam</i>

Words that signal result clauses:

<i>tantus, -a, -um</i>	so great	adjective of magnitude, quantity
<i>tālis, tāle</i>	of such a sort	adjective of quality
<i>eius modī</i>	of such a sort	descriptive genitive
<i>tot</i>	so many	adjective of quantity
<i>sīc</i>	in this way	adverb
<i>ita</i>	so, in such a way	adverb
<i>adeō</i>	so far, to such an extent	adverb
<i>tam</i>	so	adverb: only w/adjs. & advs.

A Note on Sequence of Tense in Result Clauses

We tend to think of a result clause as showing something that did happen as a result of the activity in the main clause—e.g., “I studied so hard that I got an A,” where “I got an A” is what actually happened. Latin often sees the relationship differently—e.g., “I studied so hard that the natural result was an A.” That is, the stress is not on the achievement of the result, but that the result was a natural potential or outgrowth of the activity of the verb or adverb. The leading verb is the *cause* of the *result*. Hence, the sequence in result clauses is usually the same as purpose clauses: uncompleted action.

Look at each of the following examples from this chapter:

Ab illō viribus datīs, tantum valuit urbs Rōma ut in quadrāgintā deinde annōs tūtā pācem habēret (ll.223–224): “The city grew so strong (*tantum valuit*) that the natural consequence was peace.”

Cum hoc sēnsissent patrēs, populō concēdendum esse cēnsuērunt—ita tamen ut nōn plūs iūris darent quam retinērent (ll.269–271): “The senators voted to concede in such a way (*ita...ut*) that they could retain power.”

*Iam rēs Rōmāna adeō erat valida ut cuilibet fīnitimārum
cīvitātum bellō pār esset* (ll.21–22): “Rome was so strong
(adeō valida) that the inevitable outcome was its equality
in war.”

The perfect subjunctive can be used in result clauses when the speaker wishes to stress the result as something completed, as a fact, e.g. Cap. LI. 7881:

*Masinissa...adeō...in senectā viguit ut post sextum and
ocōgēsimum annum filium genuerit*: “Masinissa was so vigorous
in his old age that he fathered a son after his 86th year.”

Summary of Expressions of Purpose

Latin expresses purpose in a variety of ways:

1. an *ut/nē*-clause with the subjunctive, e.g.,

- *Ut hominēs agrestēs novum rēgem verērentur, ipse sē augustiōrem fēcit
īsignibus imperiī.* (ll.4–5)
- *nē vāna urbis magnitūdō esset...* (l.10)
- *ut arx potius vī quam dolō capta esse vidērētur* (ll.106–107)
- *ne quis impūne patriam suam prōderet* (l.108)
- *Ut Sabīnīs tamen aliquid darētur, cīvēs Rōmānī ‘Quirītēs’ ā Curibus
appellātī sunt.* (l.164)
- *Vēientēs...ēgressī sunt, ut potius aciē certārent quam inclūsī dē tēctīs
moenibusque dīmicārent.* (ll.213–215)
- *Nē huic fāmae plēbs crēderet, Proculus Iūlius, senātor nōbilissimus,
in contiōnem prōdiit.* (ll.242–243)
- *...putābat itūrōsque ipsōs ad bella, nē rēge absente sacra neglegerentur*
(ll.328–329)
- *hīs, ut assidue templī sacerdōtēs essent, stipendium dē pūblicō statuit*
(ll.332–333)
- *Cētera quoque omnia pūblica prīvātaque sacra pontificī mandāvit,
ut esset quem plēbs cōnsuleret, nē ritus neglegerentur.* (ll.340–342)

2. a relative clause with subjunctive (where *quī* = *ut* is, Cap. XXXIX), e.g.,

- *Rōmulus ex cōnsiliō patrum lēgātōs ad vicinās gentēs mīsit, quī societātem cōnūbiumque nōvō populō peterent.* (ll.24–26)
- *līctōrēs duodecim sūmpsit, quī fāscēs et secūrēs gerentēs rēgī anteīrent.* (ll.6–7)
- *Rōmulus ex cōnsiliō patrum lēgātōs ad vicinās gentēs mīsit, quī societātem cōnūbiumque nōvō populō peterent.* (ll.24–26)
- *Iānum ad infimum Argilētum fēcit, quī apertus bellum, clausus pācem esse indicāret.* (ll.306–307)

3. *Quō* + comparative + subjunctive: relative purpose clause (introduced in Cap. XLIX)

4. the supine in *-um* (accusative) (Caps. XXII, XXXVI), e.g.,

- *Huius filia virgō forte aquam petītum extrā moenia ierat.* (ll.103–104)
- *Eā clāde coactī Vēientēs pācem petītum legātōs Rōmam mittunt.* (ll.219–220)

5. *ad* + gerund/gerundive (Caps. XXVI, XXXVI), e.g.,

- *Hodiē plūs temporis ad nārrandum nōn habeō.* (XXVI.10–11)
- *Haud longum tempus nōbīs reliquum est ad vīvendum.* (XXVI.28)
- *Ūna via nōbīs patet ad fugiendum.* (XXVI.36)
- *signō datō iuventūs Rōmāna ad rapiendās virginēs* (ll.41–42)
- *Inde ad foedus faciendum dūcēs prōdeunt.* (l.161)
- *ad turbendam omnium pācem* (l.346)
- *ad arcendam vim* (XLI.8)

6. *causā, grātiā* + a preceding genitive of gerund/gerundive (Cap. XXVI), e.g.:

- *lēgātōs mīsit pācis petendae causā/grātiā*
- *lēgātōs mīsit pācem petendī causā/grātiā*

7. future participle after verbs of motion:

- *Ille in Italiam trāiēcit bellum cīvile gestūrus adversus Norbānum et Scīpiōnem cōsulēs* (LIII.114–116)

V. POINTS OF STYLE

Perfect Tense 3rd Person Plural

Instead of the ending *-ērunt* in the past perfect (3rd pers. plur.), you sometimes find the older form *-ēre*, both in poetry and in prose. Book II of the *Aeneid* begins *Conticuēre omnes...* (XXXIX.304). Livy is fond of this form, as the many examples from this chapter show:

convēnēre = convēnērunt (l.34)
necāvēre = necāvērunt (l.106)
tenuēre = tenuērunt (l.114)
subiēre = subiērunt (l.118)
restitēre = restitērunt (l.135)
ēripuēre = ēripuērunt (l.205)
rediēre = rediērunt (l.210)
audīvēre = audīvērunt (l.213)

The alternate form can be very useful for writing verse, as these two lines in the meter of the elegiac couplet from Ovid show:

sic illae timūērē | vīrōs sīnē lēgē rūēntēs = illae timuērunt (l.364,
 a hexameter line)
(raptae) in tērrām pōsitō || prōcūbūērē gēnū = prōcubuērunt
 (l.385, a pentameter line)

-um = -ōrum

Other archaic forms are *-um* for *-ōrum* in *deum*:

pater deum hominumque = pater deōrum hominumque (l.128)
*X mīlia sēstertium = mīlia sēstertiōrum*²

2. Cf. l.32: *X mīlia sēstertium = X mīlia sēstertiōrum*: 10 thousand sesterces. With *mīlia* you will regularly find *sēstertium*, not *sēstertiōrum*.

Perfect Participles

In Ablative Absolute

The perfect participle is a passive form and states what has or had been done (in English rendered by a clause beginning “after...” or “when...” or “because”). Livy often uses an ablative absolute with the perfect participle, and there are thirty examples of ablative absolutes in this chapter alone, e.g.:

rēbus divīnīs rīte factīs (1.2)
vocātāque ad concilium multitudine (1.2)
civitāte ita auctā (1.15)
plērisque rogitantibus (1.29)
turbātō per metum lūdicrō (1.43)
duce hostium occīsō (11.71–72)

Of Deponent Verbs

Livy also uses the nominative of the perfect participle of deponent verbs (passive form with active meaning) agreeing with the subject in order to tell what someone has or had done (or does/did), e.g.:

(Rōmulus) ēgressus (1.192): “Romulus, having gone out”
ipse cum parte māiōre atque omnī equitātū profectus (11.193–194): “he himself, having set out with the larger part [of the soldiers] and all the cavalry”
subitō exortī Rōmānī (1.199): “the Romans, having suddenly sprung up”
persecūtus (1.217): “having pursued” or “after pursuing”
locūtus (1.251): “after he said [these things]”
ausī (1.287): “daring”
deōs...precātus (1.295): “having invoked the gods,” “after he invoked the gods”
rēgnō potītus (1.303): “having gained mastery of the kingdom”
ratus (1.305): perfect participle of *rērī*, “thinking” or “as he thought”

Uti/utī for ut

Uti/utī instead of *ut* is found mostly in elevated style, as in the augur's prayer:

*Iuppiter pater, ... utī tū signa nōbīs certa dēclārēs inter eōs finēs
quōs fēcī. (Il.298–301)*

*...exercitus inclāmat Cūriātīis utī opem ferant frātrī
(XLIII.103–104)*

*...Tullus Mettiō imperat utī iuventūtem in armīs habeat
(XLIII.123–124)*

XLIII: QVADRAGESIMVM TERTIVM: ROMA ET ALBA (Livy)¹

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE:

Posse, oportere, debere

You have met the past tense of *posse* with a present infinitive:

Miror te crus non fregisse. Facile os frangere potuisti (XXIV.32–33): “I’m amazed you did not break your leg. You could easily have broken a bone.”

Notice that Latin uses the past tense of *posse* with a present infinitive, the marker that shows the action of the verb as ongoing and incomplete (see Cap. XL). This is the usual construction with verbs that show what is fitting, necessary, or possible. We find the same construction at the end of this chapter:

Tamen ā frātre indemnātam necārī nōn oportuit. (II.353–354)

For such verbs in contrafactual conditions, see Cap. XLVI.

Fore/forem (esse)

The verb *esse* has an alternate imperfect subjunctive:

forem = *essem*
forēs = *essēs*
foret = *esset*
forent = *essent*

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

No alternate form is found for *essēmus* and *essētis*.

This form looks a good deal like the alternate future active infinitive, *fore*, which you met in Cap. XXXIII:

aciēs spectāculō fore Etrūscīs (ll.59–60)
‘ibi imperium fore unde victōria fuerit’ (ll.70–71)

Conditions in *Ōrātiō obliqua*

In Cap. XXXVI you learned that in indirect discourse the verb in a subordinate clause will be in the subjunctive according to sequence of tense. When conditions are reported, they generally follow this same rule:

- The apodosis (the “then” clause) is a main clause so it changes to subject accusative and verb infinitive.
- The protasis (the “if” clause) is a subordinate clause and the verb goes into the subjunctive.

Sequence of Tense

Main Verb	Subordinate Verb	
present & future tense	incomplete action	completed action
past tense	present subjunctive	perfect subjunctive
	imperfect subjunctive	pluperfect subjunctive

Here we consider the three examples in *ōrātiō obliqua* from this chapter:

- “Mixed condition” in *ōrātiō obliqua*: protasis future, apodosis present-perfect, primary sequence (ll.22–25):

Illī primum sē pūrgāre cōnantur: ‘sē invitōs aliquid quod displiceat Tullō dictūrōs esse: rēs repetītum sē vēnisse; nisi reddantur, bellum indicere iussōs esse.’

Direct statement: *Invitī aliquid quod displicet Tullō dīcēmus: rēs repetītum vēnimus; nisi reddentur, bellum indicere iussī sumus.*

- ▷ *Notā bene*: the future of the protasis comes from context: a present (*redduntur*) would, in *ōrātiō obliqua*, also go into the present subjunctive.

- Future condition in *ōrātiō obliqua*, historical present, with the indirect command (*imperat uti...habeat*) in primary sequence to continue the vividness of the historical present, *foret* and *dīgrederentur* in secondary sequence (ll.123–125):

Priusquam inde dīgrederentur, Tullus Mettiō imperat uti iuventūtem in armīs habeat: 'sē eōrum operā ūsūrum, sī bellum cum Vēientibus foret.'

Direct statement: *eōrum operā ūtar, sī bellum cum Vēientibus erit.*

- Protasis of a future condition in *ōrātiō obliqua*, secondary sequence, with the apodosis implied (ll.328–331):

Iam hominēs eum statum rērum quī sub Numā rēge fuerat dēsīderantēs, ūnam opem aegrīs corporibus relictam esse crēdēbant: sī veniam ā dīs impetrāvissent.

Direct statement: *sī veniam ā dīs impetrāverimus [opem aegrīs corporibus habēbimus: i.e., the apodosis must be supplied from “they believed that one resource was left for their sick bodies”].*

Ablative of Degree of Difference

The ablatives *multō* and *paulō* can be used before a comparative to indicate the degree of difference (Cap. XVI), for example, *multō melior*: “much better” (“better by much”).

We have already seen *tantus* and *quantus* used alone or as correlatives (Cap. VIII); they are also used as ablatives of degree of difference either alone (*tantō melior*: “so much the better”), or combined with *quantō*:

quantō longior, tantō melior (“the longer the better”)

Other correlative ablatives of degree of difference:

eō and *quō*

quō propior es, eō magis scīs (ll.57–58): “to the degree that you are closer, the better you know”

Other examples:

eō māiōre cum gaudiō quod prope metum rēs fuerat (l.117):
 “with so much the greater joy because the situation had
 been close to fear”

eo magis (XLIV.143)

Pronoun Change from Direct to Indirect Discourse

When a statement is reported, the perspective changes, just as it does in English.

Julia: “I’d like to read this book now” = *mihi placet hunc librum nunc legere*.

“She said she would like to read that book at that time (then)” =
dixit sibi placere illum librum eō tempore (tunc) legere.

Note the shift of pronouns from direct to indirect statement, and vice versa:

Direct Statement:

“Dī patriī, patria ac parentēs omnēsque cīvēs vestra arma nunc, vestrās manūs intuentur.”

Indirect Statement: *vestra, vestrās* changes to *illōrum* (ll.26–28)

‘deōs patriōs, patriam ac parentēs omnēsque cīvēs illōrum tunc arma, illōrum intuērī manūs!’ (ll.78–80)

Indirect Statement (ll.124–125)

‘sē eōrum operā ūsūrum, sī bellum cum Vēientibus foret’

Direct Statement:

‘vestrā operā ūtar, sī bellum cum cum Vēientibus erit’

III. DĒMONSTRATIŌ VERBŌRUM

Superlatives in *-limus, -a, -um*

In addition to *facilis* and *difficilis* there are four other adjectives that form superlatives in *-limus, -a, -um*:

cīvilī bellō simillimum (l.30)

<i>facilis, -e</i>	<i>facilior, facilius</i>	<i>facillimus, -a, -um</i>	easy
<i>difficilis, -e</i>	<i>difficilior, difficilius</i>	<i>difficillimus, -a, -um</i>	difficult
<i>similis, -e</i>	<i>similior, similius</i>	<i>simillimus, -a, -um</i>	similar, like (+ dat.)
<i>dissimilis, -e</i>	<i>dissimilio, dissimilius</i>	<i>dissimillimus, -a, -um</i>	dissimilar, unlike (+ dat.)
<i>gracilis, -e</i>	<i>gracilior, gracilius</i>	<i>gracillimus, -a, -um</i>	slender
<i>humilis, -e</i>	<i>humilior, humilius</i>	<i>humillimus, -a, -um</i>	low, lowly (<i>humus</i>)

Uter, uterque

You learned the pronouns *uter* and *uterque* in Cap. XIV. Like *neuter* and *alter*, *uter* and *uterque* are used about two things or people taken separately. Normally these pronouns are singular, e.g.:

uter...populus (ll.26–27)

utrīusque populī (l.63)

When plural forms occur, they refer to two groups of persons or things, “both parties.” Such plurals are quite common in referring to two contending peoples, e.g.:

utrī utrīs imperent (l.64)

cum utrīque suōs adhortārentur (l.78)

utrīque suōs mortuōs sepeliunt (l.118)

cum bellum utrīque summā ope parārent (l.304)

Utrimque

From *uterque* is formed the adverb *utrimque* (“from/on both sides”). This adverb occurs frequently when fighting is described, e.g.:

utrimque *lēgātī...missī sunt* (ll.13–14): “envoys were sent from both sides.”

bellum utrimque omnibus vīribus parābatur (ll.29–30): “war was being prepared on both sides with all their force.”

instrūctī utrimque stābant (l.51)

cōnsēderant utrimque prō castrīs duo exercitūs (ll.81–82)

Velut

Velut (Cap. XXVIII) means “as, as if” and is here used in two different contexts:

Modifying a single word:

īnfēstisque armīs velut aciēs ternī iuvenēs (ll.84–85): “the young men like (as) a battle line”

pulvisque velut nūbe omnia implēverat (ll.278–279): “dust, as if by a cloud, had filled everything”

Velut working in similes: *velut captōs relinquerent deōs* (l.285)

Modifying an ablative absolute:

velut dīs quoque simul cum patriā relictīs (l.316)

Rēs repetere

Rēs repetere: to seek reparations or compensation:

Utrimque lēgātī eōdem ferē tempore ad rēs repetendās missī sunt. (ll.13–14)

Iniūriae et rēs nōn redditae, quae ex foedere repetitae sunt. (ll.52–54)

IV. POINTS OF STYLE

Variātiō

For the sake of variation, Latin writers sometimes replace an adjective-noun combination with an abstract noun combined with a genitive. Horatius Senior first refers to *tam dēfōrme spectāculum* (adjective/noun, l.170) and later to *tantā foeditāte supplicīi* (noun + noun, l.178); the description of Mettius's horrifying punishment ends: *āvertēre omnēs ab tantā foeditāte spectāculī oculōs* (noun + noun, l.265).

XLIV: QVADRAGESIMVM QVARTVM: REGES ET REGINAE (Livy)¹

I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE

Historical Infinitive

In vivid narration, the present indicative is often substituted for the past (Cap. XXXVII). The present infinitive can be employed in the same way, and this historical infinitive also has the force of the indicative (imperfect 3rd person). The subject of the historical infinitive is nominative, not accusative. Livy uses the historical infinitive frequently:

(Tullia) *alterum Tarquinium admīrārī, 'eum virum esse' dīcere 'ac rēgiō sanguine ortum'; spernere sorōrem quod virō audācī nūpta ipsa audāciā carēret; nūllīs verbōrum contumēliīs parcere.* (ll.374–377)

ab scelere ad aliud scelus spectāre mulier. Nec nocte nec interdiū virum conquiēscere patī (ll.383–385)

*Hōc muliebrī furōre īnstīctus Tarquinius circumīre et conci-
liāre sibi patrēs. Admonēre Tarquinii Priscī beneficiū ac prō
eō grātiā repetere. Allicere dōnīs iuvenēs. Cum ingentia
pollicendō, tum rēgis crīmīnibus, omnibus locīs crēscere.*
(ll.402–406)

Notā bene: Because the historical infinitive has the force of an *imperfect* indicative, subordinate clauses follow secondary, not primary sequence. In the first example above, note:

*...admīrārī...dīcere...spernere sorōrem quod virō audācī nūpta
ipsa audāciā carēret*

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

Historical infinitives (nominative + infinitive: vivid narration) often shift into indirect speech (accusative + infinitive: reported speech). In your text, such shifts are marked by single quotes ('). **Such punctuation is not usual in Latin texts; you'll need to pay attention to the shift.** Study the passage below (383–389):

Iam enim ab scelere ad aliud scelus spectāre mulier. Nec nocte nec interdiū virum conquiēscere patī, nē grātuīta praeterita parricīdia essent: 'nōn sibi dēfuisse maritum cum quō tacita servīret—dēfuisse virum quī sē rēgnō dignum esse putāret, quī meminisset sē esse Prīscī Tarquinii filium, quī habēre quam spērāre rēgnum māllet!'

- *Iam enim ab scelere ad aliud scelus spectāre mulier:*
 - ▷ historical narration: nominative subject + infinitive verb
 - ▷ = *Iam enim ab scelere ad aliud scelus spectābat mulier.*
- *Nec nocte nec interdiū virum conquiēscere patī, nē grātuīta praeterita parricīdia essent:*
 - ▷ historical narration: subject left unstated, followed by a negative purpose clause in secondary sequence (because the historical infinitive represents the imperfect)
 - ▷ = *Nec nocte nec interdiū virum conquiēscere patiebātur, nē grātuīta praeterita parricīdia essent.*
- *'nōn sibi dēfuisse maritum cum quō tacita servīret—dēfuisse virum quī sē rēgnō dignum esse putāret, quī meminisset sē esse Prīscī Tarquinii filium, quī habēre quam spērāre rēgnum māllet!':*
 - ▷ indirect statement representing what she was saying to her husband, containing:
 - a purpose clause (*cum...servīret*)
 - three relative clauses of character or tendency (Cap. XXXIX/XLII): not “I lack a husband who thinks...” but “I lack the kind of husband who would think himself worthy of the kingdom.”
 - ▷ = (in the original present tense) *'nōn mihi-dēest maritus cum quō tacita serviam—dēest-vir quī sē rēgnō dignum esse putet, quī meminirit sē esse Prīscī Tarquinii filium, quī habēre quam spērāre rēgnum mālīt.'*

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE

Omission of *esse*

The auxiliary verb *esse* is often omitted in the future infinitive and in the perfect infinitive passive, e.g.:

sē...habitūrum (ll.20–21) = *sē...habitūrum esse*

in novō populō...futūrum locum (ll.112–114) = *futūrum esse*

Tatium...rēgem factum, et Numam...in rēgnum accitum (148–151) = *factum esse...accitum esse*

In the 3rd person of the perfect passive, *est*, *sunt* are apt to be left out by Livy, e.g.:

Aventinum novae multitudinī datum (ll.71–72) = *datum est*

Quibus...in valle Murciā datae sēdēs. Iāniculum quoque urbī adiectum (ll.78–79) = *datae sunt...adiectum est*

totidem centuriae factae. Quīnta classis aucta (l.324) = *factae sunt...aucta est*

Partitive Genitive with Neuter Pronoun

The partitive genitive may depend on certain neuter pronouns but only in the nominative or accusative, such as *multum* and *paulum* (Cap. XVI), *aliquid*, *nihil*, *quid* (Cap. XXIX), e.g.:

Mettiō nōn plūs animī erat quam fideī (XLIII.202)

quid reī esset (ll.266–267)

quid hoc...reī est? (l.424)

quidquid agrī (l.198)

Dative by Attraction

When a dative of possession (Cap. XII) is used with a name (i.e., *nōmen eī est*), the name itself is usually dative, not predicate nominative, because the name has been “attracted to” (or drawn into) the dative of possession. We see two examples in this chapter:

puerō egentī post avī mortem nātō ab inopiā ‘Egeriō’ nōmen datum est (ll.103–104):²

= *Egerius nōmen datum est*; the dative ‘Egeriō’ agrees with the dative *puerō*

cui Serviō Tulliō fuit nōmen (l.226)

= *cui Servius Tullius fuit nōmen*; the dative *Serviō Tulliō* agrees with the dative of possession *cui*

Locative/Ablative of Plural Place Names

The name of the Etruscan town *Tarquiniī* is plural. Therefore the ablative *Tarquiniīs* can mean both “from Tarquinii” (l.93, ablative of separation) and “at Tarquinii” (l.95, locative)—context will make it clear. Sometimes for clarity Livy puts *ab* before a town name, e.g.:

cōnsilium migrandī ab Tarquiniīs (l.111)

Nōn...ab Corinthō nec ab Tarquiniīs (l.391)

III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM

Quam primum

As you learned in *FAMILIA RŌMĀNA* (Cap. XXVII), *quam* + superlative (with or without *posse*) denotes the highest possible degree. As *primum* is the superlative of *prius*, the phrase *quam primum* means “as soon as possible”:

Tarquinius postulābat ut quam primum comitia rēgī creandō fierent. (ll.143–144)

Ferre

To describe the “handing down” (or “tradition”), we are accustomed to seeing *dicitur* (Cap. XIII) and *nārrātur* (Cap. XXXVI), in addition to *dicunt* and *nārrant* (Cap. XLI); the verbs *trāditur* (“is handed down,” “is reported”) and *fertur* (= *nārrātur*) are used in the same way:

accēpisse id augurium laeta dicitur Tanaquil (l.122)

ōrātiōnem dicitur habuisse (l.146)

2. Egerius was the name given to Lucumo’s nephew because he was *egēns* (“indigent”).

*Foedum inhūmānumque inde trāditur scelus: Tullia per patris
corpus carpentum ēgisse fertur* (ll.445–447)

caput ārsisse ferunt (ll.226–227)

fāma ferēbat (l.351)

IV. RECĒNSIŌ

Ablative Absolute

The ablative absolute is widely used with the perfect participle (forty examples in this chapter), but it also occurs frequently with the present participle, e.g., when stating during whose reign something happened (Cap. XVI):

Tullō rēgnante (l.13): “while Tullus was reigning”

Ancō rēgnante (l.92)

Spernentibus Etrūscīs (l.108): “when the Etruscans were saying
in scorn that...”

ventōque iuvante (l.184): “with the wind helping”

necessitatē iam et ipsā cōgente ultima audēre (l.432): “now that
even necessity itself was compelling him to do the most
daring things”

Impersonal Passive (Cap. XL): Examples

bellum fierī erat cōsēsum (l.50)

aliquamdiū ibi variā victōriā pugnātum est (l.73)

Ad Iāniculum forte ventum erat (l.118)

Prīmō dubiā victōriā, magnā utrimque caede pugnātum est
(ll.174–175)

*Additae huic classī duae fabrum centuriae, quae sine armīs
stipendia facerent* (ll.317–318)

ad finēs eōrum vēnit unde rēs repetuntur (ll.25–26)

XLV: QVADRAGESIMVM QVINTVM: ROMA LIBERATA (Livy)¹

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE

Gerund/Gerundive

In this chapter there are some examples of the gerund in the genitive or ablative with an object in the accusative:

mōrem...senātum cōsulendī (l.16): “the custom of consulting the Senate”

interrogandō expectandōque respōnsum nūntius fessus (l.144): “the messenger, tired of asking and waiting for an answer”

āvertendō noxam (l.266): “by turning away the guilt”

auctorque arma capiendī (l.293): “and who prompted them to take up arms”

In most cases, however, the construction is altered so that the noun is in the genitive or ablative and the verb form, now a gerundive, agrees with the noun as an adjective, e.g.:

vēndendā praedā (ll.94–95) = *vēndendō praedam*

libīdō Lucrētiaē stuprandae (l.226) = *libīdō Lucrētiam stuprandī*

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

In this chapter we also find the gerundive construction in the dative with the adjective *intentus*:

fundamentis templi iaciendis aliisque urbānis operibus intentum
(l.100)

intentus perficiendō templō (l.160)

Only the gerundive, never the gerund with an object, is found with a preposition (*ad, de, in*):

dē renovandō foedere (ll.78–79)

*ad forōs in circō faciendōs cloācamque Māximam agendam*²
(ll.166–167)

in fossās cloācāsque exhauriendās dēmersae (ll.311–312):
“submerged in the digging of ditches and sewers”

The gerund is, of course, found without objects as well:

cupīdō scīscitandī (l.185): gerund without an object

Supine

As you learned in Cap. XXIII, the accusative supine occurs with verbs of motion like *īre*, *venīre*, and *mittere*:

praedātum īret (l.128)
mittit scīscitātum (ll.138–139)
exsulātum...īerunt (ll.334–335)

In the above examples the verb itself expresses the motion, but motion can also be implied, as in the accusative supine of *nūbēre* in this example:

filiam nūptum dat (l.24)

Giving one’s daughter away to be married includes the sense of her leaving her father’s house for her husband’s, that is, motion.

2. That is, Latin will always have *ad cloacam maximam agendam* (gerundive) and **not** *ad cloacam maximam agendum* (gerund).

Futūrum esse ut/fore ut

In *Familia Romāna* (Cap. XXXII) you learned the future passive infinitive, which is formed from the supine and *īrī* (the present passive infinitive of *īre*):

Ego eum nec mūtātum esse nec posthāc mūtātum īrī crēdō
(ll.118–119)

Latin writers, however, tend to avoid the future passive infinitive, instead using *futūrum (esse) ut* or its equivalent, *fore ut*, plus the subjunctive. For example:

‘brevī futūrum ut ā portīs Gabīnīs sub Rōmāna moenia bellum trānsferātur’ (ll.118–120)

That is, writers often prefer *futūrum ut...bellum trānsferātur* instead of the future passive *bellum translātum īrī*. The same line could have been written with *fore ut*:

‘fore ut bellum transferātur’

III. DĒMONSTRATIŌ VERBŌRUM***Opus est + ablative***

The impersonal phrase *opus est* means “there is need of”; the thing needed is in the ablative:

‘opus esse colloquiō’ (Caps. XLIII, XLVI–XLVII)

ita factō mātūrātōque opus esse (l.251): the ablative perfect participles of *fieri* and *mātūrāre* are equivalent to neuter abstract nouns.

Difficulter

The irregular adverb *difficulter* is formed from *difficilis*:

Haud difficulter persuāsit Latīnīs... (ll.79–80)

IV. RECĒNSIŌ

Historical Infinitive (Cap. XLIV): Examples

Notice these further examples of the historical infinitive with subject nominative (see Cap. XLIV):

Ibi, cum ‘dē aliīs rēbus assentīre sē veteribus Gabīnīs’ dīceret, identidem bellī auctor esse et in eō sibi praecipuam prūdentiam assūmere... (Il.122–124)

tum ūniversī Gabīnī Sextum Tarquīnium dīvīnitus sibi missum ducem crēdere (l.133)

Apud mīlītēs vērō, cum pariter perīcula obīret ac labōrēs tolerāret praedamque benignē largīrētur, tantā cārītāte esse ut nōn pater Tarquīnius potentior Rōmae quam fīlius Gabiīs esset. (Il.134–137)

Suam quisque laudāre mīrīs modīs (l.211)

Cum pavida ex somnō mulier nūllam opem, prope mortem imminentem vidēret, tum Tarquīnius fatērī amōrem, ōrāre, miscēre precibus minās, versāre in omnēs partēs muliebrem animam. (Il.239–242)

Ablative Absolute: Examples

There are several examples of the ablative absolute (Cap. XVI) with the present participle:

illō adiuvante (l.118)

sequente nūntiō (Il.141–142)

pōtantibus hīs (Il.208–209)

sōle parante (l.347)

exsecrantibus quācumque incēdēbat invocantibusque parentum Furiās virīs mulieribusque (Il.325–326): “men and women cursing her wherever she walked and invoking the Furies who avenge parents”

We also find the ablative absolute with

adjectives:

- *īnsciā multitudine* (1.130)
- *rē imperfectā* (1.144)
- *īnsciō Collātīnō* (1.230)
- *illīs lūctū occupātīs* (1.275)

nouns:

- *auctōribus patribus* (1.8)
- *duce Brūtō* (1.298)

Adjectives with Genitive: Examples

As you learned in Cap. XXV, when a noun or an adjective has a verbal force, the genitive that follows it is called the “objective genitive” (the genitive used as an object). This chapter has several examples:

ignārus respōnsī expersque imperiī (1.190)

īnscia rērum (1.350)

perītus (perītus utilitātis dignitātisque cīvīlis, LV.448–449)

XLVI: QVADRAGESIMVM SEXTVM: POST REGES EXACTOS (Eutropius)¹

I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE

Genitive of the Charge

The genitive is used with judicial expressions: accusations, condemnations, and acquittals:

Ob quam rem ā dictātōre capitis damnātus (II.190–191): “he was condemned with the loss of his head.”

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE

Indicative in Contrafactual Conditions

Indicative in the apodosis: In Cap. XXIV, you learned that the past tense of *posse* could express what might have happened (but didn’t):

Miror tē crūs nōn frēgisse. Facile os frangere potuistī.
(XXIV.32–33)

Facile os frangere potuistī is a contrafactual statement, even though *posse* is in the indicative: “you could easily have broken a bone (but didn’t).” *Oportere* and *dēbere* (Cap. XLIII) function the same way. The past tense of the following verbs

oportere
dēbere

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

posse
necesse esse
opus esse

implies what was necessary, possible, or due in the past, suggesting lack of fulfillment. Thus, when such verbs are part of a contrafactual condition, they are in the indicative instead of the subjunctive:

[*Pyrrhus dīxit*] ‘*sē tōtīus orbis dominum esse potuisse, sī tālēs sibi militēs contigissent.*’ (ll.233–234)

In this contrafactual condition in indirect discourse, *potuisse* stands for an original indicative, completely normal for a verb of possibility. This is the usual construction with such verbs, as well as with future participles and gerundives with a past tense of *esse*:

*Quod sī Rōmae Cn. Pompēius privātus esset hōc tempore,
 tamen ad tantum bellum is erat dēligendus atque mittendus:*
 “Even if Cn. Pompey were at this time in Rome as a private
 citizen, he would have to be chosen and sent to such a great
 war” (XLIV.528–530).

Indicative in the apodosis: If the protasis is negative, the apodosis of a contrafactual condition is in the indicative when the action of the verb is interrupted (imperfect indicative) or when the apodosis seems a forgone conclusion.

In the example below from the reading, the protasis itself is in the indicative:

*Et subācta Āfrica tunc fuisset, nisi quod tanta famēs erat
 ut diūtius exercitus expectāre nōn posset.* (ll.361–362)

*Fuisse*t marks the apodosis of a past contrafactual condition; but *nisi quod* (“except for the fact that”) cuts off the possibility of the Romans conquering. *Nisi quod* is followed by the indicative (unless in *ōrātiō oblīqua*): They would have conquered except for the fact that there was a famine.

V. POINTS OF STYLE

Indirect Commands: Resolutions of the Senate

Resolutions of the Senate are indirect commands expressed by the phrase (*patri-bus*) *placet* followed by:

ut/nē + subjunctive

Et placuit nē imperium longius quam annum habēret, nē per diūturnitatem potestātis insolentiōrēs redderentur, sed cīvīlēs semper essent, quī sē post annum scīrent futūrōs esse privātōs (II.4–7)

placuerat enim ‘nē quisquam in urbe manēret quī Tarquinius vocārētur.’ (II.11–13)

or by accusative + infinitive

nūllōs placuit fierī (I.140)

Omnibus igitur patribus placēbat aliquod caput cīvītātis esse (XLII.260–261)

The Language of Eutropius

The language of Eutropius, writing in the fourth century AD, differs slightly from that of Livy, who lived from the middle of the first century BC to the beginning of the first century AD. The features of his Latin that depart from earlier Latin are noted below.

Tamquam/quasī

In late Latin *tamquam* and *quasī* can introduce clauses of reported reason:

tamquam ā senātū atque cōsulibus premerētur (II.49–50)

quasi praedam male dīvisisset (II.108–109)

Perfect/Pluperfect Passive

The perfect passive is formed with the auxiliary verb *esse* in the present: *laudātus* (-a, -um) *est/sit*. The pluperfect passive has the auxiliary verb *esse* in the imperfect: *laudātus* (-a, -um) *erat/esset*. One finds, however, the auxiliary verb in the perfect or pluperfect: *laudātus fuit/fuerit* (perfect passive) *fuerat/*

fuisse. Although using the perfect or pluperfect instead of the present or imperfect is found in all periods of Latin, it is more frequent in later Latin. In Eutropius you find several examples:

Perfect passive:

Infraactus fuit instead of *infraactus est* (l.369)

Pluperfect passive:

fuera expulsus (l.17)

datum fuera (l.120)

datus fuisset (l.204)

also: ll.197, 350, 362, 394, 437

Other features of later Latin that you'll encounter in Eutropius:

diēs is always feminine (Cap. XIII)

eā diē (l.282)

ex illā diē (l.388)

ipse often stands for *is* or *ille*

contra ipsōs (l.104)

...quae sub ipsīs agēbant...ipsum Praeneste agressus (l.136)

triumphusque ipsī dēcrētus (l.138)

cum ipsīs (l.197)

plūrima ipsōrum oppida cēpit (l.205)

contra ipsum (l.411)

Some of his numerals are worth noticing:

decem et octō for *duodēvīgintī* (ll.343, 344)

octāvō decimō for *duodēvīcēsīmō* (ll.56, 99)

quadrāgintā novem for *ūndēquīnquāgintā* (ll.208–209)

Gerundive for Future Passive Infinitive

In Cap. XLV you learned that *fore ut/fūtūrum esse* is often used instead of the rare future passive infinitive (Cap. XXI). The gerundive can also be used instead of the future infinitive passive.

Thus, the following three constructions (future passive infinitive, *fore ut/futūrum esse ut*, gerundive) are different ways of saying “They undertook the war promising the senate and the people that the whole contest would be fulfilled by them”:

future passive infinitive:

bellum...suscēpērunt promittentēs senātuī et populō ‘per sē omne certāmen implētum īrī’

gerundive instead of future passive infinitive:

bellum...suscēpērunt promittentēs senātuī et populō ‘per sē omne certāmen implendum (esse)’ (1.70)

fore ut/futūrum esse ut instead of future passive infinitive:

bellum...suscēpērunt promittentēs senātuī et populō fore ut ‘per sē omne certāmen implērētur’

bellum...suscēpērunt promittentēs senātuī et populō futūrum esse ut ‘per sē omne certāmen implērētur’

XLVII: QVADRAGESIMVM SEPTIMVM: GRAECI ET ROMANI (Aulus Gellius)¹

III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM

Impersonal *cōnstat*

The impersonal verb *cōnstat* (Cap. XLI) is here in the perfect: *cōnstitit*, “it is established/an established fact”:

inter omnēs ferē scriptōrēs cōnstitit (l.18)

*per eās tempestātēs decemvirōs lēgibus scribundīs creatōs
cōnstitit* (ll.60–62)

*Sed eam mulierem tunc ā Tarquiniō dīgressam postea nusquam
locī vīsam cōnstitit* (ll.188–190)

Idioms

Note the following idiomatic expressions:

The verb *est* can be used with an infinitive to mean “it is possible.”

*Nusquam...scriptum invenīre est...aut ‘mehercle’ fēminam
dicere aut...* (ll.202–204): “it is not possible anywhere to
find written either a woman saying ‘by Hercules’ or...”

The verb *obīre* (“go to meet”) combined with the objects *diem*
or *mortem* means “to die.”

quī...mortem obiit (ll.43–45)

obiit mortis diem (ll.113–115)

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

Libra/pondus

Libra means

1. scales, balance (see Cap. XIII, top)
2. a unit of weight: a Roman pound (327 g)

pondus -eris (neuter) means “weight” and is the word from which we get the English “pound.” Although it is a 3rd declension noun, *pondus* has a 2nd declension ablative *pondō* (“in/by weight”), which may be added to *libra*, e.g.:

decem pondō librae (l.132): “ten pounds by weight”

pondō is often used with the ellipsis of *librae*:

pondō CXXIII milia (Cap. XLVIII.863)

Comparative: “Too”

Gellius begins by saying that he will limit himself to the time before the Second Punic War. So when he comes to mention writers who flourished after this war, he says *prōgressī longius sumus*. Here the comparative *longius* means “too far” (= *nimis longē*).

V. POINTS OF STYLE

Gerund/Gerundive: Archaic Spelling

The oldest Latin text mentioned by Aulus Gellius is *Leges XII tabulārum*, “The Laws of the Twelve Tables,” which were written in 451–449 BC by a board of ten, *Decemvirī lēgibus scribundīs creatī* (l.61; cf. XLVI.88): “a board of ten created for the purpose of writing laws.” *Lēgibus scribundīs* (= *ad lēgēs scribendās*) is dative of purpose; it is written with the archaic spelling of the gerund/gerundive *scribundīs* instead of the more common *scribendīs* (with *-und-* instead of *-end-* in the 3rd and 4th conjugations). This older form can be seen in:

gerere: gerundum
eundum from *īre*

The same ending is retained in the old Latin phrase about the purpose of marrying: *liberum* (= *-ōrum*) *quaerundōrum causā*, “for the sake of acquiring children” (ll.154–155).

Ablative: Examples

Two ablatives related to time occur frequently in this text:

ablātīvus temporis: ablative of time when or within which
note the use of *tempestāte* in addition to *tempore*:

- ▷ *quibus temporibus* (l.8)
- ▷ *iisdem ferē temporibus* (l.19)
- ▷ *quā tempestāte* (l.67)
- ▷ *iisdemque fermē tempestātibus* (ll.116–117)

ablātīvus mensūrae an differentiae ablative of (degree of) difference with *ante* and *post* stating “how long before or after,” e.g.:

ante/post as prepositions:

- ▷ *annīs post bellum Trōiānum plūs CLX* (ll.22–26)
- ▷ *ante Rōmam autem conditam annīs circiter CLX* (ll.22–26)

post as an adverb (= *postea*):

- ▷ *post...paucīs annīs* (l.52)
- ▷ *paucīsque annīs post* (ll.81, 107)
- ▷ *aliquot...annīs post* (l.98)
- ▷ *post aliquantō* (l.116)
- ▷ *post nōn longō tempore* (l.84)
- ▷ *brevī post tempore* (l.100)
- ▷ *post aliquantō tempore* (l.109)

postea with:

- ▷ *neque multō postea* (l.87)
- ▷ *neque magnō intervāllō postea* (l.160)
- ▷ *annīs deinde postea paulō plūribus quam vīgintī* (l.139)²

With comparative alone:

- ▷ *aliquantō antīquiōrem* (l.20)

2. *paulo* + comparative is another ablative of difference.

Euphemisms

Like other languages Latin has many indirect terms and euphemisms for the idea of dying. Instead of *morī*, we have seen phrases like:

occidere
lūcem relinquere
ē vitā excēdere
dēcēdere
expīrāre
obīre mortem (l.45)
obīre mortis diem (ll.114–115)
vitā fungī (l.116)

Variātiō

Gellius describes the handing down of historical events in various ways:

scriptum relinquere (ll.23, 94)
(memoriae) trādere (ll.38, 42)
memoriae mandāre (ll.65, 96–97)
prōdere: In antiquīs annālibus memoria super librīs Sibyllīnīs
haec prōdita est. (l.171)

XLVIII: DVODEQVINQVAGESIMVM: BELLVM PVNICVM SECVNDVM (Livy)¹

I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE

Clauses of Hindering

Verbs of preventing, forbidding, refusing, etc., may be followed by a clause with *nē* or *quōminus* explaining what is being blocked:

*ea modo ūna causa, nē extemplō trānsīrent flūmen dīrigerentque
aciem, tenuerit Rōmānōs; tenēre nē* (ll.432–433): “held them
back lest they”

quōminus = *ut eō minus*: literally: “by which (*quō*) the less (*mi-*
nus)” = “that not, lest”

These clauses can take *quīn* when negative.

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE

Potential Subjunctive (Negative, *nōn*)

You met the potential subjunctive in Cap. XLI. Potential subjunctives refer to what the speaker thinks is possible. The present and perfect subjunctive refers to the future (either the immediate future or further off), while the imperfect considers what was likely or possible in the past. The following are the most common uses.

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

2nd Person Singular: You learned in Cap. XLI that the generalizing potential in Latin is 2nd person singular:²

haud facile discernerēs utrum imperātōrī an exercitū cārior esset (l.48): “you could not easily have decided...”

variōs vultūs digredientium ab nūntiīs cernerēs (l.365): “you would have seen different expressions on the faces of those walking away from the messengers.”

1st Person Singular: The potential subjunctive can be used to express oneself in a cautious or mild way:

quaerendum cēseam (l.242): “I should think”

Respondeam Himilcōnī... (l.648): “I might answer...”

velim seu Himilcō seu Māgō respondeat... (l.665): “I would like H. or M. to answer...”

scīre velim (l.671): “I would like to know”

The imperfect is also used and expresses an unfulfilled desire in the present³ particularly in verbs of wishing:

vellem eum adesse: “I would like him to be here” (but he’s not)

mallem crustula quam pānem: “I would prefer cookies rather than bread” (but this is clearly bread)

nōllem

cuperem

The potential subjunctive, both present and imperfect, is common in questions.

Cap. XXIX: deliberative questions:

Quid faciam? Quid spērem? (XXIX.22–23)

Ō dī bonī! Quid faciāmus (XXIX.198–199)

2. The examples in *RŌMA AETERNA* are all imperfect, but the present is also found.

3. Because of something that has not proven to be true. Cf. the apodosis of contrafactual conditions (Cap. XLI) and wishes (Cap. XXXIX, *RECĒNSIŌ*).

Cap. XLI: Rhetorical Questions:

Quis enim rem tam veterem prō certō affirmet?
(XLI.53–54)

The potential subjunctive occurs in all persons and numbers to express what is, in the speaker's opinion, credible:

aliquis dīcat: "someone might say"

aliquis dīxerit: "someone might say"⁴

nīl ego contulerim iūcundō sānus amīco (Horace, *Satires* 1.5.44):
"While I am in my right mind, I would compare nothing to
a pleasant friend."

Relative Comparative Clauses:

Descriptive (generic) relative clauses (Caps. XXXIX, XLII) can be found after a comparative, introduced by *quam ut* or *quam quī*.

Hannibalī nimis laeta rēs est vīsa māiorque quam ut eam statim capere animō posset (ll.534–535): "greater than he could grasp with his mind," or "too great to grasp"

IV. RECĒNSIŌ

Fear Clauses

Clauses expressing a fear (Cap. XXXII) that something will or will not happen grew out of two paratactic wishes: "I am afraid! May this not happen!" This statement expresses a fear that it *will* happen = I am afraid that this will happen. When the two independent (paratactic) clauses became subordinated (hypotactic), the original syntax was maintained.

Vereor! Nē hoc fiat!: "I am afraid! May this not happen!"

Vereor nē hoc fiat: "I am afraid that this might happen."

vereor nē haec quoque laetitia vāna ēvādat (ll.656–657)

Antiochum timor incessit nē quās per imminētia iuga callēs inveniret ad trānsitum Rōmānus. (L.176–177)

4. There is no difference between the present and the perfect subjunctive: both refer to the future.

Conversely, an expression of fear followed by *ut* suggests something desired that might not happen.

Timeō! Ut (utinam) vincāmus: “I am afraid! May we be victorious (conquer)” expresses a fear that we will not win. So *timeō ut vincāmus* means “I am afraid that we may not be victorious.”

V. POINTS OF STYLE

Technical Vocabulary: *Referre, cēnsēre, sententia, senātūs cōnsultum*

The verb *referre* can mean that an issue is submitted to the Senate for deliberation, and can be used with an accusative or *dē* + the ablative:

rem ad senātum referre (l.101)
dē rē referre (ll.95–96)

During the debate each senator is asked, “*Quid cēnsēs?*” (Caps. XLIV–XLVI), and he gives his opinion, *sententia*, by answering “*Cēseō*” followed by the accusative + infinitive with the gerundive:

“*terrā marīque rem gerendam (esse) cēseō.*”

The final decision of the Senate is called *senātūs cōnsultum*.

Note on Style

The readings in this chapter offer an opportunity to compare the style of Livy with that of other, later authors, albeit in a limited way, since the later authors composed abbreviated histories. For the Battle of Lake Trasumenae, we have the *periochae* of the same event; for the Battle of Cannae, there is the *Breviārium* of Eutropius.

XLIX: VNDEQVINQVAGESIMVM: HANNIBAL (Nepos)¹

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE

Quō + Comparative + Subjunctive: Relative Purpose Clause

You learned in Cap. XXXIX that *quī* can be the equivalent of *ut is* when a relative clause expresses purpose, e.g.:

*Ad quem cum lēgātī vēnissent Rōmānī, quī dē eius voluntāte
explōrārent darentque operam...* (II.19–21)

The ablative of the relative pronoun (*quō*) can be the equivalent of *ut eō*. When there is a comparative adjective or adverb within a relative clause of purpose, *quō* is the equivalent of *ut eō*; in the following example, *valentior* triggers *quō* = *ut eō*:

[Hannibal] *cupīvit impraesentiārum bellum compōnere, quō
valentior postea congregerētur* (I.112): “in order that he could
meet him afterward (so much) the stronger”

Syncopated Forms

In verbs the *-v-* of the perfect is often dropped. These contractions are called syncopated forms. Syncopation can happen:

1. before *-is-*, e.g.:

-āvisse to *-āsse*

-īvisse to *-iisse/isse*

2. before *-er-/-ēr-*, e.g.:

-āverat to *-ārat*

-āvērunt to *-ārunt*

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

The complete rules are given after the chapter in the section GRAMMATICA LATINA.

In Cornelius Nepos there are many examples of such contractions (noted below in the reading helps).

III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM

Dōnum/dōnāre/dōnō dare

Mūnerī dare (l.228) is a dative of purpose (Caps. XXXVI, XL). Like *mūnerī*, *dōnō* can be combined with *dare* in the phrase *dōnō dare* (“to give for the purpose of a gift/to give as a gift”), where *dōnō* is dative of purpose.

From the noun *dōnum* comes the verb *dōnāre* (“to give as a gift,” “to bestow”), which is construed either:

like *dare* with dative and accusative, e.g.,

Mēdus Lȳdiae anulum dōnat.

Or with ablative of the thing given and accusative of the recipient, e.g.,

Mēdus Lȳdiam ānulō dōnat (cf. English “presents her with...”)

In this chapter we see the latter construction used in a relative clause of purpose:

Lēgātī Kathāginiēnsēs Rōmam vēnērunt, quī...corōnā aureā eōs dōnārent. (l.129)

Operam dare

Operam dare means “to give attention to something” (+ dative), “to take care to/endeavor to” (+ the subjunctive with *ut*, *nē*):

darentque operam cōnsiliīs clandestīnīs ut: “they took care by secret counsels to...”

Verba Dare: *verba* here means “just words,” so “to give just words, only words” means “to trick, to deceive”:

Hic, clausus locōrum angustīs, noctū sine ūllō dētrīmentō exercitūs sē expēdīvit, Fabiōque, callidissimō imperātōrī, dēdit verba. (ll.88–90)

Ūsū venīre means, as in the margins, roughly the same as *ēvenīre*: “to occur in the course of events”:

scīlicet verēns nē ūsū venīret quod accidit. (ll.229–230)

L: QVINQVAGESIMVM: GRAECIA LIBERATA (Livy)

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE

Genitive of Possession: Characteristic

The genitive of possession (Cap. II) can be used as a predicate to suggest a characteristic of someone or something:

convivium instruere et lūdōs parāre eiusdem esse (ll.599–601):
characteristic of/part of the same person

LI: VNVM ET QVINQVAGESIMVM: SCIPIO AEMILIANVS (Livy/Sallust)¹

III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM

Dē vocābulis faciendīs

When studying Latin vocabulary it is easy to see that a great many words are derived from others. From now on each chapter is followed by a GRAMMATICA LATINA section on derivation or word formation (*dē vocābulis faciendīs*). In Cap. LI this section shows the formation of new verbs by means of prefixes (in Latin *praeverbia*). Most of these prefixes are prepositions, e.g.:

ab-
ad-
de-
con- = *cum*
dis- denotes separation or dispersal
re- denotes movement back or repetition

Some prefixes are often changed by assimilation before certain consonants, e.g.:

ad- to *af-* before *f*
in- and *con-* to *im-* and *com-* before *m* and *p*

The addition of a prefix causes a change in the verbal stem:

a to *i* or *e*
e to *i*

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

For example:

from *rapere*: *abripere*, *abreptum*

from *tenēre*: *retinēre*, *retentum*

The rules governing the changes are found in lines 339–383; you will need to know them when doing PENSVM A.

V. POINTS OF STYLE

The language of the inscription at the beginning of the chapter differs considerably from classical Latin; the differences are explained in the margin. Note, e.g.:

archaic ablative ending *od* which later became *ō*

CNAIVOD (*Cnaiuod* = *Gnaeō*)

diphthongs instead of single vowels:

ei for *ī*

VIRTVTEI (*virtutei* = *virtutī*)

QVEI (*quei* = *quī*)

ou for *ū*

LOVCANA (*loucana* = *lūcāna*)

ABDOVCIT (*abdoucit* = *abdūcit*)

ai for *ae*

AIDILIS (*aidilis* = *aedīlis*)

CNAIVOD (*Cnaiuod* = *Gnaeō*)

LII: ALTERVM ET QVINQVAGESIMVM: IVGVRTHA (Sallust)¹

III. DĒMONSTRATIŌ VERBŌRUM

Potīrī

The deponent verb *potīrī* (“become/be master of”) usually takes the ablative (Cap. XXXVIII) but it can take the genitive, as it often does in Sallust:

fore uti sōlus imperiū Numidiae potīrētur (l.65)
postquam omnis Numidiae potiēbātur (ll.172–173)

Impersonal *rēferre*

The impersonal verb *rē-ferre rē-tulisse* (as opposed to *rēferre*, Cap. XLVIII) is a compound of *rē* (ablative of *rēs*) and *ferre*: *rē-fert* means “it matters,” “it is of importance”; the person to whom it is of importance is expressed by a genitive or by *meā, tuā, suā...* (ablative feminine of passive pronoun agreeing with the *rē* of the verb), e.g.:

quid meā rēfert? = *quid meā rē fert?*

Faciundum eī aliquid quod illōrum magis quam suā rētulisse vidērētur (ll.684–685): “he had to do something that would seem to be of more importance to them than to him.”

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

Dē vocābulīs faciendīs

The GRAMMATICA LATINA sections in this and the following chapters deal with suffixes, i.e., endings used to derive new words:

- verbs from nouns (Cap. LII)
- adjectives from nouns (Cap. LIII)
- nouns from verbs (Cap. LIV)
- nouns from adjectives (Cap. LV)
- inchoative verbs (Cap. LVI)

IV. RECĒNSIŌ

***Quam* + Superlative: Examples**

In this chapter you find several examples of *quam* before a superlative (with or without *potest*) denoting the highest possible degree (Cap. XXVII):

- quam m̄ximās potest cōpiās armat* (ll.164–165)
- quam ōcissimē ad prōvinciam accēdat* (l.336)
- quam occultissimē potest* (l.560)
- quam m̄ximum silentium habērī iubet* (l.618)
- quam primum* (l.592)

V. POINTS OF STYLE

Features of Sallust's Latin

Archaisms

There are many archaisms in Sallust's work, e.g.:

- uti* for *ut* (ll.26, 65 etc.)
- quīs* for *quibus* (dative/ablative plural, ll.177, 332, 647)
- foret* for *esset* (ll.285, 597)
- duum* for *duōrum* (ll.560, 662)
- huiusce* for *huius* (ll.5, 91, 477, 519)
- que...-que* for *et...et* (ll.97, 293, 500, 512, 679)

Other Features of Sallust's Latin:

Sallust's Latin shows a preference for the:

perfect 3rd person plural original ending *-ēre* to *-ērunt*
gerund/gerundive *-und* to *-end-*, e.g.:

mittundum, subveniundum (ll.326, 327)

ablative rather than genitive of description

decōrā faciē (l.24)

impigrō atque ācrī ingeniō (l.53)

placidō ingeniō (l.253)

animō ingentī (l.583)

genitive of description is also found:

gentis paticiae nōbilis (l.581)

The ablative of separation is used freely without the prepositions *ex*, *ab*, *dē*:

expellere: rēgnō fortūnisque omnibus; Āfricā (ll.192, 596)

ēicere: fīnibus (l.192)

ēgredi: Cūriā, castrīs, oppidō (ll.218, 557, 563)

prohibēre: moenibus (ll.283–284)

dēcēdere: Āfricā, Italiā (ll.246, 313, 366, 432)

dēterrēre: proeliō (l.614)

The dative of purpose or final dative, *datīvus fīnālis* (Cap. XXXVI):

dōnō dēdit (l.15)

praesidiō missum (l.653)

glōriae fore (l.33)

terrōrī esset (l.59)

gaudiō esse (l.78)

lūdibriō habitus (l.408)

LIII: QVINQVAGESIMVM TERTIVM: MARIVS ET SVLLA (Evtropivs/Cicero)¹

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE

Locative Ablative

We have seen the ablative (locative) without *in* denoting “place where” in:

terrā marīque
eō locō
multīs locīs

The preposition is often missing in combinations with

tōtus:
tōtō marī (Cap. LIV.332)²

cūctus
cūctā Asiā et Graeciā (Caps. LIV, XXXVI)

III. DĒMONSTRATIŌ VERBŌRUM

Nouns in *-ennium*

Latin has neuter nouns in *-ennium* to denote a number of years:

Biennium: “two years,” “a two-year period” (l.344)
triennium: “three years,” “a three-year period” (*intrā triennium*,
l.181)

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

2. *In* with these adjectives is also found: *tōtā in Asiā* (l.358 and LIV.36).

quadriennium: “four years,” “a four-year period” (*quadrienniō*, l.45)

quinquennium: “five years,” “a five-year period” (l.393)

Nouns in *-duum*

Similarly the noun:

bīduum: “two days”

trīduum: “three days”

quadrīduum: “four days”

The case of these nouns changed over time. Although these nouns were normally in the accusative when describing “how long” something lasts, later a tendency arose to use the ablative instead of the accusative to express time “how long.” See Cicero’s usage with the accusative:

cum essem biennium versātus in causīs... (l.344)

Cum igitur essem in plurīmīs causīs et in prīncipibus patrōnīs quīnquennium ferē versātus... (l.393)

Eutropius uses both accusative and ablative for temporal duration:

Nam post aliquantum nūllōs placuit fierī, et quadriennium in urbe ita flūxit ut potestātēs ibi māiōrēs nōn essent.
(XLVI.141)

Praesūmpsērunt tamen tribūnī mīlitārēs cōsulārī potestāte iterum dignitātem, et triennium perseverāvērunt. (XLVI.143)

Quadrienniō cum grāvī tamen calamitāte hoc bellum tractum est (l.45): “for four years”

...Archelāus ipse trīduō nūdus in palūdibus latuit (l.95): “for three days”

Numerical Adverbs

The form of the adverb from ordinals also changed over time. Classical Latin prefers the accusative ending *-um*:

Deinde idem templum iterum et tertium sacratum est.
(XXXVI.40–41)

iterum: for the second time

tertium: for the third time

quārtum: for the fourth time

quīntum: for the fifth time

The ablative is also used to form adverbs in *ō* from ordinals, a feature found especially in later Latin:

secundō: for the second time (l.10)

tertiō: for the third time (l.12)

quārtō: for the fourth time

quīntō: for the fifth time (l.18)

LIV: QVINQVAGESIMVM QVARTVM: CN. POMPEIVS MAGNVS (Cicero)¹

I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE

Heteroclitic Nouns

While you have met heteroclitic nouns before, the term is first used here. A noun is called heteroclitic if its declension varies. You met the heteroclitic *domus*, whose declension varies between the 2nd and the 4th, in Cap. XIX:

nom.	<i>domus</i>	<i>domūs</i>
acc.	<i>domum</i>	<i>domōs</i>
gen.	<i>domūs</i>	<i>domōrum</i> (or <i>domuum</i>)
dat.	<i>domuī</i>	<i>domibus</i>
abl.	<i>domō</i>	<i>domibus</i>

Some nouns have declensions in both the 1st and 5th. *Māteria* (Caps. XVIII, XLIII) belongs to the 5th as well as the 1st declension (*māteriēs*, *-eī* as well as *māteria*, *-ae*). In this chapter you meet *pecus*, which in the singular means one animal out of a flock or herd and in the plural refers to the herd itself. *Pecus* has both 3rd and 4th declension forms (only attested forms are given):

nom.	<i>pecus/pecū</i>	<i>pecua/pecuda</i>
gen.	<i>pecoris</i>	<i>pecuum</i>
dat.	<i>pecuī</i>	
acc.		<i>pecua/pecuda</i>
abl.	<i>pecū</i>	<i>pecubus</i>

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE

Rhetorical Questions

In Cap. XLII, you learned about rhetorical questions, often in the subjunctive but also in the indicative, depending on whether the question is potential (subjunctive) or statement of fact (indicative):

*Quis igitur hōc homine scientior umquam aut fuit aut esse
dēbuit?* (ll.289–290)

There are several rhetorical questions in this speech; they are noted in the *auxilia legendi*.

III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM

Agitur dē, rēs agitur

Agere plays a role in many idiomatic expressions, among which is *rēs agitur* and *agitur dē* plus the ablative: “is at stake, is about”:

agitur populī Rōmānī glōria (l.23): “the glory of the Roman people
is at stake.”

agitur salūs sociōrum atque amicōrum (ll.25–26)

aguntur certissima populī Rōmānī vectīgālia (ll.27–28)

aguntur bona multōrum cīvium (ll.29–30)

Extrēmus

Just like *medius* (“middle of,” Cap. XXXIII), *summus* (“top of,” Cap. XXXVI), *īnfimus* (“bottom of,” Cap. XXXVI), and *primus* (“beginning of,” Cap. XXXVIII), *extrēmus* can mean “end of.”

Cōnsulere + Dative

The verb *cōnsulere* is related to *consilium* and *consul* and, by itself, means “to deliberate, reflect.” When *cōnsulere* is used with the accusative, it means “to ask the advice of.” With the dative it usually means “take care of, to consult for,” as here:

*bona...quibus est ā vōbīs et ipsōrum causā et rei pūblicae
cōnsulendum* (ll.30–31)

LV: QVINQVAGESIMVM QVINTVM: DE RE PVBLICA (Cicero)¹

II. RĒS GRAMMATICAE FŪSIUS EXPLICĀTAE

Velle + Subjunctive

The verb *velle* is often followed by the subjunctive (without *ut/nē*) to express will (as in the first example) or a wish (as in the second):

Vīsne igitur hoc primum...videāmus...? (l.31)

Quam vellem Panaetium nostrum nōbiscum habērēmus!
(ll.35–36 = *utinam...habērēmus!*)

Oportēre, necesse est + Subjunctive

Oportēre (Cap. XVII) and *necesse est* (Cap. X) are impersonal and take an accusative and infinitive construction; they can also be followed by a subjunctive, without *ut*:

At tū vērō animum quoque relaxēs oportet (l.26) = *At tē vērō animum quoque relaxāre oportet.*

Hīc tū...ostendās oportēbit... (LVI.46 = *tē ostendere*)

...vīvendī finem habeat necesse est (LVI.263–264)

vel concidat omne caelum omnisque nātūra et cōsistat necesse est (LVI.275–276)

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

Ethical Dative

As you have learned, the dative is often used to show to whom the action in the clause refers; a particular form of the dative of reference, called the “ethical dative,” is used only with personal pronouns and signals the particular interest or involvement of the person in the dative:

quid enim mihi L. Pauli nepōs...quaerit (II.118–120): “Why, I ask you (*mihi*), is the grandson of Lucius Paulus...asking.”

The ethical dative is a feature of colloquial speech.

III. DĒMONSTRĀTIŌ VERBŌRUM

Semi-deponents

Besides *audēre* (see XXXI.169), a few other verbs are semi-deponent:

soleō, solēre, solitum esse (I.150): “to be accustomed”

gaudeō, gaudēre, gavīsum esse: “to rejoice, be glad”

fīdo, fīdere, fīsum esse: “to trust” (+ dat.)

cōnfīdo, cōnfīdere, cōnfīsum esse: “to trust” (+ dat.; LII.345, *cōnfīsī*)

diffīdo, diffīdere, diffīsum esse: “to distrust” (+ dat.)

Placēre, used impersonally, may be semi-deponent:

placitum est = placuit (I.74)

cf. *placitus*, “pleasing” (XL.24)

LVI: QVINQVAGESIMVM SEXTVM: SOMNIVM SCIPIONIS (Cicero/Horace)¹

I. RĒS GRAMMATICAE NOVAE

Epexegetical Genitive

Latin poets sometimes imported Greek syntax, among which is the genitive that explains an adjective (epexegesis = “explanatory”). We find two of these epexegetical infinitives in the first line of Horace’s poem:

integer vītae (cf. “integrity”)
sceleris pūrus (“pure of crime,” “guiltless”)

III. DĒMONSTRATIŌ VERBŌRUM

Quaesō

The verb *quaesō* (1st person singular present indicative) is used in combination with a request or a question: “I ask you,” “please (tell me)”:

Quaesō, pater sānctissimē atque optimē... quid moror in terrīs?
(ll.81, 115)

Quaesō can also be used with the subjunctive (= *ōrō ut...*), with or without *ut/nē*:

St! quaesō nē mē ē somnō excitētis... (l.58)
*...tamen paucīs quaesō sinātis mē cum pūblicā fēlicitāte
comparāre eō quō dēbeō animō privātam meam fortūnam.*
(l.630)

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

Impersonal Verb Interest

The impersonal verb *inter-est*, “it makes a difference,” “it is of interest/importance,” is construed like *rē-fert* (Cap. LII) with the genitive or with *meā, tuā, suā*:

meā māximē interest tē valēre

*Quid autem interest ab iīs quī posteā nāscuntur sermōnem fore
dē tē? (ll.214–215)*

In this example we should understand *quid tuā interest*: “Why is it important to you? Why do you care?”

V. POINTS OF STYLE

Neuter for Adverb

In the last stanza of Horace’s poem, the neuter form *dulce* is used as an adverb (= *dulciter*; cf. *facile*).

PARS ALTERA

Introductions adapted from Hans H. Ørberg's *LINGVA LATINA PER SE ILLUSTRATA PARS II INSTRUCTIONS*. © Hans H. Ørberg 2005.

XXXVI: TRICESIMVM SEXTVM: ROMA AETERNA¹

I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION

Part II of *LINGVA LATINA PER SE ILLUSTRATA* opens with a chapter on the Eternal City, *RŌMA AETERNA*, as it looked in the second century AD. You read about its location on the banks of the Tiber on and around the Seven Hills as well as about the splendid buildings and historic monuments found in the capital of the Roman Empire. The illustrations will give you an idea of what some of these monuments looked like in ancient times. The chapter also gives a sense of the progression of Roman history from the time of the kings (753–510 BC) to the republic (510–31 BC) to the second century AD and concludes with a very useful table coordinating buildings, dates, and historical personages.

Posterity has not been kind to the remains of ancient Rome. Several medieval and Renaissance churches and palaces were built with materials taken from the ruins of ancient temples and public buildings. Nevertheless, some buildings have been preserved because they were transformed into churches. In the forum, for example, the Senate-House, or *Curia*, was rebuilt on the old foundations after a fire in the late third century AD and became a church in the seventh century AD. The original bronze doors adorn the main entrance of St. John Lateran (Rome). The Temple of Faustina, also in the Forum, became a church in the seventh or eighth century AD. The front row of columns of the temple of Saturn is still standing, as are a few columns of the Temple of Vespasian and the Temple of Castor. The temple of Vesta was partly restored in 1930. The other Forum buildings mentioned in this chapter have all but disappeared: all that remains of most of them is their foundations. Despite this, archaeological

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

explorations and computer-generated reconstructions enable us to envision—and marvel at—the architectural splendors of ancient Rome.

Among the more or less preserved monuments elsewhere in the city that are worthy of mention are: the Flavian Amphitheater, which was later named the Colosseum (completed 80 AD); the Arch of Titus with its reliefs showing Titus's triumph after the capture of Jerusalem in 70 AD; the Pantheon, a round temple with a huge dome (rebuilt during the reign of Emperor Hadrian, 117–38 AD); Trajan's column (completed AD 113), which now bears a statue of Saint Peter; and the tomb of Emperor Hadrian, which was converted into a medieval castle called Castel Sant'Angelo. The best-preserved Roman baths, those of Caracalla and Diocletian, were built in the third century AD, but ruins remain of the *thermae Trāiānī* on the Esquiline Hill above the Colosseum.

Sometimes inscriptions on the monuments give us some information of their origin and function, but it is only by combining the archaeological finds with the frequent references to localities in Rome found in the works of Roman writers that we obtain factual knowledge about the topographical history of Rome. As far as most of the major buildings are concerned, we know both when and by whom they were constructed, and we are familiar with a great many historical events that are connected with the individual monuments.

Be sure to make full use of the maps. In addition to the map of ancient Rome on the inside of the cover of *RŌMA AETERNA* and detailed maps of the Forum and its surroundings on pp. 6 and 10. Here you will find all the names of buildings and localities mentioned in the text. The chronological survey on pp. 24–25 provides further support. The acquaintance with ancient Rome that you obtain by studying this chapter will stand you in good stead in later chapters when you come to read about historical events that have taken place in and around the metropolis of the Roman world.

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Palātium et Capitōlium: 1–57

- 2–3: *vīgintī mīlia*: accusative of extent of space with partitive genitive *passuum*.
- 9: *patet*: “lies open” (Cap. XXV).
- 11–12: *quibus*: ablative of means; *Rōmulus...mūnīvisse dīcitur*: nominative and infinitive with passive verb.
- 22: *ad septentrionēs*: “to the north” (Cap. XVI).
- 30: *habētur*: “is considered” (Cap. XXVIII).
- 38–39: *Iovī...deābus*: datives with *cōnsecrāvit*.

Forum Rōmānum: 58–184

- 63–65: Livy tells the story of the Lacus Curtius (*ab Urbe Conditā*, 7.6): an enormous chasm mysteriously opened up in the forum; consulting the gods, the seers proclaimed that the spot would have to be consecrated if Rome were to realize its power. The young Marcus Curtius, believing Rome's greatest potential lay in its valor and weapons, armed himself and, astride his horse, leapt into the chasm, making himself a votive offering on behalf of his city.
- 76: See note on *vēnīre* vs. *vēnīre* in grammar section above.
- 88: *verba faciunt*: “make a speech,” so too *ōrātiōnēs...habērent* (ll.91–92).
- 89–91: At the Battle of Antium (modern Anzio on the southwest Italian coastline above Naples) in 338 BC, the Romans took the ships' prows (*rōstra*, named from their visual similarity to a bird's beak) to decorate the speakers' platform.
- 78: *quō*: adverb of place to which (Cap. XXV); cf. *unde* (l.93): adverb of place from which.
- 101–103: *Illa aedēs duās iānuās vel portās habet, quae tum dēmum clauduntur cum per tōtum imperium populī Rōmānī terrā marīque pāx facta est*: *cum* here is purely temporal, as shown by the *tum* (Caps. XXIX and XXXVII).
- 104–105: *bis tantum*: “only twice” (Cap. IV); in fact, Augustus boasted that the gates had been closed three times in his lifetime, for a total of five times.
- 113: *cūrant nē*: *verba cūrandī* (Cap. XXVII).
- 117–118: *rēgēs...habitāvisse dīcuntur*: nominative and infinitive with passive verb.
- 119–120: *cēterīs omnibus sacerdotibus Rōmānīs praefectus est*: *praeficere* + dative.
- 125: *habētur*: see note for line 30.
- 140: *vēneunt*: see note on *vēnīre* vs. *vēnīre* above.
- 147–148: *cum*: with indicative because it points to specific time: *eō tempore...cum*.

- 162: Ennius lived from about 239 to 169 BC. He had a great influence on Roman verse; he is sometimes called the Father of Latin poetry.

Urbs marmorea: 185–263

Urbis incendium et domus aurea Nerōnis: 264–295

- 213: *ferī posse*: see grammar notes above.
- 230: *accēpisset*: pluperfect subjunctive in a subordinate clause in indirect statement in secondary sequence.
- 247–249: *lavātum*: accusative supine of purpose (Cap. XXII); *natandō*, *currendō*, *luctandō*: gerunds, ablative of means (Cap. XXVI).
- 266–268: *Nerō...dīcitur iniisse*: for the nominative and infinitive with a passive verb, see Cap. XIII; *iniisse* = *inīvisse* (Cap. XLIX).
- 274: *funditus*: adverb, “from the bottom/foundation,” “totally” (cf. l.299).

Imperātōrēs Flāvii: 296–320

- 304: *rēs sacrae quās Titus Iūdaeīs victīs adēmit*: *adimere* + a dative of disadvantage (see Cap. XXXVIII), “take away from.”

Trāiānus et Hadriānus: 321–352

- 325: *forum faciendum cūrāvit* = *cūrāvit ut forum facerētur*.
- 339: *templum praeclārum*: the prefix *prae-* before adjectives and adverbs has intensive force (“very...”); cf. *carmine praeclārō* (l.366).
- 342–343: *ad...versus* = *adversus* + accusative: to, toward (Cap. XX).

Orbis caput: 353–370

- 363: *nīl nisi Rōmānum quod tueātur habet*: “he has nothing that he can see that is not Roman (i.e., part of Rome)”; *quod tueātur*: relative clause of tendency/descriptive relative clause, see Cap. XXXIX.

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

āra, -ae	altar
balneae, -ārum (pl.)	public baths
basilica, -ae	basilica
bibliothēca, -ae	library
casa, -ae	cottage, hut
cloāca, -ae	sewer
concordia, -ae	concord
cūria, -ae	curia (division of the people, Senate-House)
discordia, -ae	disagreement, discord
flamma, -ae	flame
prōra, -ae	prow
rēgia, -ae	royal palace
statua, -ae	statue
thermae, -ārum (pl.)	public baths
tuba, -ae	trumpet

2nd

aerārium, -ī	state treasury
candelābrum, -ī	candelabrum
clīvus, -ī	slope, sloping street
focus, -ī	hearth
laurus, -ī	laurel
mausōlēum, -ī	mausoleum
metallum, -ī	metal
monumentum, -ī	memorial, monument
morbus, -ī	disease, illness
plēbēīi, -ōrum (pl.)	plebians
prōmunturium, -ī	headland, promontory
rōstrum, -ī	beak, beaked prow
sacrificium, -ī	sacrifice
simulācrum, -ī	image, statue
stadium, -ī	running track

stāgnum, ī	pool, pond
strāmentum, ī	straw
triumphus, ī	triumph
vestibulum, ī	forecourt
vīcus, ī	street, village

3rd

aedēs, -is (f.)	temple, <i>pl.</i> house
aes, aeris (n.)	copper, bronze, money
arx, arcis (f.)	hilltop, citadel
cōsul, -is (m.)	consul
factiō, -ōnis (f.)	party, faction
genetrīx, -īcis (f.)	mother
later, -eris (m.)	brick
longitūdō, -inis (f.)	length
magnitūdō, -inis (f.)	size, greatness
odor, -ōris (m.)	smell
ōrātor, -ōris (m.)	speaker, orator, envoy
orīgō, -inis (f.)	beginning, origin
palūs, -ūdis (f.)	fen, swamp
pecus, -udis (n.)	farm animal, sheep
pōns, pontis (m.)	bridge
pontifex, -icis (m.)	high priest
sēdēs, -is (f.)	seat, abode, dwelling
senātor, -ōris (m.)	senator
ultor, -ōris (m.)	avenger
vetustās, -ātis (f.)	age, old age, long existence

4th

ductus, -ūs	leadership, command
porticus, -ūs (f.)	portico, colonnade
senātus, -ūs	senate, assembly, sitting

VERBA**-āre**

(collocō) collocāre	place
(cōnsecrō) cōnsecrāre	consecrate

(cremō) cremāre	burn, cremate
(dēdicō) dēdicāre	dedicate
(glōriōr) glōriārī	boast
(incohō) incohāre	start work on, begin
(locō) locāre	place
(praecipitō) praecipitāre	throw, fall, rush headlong
(probō) probāre	approve of, prove
(renovō) renovāre	renew, resume
(restō) restāre	remain, be left
(sacrō) sacrāre	consecrate
(siccō) siccāre	dry, drain
(superō) superāre	cross, surpass, overcome, defeat, remain
(triumphō) triumphāre	celebrate a triumph
-ēre	
(ārdēō) ārdēre, arsisse, arsum	burn
(ēmineō) ēminēre, ēminuisse	stick out, project, emit, utter
(exerceō) exercēre, -cuisse, -citum	exercise, practice, worry
(splendeō) splendēre	shine
(voveō) vovēre, vōvisse, vōtum	promise, vow
-ere	
(absūmō) absūmere (< sūmere)	consume, waste, destroy
(adimō) adimere (< emere)	take away (from), steal
(collābor) collābī (< lābī)	fall down, collapse
(dēdūcō) dēdūcere (< dūcere)	lead/bring down, launch
(dēpōnō) dēpōnere (< pōnere)	put/lay down, deposit
(dēstruō) dēstruere (< struere)	demolish
(expellō) expellere (< pellere)	drive out, expel
(exstinguō) exstinguere, -tinxisse, -stinctum	extinguish, put out, kill, annihilate
(exstruō) exstruere (< struere)	erect, build
(incendō) incendere, -cendisse, -censum	set on fire, inflame
(indūcō) indūcere (< dūcere)	lead, bring (in), introduce
(praeficiō) praeficere (< facere)	put in charge of

(reficiō) reficere (< facere)	restore, repair
(restituō) restituere, -tuisse, -tutum	rebuild, restore, reinstate
(tegō) tegere, tetigisse, tactum	cover, conceal
(ulcīscor) ulcīscī, -ultum	revenge, avenge

-īre

(ēveniō) ēvenīre (< venīre)	happen, fall by lot
-----------------------------	---------------------

irregular

(ineō) inīre (< īre)	enter (upon), begin
(vēneō) vēnīre	be sold

ADIECTĪVA**1st/2nd**

aereus, -a, -um	of bronze/copper
aeternus, -a, -um	eternal, everlasting
amplus, -a, -um	large, big
anniversārius, -a, -um	annual
arcuātus, -a, -um	arched
augustus, -a, -um	venerable, majestic
aurātus, -a, -um	gilded
dīvīnus, -a, -um	divine
dīvus, -a, -um	divine, (<i>m.</i>) god
domesticus, -a, -um	domestic, household
fīrmus, -a, -um	strong, stable, firm
īnsānus, -a, -um	mad, insane
interiectus, -a, -um	situated between
latericius, -a, -um	of brick
marmoreus, -a, -um	made of marble, marble
praeclārus, -a, -um	splendid, excellent
quadrātus, -a, -um	square
rotundus, -a, -um	round
sacer, -cra, -crum	holy, sacred
splendidus, -a, -um	shining, splendid
subterrāneus, -a, -um	underground
vīcēsīmus, -a, -um	twentieth

3rd**celeber, -bris, -bre**

crowded, well-known

illūstris, -re

brilliant, illustrious

interior, interius

interior, inner (part of)

triumphālis, -e

triumphal

ADVERBIA**ibīdem**

in the same place

tertium

for the third time

XXXVII: TRICESIMVM SEPTIMVM: TROIA CAPTA (Vergil)¹

[Ex Vergiliū Aenēidis librō II, solūtīs versibus]

I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION

The introductory chapter on the city of Rome is now followed by an account of the history of Rome as told by the Romans themselves. The origins of Rome are lost in conjecture, so here poetic imagination has full scope. From a wish to link the prehistory of Rome with the city that had once fought so bravely against the Greek heroes arose the legend of the Trojan hero *Aeneas*, who after his flight from Troy and seven years' wanderings finally made his way to Latium and there prepared the eventual foundation of Rome.

This theme was treated by the poet Vergil (*Pūblius Vergilius Marō*, 70–19 BC) in his famous poem the *Aeneid* (Latin *Aenēis*). As Vergil tells the story, Aeneas had been chosen by the gods themselves to lay the foundations of the later Roman Empire, as it had been prophesied in divine revelations.

To a certain extent, Vergil had the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey* of Homer as his models. The first six books (*librī*) of the *Aeneid*, in which he tells of Aeneas's wanderings, are related to the *Odyssey*, which deals with the wanderings of Odysseus (Ulysses), and books VII–XII, in which the wars in Latium are described, can be compared with the Trojan War as described in the *Iliad*.

Like its Greek models, the *Aeneid* is written in hexameters, the usual meter for epic poems in Greek and Latin. Although you are not yet able to read Vergil's verses in their original form, Ørberg has composed a prose version based on the wording and style of Vergil, and some important passages (printed in *italics*) have been left unchanged. This prose version of the first part of the *Aeneid*, which takes up the next four chapters, can form the basis for a later study of Vergil. That is, Caps. XXXVII–XL present a prose version of the narrative in *Aeneid* I–IV.

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

Cap. XXXVII corresponds with the second book (*liber secundus*) of the *Aeneid*. It contains a description of the fall of Troy (*Trōia*) and the flight of Aeneas, as told by the hero himself to queen *Dīdō*, who offered him hospitality in Carthage (*Karthāgō* or *Carthāgō*). The chapter begins with a brief mention of the legendary kings of Latium from *Sātūrnus* (whose reign was called the “golden age”: *‘aetās aurea’ quae vocātur*) to *Latīnus*. Then we are told how the Greeks succeeded in entering Troy hidden in a huge wooden horse and about the heroic fight of the Trojans against the invaders. When king Priam (*Priamus*) is killed and the battle lost, Aeneas flees from the burning city with his old father *Anchīsēs*, his son *Ascanius*, and his wife *Creūsa*. Creusa gets lost during the flight; the others, however, reach a safe spot outside the city together with many other fugitives.

A note on the reading

On p. 31, you will find two sets of numbers: the line numbers of the frame narrative in *RŌMA AETERNA* and the verse numbers for the six original verses of the *Aeneid*. The numbers in italics indicate verse numbers in the *Aeneid*, Book II. *RŌMA AETERNA* follows this procedure throughout: italicized numbers refer to the line in the *Aeneid*, while plain numbers refer to the line of the chapter’s narrative.

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Aborīginēs: 1–19

- 2–4: *tantā iūstitiā fuisse dīcitur ut nec servīret...nec habēret...sed...essent*: result clause (Cap. XXVIII).
- 6–7: *mōs Rōmānōrum est ut* + subjunctive: noun clause of result (see grammar section above): “it is the custom of the Romans to...”; *mēnse Decembrī, diēbus fēstīs*: both ablatives of time.
- 12–14: [*Euandrō*] *Faunus...arva colenda dēdit*: see section on gerund/gerundive in Cap. XXXVI.

Equus Trōiānus: 20–88

- 36–40: *aliī...iubēbant...aliī censēbant*: both enclosing indirect statements; *aliī...volēbant* + complementary infinitive.
- 43: *monuit nē*: indirect command.
- 45–46: *ūlla putātis/dōna carēre dolīs Danaum*: ablative of separation with the intransitive *carēre*.

- 49: *et = etiam*: even.
- 53: *Paulō post*: ablative of degree of difference: “a little later (later by a little).”
- 56–57: *capitibus ērēctīs oculisque ārdentibus*: ablative absolute; *Trōiānōs perterritōs*: the prefix *per-* has intensive force (“very...”); cf. *perturbantur* (l.67).
- 59: *complexī*: nominative of deponent perfect participle, sc. *anguēs*; object is *parva corpora*.
- 62–63: *bis collō longa corpora sua circumdant*: see grammar section on dative with compound verbs (above).
- 69: *quod...laeserit*: perfect subjunctive in a subordinate clause inside indirect discourse (*ōrātiō obliqua*) (Cap. XXXVI).
- 72: *machina illa*: i.e., the horse.
- 78: *Etiam tunc Cassandra, filia Priamī virgō cui rēs futūrās prae-dīcentī nēmō umquam crēdēbat, fātum Trōiae cīvibus suīs prae-dīxit*: see above, POINTS OF STYLE; *cui...praedicentī*: dative with *crēdēbat*.

Somnium Aenēae: 89–124

- 96–98: *monuit ut...caperet atque...fugeret*: indirect command (see section on indirect commands above).
- 99: *tēque hīs...ēripe flammīs*: ablative of separation.
- 102: *Hic*: adverb: “at this point.”
- 103–104: *unde...vidērent*: adverbial purpose clause.

Priamus: 125–180

- 126: *nē...quidem*: “not even” (Cap. XXVI).
- 133: *Trōiānī ab hostibus numero superiōribus occīsī sunt*: ablative of respect (Cap. XI).
- 135: *pugnābātur*: intransitive verb used impersonally in the passive (Cap. XXXIII).

- 140–141: *cupidus...auxilium ferendī*: objective genitive of gerund (and accusative object) with *cupidus* (Cap. XXV).
- 150: *ut primum*: “as soon as.”
- 152: *moriturus*: future active participle: “intending to die.”
- 156–157: *Iam nōn tēlis egēmus, sed auxiliō deōrum*: ablative of separation.
- 160: Polites is trying to reach the altar (where his family is) because altars are places of sanctuary (but Pyrrhus ignores the right of suppliants to safety at an altar).
- 169: *irā permōtus*: ablative of cause (Cap. XXV); *permōtus*: see note on line 57, above.

***Anchīsēs*: 181–240**

- 184: *vēnit eī in mentem*: a very frequent idiom.
- 187: *filiō sē videndam obtulit*: “she offers herself to her son to be seen (in order that he might see her)”: see section on gerund/gerundive in Cap. XXXVI.
- 196–198: *Dī caelestēs, sī mē vītam prōducere voluissent, hanc patriam mihi servāvissent*: Contrafactual condition in past time (Cap. XXXIII).
Nōlō urbī captae superesse: see section on compound verbs + dative case, above.
- 199–202: The verb in the indirect command (*perderet*) is in secondary sequence, as the main verb (*haerēbat*) determines the sequence; when *dum* signals continuous action in the past, it takes the present (*suādent*).
- 223: *ā laevā (parte)*: thundering on the left was propitious.

***Creūsa*: 241–285**

- 271: *navigandum est*: see section on gerund/gerundive in Cap. XXXVI.

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

aura, -ae	breeze, wind
barba, -ae	beard
coma, -ae	hair
īnsānia, -ae	madness
iūstitia, -ae	justice
māchina, -ae	machine

2nd

arvum, -ī	(plowed) field
clipeus, -ī	round shield
dolus, -ī	guile, deceit, cunning
famulus, -ī	servant, slave
prōdigium, -ī	prodigy
rēgnum, -ī	kingship, kingdom, reign
socius, -ī	companion, partner, ally
somnium, -ī	dream
tēlum, -ī	spear, weapon
vinculum, -ī	bond, chain

3rd

aedēs, -ium (f. pl.)	house
anguis, -is (m./f.)	snake, serpent
crīnis, -is (m.)	hair
culmen, -inis (n.)	summit, top, peak, roof
cūstōs, -ōdis (m./f.)	guardian, guard
dēfēnsor, -ōris (m.)	defender
fragor, -ōris (m.)	crash
frōns, -ondis (f.)	foliage, leaves
fūnis, -is (m.)	rope
horror, -ōris (m.)	dread, horror
iuventūs, -ūtis (f.)	youth, young men
lūmen, -inis (n.)	light
mōlēs, -is (f.)	mass, bulk, effort
nepōs, -ōtis (m./f.)	grandson

nūmen, -inis (<i>n.</i>)	divine will
onus, -eris (<i>n.</i>)	burden, load
pavor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	trembling with fear
rōbur, -oris (<i>n.</i>)	oak, strength, force
speciēs, -ēī (<i>f.</i>)	sight, appearance, shape, semblance, sort
trabs, -bis (<i>f.</i>)	beam, ship
turris, -is (<i>f.</i>) (<i>acc. -im; abl. -ī</i>)	tower

4th

gemitus, -ūs	groaning
lūctus, -ūs	grief, moaning
nātus, -ūs	birth
ululātus, -ūs	howling

irregular

fās (<i>indec.</i>)	divine law, right
------------------------------	-------------------

VERBA**-āre**

(conclāmō) conclāmāre	shout, cry out
(dominōr) dominārī	be master, rule
(explicō) explicāre, -uisse, -itum	extricate, unfold, explain
(fabricō) fabricāre	forge, build, construct
(flagrō) flagrāre	burn
(immolō) immolāre	sacrifice, immolate
(incitō) incitāre	set in motion, stir up
(īnstauro) īnstaūrāre	renew
(micō) micāre	flicker, flash
(obtruncō) obtruncāre	slaughter, kill
(penētrō) penētrāre	penetrate
(recūsō) recūsāre	reject, refuse
(resonō) resonāre	resound
(sonō) sonāre, -uisse, -itum	sound
(tonō) tonāre, -uisse	thunder
(trucidō) trucidāre	slaughter

-ēre

(commoveō) commovēre (< movēre)	move, excite, cause
(egeō) egēre, eguisse	need
(fulgeō) fulgēre, -sisse	flash, gleam
(haereō) haerēre, -sisse, -sum	stick, cling

-ere

(alloquor) alloquī (< loquī)	speak to, address
(amplector) amplectī, -xum	embrace, cling to
(atingō) attingere, -tigisse, -tactum	touch, reach, arrive at, adjoin
(āvehō) āvehere (< vehere)	carry off, pass, go away
(comprehendō) comprehendere, -disse, -nsum	seize, include
(concēdō) concēdere (< cēdere)	go (away), yield, give up, concede, allow
(concīdō) concīdere, -disse, -sum	kill, beat
(cōfugiō) cōfugere (< fugere)	flee for refuge
(coniciō) conicere, -iēcisse, -iectum	throw, put
(contingō) contingere, -tigisse, -tactum	touch, be close to, be granted, to, happen
(corripiō) corripere (< rapere)	seize, rebuke
(dēcurrō) dēcurrere (< currere)	run down
(dēfigō) dēfigere (< figere)	fix, thrust, paralyze
(dēmittō) dēmittere (< mittere)	let fall, drop, lower
(discumbō) discumbere, -cubuisse, -cubitum	take one's place at table
(ēlābor) ēlābī (< labī)	slip out, escape
(ērigō) ērigere (< regere)	lift up, erect, cheer
(gemō) gemere, -isse, -itum	groan (for)
(īnspiciō) īnspicere, -spexisse, -spectum	examine, inspect
(pandō) pandere, -disse, -passum	spread out
(patefaciō) patefacere (< facere)	open, reveal

(perfundō) perfundere (< fundere)	wet, drench, imbue, fill
(praedicō) praedicere (< dicere)	foretell, prophesy
(prōdūcō) prōducere (< dūcere)	extend
(repetō) repetere (< petere)	return to, repeat, claim back, recall
(respiciō) respicere, -exisse, -ectum	look back (at), heed, regard, have regard for
(restinguō) restinguere, -xisse, -ctum	put out, extinguish
(revīsō) revīsere (< vīsere)	revisit, visit
(ruō) ruere, -isse, -tum	rush, tumble down
(stringō) stringere, -nxisse, -ctum	draw, unsheathe
(tendō) tendere, tetendisse, tentum/tēsum	stretch, spread, lay, make one's way, insist
(vādō) vādere	advance, go
irregular	
(cōnferō) -ferre (< ferre)	bring (together), carry
(efferō) efferre (< ferre)	carry/bring out, lift, elate

ADIECTĪVA

1st/2nd

benignus, -a, -um	kind, benevolent
diūturnus, -a, -um	long, prolonged
fēstus, -a, -um	holiday, festal
īnfīrmus, -a, -um	weak
inultus, -a, -um	unavenged
laevus, -a, -um	left
occultus, -a, -um	hidden, secret
patrius, -a, -um	of the father, paternal
pavidus, -a, -um	terrified
profugus, -a, -um	fleeing, (<i>m.</i>) fugitive
rēgius, -a, -um	royal
saucius, -a, -um	wounded
scelerātus, -a, -um	accursed, criminal
suprēmus, -a, -um	highest, sovereign

suspectus, -a, -um

suspected, suspect

vāstus, -a, -um

desolate, vast, huge

3rd**āmēns** (*gen. āmēntis*)

out of one's mind, mad

caelestis, -ecelestial, (*m. pl.*) gods**inēluctābilis, -e**

inescapable, inevitable

inūtilis, -e

useless

tener, -era, -erum

tender, delicate

ūber, -eris

fertile

ADVERBIA**dūdum**

a little while ago, formerly

nēquīquam

in vain, fruitlessly

pariter

equally, together

penitus

from within, deep, far

quā

which way, where

quondam

once, some day

undique

from all sides

XXXVIII: DVODEQVADRAGESIMVM: PIVS AENEAS (Vergil)¹

[Ex Vergiliū Aenēidis librō III, solūtīs versibus]

I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION

This chapter is a prose version of Book III of the *Aeneid*. Aeneas tells the story of his and his companions' dangerous voyage through the Aegean and Ionian Seas to Sicily. At the foot of Mount Etna (*Aetna*), they have a grim encounter with the Cyclops *Polyphēmus*, whom Odysseus (*Ulixēs*) shortly before had blinded. Aeneas ends his report with his father's death and burial during the Trojans' brief sojourn in Sicily as the guests of king *Acestēs*.

In antiquity, navigation was suspended in winter. Aeneas spends the winter building a fleet of twenty ships (*classem vīgintī nāvium*), and he is not ready to sail (*ventīs vēla dare*) until the early summer (*prīmā aestāte*).

On his long journey, Aeneas brought with him the Penates (*dī Penātēs*) of Troy—the name is used to refer to the tutelary gods not only of a household, but also of a city. In a dream, they tell Aeneas to depart from drought-stricken Crete and sail on to Italy, where a brilliant future awaits him and his descendants in a new city.

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Penātēs: 1–47

- 2: *classem vīgintī nāvium*: genitive of description.
- 3: *prīmā aestāte*: “in the beginning of summer.” Here *prīmus*, -a, -um is used in the sense of “the first part of...” (cf. *summus*, *medius*, *infimus*, Cap. XXXVI).

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

- 4: *Anchīsēs nāvēs dēdūcere et ventīs vela dare iubēbat*: i.e., “*nāvēs dēdūcite et ventīs vela date!*”; *ventīs vela dare*: “give sails to the winds”—a regular Latin idiom for “start sailing.”
- 16: *ventus secundus*: a “following” wind fills the sails and is thus “favorable.”
- 26–28: *cum...coepit: cum inversum* (Cap. XXXVII); *adēo...ut*: result clause.
- 35: *eōrum*: refers to *posterōs tuōs* (l.34); *nē recūsāveris!*: negative command with perfect subjunctive (Cap. XXXII).
- 39: *Age, surge...*: *age* here is an exhortation (“act!” “get going,” Cap. V).
- 45: *paucīs* (sc. *hominibus*) *relictīs*: ablative absolute, i.e., “left behind.”

***Mare Īonium*: 48–74**

- 60: *ad septentrionēs*: the north stars, the north (Cap. XVI).
- 62: *quō*: adverb of place to which.
- 66: *nautīs metuendum*: dative of agent with gerundive.
- 69: *clipeum, quem cuidam hostī adēmerat*: “took away from,” dative of disadvantage with verbs of depriving, such as here, with *adimere* (Cap. XXXVIII).

***Andromachē et Helenus*: 75–129**

- 76–77: *rēgnō...potitum esse*: see grammar section above.
- 79: *certior fierī*: see grammar section above.
- 83: *ut Aenēam cōspexit venientem*: *ut* + indicative meaning “when” (see Cap. XXXVII).
- 90: *nē dubitāveris!*: negative command (see note to line 35 and Cap. XXXII).
- 92: *parvā vōce*: ablative of manner (Cap. X).
- 102–103: *quaesivit “quae...vītanda essent?”*: indirect question (Cap. XIX); *ex mōre*: “according to custom.”
- 108: *tibi nāvīgandum est*: passive periphrastic (Cap. XXXI) with a dative of agent.

- 118: *praestat*: “It is better.”
 124: *age, vāde*: see note to line 39.

***Mōns Aetna*: 130–213**

- 134–135: *cum...vidēret*: *cum* causal; *proficīscendī*: objective genitive with *signum*.
 139: *merō*: < *merum*, -ī: unmixed wine, ablative with *implēvit*.
 141–142: *dī potentēs*: vocative, *potentēs* + genitive: “with power over”; *secundī*: “favorable/favorably.”
 156: *ignārī viae*: objective genitive (Cap. XXV).
 176–177: *quis esset?...unde venīret?*: indirect questions (Cap. XIX).
 181: *nōmine*: ablative of respect (Caps. XI, XIX).
 182–185: *vīdi eum...iacentem...frangere ac...dēvorāre*.
 193–195: *Vix haec dīxerat, cum ipsum Polyphēmum pāstōrem caecum inter pecudēs suās ambulāntem vīdērunt et lītora nōta petentem*: this sentence illustrates the importance of “keep reading, note endings and word groupings.” Except for *Vix haec dīxerat*, *cum...vīdērunt*, all words refer to Polyphemus, modified by an appositive (*pāstōrem caecum*) and two participles (*ambulāntem, petentem*). Each participle is grouped with the words that apply to it: He is walking *inter pecudēs suās* and seeking familiar shores (*lītora nōta*).

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

aurōra, -ae	dawn
patera, -ae	bowl
pestilentia, -ae	plague, pestilence
unda, -ae	wave
vidua, -ae	widow

2nd

antrum, -ī	cave, cavern
fūmus, -ī	smoke
iuvencus, -ī	young bull, bullock
lūcus, -ī	sacred grove
nimbus, -ī	rain cloud
posterī, -ōrum (m. pl.)	descendants, posterity
scopulus, -ī	rock
sepulcrum, -ī	tomb, grave

3rd

aequor, -ōris (n.)	level surface, sea
genitor, -ōris (m.)	father
gurgēs, -itis (m.)	whirlpool, flood
lapis, -idis (m.)	stone, milestone
pondus, -eris (n.)	weight
terror, -ōris (m.)	fright, terror
vātēs, -is (m./f.)	prophet(ess), seer
volucris, -is (f.)	bird

4th

flētus, -ūs	weeping
occāsus, -ūs	setting
ortus, -ūs	rising, sunrise, origin

VERBA**-āre**

(adstō) adstāre	stand by
(invitō) invitāre	invite, entertain
(moror) morārī	delay, stay, stop
(praestō) praestāre	furnish, fulfill, surpass
(sacrificō) sacrificāre	make a sacrifice

-ēre

(exterreō) exterrēre (< terrēre)	scare, terrify
(reor) rērī, ratum	reckon, think, believe
(torreō) torrēre, -uisse, -tōstum	scorch, parch

-ere

(agnōsco) agnōscere, -ōvisse	recognize
(circumvehō) circumvehere (<i>< vehere</i>)	go around, travel around
(concurrō) concurrere (<i>< currere</i>)	hurry together, clash
(condō) condere, -didisse, -ditum	put, hide, found, close
(contremēscō) contremēscere, -muisse	tremble, quake
(digredior) digredī, digressum	depart
(discernō) discernere	distinguish
(ēdō) ēdere, -didisse, -ditum	emit, bring forth, make
(ēmittō) ēmittere (<i>< mittere</i>)	send out, emit, utter
(excēdō) excēdere (<i>< cēdere</i>)	go away, depart
(incīdō) incīdere, -disse, -sum	cut into
(linquō) linquere, līquissē	leave
(pallēscō) pallēscere, -luisse	grow pale
(prōvehō) prōvehere (<i>< vehere</i>)	carry forward, convey
(subdūcō) subdūcere (<i>< dūcere</i>)	draw up, beach, lead off
(vescor) vescī	feed on, eat (+ <i>abl.</i>)

-īre

(experior) experīrī, -pertum	try, experience
(potior) potīrī, potītum	get possession of (+ <i>abl.</i>)
(sepeliō) -elīre, -elīvisse, -ultum	bury

irregular

(circumeō) circumīre (<i>< īre</i>)	go around/about, outflank
(dēferō) dēferre (<i>< ferre</i>)	carry, bring, report, confer, denounce

ADIECTĪVA**1st/2nd**

cavus, -a, -um	hollow
curvus, -a, -um	curved, crooked, bent
extrēmus, -a, -um	outermost, utmost, last

infandus, -a, -um	horrible, unspeakable
longinquus, -a, -um	remote
repentinus, -a, -um	sudden
stupefactus, -a, -um	amazed, stupefied
trepidus, -a, -um	alarmed, in panic
tumidus, -a, -um	swollen

3rd

horribilis, -e	horrible, terrifying
incrēdibilis, -e	incredible, unbelievable
īnfōrmis, -e	unshapely, ugly
potēns (gen. potētis)	powerful, master(ing)
supplex (gen. supplicis)	suppliant

ADVERBIA

adeō	to such a degree, so, too
citō	quickly
interdiū	by day
nīmīrum	without doubt, evidently
noctū	by night, at night
quoad	until
totidem	as many

PRONŌMINA

egomet	I (myself)
quīcumque, -quae, -quod	whoever, whatever, any

ALIA

certiōrem facere	inform
sē cōferre	go, betake oneself

XXXIX: VNDEQVADRAGESIMVM: KARTHAGO (Vergil)¹

[*Ex Vergiliū Aenēidis librō I, solūtīs versibus*]

I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION

It was the will of the gods that Aeneas should found a new kingdom in Italy, but not all the gods were favorably disposed. The goddess Juno hated all Trojans. The Trojan prince Paris, acting as judge in the beauty contest among the three goddesses Juno, Venus, and Minerva, had wounded her by giving the prize to Venus. Furthermore, she knew that the descendants of the Trojans were destined to destroy her favorite city, Carthage. Therefore, she did her utmost to prevent Aeneas and his companions from reaching their goal. It became a hard undertaking—a huge effort (*mōlis*) in Vergil's words—for Aeneas to lay the foundation of the Roman people:

*Tantae mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem!*²

When the Trojans leave Sicily, Juno persuades Aeolus, ruler of the winds, to send a violent storm, which scatters the ships and drives them southward to the coast of Africa. Here Aeneas meets his mother, the goddess Venus, who shows him the way to Carthage. This city had just been founded by queen Dido, who had migrated from Tyre (*Tyrus*) in Phoenicia (*Phoenicē*) after her brother, the king of Tyre, had murdered her husband. Queen Dido gives the exiled Trojans a heroes' welcome in her new city and, deeply infatuated with their gallant commander, she questions him about the fate of Troy and about his adventures. This concludes the first book of the *Aeneid*, which is retold in this chapter.

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

2. *Tantae mōlis* is *genetivus quālitātis*, genitive of description (Caps. XIX, XXXVI).

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Iūnō: 1–26

- 3: *Iūnō...dīlēxisse dīcitur*: nominative and accusative with passive verb (Cap. XIII)
- 6: *ōlim*: can refer to the present as well as the past: “at some time.”
- 7–11: Core of sentence: (Juno) *Trōiānōs ā Latiō arcēbat*. This core is introduced by a subordinate clause: (Juno) *nōndum oblīta erat causam (īrae ac dolōris)*. Although there are no subordinating conjunctions, the two participles modifying the implied subject supply the subordination: (*id*) *metuēns* and *memor (vetēris bellī)*—i.e., because she was afraid and mindful of the war (genitive with verbs of remembering and forgetting, Caps. XXV, XXXII). A relative clause (*quod ad Trōiam prō cārīs Argīs gesserat*) modifies *vetēris bellī*; *causam īrae ac dolōris* (the direct object) is in apposition to *iūdicium Paridis* (the judgment of Paris).
- 16–18: *Mēne...posse? Nōnne...scelus?*: These reported questions are in the accusative and infinitive construction (like regular indirect statement) because they are rhetorical; that is, Juno isn’t really asking a question. Rhetorical questions in indirect discourse use the accusative and infinitive construction; genuine questions in indirect discourse go into the subjunctive according to sequence of tense.
- 19: *dignus* + ablative (Cap. XIX).
- 20–22: Although Latin word order is flexible, it is not random. Note how the words that go with the participle are grouped with it: *Tālia animō incēnsō sēcum cōgitāns*. Often in a Latin sentence, you have to be patient and keep reading to find the word that you might expect to come first in English.
- 26: *formā pulcherrimam*: ablative of respect; so too at line 193.

Tempestās: 27–90

- 28: *ubi haec audīvit*: “when...” (Cap. XXXVII).
- 35: *quibus*: dative with *licuit*.
- 36–37: *Utinam...effūdissem*: past contrafactual wish (Cap. XXXIII).
- 41–43: *trēs...trēs...ūnam*: all with *nāvēs* understood; *in saxa latentia*: “onto hidden rocks.”

- 44: *in puppim*: pure *i*-stem (Cap. XVI).
 56: *dictō citius*: “faster than you could say it.”
 60: *quibus*: ablative of means with *scopulōs* as antecedent; we might say every wave is broken *on* the rocks.
 65: *cibō*: ablative with *egentēs*.
 77: *ignārī...malōrum*: objective genitive (Cap. XXV).
 78: *graviōra*: object of the vocative *passī*.
 82: *mittite*: for *omittite*: “send away,” “let go of.”
 83: *forsan* = *fors* (*sit*) *an*: *fors* in this expression (“it might happen that” + subjunctive³) is used adverbially; *et* = *etiam*: “even,” “also.”
 87: *māximīs cūrīs*: ablative of cause with *aeger*; *vultū*: “with his (facial) expression.”
 90: *dubīū utrum...crēdant*: indirect question (Cap. XIX).

***Venus genetrīx*: 91–156**

- 94: *quaerere quī hominēs incolerent*: indirect question (Cap. XIX).
 96: *cui*: dative with *obviam iit* (“whom she went to meet”); remember forms of *quī* at the beginning of a sentence = *et is*; therefore, *cui* = *et eī* (Cap. XXV).
 101: *quam tē appellem?*: deliberative subjunctive: “how should I address you”—Aeneas can see by her appearance that she is no ordinary mortal, perhaps not mortal at all (Cap. XIX).
 103: *forsitan ipsa Diāna sīs*: “perhaps you are Diana herself.” For *forsitan*, see note on line 83.
 104: *sīs nōbīs fēlix et doceās...*: hortatory subjunctive (Cap. XXX); the hortatory subjunctive in the 2nd person (“please be... please teach us”) is not common but is found in poetry and prohibitions (*nē* + perfect subjunctive).⁴
 109–111: *tālī honōre...dignam*: *dignus*, *-a*, *-um* + ablative of respect (Cap. XIX); *nōbīs mōs est...gestāre et...vēnārī*: *mōs est* can be followed by the infinitive, in addition to *ut* + subjunctive (Cap. XLIV; Cap. XXXVII, note to lines 6–7).

3. In poetry and in later Latin, *forsitan* and *forsan* can take the indicative.

4. 2nd person hortatory subjunctive is also found with indefinite subjects and in early Latin.

- 118: *multa simulāns*: “feigning many things (to be true which aren’t)” (*simulāre*: pretend something *is* which *is not*; *dissimulāre*: pretend that something *is not* which *is*).
- 122: *suāsīt ut...excēderet*: indirect command (Cap. XXVII).
- 128: *opēs, -um* (f. pl.): resources, wealth (Cap. XXXIV).
- 133–135: *Ō dea, sī ā primā origīne repetēns labōrēs nostrōs nārrem, ante vesperam finem nōn faciam!*: ideal (“should-would”) condition (Cap. XXXIII, XLI).
- 137–138: *sum pius Aenēās*: *pius* means “dutiful,” one distinguished by *pietās*, “dutiful conduct”; while it has religious overtones (dutiful conduct to the gods), it is also secular and includes conduct to others and to the state.
- 144: *vidēris*: “you seem” + nominative and infinitive; *quī...advēneris*: perfect subjunctive in a relative causal clause (“because”).
- 151: *quid*: “why.”
- 152: *dextrās*: sc. *manūs*.
- 154: *nē quis...posset*: negative purpose clause (Cap. XXVIII).

***Dīdō rēgīna*: 157–268**

- 167: *mīrābile dictū*: *dictū* is ablative (respect) of the supine (Cap. XXII).
- 171–172: *rēbus suis...cōnfīdere*: compound intransitive verb with the dative (Cap. XXXVII).
- 176: *nostrī labōris*: genitive with *plēna*.
- 177: *En*: interjection “look, there is Priam”; *laudī*: dative of possession; *sunt...sua praemia laudī*: “renown/glory has its own rewards.”
- 186: *aurō*: ablative of price (Cap. VIII).
- 189: *manūs inermēs*: *inermis* = *sine armīs*.
- 195–196: *Quālis...tālis*: a simile: “just like...so too.”
- 199–200: *quōsdam sociōs*: *quīdam*: certain companions (Cap. XXVIII).
- 204–205: *tē ōrāmus nē*: indirect command; *nōn vēnimus ut*: purpose clause.

- 206: *victīs*: dative of possession.
- 209: *nostrum*: partitive genitive with *paucōs*.
- 210: *quō*: ablative of comparison with *iūstior* (Cap. XXIV).
- 211–213: mixed condition: the protasis (*quem sī dī vīvum servant*) is present subjunctive ideal (“should”), while the double apodosis (*referet, nec paenitēbit*) is future indicative (“more vivid”).
- 219: *Quis genus Aenēadum, quis Trōiae nesciat urbem?* (“Who would not know the family of the sons of Aeneas, who would not know the city of Troy?”): rhetorical question (the answer to “who doesn’t know” is “no one”), part of the potential subjunctive (Cap. XLI).
- 221: *adeō*: modifies *obtūnsa*.
- 227–228: *utinam...afforet*: see footnote 4 in this chapter and Cap. XLIII.
- 237: *Aenēās...deō similis*: *similis* takes either the dative, as here, or the genitive (XLII.327–328).
- 240–244: Reading help: vocative (*Ō rēgīna*) followed by two relative clauses, “you who” (*quae sola...miserāta es, quae...recipis*) and the main clause (*grātiās...nōn possumus*) and a wish (*dī...ferant*).
- 252: *tēctīs nostrīs*: dative with intransitive *succēdite*.
- 253–254: i.e., *similis fortūna voluit mē quoque iactātam cōsistere hāc terrā*.
- 255: *nōn ignāra malī*: objective genitive (Cap. XXV); *miserīs*: dative with intransitive *succurrere*.
- 256: *haec memorāns*: *memorāre* sounds like our “remember,” but it always involves speech: i.e., “mention,” “remind of,” “speak about.”
- 263–264: *praemittit...quī...nūntiet...dūcat*: relative clause of purpose.

Cupīdō: 269–316

- 270–272: *cōsilia...ut Cupīdō...veniat atque...incendat*: noun clause giving the content of Venus’s plans (*cōsilia*); *prō*: “in the place of”; *dictō...pāret*: dative with intransitive *pārere*; the perfect passive participle *dictō* can be thought of as a condensed clause: “what she has said.”

- 280–281: *puerō tuendō incenditur*: ablative of means of the gerundive (Caps. XXXI, XXXVI).
- 304: *conticuēre* = *conticuērunt* (Cap. XXXVI).
- 307–308: *amor...cognōscere...et...audire*: complementary infinitives (instead of the objective genitive of the gerund or gerundive) is poetical.
- 311–314: *ut Graecī Trōiam īnsidiīs cēpissent atque incendissent, ut ipse cum patre et filiō ex urbe flagrantī fūgisset et fātō pulsus per maria errāvisset*: *ut* = how; both *ut* clauses are indirect questions subordinate to *nārrāvit quae ipse vīderat* and are thus in the subjunctive according to sequence of tense.

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

caterva, -ae	band, troop, crowd
hostia, -ae	sacrificial animal
industria, -ae	hard work, industry
īnsidiae, -ārum (pl.)	ambush, plot, wiles
ministra, -ae	female servant
nebula, -ae	mist, fog
praeda, -ae	booty, prey
procella, -ae	violent wind, gale
purpura, -ae	purple
rēgina, -ae	queen
superbia, -ae	arrogance, pride

2nd

Āfricus, -ī	southwest wind
aper, aprī	wild boar
Auster, -trī	south wind
cervus, -ī	stag, deer
Eurus, -ī	southeast wind
fundāmentum, -ī	foundation
iūdicium, -ī	judgment, trial, court
pontus, -ī	sea

scēptrum, -ī	scepter
solium, -ī	throne
thēsauros, -ī	treasure, treasury
torus, -ī	bed, couch
vadum, -ī	ford, shallows

3rd

Aquilō, -ōnis (m.)	north (northeast) wind
dapēs, -um (f. pl.)	feast, meal, food
dēcor, -ōris (m.)	beauty, grace
discrīmen, -inis (n.)	distinction, grave danger
error, -ōris (m.)	wandering, error
fax, facis (f.)	torch
fūnus, -eris (n.)	funeral, death
honōs/honor, -ōris (m.)	honor, high office
quiēs, -ētis (f.)	rest, repose, sleep
rūpēs, -is (f.)	crag, rock
sīdus, -eris (n.)	star, heavenly body
sūs, -suis (m./f.)	pig
tridēns, -entis (m.)	trident
vertex, -icis (m.)	whirlpool, peak, pole

5th

rabiēs, -ēī	rage, fury
--------------------	------------

VERBA**-āre**

(apparō) apparāre	prepare, arrange
(bellō) bellāre	wage war, fight
(cēlō) cēlāre	conceal (from)
(dūrō) dūrāre	harden, hold out, last
(explōrō) explōrāre	reconnoiter, investigate
(gestō) gestāre	carry
(incūsō) incūsāre	reproach, accuse
(īnstō) īnstāre	press, urge, insist
(lībō) lībāre	make a libation, pour
(lūstrō) lūstrāre	irradiate, purify, survey

(miseror) miserārī	feel sorry for, pity
(nō) nāre	swim
(nūdō) nūdāre	bare, leave unprotected
(onerō) onerāre	load
(sēdō) sēdāre	allay, appease, calm
(simulō) simulāre	imitate, copy, pretend
(temptō) temptāre	try (to influence), attack
(vēnor) vēnārī	go hunting, hunt
(versō) versāre	turn over, ponder

-ēre

(aboleō) abolēre, -lēvisse, -litum	efface, obliterate
(arceō) arcēre, arcuisse, arctum	keep away
(immineō) imminēre (< minēre)	overhang, be imminent
(paeniteō) paenitēre, paenituisse	regret, repent
(pendeō) pendēre, pependisse	hang
(rigeō) rigēre	be stiff

-ere

(abripīō) abripere (< rapere)	drag away, carry off
(addūcō) addūcere (< dūcere)	lead, bring (to)
(appellō) appellere (< pellere)	drive, bring (to)
(circumagō) circumagere (< agere)	cause to turn around
(circumfundō) circumfundere (< fundere)	pour, spread around
(colligō) colligere (< legere)	gather, collect
(compellō) compellere (< pellere)	drive together, compel
(conticēscō) conticēscere, conticuisse	fall silent
(disiciō) disicere, disiēcisse, disiectum	scatter, break up
(dispellō) dispellere (< pellere)	drive apart
(ēlūdō) ēlūdere, ēlūsisse, ēlūsum	deceive, mock
(gignō) gignere, genuisse, genitum	beget, create, bear
(gradior) gradi, gressum	walk, proceed
(impellō) impellere (< pellere)	strike, drive, compel

(incēdō) incēdere (< cēdere)	walk, advance, occur
(obstupēscō) obstupēscere, obstupuisse	be stunned/astounded
(pingō) pingere, pinxisse, pictum	paint, embroider
(praemittō) praemittere (< mittere)	send in advance
(resurgō) resurgere (< surgere)	rise again, be restored
(scandō) scandere, scandisse, scansum	climb, mount
(succēdō) succēdere (< cēdere)	enter, succeed, follow
(succurō) succurrere (< currere)	(run to) help
(volvō) volvere, voluisse, volutum	roll, turn (over), ponder
-īre	
(dēveniō) dēvenīre (< venīre)	come, arrive
(feriō) ferīre	strike, hit, kill
(ōrdior) ōrdīrī, orsum	begin (to speak)

ADIECTĪVA

1st/2nd

bellicōsus, -a, -um	warlike
fortūnātus, -a, -um	fortunate
impius, -a, -um	impious
īnscius, -a, -um	not knowing, unaware
intentus, -a, -um	intent, attentive
obtūnsus, -a, -um	blunt, dull

3rd

crēber, -ris, -re (-bra, -brum)	frequent, numerous
egēns (<i>gen.</i> egentis)	poor, needy
memor (<i>gen.</i> memoris)	mindful, reminding

PRONŌMINA

vōsmet	you, yourselves
--------	-----------------

ADVERBIA**clam**

secretly

forsan

perhaps, maybe

obviam

(go to) meet, oppose, in the way

paulātim

little by little, gradually

saltem

at least, anyhow

XL: QVADRAGESIMVM: INFELIX DIDO (Vergil)¹

[*Ex Vergiliū Aenēidis librō IV, solūtīs versibus*]

I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION

The main focus of Book IV of the *Aeneid* is the love story of Dido and Aeneas. After the death of her husband, Dido swore never to contract a new marriage (*coniugium*), but now she tells her sister Anna that she has fallen in love with her noble guest. Anna urges her to forget her dead husband and obey the dictates of love. During a hunting expedition, Dido and Aeneas seek shelter from the storm in a cave, where they are united by the design of Juno. The queen begins a relationship with Aeneas that she calls *coniugium*.

The rumor of this affair spreads rapidly among men and gods. When Jupiter hears that Aeneas is about to forget his divine mission, he sends Mercury to order him to sail: “*Nāviget!*”² Aeneas makes secret preparations for departure, but Dido suspects mischief and begs him not to leave her. When he tries to explain that he is destined by the gods to seek a new homeland in Italy, she flies into a rage, and after violent reproaches and threats, she retires without waiting for his reply. Aeneas makes his ships ready for sea, and when neither threats nor entreaties have any effect, Dido sees no alternative but to seek death. She tells her sister to build a pyre in the palace yard on the pretext of wanting to burn everything that reminds her of her faithless husband: his weapons, his clothes, his portrait, and their conjugal bed. By night, while Dido lies sleepless in her palace, Mercury orders Aeneas to put to sea at once, and at dawn the queen sees the Trojan fleet leaving the harbor. She heaps reproaches on herself and invokes the Furies to take revenge on Aeneas and his descendants. Then she mounts the pyre, draws Aeneas' sword, and throws herself on it. Her last words on the pyre, taken from the close of the fourth book (verses 651–660), can be read on p. 80.

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

2. Jussive subjunctive (Cap. XXXI).

Books V and VI of the *Aeneid* are here treated summarily. From Carthage the Trojans sail to Sicily, and Aeneas celebrates the anniversary of his father's death with sacrifices and games. Meanwhile the Trojan women set fire to the ships, but a rainstorm sent by Jupiter extinguishes the fire. Aeneas punishes the women by leaving most of them in Sicily when he sails on to Italy. In Campania he visits the Sibyl at Cumae. She takes him to the underworld, where he sees his dead father, who shows him the great Romans of the future from Romulus to Augustus. He ends with the famous words about the destiny of the Roman as ruler of the world:

*Tū regere imperiō populōs, Rōmāne, mementō.³
Hae tibi erunt artēs: pācisque impōnere mōrem,
parcere subiectīs et dēbellāre superbōs.*

Livy's history of Rome, *ab Urbe Conditā*, picks up the narrative of Roman history in the next chapter with Aeneas' struggles in Italy, treated by Vergil in Books VII–XII of the *Aeneid*.

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Flamma amōris: 1–45

- 4: *fixa*: with both *vultus* and *verba*.
- 8: *nōn dubitō quīn*: see grammar section above.
- 10–12: *mihi, nullī virō*: datives (with *certum* and *iungere*, respectively); *coniugiō*: ablative; *esset...potuī*: present contrafactual condition with a modal verb in the apodosis (see on *posse* in grammar section above).
- 12: *huius ūnīus*: genitive with *amōrī*, which is dative with the compound verb *succumbere*.
- 15–16: *velim*: subjunctive in a wish, followed by the content of the wish (*dēvoret, percutiat*) without *ut* (see grammar section for Cap. LV).
- 19: *habeat*: jussive subjunctive (Cap. XXXI).
- 25: *quī hostēs nōs cingant*: indirect question (Cap. XXIX).
- 35–36: *ante omnēs Iūnōnī, cui coniugia cūrae sunt*: “for whom marriages are an object of care” (double dative, Cap. XXXVI).

3. *Mementō* is the future imperative of *meminisse* (Cap. XXVI).

Fāma vėlōx: 46–69

- 47: *vēnātum ire parat*: supine (“they prepare to go hunting”).
- 58: *malōrum atque mortis*: genitives with *causa*; *rēgīnae*: dative.
- 62: *quā*: ablative of comparison with *vėlōcius* (Cap. XXIV).
- 66: *variō sermōne*: ablative with *complēbat* (Cap. XXXVII).
- 68: *rēgnī*: genitive with *oblītōs* (Caps. XXV, XXXII).

Nūntius deōrum: 70–164

- 73–74: *Karthāgine*: locative (see summary above).
- 75: *ideō*: “for that reason”; *nōn ideō...sed ut*: structure markers for the sentence.
- 79: *quā spē*: ablative of cause.
- 80: *Nāviget*: jussive subjunctive (Cap. XXXI).
- 84–85: *Erat illī ēnsis*: dative of possession (Cap. XII).
- 87: *uxōrius*: this adjective, meaning “of or belonging to a wife,” suggests a man too fond of his wife, not a compliment in Latin.
- 88: *rēgnī rērumque tuārum*: genitive with *oblītōs* (Caps. XXV, XXXII).
- 96–97: *Heu, quid agat?...audeat?...ōrdiātur?*: deliberative questions (Cap. XXIX).
- 101: *Quī = Et eī* (Cap. XXV).
- 106: *dissimulāre*: see note 118 for Cap. XXXIX.
- 107: *dextra (manus) data*: i.e., as a pledge.
- 111: *sī quid bene dē tē meruī*: “If I have deserved well from you in any way”; *bene/male merēre* (and *merērī*): “to earn favor/disfavor by one’s behavior.”
- 112: *miserēre meī*: *miserērī* + genitive.
- 116–117: *dum...dēstruat...abdūcat*: anticipatory subjunctives with *dum*.
- 117–119: *Sī...habērem, sī quī...lūderet...vidērer*: present contrafactual condition (Cap. XXXIII).
- 125: *animam dūcere*: “to draw breath.”

- 132–133: *deum...intranterem.*
- 134: *dēsine*: with the ablative of separation *tuīs querēllīs* and the complementary infinitive *incendere*.
- 138: *perfide*: vocative (as is *improbe*, l.146).
- 142–143: *Itane vērō?*: sarcastic; *Putāsne eam rem dīs superīs cūrae esse?*: double dative (Cap. XXXVI).
- 159–160: *ōrat* with a double construction: + accusative (*coniugium*) and two indirect commands (*neque ut...careat, sed ut...expectet*).
- 162–163: *dum...doceat*: anticipatory subjunctive.

Rogus Dīdōnis: 165–268

- 167: *taedet eam vitae*: see above on impersonal verbs.
- 176–177: *rationem quae...reddat...aut...solvat*: descriptive relative clause (see grammar section above).
- 178: *curīs exsolvere*: ablative of separation.
- 181: *quō perīi*: *quō* is the instrumental ablative of the relative pronoun referring to *lectum iugālem*: Dido blames her present state on her conjugal relationship with Aeneas.
- 188: *crīnibus passīs*: ablative absolute, *passīs* from *pandere* (“spread out,” “unkempt”)—here as a part of her ritual as a priestess.
- 193: *ovantēs*: the marginal note in your text explains this participle as “*superbē gaudēre*,” and from Dido’s perspective, that is a good interpretation. The participle of *ovāre*, however, means “exulting, joyful, triumphant” and does not in itself carry the sense of arrogance.
- 197: *quīn morere*: *quīn* plus the imperative (see grammar section above).
- 202: *deinde*: the mark (∩) over *ei* shows that these two vowels should be taken together (synizesis).
- 204: *illa*: i.e., Dido.
- 206–208: future condition.
- 209–210: *Varium et mutābile semper fēmina*: the qualifiers (*varium, mutābile*) are neuter because he is speaking of women as a category. He does not mean Dido specifically, but all women—“Always changing and inconstant is woman.”

- 210: *noctī ātrae*: dative with the compound verb *immiscēre* (Cap. VIII).
- 214: *ovantēs*: see note on l.193.
- 219: *ex altā turri*: pure *i*-stem (Cap. XVI).
- 221: *advena*, -*ae*: one of the few masculine nouns of the first declension, like *agricola*, *poēta*, *nauta*, *incola*, *pīrāta*.
- 226: *ēn*: interjection: “Behold! Look!”
- 229–230: *Etiam sī pugnae fortūna dubia fuisset, quem metuī moritūra*: past contrafactual protasis (*sī...fuisset*) followed by an indicative rhetorical question, the answer to which is “no one” (see Cap. XLI).
- 230–233: *Facēs in castra tulissem, carīnās flammīs dēlēvissem, filium et patrem cum genere exstīnxissem—et ipsa mēmet super eōs iēcissem*: pluperfect subjunctive in past potentials (Cap. XLI): “I could have brought...destroyed...annihilated...thrown.”
- 238–240: *implōret...videat...fruātur...cadat*: subjunctive of wish (see grammar section above).
- 243–244: *sit...exoriātur*: jussive subjunctives (Cap. XXXI).
- 245–246: *aliquis...quī...persequātur*: descriptive relative clause (Cap. XXXIX).
- 252: *morāta* < *morārī* (Cap. XXXVIII).
- 256: easier order: *vīxī et perēgī cursum quem fortūna dēderat*.
- 259: *virum* = *maritum meum*.
- 260–261: *sī...carīnae*: contrafactual condition (Cap. XXXIII).
- 264: *ferrō collāpsam*: “having fallen on the sword.”
- 266–268: *nōn aliter quam sī...capta essent...volverentur*: conditional clause of comparison in secondary sequence.

Excerpta Aenēidis: 269–299

- 272–273: *quae causa tantum ignem accenderit...*: indirect question.
- 281–282: *cum...longī erroris taedēret*: see grammar section above on impersonal verbs.
- 284: *quamquam...factī suī paenitēbat*: see grammar section above on impersonal verbs.

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

advena, -ae	immigrant, foreigner
aula, -ae	palace
capra, -ae	goat
carīna, -ae	keel, ship
exuviae, -ārum (pl.)	clothing, armor
famula, -ae	servant girl, maid
plūma, -ae	feather
potentia, -ae	power
querēlla, -ae	complaint
spēlunca, -ae	cave, grotto
vāgīna, -ae	sheath
venia, -ae	favor, leave, pardon

2nd

astrum, -ī	star, constellation
coniugium, -ī	marriage
cōnūbium, -ī	marriage, intermarriage
dīvum, -ī	the open sky
iaculum, -ī	throwing-spear, javelin
iussum, -ī	command, order
mandātum, -ī	order
praedictum, -ī	prediction, prophecy
rogus, -ī	funeral pyre
thalamus, -ī	inner room, bedroom, marriage bed
vīsum, -ī	sight

3rd

aethēr, -eris (m.)	heaven, upper air, ether
altāria, -ium (n. pl.)	altar
ārdor, -ōris (m.)	burning, fire, ardor
cinis, -eris (m.)	ashes
cubīle, -is (n.)	bed, couch
cupīdō, -inis (f.)	desire, passion

fortitūdō, -inis (f.)	strength, bravery
fulmen, -inis (n.)	flash of lightning
grandō, -inis (f.)	hail
tigris, -is (m./f.)	tiger
ultrix, -icis (f.)	avenging

4th

amictus, -ūs	mantle, cloak
discessus, -ūs	departure
luxus, -ūs	extravagance, luxury
ūsus, -ūs	use, practice, usage

5th

effigiēs, -ēī	likeness, portrait
----------------------	--------------------

irregular

nefās	impious act, crime
--------------	--------------------

VERBA**-āre**

(advocō) advocāre	call, summon
(circumstō) circumstāre, circumstetisse	stand around, surround
(cūctōr) cūctārī	hesitate
(dēbellō) dēbellāre	finish the war, subdue
(dissimulō) dissimulāre	conceal
(festinō) festināre	hasten, hurry
(implōrō) implōrāre	beseech, implore
(īnflammō) īnflammāre	kindle, inflame
(mandō) mandāre	assign, order
(obstō) obstāre, obstitisse, obstitum	stand in the way
(ostentō) ostentāre	display ostentatiously
(ovō) ovāre	exult, rejoice
(reputō) reputāre	think over, reflect on
(sōlor) sōlārī, sōlātum	comfort

-ēre

(admoneō) admonēre (< monēre)	remind, advise, urge
(admoveō) admovēre (< movēre)	move near, put to
(immisceō) immiscēre, -scuisse, -xtum	mingle, merge (into)
(miseror) miserērī, miseritum	feel pity for
(taedet) taedēre, -duisse, -sum	be tired/sick of

-ere

(abrumpō) abrumpere (< rumpō)	break off
(concumbō) concumbere, -uisse, -itum	sleep (with)
(ēvānēscō) ēvānēscere, -uisse	vanish, disappear
(excipō) excipere (< capere)	receive, catch
(exsequor) exsequī (< sequī)	pursue, go on, execute
(exsolvo) exsolvere (< solvere)	set free, release
(fervō) fervere, feruisse	boil, seethe, swarm ⁴
(furō) furere, furuisse	be mad, rage, rave
(illūdō) illūdere, -ūsisse, -ūsum	make a game of, fool
(incumbō) incumbere, -uisse, itum	lie down on
(insequor) insequī (< sequī)	follow, pursue
(nectō) nectere, nexuisse, nexum	attach
(obmūtēscō) obmūtēscere, -tuisse	become speechless
(peragō) peragere (< agere)	carry out, complete
(refellō) refellere, refellisse	refute
(sēcēdō) sēcēdere (< cēdere)	withdraw, rebel
(struō) struere, struxisse, structum	arrange, contrive, devise
(subiciō) subicere, -iēcisse, -iectum	put under, subject, add
(succumbō) succumbere, -uisse, -itum	yield, submit
(suscipiō) suscipere (< capere)	take up, receive, adopt

4. The more common form of this verb is *ferveō, fervēre, ferbuisse; fervēre* (3rd declension) is less frequent. Here, it helps with the meter of the line.

-īre

(**praesentiō**) **praesentīre** (< **sentiō**) have a presentiment of

ADIECTĪVA**1st/2nd**

ālātus, -a, -um	winged
attonitus, -a, -um	stunned, stupefied
dilēctus, -a, -um	beloved, dear
hibernus, -a, -um	winter-, of winter
infēsus, -a, -um	hostile
insepultus, -a, -um	unburied
invictus, -a, -um	unconquered, invincible
moribundus, -a, -um	dying
perfidus, -a, -um	faithless, treacherous
placidus, -a, -um	quiet, calm, gentle
placitus, -a, -um	pleasing, agreeable
sanguineus, -a, -um	bloodstained, bloodshot
uxōrius, -a, -um	attached to one's wife

3rd

dēmens (<i>gen. dēmēntis</i>)	out of one's mind, mad
iugālis, -e	marriage, conjugal
mūtābilis, -e	changeable
praeceps (<i>gen. praecipitis</i>)	headlong, precipitous
vigil (<i>gen. vigilis</i>)	wakeful, watchful

PRONŌMINA

mēmet	me, myself
--------------	------------

ADVERBIA

extemplō	at once
omnīnō	altogether
sponte	of my/his own accord

XLI: VNVM ET QVADRAGESIMVM: ORIGINES (Livy)¹

[Ex T. Līvī ‘*ab Urbe Conditā*’ librō I.1–7, nōnnūllis mūtātis et praetermissis]

I. ØRBERG’S INTRODUCTION

This and the following four chapters present the early history of Rome as recorded in the first “book” of the great Roman historian Livy (*Titus Līvius*), who lived in the time of Emperor Augustus (59 BC–AD 17). In 142 “books,” Livy treated the history of Rome from the foundation of the city—hence the title of his work *ab Urbe Conditā*—down to his own time. Of this voluminous work, only 35 books have survived. These books cover the earliest period until 293 BC (books I–X), the Second Punic War, 218–201 BC (books XXI–XXX), and the subsequent period until 167 BC (books XXXI–XLV). We know the content of the lost books in broad outline through ancient summaries, called *periochae* (περιοχαί).

Livy’s first book deals with the foundation of Rome and the seven Roman kings from *Rōmulus* to *Tarquinius Superbus*, who was expelled from Rome in 509 BC. In Cap. XLI, Livy’s prose has been somewhat abridged and simplified, but even here many passages stand unaltered as Livy wrote them 2,000 years ago. In the following chapters, the text gets closer and closer to the original, and from XLV.22, the text is abridged, but otherwise unchanged.

Livy’s account has been supplemented with excerpts from Ovid (*Ovidius*), especially from the didactic poem *Fāstī*, in which he goes through the Roman calendar and relates the legends connected with particular dates (e.g., the founding of Rome on April 21st).

What the Romans related about the origin of their city has little to do with reality. Livy is fully aware of this, but his delight in the old legends is unmistakable. In his preface, he says that if any people has the right to trace its origin to the war god Mars (the father of Romulus), it is the Roman people.

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

Livy begins his history with the arrival of Aeneas in Latium. He made peace with king *Latīnus*, who gave him his daughter *Lāvīnia* in marriage. This provoked war with the neighboring king Turnus, who was engaged to marry Lavinia. Turnus allied himself with the Etruscans (*Etrūscī*), but he was defeated by Aeneas. Ascanius, the son of Aeneas, founded the city of Alba Longa and became the first of a line of Alban kings. One of these kings, Numitor, was dethroned by his brother *Amūlius*. When Numitor's daughter Rea Silvia bore twins, Amulius ordered them to be exposed in the Tiber, but the boys, Romulus and Remus, drifted ashore. When they were found, a she-wolf was nursing them. Once grown, they killed Amulius and resolved to found a new city on the Tiber. An omen taken from the observation of the flight of birds (*auspīcium*) seemed to favor Romulus, so he founded the city on the Palatine Hill. When Remus ridiculed his brother's work by leaping over the new walls, Romulus killed him. Finally, Livy tells the story of Hercules killing *Cācus* for robbing his cattle. This story explains the origin of the ancient *Āra Māxima* and the worship of the Greek god Hercules (Greek *Hēraklēs*) in Rome (see XXXVI.178–183).

As a supplement to Livy's account of Romulus and Remus, you read the passage in Ovid's *Fāstī* (383–418), in which the poet relates the story of the exposure of the twins and their miraculous rescue.

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Trōiānī et Latīnī: 1–48

- 5–6: *quibus*: dative with *superesse*; *nihil praeter arma et nāvēs superat*: *nihil* is subject of *superesse* (Cap. XVIII: “survive”).
- 9: *ad arcendam vim*: *ad* + accusative of gerund/gerundive to express purpose (Caps. XXXIII, XXXVI).
- 10: *signum pugnandī*: objective genitive (Cap. XXV).
- 12–14: the indirect questions (“*quī mortālēs essent, unde profectī quidve quaerentēs in agrum Laurentem exiissent?*”) are introduced by the participle *interrogātus*.
- 24: *brevī = brevī tempore* (cf. Cap. XXXVI.217).
- 28: *molestē patiēns*: both here and at line 152 (*molestē ferret*), the expression approximates our “taking it badly.”
- 28–29: *advenam sibi praelātum esse*: the accusative and infinitive construction is used in implied indirect statement, which is very common. Turnus declared war because he took it badly (*molestē patiēns*) that a stranger had been preferred to him.

- 32–34: *ut...conciliāret*: purpose clause with *utramque...appellāvit*, not result with *ita*.
- 38–39: *minimē laetus...origīne*: ablative of cause (Cap. XXXVI).
- 41–46: *Aenēās, quamquam tanta...erat ut...implēvisset*: concessive clause (*quamquam*) introducing a result clause (*tanta...ut...implēvisset*); *opibus*: ablative of respect (Caps. XI, XXXIX).
- 47: *quod*: antecedent is *proelium*.

Alba condita: 49–68

- 52: *incolume < incolumis, -e*: “unharmed, safe” (Cap. XXXIII).
- 53–54: *quis...affirmet?* Potential subjunctive in a rhetorical question; *hicine*: interrogative particle = *hicne*.
- 61: *ferē*: adv. “approximately” (Cap. XXXIII).
- 62–66: Reading practice: The core of this long sentence is: *opēs Latīnōrum crēverant. Tantum* provokes the result clause (*ut...ausī sint*); further elaborating the thought is the ablative absolute (*māximē vīctīs Etrūscīs*) and the circumstances under which one might expect the Latins to be threatened—when Aeneas died and Lavinia ruled as regent for Ascanius (*nē morte quidem Aenēae nec deinde inter rēgnum muliebre et Ascaniī pueritiam*).
- 66–68: *Pāx ita convēnerat ut Etrūscīs Latīnisque fluvius Albula, quem nunc Tiberim vocant, finis esset*: result clause (Cap. XXXVII).

Rōmulus et Remus: 69–137

- 74–76: Supply *ortus est* with all the noun/ablative of source combinations.
- 84: *Plūs...vīs potuit*: *posse* alone means “have ability/power,” so “force had more power.”
- 86–88: *fīliae Rēae Silviae*: dative of disadvantage with *adimit*; *cum virginem Vestālem eam lēgisset*: *virginem Vestālem* is predicative: “because he had chosen her as a Vestal virgin.”
- 89: *vī compressa*: i.e., “violated.”
- 100–103: *Ea adeō mītis fuisse dīcitur ut infantibus ūbera praeberet et pāstor rēgius eam linguā lambentem puerōs invēnerit*—*Faustulus eī nōmen fuit*: result clause.

- 104: For the gerundive (*ēducandōs dedit*), see Cap. XXXVI.
- 110: *impetūs faciēbant*: “to attack” (cf. l.115: *impetūs fierī*).
- 116–117: *praedās agere*: *agere* is regularly used for carrying off booty (*praeda*) taken in war.
- 119–121: *nam et iussū rēgis īnfantēs expositōs esse sciēbat et tempus quō ipse eōs sustulisset ad id tempus convenīre*: *sciēbat* introduces a double indirect statement; the second (*tempus...ad id tempus convenīre*) contains a subordinate clause (*quō ipse eōs sustulisset*) in which the main verb is subjunctive (see Cap. XXXVI: subordinate clauses in indirect statement have their verbs in the subjunctive according to sequence of tense).
- 124–127: *Eōdem tempore Numitor...suspiciābatur*: the main clause is actually just a subject, verb, and time marker; *suspiciābatur* is completed by an accusative and infinitive in indirect statement (*nepōtēs suōs servātōs esse*); Numitor’s reasoning is fleshed out by a *cum* clause (*cum...frātrēs*) and an ablative of means of the gerund with objects (*comparandō...*).

Rōma condita: 138–157

- 141–143: *rēgnī*: objective genitive with *cupiditātem*; the indirect question begun by *uter* tells what was at stake in the competition between the brothers (*certāmen ortum est*).
- 149–150: *Rōmulō*: dative with *favēre*.
- 152: *molestē ferret*: see note above for line 28.
- 156: *imperio*: ablative with *potitus est*.

Sacra Herculis īnstitūta: 158–196

- 162–165: *Herculēs...bovēs...ēgisse nārrātor ac...fessus...recubuisse*: nominative and infinitive in an indirect statement dependent on a passive verb (Cap. XXXVI); *mīrā speciē*: ablative of description; *nandō*: gerund of *nāre* (“to swim”), ablative of means.
- 166–167: *ferōx vīribus*: ablative of respect.
- 174: *forās versa*: turned toward the outside; *forās*: adverb of place to which.
- 178: *Quem = Et eum* (Cap. XXV).

- 183–186: The sentence is carried forward by the participles: *Evander... arcessītus...intuēns rogitat*; *quī...esset*: indirect question.
- 189–190: *dicātum irī*: future infinitive passive (Cap. XXIII) in an indirect statement.
- 190–191: *ōlim* means “once, long ago, one day”: i.e., refers to future as well as past; *vocet*: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*.

***Gemellī expositī*: 197–231**

- 203: *recūsantēs*: “making an objection against,” “being unwilling” (here clearly it does not mean “refuse”).
- 205–206: i.e., the river Albula, after Tiberinus drowned in it, was called the Tiber.
- 207: *vidērēs*: indefinite potential subjunctive (see above).
- 208: The apostrophe, or direct address, to the Circus Maximus is a feature of poetry.
- 211: *plūs vigōrīs*: partitive genitive with neuter pronoun; *iste*: i.e., the one that you are carrying, Romulus.
- 214: *in vōbīs*: i.e., Romulus and Remus (so too *vestrae oriġinis*, l.215).
- 215–216: *At sī quis...esset...ferret*: present contrafactual conditions (Cap. XXXIII).
- 217: *Ferret...sī māter egēret*: present contrafactual conditions (Cap. XXXIII); *māter* is subject of both clauses.
- 221: *vāgiērunt* = *vāgīvērunt*; *putārēs*: indefinite potential subjunctive (see above).
- 223: *Sustinet impositōs summā cavus alveus undā* = *cavus alveus puerōs impositōs summā undā sustinet*: “the hollowed bark bore the boys on the top of the waves.”
- 225: *silvīs...opācīs*: dative with compound verb *appulsus* (*ad* + *pellere*).
- 228: *quis crēdat*: rhetorical question (see above); *puerīs*: dative with intransitive *nocuisse*.

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

clāva, -ae	club, cudgel
cōpiae, -ārum (pl.)	resources, troops
cūstōdia, -ae	guard, custody, post
lupa, -ae	she-wolf
pueritia, -ae	boyhood, childhood

2nd

armentum, -ī	(herd of) cattle
auspiciū, -ī	omen taken from birds
avus, -ī	grandfather
conciliū, -ī	assembly, league
līmus, -ī	mud
mātrimōnium, -ī	matrimony, marriage
patruus, -ī	father's brother, uncle
stabulum, -ī	stable

3rd

auctor, -ōris (m.)	originator, founder, advocate, guarantor
conditor, -ōris (m.)	founder
crūdēlitās, -ātis (f.)	cruelty
discrīmen, -inis (n.)	distinction, grave danger
facinus, -ōris (n.)	deed, act, misdeed
latrō, -ōnis (m.)	brigand, robber
linter, -tris (f./m.)	small boat, skiff
necessitās, -ātis (f.)	need, necessity
nōbilitās, -ātis (f.)	renown, nobility, nobles
opēs, -um (f. pl.)	resources, wealth, power, influence
ops, -opis (f.)	power, aid, assistance
primōrēs, -um (m. pl.)	leading men, front ranks
societās, -ātis (f.)	partnership, alliance
sōlitūdō, -inis (f.)	loneliness, lonely place
stirps, -pis (f.)	origin, stock, offspring

vigor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	vigor
virginitās, -ātis (<i>f.</i>)	virginity
vultur, -is (<i>m.</i>)	vulture

4th

adventus, -ūs	arrival
partus, -ūs	(giving) birth
rītus, -ūs	rite, ceremony
saltus, -ūs	wooded hills; narrow pass
situs, -ūs	position, situation
vāgītus, -ūs	wail, squall

VERBA**-āre**

(auspicor) auspicārī	take the auspices
(conciliō) conciliāre	win over
(dicō) dicāre	dedicate
(ēvocō) ēvocāre	call out, summon
(grātulor) grātulārī	congratulate
(lēgō) lēgāre	bequeath, send, delegate
(prōcreō) prōcreāre	engender, beget
(suspīcor) suspīcārī	guess, suspect
(trepidō) trepidāre	be in panic, tremble

-ēre

(praebeō) praebēre, -uisse, -itum	present, offer, show
(spondeō) spondēre, spondisse, spōnsum	pledge, promise, betroth
(tumeō) tumēre, -uisse, -itum	swell

-ere

(abdō) abdere, -didisse, -ditum	hide
(abigō) abigere, -ēgisse, -āctum (<i>< agere</i>)	drive away
(adipīscor) adipīscī, adeptum	obtain
(adolēscō) adolēscere, adolēvisse, adultum	grow up

(arguō) arguere, -uisse, -ūtum	reveal, affirm, accuse
(comprimō) comprimere (<i>< premere</i>)	compress, crush, suppress, rape
(cōfundō) cōfundere (<i>< fundere</i>)	mingle, upset, confuse
(cōsulō) cōsulere, -suluise, -sultum	consult, take counsel
(dēdō) dēdere (<i>< dare</i>)	give up, devote
(dēficiō) dēficere (<i>< facere</i>)	fail, sink, wane, defect
(diffidō) diffidere, -īsum	distrust, despair of
(īcō) īcere, -īcisse, -ictum	strike, make, conclude
(īnstituō) īnstituere, -tuisse, -tūtum	set up, establish, start, appoint, train, instruct
(interimō) interimere (<i>< emere</i>)	kill
(lambō) lambere, -isse, -itum	lick, wash
(opprimō) opprimere (<i>< premere</i>)	press on, overwhelm
-īre	
(intereō) interīre (<i>< īre</i>)	die, perish
(mūgiō) mūgīre, -īvisse, -ītum	low, bellow
(nūtriō) nūtrīre, -īvisse, -ītum	feed, suckle
(sitiō) sitīre, -īvisse, -ītum	be thirsty
(trānsiliō) trānsilīre, -īluisse, -ītum	jump over
irregular	
(īnferō) īnferre (<i>< ferre</i>)	bring (in), cause, inflict

ADIECTĪVA

1st/2nd

ambō, -ae, -ō	both, the two
eximius, -a, -um	choice, outstanding
fētus, -a, -um	having young
fīnitimus, -a, -um	adjacent, neighboring
immātūrus, -a, -um	unripe, premature
immēnsus, -a, -um	immeasurable, endless
lacrimōsus, -a, -um	tearful, sad

opācus, -a, -um	shady
opulentus, -a, -um	wealthy, powerful
orbus, -a, -um	childless, orphaned
prosperus, -a, -um	successful, favorable
sacer, -ra, -rum	holy, sacred
siccus, -a, -um	dry
ūdus, -a, -um	wet
vetustus, -a, -um	ancient, old

3rd

duplex, -icis	double
hostilis, -e	enemy, hostile
mītis, -e	gentle, mild, tame
muliebris, -e	of a woman
pūbēs, (<i>gen. puberis</i>)	mature, grown up (<i>m. pl. adults</i>)
puerilis, -e	of children
sēgnis, -e	slothful, inactive
servīlis, -e	of a slave, servile
virīlis, -e	male, manly

ADVERBIA

falsō	false, deceived, wrong
nusquam	nowhere
ubicumque	wherever

ALIA

iussū²	by order of
--------------------------	-------------

2. From *iussus*, *iussū* (m.) is a noun used only in the ablative singular.

XLII: ALTERVM ET QVADRAGESIMVM: BELLVM ET PAX (Livy)¹

[Ex T. Līvii ‘*ab Urbe Conditā*’ librō I. 8–21, nōnnūllis mūtātis et praetermissis]

I. ØRBERG’S INTRODUCTION

Once Romulus had secured his reign with laws and symbols of power, he increased the number of inhabitants by opening a place of refuge, called an *asylum* (from Greek ἄσυλον, sanctuary), for all kinds of immigrants. There was an influx of men of low rank, slaves as well as free men. The next problem for king Romulus was how to get wives for his new inhabitants. The neighboring peoples were contemptuous of the Romans and banned intermarriage (*cōnūbium*) with them. But Romulus devised a ploy: he invited Rome’s neighbors with their families to games in Rome, and in the middle of the show, he gave a sign to the Roman men to carry off all the marriageable young women.

This outrage brought about Rome’s first war with her neighbors. In the ensuing battle with the *Caenīnēsēs*, Romulus distinguished himself by killing the enemy king and carrying his armor to the Capitol as an offering to *Iuppiter Feretrius*, to whom he vowed a temple. His most dangerous opponents, however, were the Sabines (*Sabīnī*). With the help of the treacherous *Tarpēia*, they managed to take the Capitol, the citadel of Rome, and from there they put the Roman army to flight; but Jupiter stayed the flight of the Romans when Romulus vowed him a temple at the foot of the Palatine Hill—the *templum Iovis Statōris* (XXXVI.172; *Stator* comes from *sistere* and can mean “Stayer”).

During the renewed struggle, the Sabine women threw themselves between the opposing armies and persuaded their fathers and husbands to make peace. Romulus entered into an alliance with *Tatius*, the king of the Sabines. After a few years of joint rule, king Tatius was killed in a riot. This caused Romulus little regret. He also waged successful wars with *Fidēnae*, whose army he ambushed, and with the Etruscan city of *Vēī*.

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

Legend has it that Romulus suddenly disappeared in a violent storm while he was mustering his troops in the *Campus Mārtius*. The senators told the suspicious soldiers that he had been carried off to heaven and deified.

After a short *interrēgnum*, the Sabine Numa Pompilius was chosen king of Rome, and his election was confirmed by *auspicia*. Unlike his warlike predecessor, Numa entered upon peaceful reforms. He built the shrine of Janus (*Iānus*) and had it closed as a sign that Rome was at peace (XXXVI.99–107). He rectified the calendar, giving the year twelve months instead of ten, and organized the worship of the gods.

In the first book of his poem *Ars amātōria*, Ovid tells the story of the Rape of the Sabine Women (as an illustration of what a dangerous place the theater is for young women). And in the *Fāstī* (III.215–228), Ovid tells us how the same women, clasping their babies, rush between the warring Romans and Sabines.

Livy makes use of the legendary history of Rome in his attempt to explain the origin of a great many political and religious institutions. He recounts that Romulus established a bodyguard of twelve *līctōrēs* as an explanation of the attendants who preceded the Roman consuls and other magistrates bearing the symbols of power, *fascēs* (rods) and *secūrēs* (axes). Romulus is also said to have instituted the offering of *spolia opīma* (“choice spoils”), i.e., the spoils taken by a Roman general from the enemy leader he had killed in battle, to *Iuppiter Fere-trius* at his temple on the Capitoline. Several religious institutions are ascribed to the pious king Numa. An augur confirmed his election by *auspicia*, divination from the observation of birds; he founded new priesthoods, including the *virginēs Vestālēs*, priestesses of Vesta (XXXVI.111–115), the *Salīi*, priests of Mars, and the *pontificēs*, who were in control of religious matters in Rome. The term *interrēgnum* was still used in Republican times about a period when Rome had no consuls.

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Fascēs et secūrēs: insignia imperiī: 1–19

7–8: *quī fascēs et secūrēs gerentēs rēgī anteirent: rēgī* is dative with the compound verb *anteirent* (Cap. XXXVII).

Sabīnae raptae: 20–55

21: *cuilibet < quīlibet*: see indefinite pronouns (above).

27–28: *tantam...mōlem*: a *mōles* is literally a huge, heavy mass, but it is used metaphorically (as here) for a huge power, great might.

- 29–30: The indirect question (*num...aperuissent*) proceeds from the ablative absolute (*plērisque rogitantibus*). Only women of ill repute would be in need of asylum, hence the Romans' anger (*aegrē passī sunt*).
- 30–31: *Id Rōmānī iuvenēs aegrē passī sunt*: cf. *molestē patī* (Cap. XLI).
- 34–35: *studiō etiam videndae novae urbis*: objective genitive of the gerundive with *studiō* (Cap. XXV).
- 39: *brevī = brevī tempore* (Cap. XXV).
- 40: *eō*: “to that place” (adv.).
- 50–51: *quō* is ablative of comparison; the antecedent is *liberōrum* (“children, a thing than which nothing is dearer”).
- 53–54: *ad hoc*: adverbial: moreover, in addition.

***Spolia opīma*: 56–97**

- 64: *lentē agere*: “act indifferently, slowly.”
- 68: *sed iīs obviam it*: adverb *obviam* (“in the way”), with a verb of motion (Cap. XXXIX).
- 78: *Iuppiter Feretrī*: vocative.
- 82: *bīna*: distributive adjective (Cap. XXX) with *spolia opīma*; *tantum*: adverb.
- 83–84: Note Latin's fondness for “sandwiching” modifying words: *fortūna id decus adipīscendī*: the gerund (*adipīscendī*) is genitive depending on the noun *fortūna*, and the object of *adipīscendī* lies between them (*adipīscī, adeptum esse*: “arrive at, get, gain”).
- 91–92: *ōrant* introduces an indirect command (*ut...accipiat*) followed by an indirect statement. What they said was “*dā veniam*” (becomes indirect command); *ita rēs Rōmānae coalēscere concordīā possunt* becomes accusative and infinitive construction.
- 94–95: *minus certāminis fuit*: partitive genitive (Cap. XIX).

***Bellum Sabīnum*: 98–173**

- 103: *petītum*: supine (Cap. XXII).
- 105: *aurō pollicendō*: gerundive construction, ablative of means (Cap. XXVI).
- 108: *nē quis = nē aliquis* (Cap. XXII).

- 109–110: Reading help: *Additur fābula* introduces an indirect statement (*Tarpēiam...postulāvisse*); the object of *postulāvisse* (*id*) leads in a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua* (Cap. XXXVI): *quod in sinistrīs manibus habērent*.
- 111: *armillās magnī ponderis*: genitive of description (Cap. XXXVI).
- 117–118: *cupiditāte arcis recipiendae accēnsī*: objective genitive (Cap. XXV).
- 118: *montem subiēre*: “they ascended the mountain.”
- 128–129: *arcē* < *arcēre* (Cap. XXXIX); *dēme* < *dēmere* (Cap. XXXV) = *dē emere*: “take away.”
- 130–131: *templum...quod monumentum sit...voveō*: “wish” (Cap. XXXIX).
- 132: *velut sī sēnsisset auditās precēs: velut* (“as,” “as if,” Cap. XXVI); the pluperfect subjunctive underscores the contrafactual nature of the comparison.
- 132–134: “*Hinc*” *inquit*, “*Rōmānī, Iuppiter Optimus Māximus resistere atque iterāre pugnam iubet!*”: i.e., “*resistite atque iterāte!*”
- 143–144: *Ex equō tum Mettius pugnābat, eō facilius fuit eum pellere*: “it was all the easier to...” (literally: “by which the more easily”).
- 152–153: *crīnibus passīs*: ablative absolute, *passīs* from *pandere*: “spread out,” “unkempt,” a sign of distress; *victō malīs muliebrī pavōre*: ablative absolute with an ablative of means (*malīs*).
- 156: *piget*: Cap. XL.
- 159: *sine alterīs vestrum*: partitive genitive (Cap. XIX).
- 164: *Rōmam*: accusative of place to which.

Fidēnātēs et Vēientēs victī: 174–220

- 175: *Tatius*: for Tatius, king of the Sabines, see lines 63, 104, 171; *Lāvīniī*: locative.
- 177: *aegrē...tulisse*: Cap. XXI (reading notes for line 28).
- 179–180: *Itaque bellō quidem abstinuit*: *bellō* is ablative of separation with *abstinēre* (Cap. XXXVI).
- 185–186: *priusquam...esset quam...vidēbatur*: first clause is an anticipatory subjunctive (“before it could be”); second is indicative (“than it [in fact] seemed it would be”).
- 187: *id agrī*: partitive genitive with a neuter pronoun (more examples in Cap. XLIV).

- 188: *versī*: “turned themselves.”
- 190: *Rōmam*: accusative, not locative, because the messengers had to travel to Rome to make the announcement.
- 191–196: Reading help: Remember that words are grouped together, so even long sentences such as this one can be read from beginning to end: *Ibi [modicō praesidiō relictō (ablative absolute)], ēgressus (cum omnibus cōpiīs) partem militum locīs occultīs sedere (in insidiīs) iussit, ipse (cum parte māiōre atque omnī equitātū) profectus (ad ipsās prope portās Fidēnārum) accēdēns hostēs ad pugnam excīvit*: “having set out, he ordered, while he himself proceeded (*profectus*), approaching (*accēdēns*) Fidenae, he roused,” etc.
- 193–194, 196: *partem militum*; *numerum Rōmānōrum modicum*: partitive genitives (Cap. XIX).
- 198: *simulantēs*: see note XXIX.118.
- 202–203: *prius paene quam...circumagerent*: see above note on lines 185–186.
- 206: *Rōmānī velut ūnō agmine in oppidum irrūpērunt: velut* (“as,” “as if,” Cap. XXVI).
- 208: *vastantēs*: “plundering, ravaging”; *iustī*: with *bellī*.
- 214: *obviam ēgressī*: adverb *obviam* (“in the way”), with verb of motion (Cap. XXXIX).
- 217–218: *urbe validā mūrīs ac sitū ipsō mūnitā abstinuit: urbe validā... mūnitā* is ablative of separation with *abstinēre* (Cap. XXXVI); *mūrīs ac sitū ipsō*: ablatives of means dependent on *mūnitā*.
- 219: *ulciscendī magis quam praedae studiō*: objective genitives with *studiō*; genitives can be combined (here we see a gerund and a noun).
- 220: *pācem petītum...mittunt*: supine + object with verb of motion (Cap. XXXVI).

Rōmulus cōnsecrātus: 221–253

- 222: *Haec Rōmulō rēgnante domī militiaeque gesta sunt*: *gerere* is regularly used of official accomplishments, often called the *rēs gestae*; *domī militiaeque* are both locative, frequently conjoined when referring to a leader’s accomplishments: both domestic and military (at home and on the field).

- 223–224: *in quadrāgintā deinde annōs*: “for” or “in the space of” forty years thereafter.
- 234: *mīltibus*: dative with the compound *abstulerit*: “took away from.”
- 236: *velut sī orbī factī essent*: *velut* (“as,” “as if,” Cap. XXVI); the subjunctive is used to underscore the contrafactual nature of the comparison.
- 241–242: *aliquōs quī...arguerent*: relative clause of characteristic/description (Cap. XXXIX).
- 249: *colant sciantque*: jussive subjunctives (Cap. XXXI).

***Interrēgnum*: 254–280**

- 258–260: *Timor incessit nē...adorīrētur*: fear clause (Cap. XXXII).
- 263–264: *Dēnī simul quīnōs diēs*: distributive numbers (Cap. XXX) = ten sets of five days each (fifty days).
- 270: *populō concedendum esse*: intransitive verb used impersonally in passive (Cap. XL) with the dative—the gerundive with *esse* to show obligation or necessity (passive periphrastic).
- 273: *auctōrēs*: i.e., they would ratify the choice.
- 274–275: *Quod...sit*: subjunctive of wish (Cap. XXXIX); the combination *bonum faustum felix* was a common prayer for the well-being of the republic.
- 276: *vīsum est*: “it seemed” can often mean “it seemed good, it seemed proper, it was pleasing” + dative.
- 276–277: *dignum quī*: descriptive relative clause (see above).
- 279–280: *plēbī permissum est ut*: *permittere* is being used impersonally in passive, followed by a consecutive noun clause (Cap. XXXVII); *quis Rōmae rēgnārent*: indirect question.

***Numa Pompilius rēx*: 281–353**

- 282–283: *vir prūdētissimus iūris dīvinī atque hūmānī: prūdēns* (Caps. XXV, XXVI, XXIX) takes an objective genitive.
- 290: *arcessītus < arcessere* (Cap. XI): “summon”; *adeptus est*: see note above on lines 83–84 (*adipīscī*).
- 291–292: *ad merīdiem versus*: *ad* + accusative *versus*: “toward” (Cap. XX).

- 296: *finīvit*: In Cap. XXIX, you learned this verb as “finish,” a meaning it gets from its base meaning of “put boundaries (*finēs*) around”; the augur does this mentally (*animō*) when he has prayed to the gods.
- 300: *uti...dēclārēs*: wish; *uti* = *utinam*.
- 314–315: *deōrum metum*: objective genitive (Cap. XXV); *Quī* = *metus*.
- 318–320: *eius* = Egeriās; *sē* = Numa; *sacerdōtēs suōs cuique deōrum: suum cuique*: “to each his own” (Cap. XVIII).
- 323–324: *quia...futūrum esset*: implied *ōrātiō obliqua* (see grammar section above).
- 327–328 *plūrēs Rōmulī quam Numae similēs rēgēs fore putābat*: *similis* takes the dative or, as here, the genitive; *fore* = *futūrum esse*; the main clause (*sacerdōtem creāvit*) is introduced by a causal clause (*quia*) followed by a purpose (*nē*).
- 338–339: *quibus...fierent*: implied *ōrātiō obliqua* (see grammar section above).
- 341: *ut esset quem*: descriptive relative clause (see grammar section above).
- 346: *ad turbendam...pācem*: purpose.
- 350: *alius aliā viā*: Cap. X.

Rapina Sabīnārum: 354–377

- 356–357: *sibi quisque*: each for himself (XVIII); *quam velit*: indirect question.
- 359: *signa...dedit*: the missing word is *petita* (with *signa*).
- 362–364: *ut...utque...sīc*: simile.
- 365: *nūllā*, i.e., *nūllā puellā*; *quī*: antecedent *color*.
- 370: *geniālis praeda*: in apposition to *raptae puellae*.
- 377: *scīstī* = *scīvistī*.

Mulierēs pācem faciunt: 378–393

- 380: *ferrō mortīque*: datives with *parātae*.
- 383: *pignora cara*: in apposition to *nātōs*.

- 384: *passīs capillīs*: see above on lines 152–153.
- 386: *quasi sentīrent*: “as if they could understand” (present contra-factual: “they are too young to understand”).
- 388: *tunc dēnique vīsum*: they’ve never seen their grandfathers before.
- 389: *quī vix potest posse coāctus erat*: e.g., in their eagerness to end the conflict, their mothers are encouraging them to say “grandpa.”
- 391: *manūs* is the object of both *dant* and *accipiunt*.
- 393: *scūtī*: genitive with *ūsus*.

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

agna, -ae	ewe lamb
armilla, -ae	bracelet
centuria, -ae	century (unit of 100)
columba, -ae	pigeon, dove
diligentia, -ae	carefulness
militia, -ae	military service

2nd

asylum, -ī	refuge, asylum
commodum, -ī	advantage, interest
fānum, -ī	shrine, consecrated spot
globus, -ī	globe, sphere, ball, band
interrēgnum, -ī	interval between reigns
lituus, -ī	augur’s staff, trumpet
lūdicrum, -ī	sport, toy, show
mīrāculum, -ī	marvel
praesidium, -ī	protection, aid, garrison
quercus, -ī (f.)	oak
spectāculum, -ī	sight, spectacle
spolia, -orum (n. pl.)	spoils, booty

3rd

ancīle, -is (<i>n.</i>)	(sacred) shield
augur, -is (<i>m.</i>)	augur
cīvitās, -ātis (<i>f.</i>)	state, city, citizenship
clādēs, -is (<i>f.</i>)	disaster, defeat
cōntiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	meeting, assembly
decus, -oris (<i>n.</i>)	honor, ornament
fascēs, -ium (<i>m. pl.</i>)	bundle of rods, fasces
flāmen, -inis (<i>m.</i>)	flamen (priest)
foedus, -eris (<i>n.</i>)	treaty
gener, -erī (<i>m.</i>)	son-in-law
indignātiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	indignation, resentment
īnsigne, -is (<i>n.</i>)	mark, token, symbol
interrēx, -rēgis (<i>m.</i>)	intermediary regent
lēgātiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	embassy, deputation
lictor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	lictor
occāsiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	opportunity, chance
pignus, -oris (<i>n.</i>)	pledge
plēbs, -is (<i>f.</i>)	the (common) people
secūris, -is (<i>f.</i>) (<i>acc. -im; abl. -ī</i>)	axe
socer, -erī (<i>m.</i>)	father-in-law
tubicen, -inis (<i>m.</i>)	trumpeter

4th

concursum, -ūs	concourse, encounter
plausus, -ūs	applause

VERBA**-āre**

(clāmitō) clāmitāre	shout loudly
(concitō) concitāre	stir up, incite
(cōnservō) cōnservāre	preserve, maintain
(cōnsociō) cōnsociāre	associate, share
(creō) creāre	create, appoint
(dēclārō) dēclārāre	show, declare, express
(dēsīgnō) dēsīgnāre	mark out

(dīmicō) dīmicāre	fight
(fugō) fugāre	put to flight, rout
(imperitō) imperitāre	govern, be in command
(impetrō) impetrāre	obtain (by request)
(indicō) indicāre	make known, declare
(iterō) iterāre	repeat, renew
(laniō) laniāre	tear
(migrō) migrāre	move, migrate
(mītigō) mītigāre	soothe
(notō) notāre	mark, note, censure
(populor) populārī	ravage, plunder
(prōvolō) prōvolāre	rush forth
(reciperō) reciperāre	recover, recapture
(saltō) saltāre	dance
(spoliō) spoliāre	strip (of arms), rob
(temperō) temperāre	moderate, temper, refrain
(vāstō) vāstāre	lay waste, ravage
(vēlō) vēlāre	cover
(violō) violāre	violate
-ēre	
(piget) pigēre, piguit, pigitum	feel annoyance at, regret
-ere	
(advertō) advertere (< vertere)	turn, direct (toward)
(coalēscō) coalēscere, -uisse, -itum	grow together, coalesce
(cōnscrībō) cōnscrībere (< scrībere)	enroll, compose, write
(convalēscō) convalēscere (< valēre)	grow strong, recover
(corrumpō) corrumpere (< rumpere)	spoil, corrupt, bribe
(dēcernō) dēcernere (< cernere)	decide, settle, fight
(dēlābōr) dēlābī (< lābī)	slip down, descend
(discrībō) discrībere (< scībere)	divide up, distribute
(discurrō) discurrere (< currere)	run in several directions
(ēscendō) ēscendere (< scandere)	ascend, go up

(ēvādō) ēvādere (< vādere)	get out, escape, pass, turn out
(immittō) immittere (< mittere)	send in, send (into)
(inicō) inicere (< icere)	throw/lay on, instill
(invādō) invādere (< vādere)	enter, attack, invade
(irrupō) irrumpere (< rumpere)	break, force one's way
(oppōnō) oppōnere (< pōnere)	put in the way, oppose
(percellō) percellere, -ulisse, -ulsum	strike (with fear)
(perfugiō) perfugere (< fugere)	take refuge
(prōcumbō) prōcumbere, prōcubuisse, prōcubitum	lean forward, bow down
(prōdō) prōdere (< dare)	hand down, betray
(profugiō) profugere (< fugere)	run away, flee
(respergō) respergere, respersisse, respersum	sprinkle, splatter
(sistō) sistere, stetisse, statum	halt, stop
(spernō) spernere, sprēvisse, sprētum	disdain, scorn
-īre	
(adorior) adorīrī (< orīrī)	attack
(coorior) coorīrī (< orīrī)	break out, arise
(exciō) excīre, excīvisse, excitum	call out, summon
(exsiliō) exsilire, -uisse	jump up
irregular	
(anteeō) anteīre (< īre)	precede, surpass
(prōdeō) prōdīre (< īre)	come forward, go forth

ADIECTĪVA

1st/2nd

acceptus, -a, -um	well-liked, popular
aduncus, -a, -um	hooked, curved
amātōrius, -a, -um	of love
assiduus, -a, -um	constantly present
blandus, -a, -um	charming, ingratiating
dēnsus, -a, -um	thick, dense

externus, -a, -um	external, extraneous
fāstus, -a, -um	court-day, work day
faustus, -a, -um	fortunate, favorable
hodiernus, -a, -um	today's, of today
inīquus, -a, -um	uneven, unfair
īnspērātus, -a, -um	not hoped for, unexpected
lentus, -a, -um	slow
modicus, -a, -um	moderate
nefandus, -a, -um	heinous
nefāstus, -a, -um	public holiday
nocturnus, -a, -um	nocturnal, at night
novellus, -a, -um	new, young
obvius, -a, -um	coming to meet
opīmus, -a, -um	rich
peregrīnus, -a, -um	foreign, alien
sāctus, -a, -um	holy
vānus, -a, -um	empty, useless, vain
vīcīnus, -a, -um	neighboring

3rd

agrestis, -e	rustic, boorish, (<i>m.</i>) peasant
concors, (<i>gen.</i> -rdis)	harmonious, concordant
geniālis, -e	marriage-, conjugal
hospitālis, -e	hospitable, guest-
imbellis, -e	unwarlike, cowardly
sublīmis, -e	high (up), aloft
ūtilis, -e	useful

PRONŌMINA

quīlibet, quaelibet, quodlibet	any; no matter what/which
---------------------------------------	---------------------------

ADVERBIA

admodum	very much, quite
aegrē	with pain, unwillingly
aliquamdiū	for some time
cōfestim	at once, immediately

deinceps

in succession, next

impūne

with impunity

proinde

accordingly

CONIUNCTIONĒS**cum...tum**

not only...but also

uti

like, as, how

ALIA**auspicātō**after taking the auspices;
with good omens**dē integrō**

anew

XLIII: QVADRAGESIMVM TERTIVM: ROMA ET ALBA (Livy)¹

[Ex T. Līvii ‘ab Urbe Conditā’ librō I. 22–31, nōnnūllis mūtātis et praetermissis]

I. ØRBERG’S INTRODUCTION

The third Roman king, *Tullus Hostilius*, was warlike, unlike his predecessor. He soon found a pretext for declaring war on Alba Longa, but before the decisive battle, his Alban opponent, *Mettius Fufētius*—under the influence of the danger threatening them both from the Etruscans—proposed that they should settle their dispute with a minimum of bloodshed. There happened to be triplets in both armies, and it was agreed that the three Roman triplets, the *Horātiī*, should fight with the three Albans, the *Cūriātīī*. Livy gives a dramatic description of this triple combat. After the first violent clashes, only one Roman remained alive and unhurt facing three Albans who were more or less wounded. Horatius, the Roman soldier, seeing that he had no chance of holding his own against the other three, took to flight so as to separate his opponents, and with the wounded Albans following him at varying distances, he turned around and killed them one by one.

The triumphant Horatius then returned at the head of the jubilant Roman army, but in front of the Porta Capena, he met his sister, who was betrothed to one of the Curiatii. Seeing her fiancé’s coat on her brother’s shoulder she burst into tears, whereupon Horatius ran his sword through his unpatriotic sister.

According to the law, Horatius should have paid with his own life for this crime, but when the *duumvirī* appointed by the king had condemned him to the gallows for *perduelliō* (properly “high treason”—here in a wider sense), he at once appealed (*prōvocāvit*) to the people. In the subsequent trial (*iūdicium*), he was acquitted, not least because his father defended him. Horatius’ father even declared that his daughter had been justly killed!

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

Mettius, who was now subject to Rome, planned treason against his new masters. During a joint battle against the towns of Fidenae and Veii, he moved his army away from the Romans, ready to join the enemy if they got the upper hand. But the Romans were victorious without Alban support, and Tullus took revenge. Mettius was put to death in a horrible way, and Alba Longa was destroyed and all its inhabitants moved to Rome. The population of Rome was doubled, and Mount Caelius was incorporated into the city. King Tullus Hostilius erected the first senate-house, which was named the *Cūria Hostīlia* (it was pulled down by Julius Caesar, see XXXVI.82–84 and 96–98).

Tullus also waged a successful war against the Sabines. Soon afterward Rome was afflicted with the plague. When the king himself fell ill, he at last began worshiping the gods, but did not perform the religious rites properly. Jupiter struck him with lightning.

The chapter ends with a short extract from the earliest work of M. Tullius Cicerō, written about 85 BC. It is the beginning of a textbook of rhetoric, *dē Inventiōne*, about the art of finding or devising the arguments and subject matter of a speech. Here he takes the trial of Horatius as an example of a difficult case, summarizing arguments on both sides.

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Albānīs bellum indictum: 1–40

- 11–12: *Forte ēvēnit ut...agerent*: noun clause of result (cf. *fit ut/accidit ut*, Cap. XXXII).
- 13: *Albae*: locative.
- 14–15: *Tullus imperāverat suis ut sine morā mandāta agerent*: *mandāta agere* = “execute his commands/commission.”
- 17: *sēgnius*: comparative adverb from *sēgnis*, -e: “more slowly.”
- 19: *rēs repetiverant*: see section on idioms above, cf. 24, 27.
- 24–25: *nisi reddantur, bellum indicere iussōs esse*: condition in *ōrātiō obliqua* (see grammar section above).
- 26–27: *uter...dīmiserit*: indirect question; *ut...vertant*: a wish (“may the gods,” etc.).
- 29: *domum*: accusative of place to which.
- 38: *quoad* = *quō* + *ad*: “up to the point that, until.”

Trigeminōrum pugna: 41–121

- 55: *cupīdō imperiī*: objective genitive (Cap. XXV).
- 56–57: *quō propior es, eō magis scīs*: see grammar section above on correlatives.
- 58–59: *Memor estō*: future imperative (Cap. XXVI).
- 59–60: *hās duās aciēs spectāculō fore Etruscīs*: double dative (Cap. XXXVI).
- 65–66: *cum indole, tum spē victōriae ferōcior erat*: “fiercer not only in character but also in hope of victory,” ablatives of respect (Cap. XXXIX).
- 69: *nec aetāte nec vīribus disparēs*: “unequal neither in age nor strength,” ablatives of respect (Cap. XXXIX).
- 70–80: *deōs patriōs...manūs*: see above on change of pronouns from direct to indirect statement.
- 80–81: *cōnsēderant utrimque prō castrīs duo exercitūs*: “before,” in this case “in front of” their respective camps.
- 84: *ternī*: distributive number (Cap. XXX); *velut*: “as,” “as if” in similes (Cap. XXVIII).
- 90–92: *spectāculō essent*: dative of purpose (Cap. XL).
- 99: *ut...sineret*: “as”; subordinate clause in indirect statement (dependent on *rātus*).
- 100–101: *pugnātum est*: impersonal passive of intransitive verb (Cap. XL).
- 109: *singulī*: distributive number (Cap. XXX).
- 106: *dēfungī*: like *fungī* (Cap. XXXVIII), *dēfungī* is completed by an ablative of means.
- 109–110: *nec spē nec vīribus parēs*: “equal neither in hope nor strength,” ablatives of respect (Cap. XXXIX).
- 114: *sustinentī*: dative with compound verb *dēfigere*, understand *Cūriātiō sustinentī*.
- 117: *eō māiōre cum gaudiō quod*: “with all the more joy because.”

Amor immātūrus: 122–181

- 124–125: *sē...foret*: see section above on change of pronouns from direct to indirect statement.

- 131: *solvit crīnēs*: cf. *crīnibus passīs*, Caps. XL.188 and XLII.13.
- 136–137: *oblīta frātrum mortuōrum vivīque, oblīta patriae: oblīvīscī* + the genitive (Cap. XXV).
- 137: *Sīc eat...*: subjunctive of wish (Cap. XXXIX).
- 140: *bene dē partiā meritis*: cf. Cap. XL, note to line 111.
- 141–144: *secundum* iūdicium..., *secundum* lēgem: *secundum* is here a preposition, meaning “according to, following.”
- 145: *iudicent*: jussive subjunctive (Cap. XXXI).
- 146–147: *Sī vincent, caput obnūbitō! Infēlicī arborī reste suspenditō!*: 3rd person imperative, the subject of which is the understood *lictor*, the person who will execute the punishment (named in line 157).
- 157: *perduelliō*: generally, “high treason,” although scholars have worried about that application here. When convicted of *perduelliō*, a Roman citizen had the right to appeal his case to the people, for which the term is *ad populum prōvocāre*.
- 163–165: *‘nē sē, quem paulō ante cum ēgregiā stirpe cōspexissent, orbum liberis facerent!’*: *Cōspexissent*: subjunctive in a relative clause in *orātiō obliqua*; *orbum liberis*: ablative of separation.
- 172–173: *pepererunt < pariō, parēre, peperī, partum*: “bear, bring forth.”
- 176–178: *Quō enim dūcere hunc iuvenem potestis ubi nōn sua decora eum ā tantā foeditāte supplicii dēfendant?*: *dēfendant*: potential subjunctive (Cap. XLI); *potestis*: in indicative, Cap. XL; *sua decora*: *sua*, as often, refers to the logical, not actual subject.

Mettiū perfidia ac supplicium: 182–265

- 183–187: *Ira...ingenium dictātoris corrūpit*: i.e., Mettius was affected by the Albans’ resentment; *coepit*: subject is Mettius.
- 188–189: *quia suae cīvitātī virēs deesse cernēbat*: *deesse* (= *dē* + *esse*) with the dative.
- 202: *Mettiō*: dative of possession (Cap. XII); *animī, fideī*: partitive genitives with *plūs*.
- 206–207: *Cōsiliū erat cum iīs sē iungere quibus fortūna victōriam daret*: *Cōsiliū erat* introduces an indirect statement (*cum iīs sē iungere*) followed by an indirect question (*quibus...daret*).

- 216: *Latīnē scīre*: the regular idiom for knowing a language uses the adverb, just as with speaking (*Latīnē loquī*).
- 221: *quō*: i.e., to the river.
- 231: *parātīs omnibus*: ablative absolute.
- 236–238: *Sī umquam...fuit quod...agerētis,...id proelium fuit*: past general condition (*fuit...fuit*, Cap. XLI), the protasis of which introduces a descriptive relative clause (Caps. XXXIX, XLII): “if it was ever the case that you should etc...”; *est quod* = “there is a reason why” + subjunctive is a common idiom; *deinde vestrae ipsōrum virtūtī*: with *gratiās agerētis* (*prīmum...deinde*); *vestrae ipsōrum* is emphatic: *vestrae*, meaning “yours” with *ipsōrum*, “of you yourselves”—this is a common use of *ipse* with the possessive adjectives (*meus, tuus, noster, vester*).
- 241: like *iussū* (Cap. XLI), *iniussū* is found only in the ablative with a genitive or a possessive adjective.
- 243–244: *ut et vōs, sī ego inde agmen abdūcere voluissē, fēcissētis*: past contrafactual condition (Cap. XLI).
- 244–246: *Mettius...Mettius...Mettius*: the repetition of a word or phrase at the beginning of clauses adds emphasis and is called anaphora.
- 253: *redeat*: jussive subjunctive (Cap. XLI).
- 255–256: *Sī ipse discere possēs fidem ac foedera servāre, vīvum tē id docuissē*: “mixed condition”: protasis (imperfect subjunctive) in a present contrafactual; apodosis (pluperfect subjunctive) in a past contrafactual: “if you were able...I would have taught.”
- 258: *ea sāncta crēdere* = *crēdere ea esse sancta*.
- 259–261: *Ut igitur paulō ante animum (inter Fidēnātem Rōmānamque rem) ancipitem gessistī, ita iam corpus in duās partēs distrahendum dabis! ut...ita*, “as...so too”; *animum gerere*: to have a mind/will that is (in this example) *ancipitem* (two-headed—or as we would say “two-faced”).

***Alba dīruta*: 266–298**

- 267–268: *praemissī...erant...quī...trādūcerent*: relative clause of purpose (Cap. XXXIX).

- 271–272: *effrāctīs portīs strātīsve mūrīs aut arce vī captā*: three ablative absolutes, the last one enclosing an ablative of means.
- 280: *nātus...ēducātusque erat*: *erat* goes with both participles.
- 288: *quibus* (sc. *annīs*): ablative of time; *funditus*: adv., “from the bottom, completely.”
- 292–293: *eam sēdem Tullus rēgiae capit*: *eam* refers to the Caelian hill; *sēdem* is predicative: Tullus chose it as the seat for the royal palace.
- 295: *senātui...auctō*: dative, indirect object.

Sabīnī dēvictī: 299–318

- 300–303: *gentī...opulentissimae*, datives referring back to *Sabīnīs*; *virīs armīsque*: ablatives of respect.
- 306: *silva Malitiōsa*: a forest in the Sabine territory.
- 307: *plūrimum*: adverb with *valuit*.
- 311: *dēvictīs Sabīnīs*: ablative absolute.
- 316–317: *velut*: “as if,” with the ablative absolute; *fortūnae*: dative with *irātī*.

Tullus fulmine ictus: 319–335

- 320: *Haud ita multō post pestilentia orta est*: ablative of degree of difference (“afterward by not much”).
- 323: *mīlītae, domī*: both locatives.
- 325–328: *Tunc adeō...ut quī antea...ratus esset...repente...coleret religiōnibusque...impleret*: result clause containing, perhaps, a descriptive relative clause (*ratus esset*), or, as the marginalia take it, a concessive (“although”) relative clause; *nihil minus rēgium*: “nothing less befitting a king.”

Causa Horātīi: 336–358

- 345: *indignē passus*: cf. *molestē fert/molestē patiens* (Cap. XLI).
- 353–354: *necārī nōn oportuit*: “should not have been killed”; Latin keeps the present infinitive and puts *oportēre* in the past tense; here the indicative is used even though the sense is contrafactual (“should not have been killed, but he was”) (cf. *posse* in the RĒS GRAMMATICAE in Cap. XL and grammar section above).

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

culpa, -ae	blame, fault, guilt
maestitia, -ae	sadness, sorrow
perfidia, -ae	faithlessness, treachery
quadrīgae, -ārum (<i>pl.</i>)	team of four horses
ruīna, -ae	collapse, ruin
turma, -ae	squadron

2nd

argūmentum, -ī	proof, argument
duumvirī, -ōrum (<i>pl.</i>)	board of two men
intervāllum, -ī	interval, space, distance
iugulum, -ī	throat
laqueus, -ī	loop, noose
palūdāmentum, -ī	military cloak
pōmērium, -ī	open space round town
servitium, -ī	slavery
spatium, -ī	space, distance, interval, walk, time, period
spōnsus, -ī	fiancé
statīva, -ōrum (<i>pl.</i>)	stationary camp (<i>sc. castra</i>)
vulgus, -ī	the (common) people

3rd

centuriō, -ōnis (<i>m.</i>)	centurion (officer)
complōrātiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	lamentation
cōnfluentēs, -ium (<i>m. pl.</i>)	confluence; place where two rivers unite
crīmen, -inis (<i>n.</i>)	charge, accusation
dēpulsiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	rebuttal
dictātor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	dictator
dīmicātiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	fight
ductor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	leader
foeditās, -ātis (<i>f.</i>)	ugliness, shame
indolēs, -is (<i>f.</i>)	character, nature

infirmātiō, -ōnis (f.)	invalidation, rebuttal
intentiō, -ōnis (f.)	charge, accusation
inventiō, -ōnis (f.)	art of devising arguments
iūdex, -icis (m.)	judge
iūdicātiō, -ōnis (f.)	point at issue
lāmentātiō, -ōnis (f.)	wailing, lamentation
liberātor, -ōris (m.)	deliverer, liberator
perduelliō, -ōnis (f.)	treason
populāris, -is (m.)	fellow citizen
prōditiō, -ōnis (f.)	betrayal
prōvocātiō, -ōnis (f.)	appeal
pulvis, -eris (m.)	dust
quaestiō, -ōnis (f.)	inquiry, question
religiō, -ōnis (f.)	fear of the gods, religion
restis, -is (f.)	rope
ruptor, -ōris (m.)	one who breaks
strāgēs, -is (f.)	slaughter
trepidātiō, -ōnis (f.)	alarm, panic

4th

cruciātus, -ūs	torture
cultus, -ūs	cultivation, care, mode of life, worship
mōtus, ūs	movement, rising
status, -ūs	state, condition, order

VERBA

-āre

(adhortor) adhortārī	encourage, urge on
(colligō) colligāre	tie up, bind
(condemnō) condemnāre	condemn
(cōnflagrō) cōnflagrāre	be burnt
(cōntiōnor) cōntiōnārī	address a meeting
(decorō) decorāre	adorn, glorify
(duplicō) duplicāre	double
(expirō) expirāre	breathe one's last, die
(geminō) gemināre	double

(inclāmō) inclāmāre	shout (at)
(increpō) increpāre	rattle, clash, scold
(lacerō) lacerāre	tear
(ligō) ligāre	bind
(occupō) occupāre	occupy, take possession of
(prōclāmō) prōclāmāre	cry out
(prōvocō) prōvocāre	challenge, appeal
(pūrgō) pūrgāre	clean, purge, excuse
(reconciliō) reconciliāre	win back, reconcile
(renūntiō) renūntiāre	report, renounce
(stimulō) stimulāre	spur on, stimulate
(vagor) vagārī	wander, roam
-ēre	
(dēspondeō) dēspondēre (< spondēre)	betroth, engage
(displīceō) displīcēre, -uisse, -itum	displease, offend
(pertineō) pertinēre (< tenēre)	relate, pertain (to)
(suppleō) supplēre, -ēvisse, -ētum	fill up, reinforce
-ere	
(abolēscō) abolēscere, abolēvisse, abolitum	decay, be forgotten
(absolvō) absolvere (< solvere)	free, acquit
(aggredior) aggredī, aggressum	attack, set about, try
(circumdūcō) circumducere (< dūcere)	lead around
(circumsistō) circumsistere, -stetisse	surround
(dēfungor) dēfungī, dēfunctum	complete
(dēvincō) dēvincere (< vincere)	defeat completely
(dirigō) dirigere (< regere)	arrange, direct
(diruō) diruere, diruīsse, dirutum	demolish
(distrāhō) distrāhere (< trāhere)	pull apart, break up
(ēdicō) ēdicere (< dicere)	decree, fix
(effringō) effringere (< frangere)	break open

(illūcēsco) illūcēscere, -lūxisse, -lūctum	dawn, grow light
(indicō) indicere (< dicere)	notify, declare
(interclūdō) interclūdere (< claudere)	shut out, cut off, block
(invehō) invehere (< vehere)	import, ride in
(obicīō) obicere (< iacere)	place before, expose
(obnūbō) obnūbere, -ūpsisse, -ūptum	veil, cover
(repetō) repetere (< petere)	return to, repeat, claim back, recall
(senēscō) senēscere, -uisse, -itum	grow old, weaken
(suspendō) suspendere, -disse, -sum	hang, suspend
(trādūcō) trādūcere (< dūcere)	move (across), pass
(trānsfigō) trānsfigere (< figere)	pierce
-īre	
(saepiō) saepīre, -sisse, -tum	surround

ADIECTĪVA

1st/2nd

avītus, -a, -um	of a grandfather
citātus, -a, -um	speeded up, swift
cognātus, -a, -um	related
dīversus, -a, -um	opposite, different
hesternus, -a, -um	of yesterday
indemnātus, -a, -um	uncondemned
intāctus, -a, -um	untouched, uninjured
invītus, -a, -um	against one's will, unwilling
ōrātōrius, -a, -um	oratorical
trigeminus, -a, -um	triplet

3rd

anceps, -cipitis	double, undecided
atrōx, -ōcis	dreadful, atrocious
cīvīlis, -e	civic, civil
continēns, -entis	unbroken, adjacent

dēfōrmis, -e
dispār, -paris
dissimilis, -e
flēbilis, -e
insānābilis, -e
miserābilis, -e

ugly
 unequal, different
 unlike, different
 plaintive
 incurable
 pitiable

ADVERBIA

identidem
nēquāquam
palam
passim
postrēmum
sēnsim
utrimque

repeatedly
 by no means, not at all
 openly, publicly
 far and wide, everywhere
 for the last time
 gradually, little by little
 on/from both sides

PRAEPOSITIONĒS

secundum (+ *acc.*)

along, after, according to

ALIA

iniussū²

without orders

2. Cf. *iussū* (Cap. XLI)

XLIV: QVADRAGESIMVM QVARTVM: REGES ET REGINAE (Livy)¹

[Ex T. Livii 'ab Urbe Conditā' librō I. 32–48, nōnnūllīs mūtātīs et praetermissīs]

I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION

This chapter deals with the three kings *Ancus Mārcius*, *Tarquinius Prīscus*, and *Servius Tullius*. Tarquinius' arrogant queen *Tanaquil* and Servius' cruel daughter *Tullia*, who became the last queen in Rome, also play important roles in Livy's narrative of Rome's earliest years.

King Ancus Marcius, who was of a peaceful disposition like Numa, found himself compelled to declare war on the Latins (*Latīnī*) when they had made a raid on Roman territory and refused to return the spoils appropriated in the raid. This event gives Livy an occasion to quote the old rules of law (the *iūs fētiāle*) that were followed when restoration or compensation was demanded from the enemy (*rēs repetere*). If the demand was denied, war was declared. The Senate had to be consulted: each of the senators was asked his opinion, "*Quid cēnsēs?*" (this consultation was called *sententiam rogāre*). War was declared by an envoy, a *fētiālis*, who threw a bloody lance with an iron tip into the enemy's territory and recited the formula for war.

Ancus conquered a couple of neighboring towns, moved their inhabitants to Rome, and settled them on the Aventine Hill. He is said to have built the prison, the *Carcer*, north of the Forum (XXXVI.154), and the first bridge over the Tiber, the *pōns Sublicius* ("the pile bridge" from *sublica*, "stake" or "pile").

Meanwhile *Lucumō*, a rich and powerful man from the Etruscan city of *Tarquiniī*, had moved to Rome in search of fortune with his ambitious wife *Tanaquil*. On their way, an extraordinary augury had confirmed their expectation of a glorious future: an eagle carried off Lucumo's cap and put it back on his head. In Rome, Lucumo, who called himself *Lūcius Tarquinius Prīscus*, won the favor of king Ancus. At the king's death, he became guardian of his two

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

minor sons. Before the election of the new king, he sent the sons away and so was chosen king of Rome.

King Tarquinius waged successful wars against the Latins and conquered several of their cities. After doubling his cavalry from 900 to 1,800 men, he defeated the Sabines and forced them to surrender the city of *Collātia*, where the king's nephew *Egerius* was made commander. In this connection, Livy quotes the old formula pronounced at the surrender of a defeated enemy.

After reigning for thirty-eight years, Tarquinius was murdered by order of Ancus's two slighted sons. At the instigation of Tarquinius's widow Tanaquil, the dead king's son-in-law *Servius Tullius* set himself up as king of Rome. This had been portended when, as a little boy, he was found asleep with a flame burning around his head.

King Servius Tullius has been credited with an important administrative reform: he divided the Roman people and the Roman army into five classes on the basis of a statement of each citizen's property (*cēnsus*). The classes were divided into centuries (*centuriae*), 193 in all. In the popular assembly, the *comitia centuriāta*, which enacted laws and elected magistrates, votes were taken by century, giving the wealthier citizens the majority.

Tarquinius Priscus's sons, *Lūcius* and *Arrūns*, refused to recognize their brother-in-law as lawful king. To appease them, Servius gave them his two daughters in marriage, but the couples were unevenly matched. Soon the more hot-tempered of the two, Tullia,² allied herself with the similarly disposed Lucius, and they had the other two put away. Tullia urged her new husband to seize power. He broke into the Senate-house and spoke out against the king. When king Servius appeared and protested against his son-in-law's usurpation, he was thrown out and soon after murdered.

Lucius's wife, the ferocious Tullia, was the first to salute her husband as the new king. When she was on her way home, her coachman suddenly stopped the carriage because he found the road blocked by the murdered king's body, but Tullia seized the reins and drove the carriage over her dead father.

The last reading, from book VI of Ovid's *Fāstī*, describes the crimes which began the reign of the last Roman king.

2. Roman daughters were traditionally given the feminine form of the family's *gentilicium* (family name), hence *Horātia* in Cap. XLIII and the two women named *Tullia* in this chapter.

II. AUXILIA LEGENDI

Iūs fētiāle: 1–90

- 2: *rēs*: i.e., the state; *omnium*: dependent on *primum*, “first of all.”
- 7–8: *et...et*: “both...and”; *avītae glōriae*: genitive with *memor* (cf. *oblivīscī*, Cap. XXV).
- 9: *omnium primum*: “first of all”; *ut*: “as.”
- 10–12: *cīvibus...cupīdīs, finitimīs cīvitātibus*: datives with *spēs facta est*; *in avī mōrēs atque īnsititūta rēgem abitūrum esse*: *abire* + *in* = “be changed into.”
- 15–17: *repetentibus rēs Rōmānīs*: dative with *respōnsum reddunt*; *ratī* (from *rēri*) is the subject of *reddunt* (and introduces the indirect statement that precedes it).
- 18–19: *Medium erat in Ancō ingenium, et Numae et Rōmulī memor*: *medium ingenium*, “a moderate disposition”; *rēgnō*: dative with *necessāriam*.
- 20: *Cum...tum*: “both...and” (Cap. XLII).
- 23–24: *iūs fētiāle*: The *Fētiālēs* were a college of priests who were consulted on matters of war and peace. Ancus is credited with writing the procedure through which war is declared (*bellum indicitur*) and goods stolen in war demanded back (*rēs repetuntur*).
- 29: *sit*: jussive subjunctive (Cap. XLI).
- 31: *dēdī*: present passive infinitive of *dēdere*, “be surrendered.”
- 32: *sīverīs*: perfect subjunctive of *sinere*, *sīvisse*, *situm*, synonym of *patī* and *ferre* (Cicero uses the three in a row: *nōn feram*, *nōn sinam*, *nōn patiar*); mixed condition: if I am (now), you should never allow.
- 39: *māiōrēs nātū* = *patrēs*: *nātū* is a verbal noun from the verb *nāscī* (“to be born”) and an ablative of respect (Cap. XXXIII); *adīpiscāmur*: indirect question (Caps. XXIX, XXXIX).
- 43–48: The king’s speeches and the legal formula that follows (ll.53–60) preserve for us a flavor of the archaic and legal language of the Romans. Note the archaic *duellum* (l.47) instead of *bellum*. The king’s initial question (ll.43–47) contains two strings of three verbs: *dedērunt*, *solvērunt*, *fēcērunt*, a list immediately repeated in *darī*, *solvī*, *fieri*. The Senate’s response contains another triad, *cēseō itaque cōsentiō cōnsciscōque* (ll.47–48), all three of

which are repeated in the same order in the formula for declaring war (l.57). The present infinitive *ferī* is the subject of the verb *oportuit*; for the present infinitive with a verb of propriety or necessity, see Cap. XLIII, note to lines 353–354.

- 49–50: *in sententiam īre*: Romans voted by separating themselves into two groups: the “yays” and the “nays.” This method of expressing their opinion “with their feet” accounts for the verb of motion *īre*.
- 51–53: *Fierī solēbat ut...diceret*: noun clause of result (Cap. XXXVII).
- 64–65: *dēmandātā cūrā*: ablative absolute; *sacrōrum*: objective genitive; *flāminibus sacerdotibusque aliīs*: indirect object with *dēmandāre*.
- 72–73: *Postrēmō omnī bellō Latīnō Medulliam compulsō*: i.e., the war is driven to Medullia. The accusative shows the movement of the troops to Medullia.
- 74: *urbs tūta mūnitiōnibus praesidiōque validō firmāta*: a pair of ideas placed in exactly opposite order; *urbs* here is modified by two adjectives (*tūta*, *firmāta*), which are in turn qualified by two ablatives of means. The order is adjective (*tūta*), noun (*mūnitiōnibus*), noun/adjective (*praesidiōque validō*), adjective (*firmāta*); the chiasmus’s order is ABBA.
- 76: *ingentī praedā potēns*: ablative of respect (cf. ll.92–93: *divitiīs potēns*).
- 81: *in Tiberī*: pure *i*-stem (Cap. XVI).
- 84–85: *ad terrōrem crēscētis audāciae*: objective genitive (Cap. XXV).

***Lucumō et Tanaquil*: 91–139**

- 94–95: *cupīdine...ac spē magnī honōris*: ablatives of cause with an objective genitive.
- 102: *ventrem ferre*: as the margins state, this equals *grāvīda esse*, i.e., to be pregnant.
- 105–106: *Cui cum divitiae iam animōs facerent, auxit uxor eius Tanaquil*: understand *animōs* (“courage”) also with *auxit*. When used in the plural, *animus* frequently means “spirit, courage,” but can also mean, as here, “too much spirit,” i.e., *superbia*.
- 108–109: *exsule advenā ortum*: “an exile descended from a foreigner,” in apposition to *Lucumōnem*, giving the words of the Etruscans’ scorn (*spernentibus*).

- 109–111: *Tanaquil...oblitaque amoris patriae, dummodo virum honoratum vidēret: dummodo* + the subjunctive, “as long as, provided that” (Cap. XL).
- 112–114: “*in novō populō, ubi omnis repentīna atque ex virtūte nōbilitās sit, futurum locum fortī ac strēnuō virō*”: subordinate clause in *ōrātiō oblīqua* (Cap. XXXVI) = direct discourse: “*in novō populō, ubi omnis repentīna atque ex virtūte nōbilitās est, erit locus fortī ac strēnuō virō*.”
- 114–116: *Facile persuādet Lucumōnī ut cupidō honorum et cui Tarquinii māterna tantum patria esset*: although this looks like an indirect command, it is not; it’s a causal clause: “she easily persuaded Lucumo because he was...and for him...”; *māterna tantum patria*: his fatherland only on his mother’s side (his mother was from Tarquinia, his father from Corinth, l.97).
- 118–120: *ventum erat* = *vēnērunt* (Cap. XL); *eī...sedentī...aufert*: “took away from,” dative of reference with verbs of depriving, such as here, with *aufert* (cf. XXXVIII.69).
- 121: *aptē*: “fitly,” “rightly,” “snugly.”
- 122–123: *perītus, -a, -um* + objective genitive (*caelestium prōdigiōrum*).
- 125: *nūntiam* in apposition to *eam ālitem*: “came as a messenger.”
- 127: *divīnitus*: adverb, “by divine providence.”
- 134–135: *beneficiīsque quōs poterat sibi conciliandō = eōs quōs poterat beneficiīs sibi conciliat*.
- 136: *brevī*: sc. *tempore*.
- 137–138: *bellō domīque = domī militīaeque* (l.154; cf. l.42).

L. Tarquinius Priscus rēx: 140–223

- 142: *glōriā*: ablative of respect with *pār* (Cap. XXXIII).
- 144: *rēgī creandō*: dative of purpose (Cap. XXXVI) with the gerundive (= *ad rēgem creandum*).
- 145: *vēnātum*: supine (Caps. XXII, XLV).
- 147–148: “*Sē nōn rem novam petere, quia duo iam peregrinī Rōmae rēgnāvissent*”: subordinate clause in *ōrātiō oblīqua* (Cap. XXXVI) = direct discourse: *nōn rem novam petō, quia duo iam peregrinī Rōmae rēgnāvērunt*.

- 147–156: Tarquinius Priscus’s speech is reported, that is, in *ōrātiō obliqua*.
- 152–154: *quā cīvilibus officiīs fungantur hominēs*: subordinate clause in indirect discourse (Cap. XXXVI) = direct discourse: *quā*: ablative of time when (refers to *aetas*); *fungantur*: *fungi* + ablative of means (Cap. XXXVIII); *quam*: comparison with *māiōrem partem* (accusative of duration of time, Cap. XIII).
- 154–155: *sub haud spernendō magistrō* = *sub magistrō quī haud spernendus est*.
- 160: *centum in patrēs lēgit*: *patrēs* = *senātōrēs*.
- 164–165: *praedāque inde māiōre quam spērāverat revectā*: ablative absolute containing a relative clause of comparison.
- 167–168: *Loca dīvisa patribus equitibusque*: “distributed to”; *ubi spectacula sibi facerent*: indirect question; “*forī*” *appellātī*: *forum* is the archaic form of *forum*.
- 171: *coeptīs intervēnit*: dative with intransitive verb.
- 171–173: *Adeōque ea subita rēs fuit ut prius Aniēnem trānsirent hostēs quam obviam ire ac prohibēre exercitus Rōmānus posset* = *ea rēs fuit adeō subita ut hostēs trānsirent Aniēnem prius quam Rōmānus exercitus obviam ire ac prohibēre posset*.
- 174–175: *pugnātum est*: impersonal passive of an intransitive verb (Cap. XL).
- 178–179: *numerō alterum tantum adiēcit*: “added a second (group) just as large to their number”; *prō*: “instead of,” with *nōngentīs*.
- 181: *sed praeterquam quod*: “beyond the fact that”; the *quod* clause is the object of *praeterquam*.
- 198–199: *Sabīnīs*: dative with *adēptum*, “taken from” (see note above on ll.118–120); *Collātiae*: locative.
- 204–205: *esse in suā potestāte*: idiom: “to be one’s own master, to be under one’s own power.”
- 210–212: *dē ūniversā rē*: i.e., all the Latins taken as a whole; *omne nōmen Latīnum*: i.e., all the towns that comprised Latium.

Iuvenis indolis rēgiae: 224–246

- 225: *visū mīrābile*: ablative of supine (Cap. XXII).
- 226–227: *puerō dormientī...caput ārsisse*: dative of reference (Cap. XXXVI); cf. the harmless fire that encircles the head of Ascanius (XXXVII.219ff). Servius Tullius was the child of a slave in the royal household.
- 231: *donec* + anticipatory subjunctive (Cap. XXXVII).
- 236: *omnī cūrā nostrā*: ablative of manner (Cap. XXV).
- 238: *puerum filiī locō habēre*: “to consider the boy a son, in the status of a son.” (We still say people are *in locō parentis* when they are assuming the responsibility of a parent.)
- 240–241: *quod...esset*: causal clause, “because he was”; *dīs cordī*: double dative (“dear to the gods,” Cap. XXXVI); *iūvenis ēvāsīt vērē indolis rēgiae*: genitive of description (Cap. XIX).
- 244–246: *quācumque dē causā*: “for whatever reason,” i.e., whether or not his head really caught fire; *illī habitus*: “was held for him”; *crēdere prohibet*: “forbids (us) from believing that” + indirect statement; *servā nātum*: “born from a slave woman.”

Servius Tullius rēx factus: 247–306

- 251: *habēre*: “to consider”; *habēre prō* + ablative: “consider as.”
- 261: *ex compositō*: “by agreement, according to plan”; *ordītur*: “begins.”
- 262: *secūrim*: pure *i*-stem (Cap. XVI).
- 266–267: *quid reī esset*: partitive genitive with neuter pronoun (Cap. XLIV) in indirect question.
- 271–272: *eōrum quī*: Ancus’s two sons; *aliēnīs manibus*: “with hands not their own,” i.e., the shepherds who carried out the deed.
- 273–275: *sequere*: imperative of *sequī* (so too line 277); *fore* = *futūrum esse*; *dīvinō quondam circumfūsō igne*: ablative of means; *excitet*: jussive subjunctive; *expergīscere*: imperative of *expergīscī*.
- 282: *sōpītum esse*: “to be deprived of senses, be rendered unconscious.”
- 283–284: *brevī ipsum eōs vīsūrōs esse*; *eōs*: pronoun shift in indirect statement; what she said was “*brevī ipsum vōs vidēbitis*.”

- 284–285: *dictō audientem esse* + dative (*Serviō Tulliō*): “obey.”
- 285–286: *aliisque...mūneribus fūctūrum*: *fungī* takes an ablative of means (Cap. XXXVIII).
- 295–296: *ut*: when; *exsulātum*: supine.
- 297–299: *nōn solum...sed etiam...quālis...tālis*: these syntax markers clarify the long sentence.
- 305–306: *haud dubius rēx*: “without a doubt (now) the king” because he now has the approval of the people (*cum patribus tum plēbī probātus*).

***Cēnsus institūtus*: 307–357**

- 307: *cēnsus* comes from *cēnsēre*, (“to assess, estimate”), whence the meaning “to judge, form a judgment” (cf. *quid cēnsēs*, ll.46–47).
- 310: *prō habitū pecūniārum*: “in proportion to the state of their finances.”
- 314–315: *Ex iīs quī centum milium aeris aut māiōrem cēsum habērent octōgintā cōnfēcit centuriās*: descriptive/generalizing relative clause (Caps. XXXIX, XLII).
- 317: *forīs*: i.e., *militiae*, “in the field.”
- 317–318: *fabrum* (= *fabrōrum*): *faber* means “craftsman”; these particular *fabri* were assigned the care of war machines; *stipendia facere*: “earn wages.”
- 319–326: *septuāgintā milium, quīnquāgintā milium, quīnque et vīgintī milium, ūndecim milibus*: understand *aeris*, as in l.314; *ūndecim milibus* is ablative of price (Cap. VIII).
- 328–329: *immūnis militiā*: ablative of separation (Cap. XXXVI): the poor’s freedom from military service also meant lack of political clout.
- 337: *suovetaurilia* (n. pl.) is a sacrifice of a swine, sheep, and bull offered at *lūstrātiōnēs*, purification ceremonies.
- 344: *Viminālem inde auget Ēsquiliū*: *Ēsquiliū* is ablative; the Esquiline is adjacent to the Viminal.
- 345–346: *pōmērium prōfert*: Servius extended the pomerium, which, as you learned in XLIII.148–153, is the consecrated space on either side of the city wall which must be left free of buildings.

- 349: *iam tum erat inclutum*: *inclutum* is predicate adjective: the shrine was already famous at that time.
- 350–351: *id* = the temple; *factum (esse) fāma ferēbat*: i.e., “rumor had it”; *cōnsēsum*: “concord” (cf.: *commūniter*); *deōs cōnsociātōs*: i.e., the various gods of the various *cīvitātēs* in Asia.

***Tullia ferōx*: 358–451**

- 362: *vellent iubērentne sē rēgnāre*: the formula for asking the people to ratify anything is, in direct speech, *Velitis, iubeātis*, which is here reported indirectly.
- 366: *ipse iuvenis ārdentis animī*: genitive of description (Cap. XIX) as is *mitis ingenī iuvenem* (l.369).
- 370: Latin expresses marriage differently for men, who lead women into matrimony (*in mātirimōnium dūcere*), and women, who are wed to their husbands (*nūbere*, intransitive with the dative).
- 371: *longē disparēs mōribus*: ablative of respect (Cap. XXXIII).
- 374–377: *admīrārī, dīcere, spernere, parcere*: historical infinitives.
- 384: *interdiū*: adv., “during the day.”
- 385: *patī*: historical infinitive; *parricīdium*: parricide, as the name implies, is usually used of killing one’s father but can be extended to the murder of a relative; *grātuīta*: “for nothing, with no profit.”
- 388–389: take *regnum* with both infinitives, i.e., “*qui habēre rēgnum quam rēgnum spērāre mallet*.”
- 390: *quīn = quī nē*: “why don’t you?”
- 392–394: *creat vocatque*: verbs are often singular in agreement with the last stated subject, even though there are multiple subjects (*Dī Penātēs, patris imāgō, domus rēgia, rēgāle solium, nōmen Tarquīnium*).
- 395: *parum...animī*: “too little spirit,” partitive genitive.
- 396: *ut*: “as”; *facesse*: imperative from the intensive *facessere*: “to do something eagerly,” also “to retire, go away.”
- 403–404: *Admonēre Tarquīnī Prīscī beneficiū ac prō eō grātiā repetere*: *admonēre* (historical infinitive) admits several constructions, among them, as here, the genitive (“remind of”); *beneficiū*:

Roman society was bound together by *beneficia*, favors done that entailed gratitude (*grātia*) and loyalty.

- 405–406: *Cum ingentia pollicendō, tum rēgis crīminibus, omnibus locīs crēscere: pollicendō, crīminibus*: ablatives of means (*crīmen* = “charge, accusation”); *ingentia*: “remarkable (things)”; *rēgis*: objective genitive; *crēscere*: historical infinitive.
- 412–413: *actum est dē* + ablative: “it’s all over for x,” “x is done for.”
- 420: *prīmōribus ēreptum*: dative of reference: “snatched from”; *sordidissimō cuique: quisque* + the superlative = “all the,” so, here “all the most despicable people” (Cap. XXXI).
- 424–425: *quā...audāciā*: ablative of manner (Cap. XXV).
- 432–433: *multō et aetāte et vīribus validior*: ablative of degree of difference; *multō* (Cap. XVI), with the ablative of respect, *aetāte et vīribus* (Cap. XXXIII).
- 435: *comitum* < *comes, comitis*.
- 439–441: (*Tullia*) *nōn abhorret;...admonitū Tulliae id factum*: i.e., *Tullia admonuit ut Servius interficeretur; satis cōstat* (Cap. XLI).

Fīlia Impia (Ovidius: Fāstī. Ex librō VI): 452–473

- 454: *perāctō*: “killed.”
- 457: *vīvere dēbuerant*: see Cap. XLIII grammar section on *dēbere* and the infinitive.
- 459: *sī ausūrī erāmus*: “if we were intending to venture.”
- 460: *rēgia rēs scelus est*: “crime is the prerogative of kings.”
- 465: *socerō*: dative of reference with verbs of depriving, such as here, *rapta* (Cap. XXXVIII).
- 466: *sub*: not “under” but “at the foot of.”

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

contumēlia, -ae

insult, affront

fōrmula, -ae

terms, formula

licentia, -ae

wantonness, license

nūptiae, -ārum (*pl.*)

wedding

rīxa, -ae

quarrel, brawl

rota, -ae

wheel

salinae, -ārum (*pl.*)

salt pans, salt works

serva, -ae

female slave

2nd

augurium, -ī

augury, omen

bonum, -ī

good, blessing (*pl.* goods)

captīvus, -ī

prisoner of war

carpentum, -ī

two-wheeled carriage

coepta, -ōrum (*pl.*)

beginnings, undertakings

comitia, -ōrum (*pl.*)

assembly of the people

dēlūbrum, -ī

temple, shrine

duellum, -ī

war

exōrdium, -ī

beginning

fīlum, -ī

thread, fillet

forum, -ī

public space, marketplace

hospitium, -ī

guest friendship/house

īnstitūtum, -ī

practice, custom, usage

iūmentum, -ī

beast of burden/draft

lūstrum, -ī

ceremony of purification

parricīdium, -ī

murder of near relation

pilleus, -ī

felt cap

postulātum, -ī

demand

sēcrētum, -ī

solitude, secrecy, seclusion, privacy

suffrāgium, -ī

vote

terminus, -ī

boundary(-stone)

testāmentum, -ī

will, testament

vehiculum, -ī

wagon, vehicle

3rd

agger, -eris (*m.*)

rampart

āles, -itis (*f.*)

large bird

arbiter, -trī (*m.*)

eyewitness, arbitrator

cōgitātiō, -ōnis (*f.*)

thought, reflection

cōnfessiō, -ōnis (*f.*)

admission, confession

cornicen, -inis (*m.*)

horn-blower, bugler

dēditio, -ōnis (f.)	surrender, capitulation
dicio, -ōnis (f.)	dominion, power
dignitas, -ātis (f.)	worthiness, dignity, rank
exsul, -is (m./f.)	banished person, exile
fautor, -ōris (m.)	supporter
fraus, -audis (f.)	deceit, guile
furor, -ōris (m.)	madness
hērēs, -ēdis (m.)	heir
incursio, -ōnis (f.)	incursion, inroad
indignitas, -ātis (f.)	indignity, humiliation
iūniōrēs, -um (m. pl.)	younger men
mūnitio, -ōnis (f.)	fortification
novitas, -ātis (f.)	novelty, inexperience
pietas, -ātis (f.)	respect, devotion, piety
praecō, -ōnis (m.)	crier, announcer, herald
scriptor, -ōris (m.)	writer
seditio, -ōnis (f.)	discord, insurrection
senectūs, -ūtis (f.)	old age
suovetaurilia, -ium (n. pl.)	a sacrifice consisting of a swine, a sheep, and a bull
temeritas, -ātis (f.)	recklessness
tutor, -ōris (m.)	guardian

4th

admonitus, -ūs	advice, prompting (only in <i>abl.</i>)
cēsus, -ūs	assessment, registration
comitatus, -ūs	escort, retinue
cōsēsus, -ūs	concord, agreement
habitus, -ūs	state, condition
ictus, -ūs	stroke, blow
nurus, -ūs (f.)	daughter-in-law
tribus, -ūs (f.)	tribe (division of citizens)

VERBA

-āre

(affectō) affectāre	strive after, aspire to
(āmigrō) āmigrāre	go away, remove

(amplificō) amplificāre	enlarge
(commigrō) commigrāre	move, go and live
(dēmandō) dēmandāre	entrust, hand over
(domō) domāre, -uisse, -itum	tame, subdue
(exstimulō) exstimulāre	stir up, incite
(exsulō) exsulāre	live in exile
(fīrmō) fīrmāre	reinforce, strengthen
(frūstror) frūstrārī	deceive
(honōrō) honōrāre	honor
(īnstīgō) īnstīgāre	urge, incite
(praeparō) praeparāre	prepare
(testor) testārī	call to witness
(volitō) volitāre	fly about, flutter
-ēre	
(abhorreō) abhorrēre, -uisse	be inconsistent with
(coerceō) coercēre, -cuisse, -cītum	keep in control, restrain
-ere	
(accingō) accingere (< cingere)	gird
(arripīō) arripere (< rapere)	grasp, take hold of
(compōnō) compōnere (< pōnere)	settle, arrange, compose
(cōnflīgō) cōnfligere, -xisse, -ctum	clash, fight
(conquiēscō) conquiēscere	rest
(cōnscīscō) cōnsciscere, -īvisse, -ītum	decree, inflict (on)
(dēiciō) dēicere (< icere)	throw/bring down
(dēligō) dēligere (< legere)	pick out, choose
(dēlinquō) dēlinquere	misbehave, do wrong
(distribuō) distribuere, -buisse, -būtum	divide, distribute, share
(expergīscor) expergīscī, -perrēctum	wake up
(exposcō) exposcere (< poscere)	ask for, demand
(facessō) facessere	do eagerly, go away, be off
(fungor) fungī, fūnctum (+ abl.)	discharge, complete

(incurrō) incurrere (< currere)	rush in, make an inroad
(ingredior) ingredī, -gressum	enter, begin, walk
(maledicō) maledicere (< dicere)	abuse, insult
(perpellō) perpellere (< pellere)	enforce
(persolvō) persolvere (< solvere)	pay in full, fulfill
(portendō) portendere (< tendere)	portend, presage
(profundo) profundere (< fundere)	pour out, shed
(revehō) revehere (< vehere)	bring back
(sīdō) sīdere, sēdisse, sessum	sit down, settle
(tingō) tingere, -xisse, -ctum	wet, soak

-īre

(acciō) accīre, -īvisse, -ītum	summon, send for
(cōsentiō) cōsentīre (< sentīre)	agree (on)
(ērudīō) ērudīre, -rudīvisse, -rudītum	instruct, educate
(impediō) impedīre, -pedīvisse, -pedītum	impede, obstruct
(interveniō) intervenīre (< venīre)	turn up, occur, disturb
(sōpiō) sōpīre, -īvisse, -ītum	put to sleep, stun

ADIECTĪVA**1st/2nd**

amārus, -a, -um	bitter
aptus, -a, -um	fit, suitable, convenient
clandestīnus, -a, -um	secret, clandestine
conspiciuus, -a, -um	conspicuous, spectacular
continuus, -a, -um	continuous, successive
ferrātus, -a, -um	tipped with iron
grātuītus, -a, -um	gratuitous, futile
inclutus, -a, -um	famous
īfernus, -a, -um	of the underworld
lapideus, -a, -um	of stone, stone
lēgitimus, -a, -um	legal, lawful

māternus, -a, -um	maternal
paternus, -a, -um	paternal
perītus, -a, -um	practiced, expert
praecipuus, -a, -um	outstanding, exceptional
probātus, -a, -um	acceptable, pleasing
sanguinulentus, -a, -um	bloodstained
strenuous, -a, -um	active, vigorous

3rd

cōmis, -e	kind, affable
compos (<i>gen. compotis</i>)	in possession of (+ <i>gen.</i>)
exsanguis, -e	bloodless, lifeless
fētiālis, -e	fetial; diplomatic
immūnis, -e	exempt (from), tax-free (+ <i>abl.</i>)
pedester, -tris, -tre	pedestrian, infantry
rēgālis, -e	royal
senior (<i>gen. seniōris</i>)	older
terrestris, -e	earthly, terrestrial

ADVERBIA

dīvīnitus	by divine will
fermē	about, almost
prīvātīm	privately, personally
properē	quickly
virītim	man by man

ALIA

ex compositō	according to agreement
nātū	older/younger (<i>abl. māior/</i> <i>minor</i> [<i>n.</i>])
quō pactō	= <i>quō modō</i> : in what way, manner

XLV: QVADRAGESIMVM QVINTVM: ROMA LIBERATA (Livy)¹

[Ex T. Livii 'ab Urbe Conditā' librō I. 49–60, nōnnūllīs mūtātīs et omissīs]

I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION

Rome's last king, *Lucius Tarquinius*, surnamed *Superbus* (*cui Superbō cognōmen datum est*), was a cruel tyrant who stopped at nothing to strengthen and expand his power. When the Latin *Turnus* dared to oppose him, the king had a large quantity of arms secretly hidden in Turnus' house; this was used as evidence in a false accusation of subversive activities, and he was condemned to death by his own countrymen. In this way, the Latins were pacified.

The city of *Gabii* continued to defy Roman power. Unable to take the city by force, Tarquinius devised a plan to seize it by treachery. His youngest son Sextus came to Gabii pretending to have escaped from his cruel father and succeeded in winning the confidence of the inhabitants to such a degree that they chose him as their leader in the war with Rome. He now sent a messenger to his father asking how to make the most of his new power. Tarquinius gave no straightforward answer to the messenger, but while walking with him in his garden, he struck off the heads of the tallest poppies with his walking stick. When Sextus heard about this, he realized what his father wanted him to do: he killed or banished all the prominent Gabians and then delivered the defenseless city to the Roman king!

After telling the story of the oracle which promised *Brūtus* supremacy in Rome because he alone understood its hidden meaning, Livy proceeds to tell the dramatic events which led to the expulsion of the royal family from Rome.

During the siege of the city of *Ardea*, the king's three sons and *Collātīnus*, son of the king's cousin Egerius, started a quarrel about whose wife was the most virtuous. To decide the matter, they paid unannounced visits to their wives. Sextus Tarquinius became infatuated with the winner, Collatinus's beautiful

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

wife *Lucretia*, whom they found spinning wool in her home in Collatia. A few days later Sextus went to Collatia, entered Lucretia's chamber sword in hand, woke the sleeping woman, and raped her. After his departure, Lucretia sent for her husband and her father, who arrived together with Brutus. She told them what she had suffered, demanded vengeance, and thrust a knife into her heart. Brutus grasped the bloody knife and swore that he would drive out the king and his family from Rome. The people and the army sided with Brutus, the king was banished with his wife and his three sons, and Brutus and Collatinus are elected the first Roman consuls by the popular assembly (the *comitia centuriata*). This event is dated to the year 509 BC.

This chapter ends with Ovid's description of these events in the second book of his *Fāstī*. You have now finished an adapted narrative of Livy's first book. In the text that you have been reading, departures from the original have become less and less noticeable, and from line 222 in this chapter (*Muliebris certāminis laus...*), the text is unchanged. From now on, all the passages from Roman authors are presented unchanged—apart from omissions.

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Tarquinius Superbus: 1–25

- 5: *favisse* < *favēre*: “favor,” intransitive + dative.
- 8–9: *ut quī...regnāret*: causal clause.
- 10: *per eam causam*: “under that pretext” (a frequent idiom).
- 12–13: *...unde nihil aliud quam praedam spērāre posset*: adverbial final (purpose) clause.
- 15–19: *Hic enim rēgum prīmus trāditum ā priōribus mōrem dē omnibus rēbus senātum cōsulendī solvit, domesticis cōsiliis rem publicam administrāvit*: *rēgum*: genitive with *prīmus*; *mōrem*: direct object of *solvit*, modified by *trāditum*; *cōsulendī*: objective genitive dependent on *mōrem*; *senātum*: object of *cōsulendī*; *domestica cōsilia*: i.e., instead of resolutions by the senate.
- 23: *Latinum nomen* = places that enjoyed Latin rights, *iūs Latīnum* (cf. ll.36, 81–82).
- 24: *filiam nūptum dat*: supine, see grammar section above.

Turnus Herdōnius: 26–89

- 27: *diē certā*: although often masculine, *diēs* is sometimes feminine in the singular when referring to an established time, as here.
- 29–30: *agere dē* + ablative: “negotiate about” (a frequent expression with several shades of meaning).
- 31: *antequam sōl occideret*: subjunctive with anticipatory *antequam* (Cap. XLII).
- 33–34: *invehere in* + accusative: “attack (with words),” “inveigh against.”
- 35–36: *Quicquam*: used only in negative clauses (Cap. XXVI).
- 37–38: Note that the subjunctives (*indīxerit*, etc.) violate sequence of tense (Caps. XXXIII, XXXVI). Since the leading verb is pluperfect (*erat invectus*). The primary sequence of the *ōrātiō obliqua* represents the speech as more immediate and forceful.
- 40: *exsulātum eant*: supine with verbs of motion (Cap. XXII, XXXVI, grammar section above).
- 41–42: *portendī*: passive infinitive of *portendere*, in passive means “threaten” + dative; *sī sē audiant, domum omnēs inde abitūrōs*: future condition in *ōrātiō obliqua* (Cap. XLIII): “*sī mē audiētis, domum omnēs hinc abibitis*.”
- 46: *id temporis*: partitive genitive with a neuter pronoun: “at this point in time” (Caps. XVI, XXIX).
- 48: *eōdem* = adverb of place to which: *eō* + suffix (*-dem*) meaning “to the same place.”
- 52–53: *...ut eundem terrōrem quō cīvium animōs domī oppresserat Latīnīs iniceret*: “so that he might keep the spirits of the citizens at home down *with the same terror (as the one) with which...*”
- 55: *hospitium*: “inn, lodging place.”
- 59: *salūtī sibi atque illīs fuisse*: double dative: “had been (to) the salvation of...”; *salūs*, like *auxilium*, *bonum*, and *praesidium*, can be used in the dative to express purpose or tendency (Cap. XXXVI).
- 62–63: *id verumne an falsum sit*: indirect question.

- 66–67: *eō*: adverb “to that place” (cf. l.299); *ventum est*: impersonal passive of intransitive verb (Cap. XL).
- 69: *cāritāte domini*: ablative of cause (Cap. XXXVII) with an objective genitive (Cap. XXV).
- 70: *enimverō* = *enim* + *verō*: “surely, truly” (when *enim* is combined with *verō*, it comes first in its clause, unlike *enim* alone, which comes second; see Cap. X).
- 76–78: *Revocātis deinde ad concilium Latīnis, Tarquinius primum eōs collaudāvit ‘quod Turnum prō manifestō scelere meritā poenā affēcissent’*: subjunctive in a clause of reported reason, reporting the reason why Tarquin praised the Latins. Were Livy giving his own reason, he would have used *affēcera*nt (Cap. XLII).
- 78–79: *ēgit dē renovandō foedere*: see on *agere dē* above (ll.29–30).
- 81–82: *capita nōminis Latīni*: just like our “heads of state,” the heads (leaders) of the Latin league.
- 87–88: *Tarquinius miscuit manipulōs ex Latīnis Rōmānisque, ut ex binis singulōs faceret binosque ex singulis*: i.e., each manipule was made up half of Romans and half of Latins (*binōs ex singulis*), and thus the two sides, the Romans and the Latins, were mixed into one (*singulōs ex binis*).

***Gabiū dolō capti*: 90–167**

- 92: *quīn* (Cap. XL).
- 94–95: *cum vēndendā praedā quadrāgintā talenta argenti fēcisset*: take *quadrāgintā* with *talanta*, not *praedā vēndendā*; *praedā vēndendā* is an ablative of means.
- 97: *lentius spē*: ablative of comparison with a comparative adverb (Cap. XXIV).
- 98: *vī adortus* < *adorior*, *adorīrī*: “attack (by force).”
- 99: *arte Rōmānā*: in apposition to *fraude ac dolō*: ablative of means.
- 100: *velut positō bellō*: *pōnere* standing for (as often) *dēpōnere*; *fundāmentis templi iaciendīs*: you learned *iacere* as “throw, hurl” (Cap. XII), but it also means “set, establish, build.”
- 102–103: *ex compositō*: “according to plan”; *Gabios*: accusative of place to which; *patris in sē saevitiā nōn tolerandam*: a summary of

- the complaint (*querēns*) that is detailed in the extended *ōrātiō obliqua* that follows (ll.104–114).
- 106–108: *sē...ēlāpsūm*: accusative subject (with participial modifier) of *crēdidisse*; these two “sandwich” the further indirect statement: *nihil...hostēs L. Tarquinii* (Cap. XXXVI).
- 108–114: *quod sī apud eōs supplicibus locus nōn sit, pererrātūrum sē omne Latium, Volscōsque sē inde et Aequōs et Hernicōs petītūrum*: condition in *ōrātiō obliqua*; *quod sī*: “but if,” a common connective that always refers to what has just preceded; *dōnec*: “until,” the original mood is obscured in *ōrātiō obliqua*, but it would have been anticipatory subjunctive (Cap. XL); *quī...sciānt et...parātī sint*: relative clause of characteristic.
- 115–117: *quālis... quālis..., tālis...esset*: subordinate clauses in *ōrātiō obliqua* (Cap. XXXVI) secondary sequence with the historical present *mīrantur* (Cap. XXXVII).
- 118: *futūrum ut*: see grammar section above.
- 123–126: *quod...nōvisset scīretque*: see above: subjunctive of reported reason; *superbiam rēgiam*: royal arrogance, i.e., “the arrogance of the king.”
- 126–129: *ita cum sēnsim*: *cum* conjunction; *sēnsim*: “little by little”; *cum prōmptissimīs iuvenum*: *cum* preposition + ablative; *praedātum*: supine (so too *scīscitātum*, l.138); *dīctīs...aptīs*: ablative absolute.
- 130: *īnsciā multitudīne quid agerētur*: indirect question dependent on the *īnsciā* of the ablative absolute.
- 131: *quibus*: antecedent; *proelia* (l.130); *esset*: subjunctive as part of the *cum* clause.
- 135–136: *tantā cārītāte esse ut*: ablative of description (Cap. XXXII) followed by a result clause.
- 138–139: *scīscitātum*: supine of purpose.
- 140: *huic nūntō*: dative with *respōnsum est*; *dubiae fidēi*: genitive of description (Cap. XXXVI).
- 142–144: *papāver, -eris (n.)*: the poppy flower; *interrogandō exspectandōque*: ablative of gerund (ablative of cause) dependent on *fessus*; *ut rē imperfectā*: “as his business remained unaccomplished.”

- 145–146: *quae dixerit ipse quaeque viderit*: perfect subjunctives in indirect questions.
- 148–149: *ubi...vellet...praeciperet*: indirect questions.
- 149–151: *multī palam (interfectī sunt)*; *multī palam, quīdam*: asyndeton (lack of connectives).
- 157–159: *negōtia*: antecedent of *quorum*; *ut...relinqueret*: substantive clause of result (Cap. XXXVII) dependent on *negōtia (quōrum)*.
- 162–167: Reading help: *militiae*: “dative” (i.e., added to their military service); *sē...suīs*: indirect statement with *indignābātur*; sentence markers: *minus...quam*; *minōra* (with *opera*) ...*māiōris* (genitive of description with *labōris*); *opera speciē minōra, sed labōris aliquantō māiōris*: tasks smaller in appearance (*speciē*, abl. of respect) but of much more (*aliquantō*, abl. of degree of difference); *ad*: take with both accusative gerundive phrases (*faciendōs...agendam*).

Respōnsum ōrāculī: 168–195

- 177: *Tarquiniā...nātus*: ablative of source, “born from...”
- 178–179: *nihil in animō suō rēgī timendum relinquere statuit* = *statuit relinquere* (complementary infinitive); *suō rēgī*: dative of agent with the gerundive *timendum*, i.e., *nihil in animō suō quod rēx timēret*.
- 183: *lūdBrium*: “as a laughingstock,” “as a a joke.”
- 184: *ventum est*: see note to lines 66–67.
- 185–186: *cupīdō incessit animōs iuvenum scīscitandī ‘ad quem eōrum rēgnum Rōmānum esset ventūrum’*: *cupīdō...scīscitandī* “sandwich” (Cap. XXXVII), followed by an indirect question dependent on *scīscitandī*.
- 187: *ferunt*: i.e., *fāma est, trāditur*.
- 188: *vestrum prīmus*: partitive genitive of *vōs* (Cap. XXIX).
- 189–193: *ut...esset*: purpose clause; *Ignārus respōnsī, expers imperiī*: objective gentives (Cap. XXV).
- 192–193: *ipsī (nom.) sortī (dat.) permittunt*: in line 173 *sors* means “oracle, oracular response”; here the sense is more “fortune, chance”; *Uter...daret*: indirect question in secondary sequence (*permittunt* is a historical present; see Cap. XXXVII); *rediissent*

represents a future perfect indicative in secondary sequence (see Cap. XLIII); cf. direct discourse: *uter prior, cum Rōmam redierimus, mātī ōsculum dabit*. Just as *redierimus* is a completed action in relation to *dabit*, so is *rediissent* a future completed action in relation to *daret*.

- 193–194: *aliō*: adverb, “elsewhere, in a different direction,” with *spectāre*; *velut sī prōlāpsus cecidisset, terram ōsculō tetigit*: as at XLII.134, the subjunctive underscores the contrafactual nature of the *velut sī*: Brutus had not slipped and fallen—he did so to conceal his understanding of the oracle.
- 195: *scīlicet ‘quod ea commūnis ‘māter’ omnium mortālium esset’*: subjunctive of reported reason (Cap. XLII).

Uxor castissima: 196–228

- 197: *Reditum (est) inde Rōmam*: impersonal passive of intransitive (Cap. XL).
- 199–200: *ut in eā regiōne et in eā aetāte*: “for,” “considering”; *eaque...fuit*: “and this (its wealth) was the very reason for the war.”
- 201–202: *aerāriō*: Cf. Cap. XXXVI.133–134: *Aedēs Sātūrnī est aerārium populī Rōmānī, id est locus ubi pecūnia pūblica dēponitur ac servātur*: sentence markers: *cum...tum*.
- 205: *Temptāta rēs est sī...posset*: Indirect question with *sī* as “whether,” “to see whether.”
- 206: *prōcēdere*: “to turn out, succeed”; *parum*: “too little, not well.”
- 207: *statīvīs (castrīs)*: a stationary camp (Cap. XLIII).
- 210: *Egeriū filiū*: for Egerius, see XLIV.104.
- 211: *suam quisque*: “each praises his own (wife)” (Cap. XVIII).
- 213: *quantum cēterīs praestet*: indirect question; *praestāre* + dative (“is superior to”).
- 215–216: *praesentēs (nōs) nostrārum (uxōrum) ingenia*.
- 217: *age sānē*: colloquial: “come on then!” “so let’s go!” (*age*: imperative, “come on”; *sānē*: adverb, “well, really, very”).
- 219: *nurus, -ūs (f.)*: “daughter-in-law” (Cap. XLIV).
- 220: *tempus terentēs: tempus terere*, “pass time,” literally “wear away time.”

- 222: *muliebris certaminis laus*: objective genitive; *muliebris* is the adjective of *mulier penes* + accusative, “with, in the possession of” (only used with names of persons).

***Lucretia violāta*: 229–273**

- 232: *ab ignārīs cōsiliī*: *ab eis quī ignōrābant consilium Tarquiniī*; *cōsiliī*: objective genitive (Cap. XXV).
- 234: *strictō gladiō*: “with drawn sword” (ablative absolute).
- 237: *moriēre* = *moriēris*.
- 241–242: *in omnēs partēs*: in every respect; *versāre*: in the sense of “bend”: “he tried to bend her feminine heart in every respect.”
- 244: *cum (tē) mortuā*.
- 247–249: *expugnātō decore muliebrī*: ablative of cause with *ferōx*, as is *tantō malō* with *maesta*.
- 250–251: *ut cum singulīs fidēlibus amīcīs veniant*; *ita factō mātūrātōque opus esse*: *rem atrōcem incidisse* = *cum singulīs fidēlibus amīcīs venīte!* *ita factō mātūrātōque opus est*: *rem atrōcem incidit*; *factō mātūrātōque opus est*: *opus* + ablative of perfect passive participles: “there is need of action (*factō*) and speed (*mātūrātō*).”
- 257–258: *quaerentīque virō*: dative with *inquit*; *Satin’ salvē?*: “are you OK?”; “is everything all right?”; *quid salvī est...?* partitive genitive with a neuter pronoun (Caps. XVI, XXIX, XLIV); *mulierī āmissā pudicitīā*: ablative absolute.
- 261–262: *dexterās (mānūs)*; *haud impūne adulterō fore*: “this will not at all be without punishment for the adulterer” = *adulter puniētur*.
- 263–264: *mihi sibi...pestiferum*: “destructive to me—and to him.”
- 265–266: *aegrum animī*: *animī* is locative, “sick at heart”; *āvertendō*: ablative of means; *ab coactā* = *a Lucretiā, quae coacta est*; *dēlictī*: objective genitive.
- 267: *consilium*: “intention,” compare the distinction “*mentem peccāre, nōn corpus*.”
- 269: “*Vōs*” *inquit* “*vīderitis quid illī dēbeātur*”: “you will see to what is due to that man”; *vīderitis*: future perfect; *quid...dēbeātur*: indirect question.
- 270: *peccātō, suppliciō*: ablatives of separation (Cap. XXXVI).

Rēgēs exāctī: 274–343

- 277–278: *Per hunc...castissimum ante rēgiam iniūriam sanguinem*: prepositional phrase (*ante...iniūriam*) “sandwiched” inside another (*per...sanguinem*).
- 278–282: *iūrō...mē...exsecūtūrum nec passūrum (esse)*.
- 284–285: *mīrāculō* (ablative of means) *reī* (genitive); *unde* (sc. *esset*) *ingenium*: indirect question (see ll.177–180: *Brūtus...stultitiam simulāvit*).
- 285: *tōtī*: Latin often expresses with an adjective what in English we might convey with an adverb; so here, “completely.”
- 289: *concient mīrāculō...indignitāte*: *mīrāculō*: i.e., Brutus’s ability to speak; *indignitāte*: i.e., Tarquin’s rape of Lucretia.
- 291–294: (*Brūtus*) *auctor...arma capiendī ‘adversus hostilia ausōs’*: implied indirect statement; *‘quod virōs, quod Rōmānōs decēret!’*: subordinate clause in implied indirect statement (Cap. XLII).
- 295–296: *Ferōcissimus quisque iuvenum*: *quisque* with the superlative, “all the most spirited of the young men” (Cap. XXXI).
- 299: *ventum est*: see note above on line 67.
- 302: *curritur*: impersonal passive (Cap. XL).
- 303: *Celerēs, -um* (m. pl.) = *equitēs, um* (and in this period = the bodyguard of the king, XLII.226–228).
- 306–307: *ōrātiō nēquāquam eius pectoris ingenīique*: genitive of description: “by no means in keeping with that (*eius*) state of mind and ability which...” (Cap. XXXVI); *ad eam diem*: “up to that day”; *dē vī ac libīdine* etc. refers to the subject of the *ōrātiō obliqua*, *ōrātiō habita* (*dē* = ablative).
- 309–310: *Tricipitinus*: Sp. *Lucrētius Tricipitinus, pater Lucrētiaē*; *‘cui morte filiae causa mortis indignior ac miserābilior esset’* = *‘cui causa mortis indignior ac miserābilior morte (quam mors) filiae esset’*: *esset*: subordinate clause in implied *ōrātiō obliqua* (Cap. XLII).
- 311–312: *plēbis...dēmersae*.
- 312–314: *Rōmānōs...factōs*: accusative of exclamation (Cap. XV).
- 315: *corporī*: dative with *insecta*; *nefandō vehiculō*: ablative of means.
- 318: *imperium regī abrogāret*: “take the power away from (dative with compound verb) the king.”

- 320–322: *iūniōribus...lectīs armātisque*: sandwich around the relative clause *quī...dabant nōmen dare*, “to enlist, enroll one’s name”; *ad concitandum...exercitum* encloses (sandwiches) *inde adversus rēgem*.
- 323: *praefectus urbis*: governor of the city of Rome.
- 325–326: *exsecrantibus...mulieribusque*: ablative absolute.
- 327: *rē novā*: political change.
- 334: *Caere* (accusative): ancient Etruscan city, now Cervetri.
- 337: *concīverat* < *conciēre*: “stir up, produce.”
- 340: *Rēgnātum (est)*: impersonal passive of intransitive verb (Cap. XL); *ad liberātam* sc. *urbem*.

Hostis prō hospite (Ovidius: Fāstī. Ex librō II versūs 785–852):

345–413

- 347: *sōle iam parante condere vultūs suōs* (*vultus* is usually singular).
- 350: *errōris* with *quantum*; *animīs* with *inest*; *rērum*: objective genitive with *īnscia*.
- 351: *fūctus* + ablative of means.
- 355: *nūpta pudīca*: vocative (i.e., Lucretia).
- 360–361: *ut quondam stabulīs dēprēnsa relictīs/parva sub īnfēstō cum iacet agna lupō* = *ut quondam agna parva, stabulīs relictīs, iacet, dēprēnsa, sub īnfēstō lupō*.
- 362–364: *quid faciat? Pugnet?...Clamet?...Effugiat?*: deliberative subjunctives (Cap. XLI).
- 368: *nīl agis*: “you are accomplishing nothing.”
- 370: *ferēris*: “you will be said.”
- 371: *succubuit* < *succumbere* (Cap. XL).
- 373: *quantō*: ablative of price (Cap. VIII).
- 378: *habitus, -ūs*: appearance, condition (Cap. XLIV).
- 394–395: *respicit nē nōn procumbat honestē* = *cūrat ut honestē procumbat; cūra (Lucretiae) cadentis*.
- 402–403: *Per tibi ego hunc iūrō fortem castumque cruōrem/perque tuōs Mānēs, quī mihi nūmen erunt* = *ego tibi iūrō per hunc fortem castumque cruōrem perque tuōs Mānēs, quī mihi nūmen erunt*.

404: *profugā* with *stirpe*.

408: *animī mātṛōna virīlis*: genitive of description (Cap. XXXVI):
“a woman of manly courage.”

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

<i>epulae</i> , -ārum (<i>pl.</i>)	meal, feast
<i>exsequiae</i> , -ārum (<i>pl.</i>)	funeral procession, rites
<i>invidia</i> , -ae	envy, ill will, dislike
<i>iuventa</i> , -ae	youth
<i>magnificentia</i> , -ae	magnificence
<i>minae</i> , -ārum (<i>pl.</i>)	threats
<i>miseria</i> , -ae	misfortune, misery
<i>noxa</i> , -ae	harm, guilt
<i>nūpta</i> , -ae	wife
<i>palma</i> , -ae	palm, hand
<i>prūdentia</i> , -ae	intelligence, proficiency
<i>pudīcitia</i> , -ae	chastity, virtue
<i>saevitia</i> , -ae	savageness, cruelty
<i>stultitia</i> , -ae	stupidity, folly

2nd

<i>adulter</i> , -erī	adulterer
<i>adulterium</i> , -ī	adultery
<i>damnum</i> , -ī	loss
<i>dēlictum</i> , -ī	misdeed, offense
<i>exsilium</i> , -ī	exile
<i>lūdibrium</i> , -ī	mockery, derision, sport
<i>manipulus</i> , -ī	maniple
<i>operārius</i> , -ī	laborer
<i>ōrāculum</i> , -ī	oracle
<i>peccātum</i> , -ī	error, offense
<i>portentum</i> , -ī	portent, prodigy
<i>praefectus</i> , -ī	prefect, commander

stuprum, -ī	rape, defilement
tribūnus, -ī	tribune

3rd

aequālis, -is (<i>m./f.</i>)	person of the same age
auctōritās, -ātis (<i>f.</i>)	authorization, authority
bellātor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	warrior
cāritās, -ātis (<i>f.</i>)	high price, love, esteem
castigātor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	one who reproves, corrects
castitās, -ātis (<i>f.</i>)	chastity
crātis, -is (<i>f.</i>)	hurdle (of wickerwork)
dēdecus, -oris (<i>n.</i>)	disgrace, dishonor
libidō, -inis (<i>f.</i>)	desire, lust
mentiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	mention, reference
opifex, -icis (<i>m.</i>)	workman, artisan
orbitās, -ātis (<i>f.</i>)	loss of children/parents
papāver, -eris (<i>n.</i>)	poppy
paucitās, -ātis (<i>f.</i>)	small number, paucity
penetrālia, -ium (<i>n. pl.</i>)	the interior
prōlēs, -is (<i>f.</i>)	offspring
simultās, -ātis (<i>f.</i>)	enmity, quarrel
sors, -rtis (<i>f.</i>)	lot, drawing lots, fortune
victrīx, -īcis (<i>f.</i>)	femal conqueror (she who is) victorious

4th

magistrātus, -ūs	office, magistrate
-------------------------	--------------------

VERBA**-āre**

(abrogō) abrogāre	repeal, cancel
(administrō) administrāre	conduct, administer
(aequō) aequāre	make equal, equal
(āvolō) āvolāre	fly off, rush off
(collaudō) collaudāre	commend, praise
(dēliberō) dēliberāre	deliberate
(dicitō) dicitāre	dictate
(dītō) dītāre	enrich

(exsecrōr) exsecrārī	curse
(inambulō) inambulāre	walk up and down
(inclinō) inclināre	turn, bend, incline
(indignōr) indignārī	resent, be indignant
(iūrō) iūrāre	swear
(māchinōr) māchinārī	devise, plot
(mānō) mānāre	flow, be wet, drip
(mātūrō) mātūrāre	make haste, hurry
(peccō) peccāre	do wrong
(pererrō) pererrāre	wander through
(praedōr) praedārī	plunder, loot
(rebellō) rebellāre	reopen the war, revolt
(sciscitōr) sciscitārī	inquire, ask
(stillō) stillāre	drip
(stuprō) stuprāre	violate, rape
(tolerō) tolerāre	bear, endure
-ēre	
(obsidēō) obsidēre, -sidisse, -sessum	besiege
(paveō) pavēre, pavisce	be terrified
(reticeō) reticēre, -uisse	keep silent
(urgeō) urgēre, ursisse	press, oppress
-ere	
(assūmō) assūmere (< sumere)	take, lay claim to
(coniciō) conicere (< icere)	throw, put together
(convehō) convehere (< vehere)	carry, gather
(dēcutiō) dēcutere, -ssisse, -ssum	knock off, shake off
(ēloquōr) ēloquī (< loquī)	express, tell
(exigō) exigere (< agere)	drive out, exact, require, pass
(extrahō) extrahere (< trahere)	pull out, extract
(imminuō) imminuere, -uisse, -ūtum	make smaller, reduce
(incalēscō) incalēscere, -uisse	become heated
(incidō) incidere, -cidisse, -cāsum	occur, present itself
(invīsō) invīsere (< vīsere)	go to see

(praeciپیو) praecipere (< capere)	anticipate, advise, order
(prōlābor) prōlābī (< lābī)	slip, overbalance
(prōtegō) prōtegere (< tegere)	protect
(prōtrahō) prōtrahere (< trahere)	pull out, draw out
(terō) terere, trīvisse, trītum	wear out, use up, spend
(trānsfugiō) trānsfugere (< fugere)	go over, desert

-īre

(assentiō) assentīre (< sentīre)	agree with, assent
(lēniō) lēnīre, -īvisse, -ītum	placate, appease
(obeō) obīre (< īre)	meet, visit, go into, enter upon, set
(oborior) oborīrī (< orīrī)	spring up

ADIECTĪVA**1st/2nd**

aerātus, -a, -um	fitted with bronze
ānxius, -a, -um	worried, worrying
brūtus, -a, -um	brutish, stupid
castus, -a, -um	chaste
centuriātus, -a, -um	voting in centuries
contēptus, -a, -um	despicable
generōsus, -a, -um	noble
grandaevus, -a, -um	aged
honestus, -a, -um	honorable, respectable; (<i>n.</i>) virtue
impavidus, -a, -um	fearless
imperfectus, -a, -um	unfinished
impudicus, -a, -um	unchaste, immoral
invīsus, -a, -um	odious, disliked
manifēstus, -a, -um	flagrant, plain
obstinātus, -a, -um	stubborn, obstinate
pestifer, -era, -erum	disastrous, pernicious
prōmptus, -a, -um	prompt, keen, ready
pudibundus, -a, -um	shamefaced
pudicus, -a, -um	chaste, pure
sērus, -a, -um	late
voluntārius, -a, -um	voluntary

3rd

expers (<i>gen. expertis</i>)	having no share in
fidēlis, -e	faithful, loyal
inānis, -e	empty, gaping
iners (<i>gen. inertis</i>)	inactive, idle
īnsolēns (<i>gen. īnsolentis</i>)	haughty, arrogant
īnsōns (<i>gen. īnsontis</i>)	innocent
iuvenālis, -e	youthful
mātrōnālis, -e	of a married woman
perennis, -e	enduring, perpetual
praepotēns (<i>gen. praepotentis</i>)	very powerful
sēmianimis, -e	half alive

ADVERBIA

aliō	elsewhere
difficulter	with difficulty
enimvērō	truly, certainly
eōdem	to the same place
penes	in the possession of
quācumque	wherever
ultrō	spontaneously
usquam	anywhere

XLVI: QVADRAGESIMVM SEXTVM: POST REGES EXACTOS (Eutropius)¹

[*Ex Eutropii Breviariō ab urbe conditā* I.9–III.6]

I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION

The Roman historian Eutropius was commissioned by the Emperor *Valens* (AD 364–378) to write an abstract of Roman history, *Breviārium ab urbe conditā*. In his dedication to the Emperor Valens, Eutropius gives his goals for the *Breviārium*:

*ab urbe conditā ad nostram memoriam, quae in negotiis vel
bellicis vel cīvilibus ēminēbant, per ordinem temporum brevī
narrātiōne collēgi*

Eutropius gives a brief outline (*brevī narrātiōne*), chronologically arranged (*per ordinem temporum*), of the outstanding (*ēminēbant*) events of Roman military (*negotiis bellicis*) and domestic (*negotiis cīvilibus*) history from the founding of the city (*ab urbe conditā*) to his own time (*ad nostram memoriam*). He follows Livy for the early part of his work. Comparing the sentence structure of the two authors offers an exercise useful for your understanding of Latin.

Eutropius' style is extremely concise, lacking in literary merit, but nonetheless a model of clarity. The extract in this chapter covers the time from the expulsion of the Kings to the outbreak of the Second Punic War in 218 BC. Eutropius has based this part of his history on a summary of Livy, and his main interest is the feats of arms (*rēs gestae*) of the Romans. He mentions in passing the civil strife (*sēditio*) between the patricians (the Senate) and the plebeians (*plēbēii* or *plēbs*, "the common people"), which led to the election of tribunes of the people (*tribūni plēbis*) charged with the protection of the people against the consuls and senators.

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

Roman Expansion

In this period of her history, Rome conquered all of Italy south of the Apennines and made war on the great naval power of Carthage. They first subdued various neighboring peoples, including the northern Etruscans. Camillus captured their southernmost city, Veii, in 396 BC. A few years later, Gauls from northern Italy descended on Rome. The Roman army was defeated on the banks of the *Allia*, a tributary of the Tiber, and the Gauls occupied the city except for the Capitoline (390 BC). After a long siege, Camillus, “the second founder of Rome,” rescued the Romans.

In the following years, the Romans repulsed new Gallic attacks. After this, Rome’s most dangerous enemies were the Samnites, who were defeated after long wars, and the Greeks in southern Italy. The Romans met with stubborn resistance from the city of Tarentum, whose Greek inhabitants appealed to king Pyrrhus of Epirus for help (280 BC). After some costly victories (hence the phrase “Pyrrhic victory”²), the king retired to Sicily. When he returned to the mainland, the Romans, who were now the undisputed masters of Italy south of the Apennines, defeated him.

First Punic War

The conquest of southern Italy led to war with Carthage, the great power of the Western Mediterranean. The First Punic War lasted from 264–241 (the Carthaginians, *Carthāginiēnsēs*, coming from Phoenicia, are also called *Poenī*, adjective *Pūnicus*, -a, -um). *Gāius Duīlius* led a large Roman fleet to victory over the Carthaginians in 260. The war continued with varying success on land and at sea. The Carthaginians took prisoner in Africa the Roman general Regulus. He was then sent to Rome with orders to persuade his countrymen to make peace with Carthage; instead he urged the Romans to fight on. He returned to Carthage, where he died under torture. In 241, a decisive sea battle was fought between the Roman and Carthaginian fleets of 300 and 400 ships respectively. The Romans were victorious, and the Carthaginians had to make peace and abandon Sicily.

Continued Expansion

In the following years, the Romans also conquered Sardinia and Corsica, and in northern Italy, they captured *Mediolānum* (Milan) from the Gauls. The victorious general *Mārcellus* killed the Gallic commander and carried his armor, the *spolia opīma*, in triumph to the Capitoline.

2. Plutarch, *Life of Pyrrhus*, 21: “If we win one more battle against the Romans, we will be completely destroyed.”

The chapter concludes with a quotation from book VI of the *Aeneid*: Anchises in the netherworld describing the triumphant Marcellus to Aeneas.

Roman Chronology

Roman chronology took the foundation of Rome as its point of departure. Dates are given in ordinal numbers (*annō*, *-ēsīmō*) followed by *ab urbe conditā* (or *urbis conditae*, abbreviated *a.u.c.* or *u.c.*), e.g., *anno ducentēsīmō quadrāgēsīmō quīntō ab urbe conditā* (*annō CCXV a.u.c.*), “in the year 245 after the foundation of the city.”

- *Annō trecentēsīmō et quīntō decimō ab urbe conditā* (85)
- *Annō trecentēsīmō sexāgēsīmō quīntō ab urbe conditā* (95)
- *Annō trecentēsīmō et alterō ab urbe conditā* (125)
- *Annō urbis conditā quadringentēsīmō octōgēsīmō prīmō* (288)
- *Annō quadringentēsīmō septuāgēsīmō septimō* (299)

The modern chronology “*annō Domini*” (AD) dates only from the sixth century. The year 754 after the foundation of the city (*ab urbe conditā*) is the first year after the traditional birth of Christ (*post Christum nātum*).³ After 509 BC (the year the kings were expelled from Rome), dates are sometimes given with the words *post rēgēs exāctōs* (or *ab expulsīs rēgibus*), “after the expulsion of the kings”:

- *annō prīmō ab expulsīs rēgibus* (8)
- *tertiō annō post rēgēs exāctōs* (35, cf. 41, 48)
- *octāvō decimō annō postquam rēgēs ēiectī erant* (46: a variation on the phrase)

Another, very common way of marking the year is with the names of the two consuls in the ablative absolute, e.g.:

- *K. Fabiō et T. Vergiō cōsulibus* (67)
- *L. Genūciō et Q. Serviō cōsulibus* (145, cf. 194, etc.)
- *Ap. Claudiō (et) M. Fulviō cōsulibus* (308, 264 BC)

3. Scholars dispute the date of Christ’s birth.

To convert a Roman date to our system of dating:

- BC dates: subtract the Roman date from 753 (the year 245 *a.u.c.* is 509 BC)
- AD dates: subtract 753 from the Roman date

In the margin, dates are given a.C. = ante *Chrīstum*, BC (and p.C. = *post Chrīstum*, AD).

Roman Republican Government

In *Lingua Latina: Indices*, there is a list of Roman consuls with dates (*a.c.* and *u.c.*). After the list of consuls, there is a list of the triumphs of Roman generals beginning with Romulus' triumph over the *Caenīnēnsēs*. Such lists, called the *Fāstī cōsulārēs* and *triumphālēs*, were set up on marble tablets in the Forum; several fragments of them have been found.

The consuls had no less authority than the kings, but the Romans tried to protect themselves against abuse of power by every year electing not one, but two new consuls. Only when the security of the State (*rēs pūblica*) was seriously endangered did they appoint a *dictātor*, who was given supreme power for a period of six months together with his subordinate, the *magister equitum* (see lines 43–47, 80, 100, 104, 185). Under the consuls, all important decisions were made in consultation with the Senate, whose members (called *senātōrēs* or *patrēs*) were the heads of the noble patrician families. The consuls and other magistrates were elected from their number.

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Consuls et dictātōrēs: 1–123

- 2: *hinc*: from this time.
- 3–4: *hāc causā creātī ut* + a substantive causal clause introduced by a conditional protasis referring to the future; sequence is secondary: *coercēret* is incomplete action, as befits both the purpose clause and the condition; *voluisset* is pluperfect because the action of “wanting” is prior to that of “constraining.”
- 4, 11–12: *placuit nē; placuerat enim nē; placēre* in the past tenses means “it is (*placuit*) was (*placuerat*) decided, resolved” + a noun clause of the resolution.
- 11: *Tarquiniō Collātīnō*: dative of disadvantage with *sublāta est* (< *tollere*); *dignitās*: “rank,” “honorable place in society” (cf. l.43).

- 14: *locō ipsīus*: “in his place.”
- 21: *dēfēnsōrem pudicitiae suae*: because he avenged Tarquin’s violation of Lucretia, thus becoming a symbolic defender of female chastity.
- 31: *secundō quoque annō*: “also in the second year”: i.e., *quōque* (also) not *quōque* (from *quisque*), which would have meant “every second year” (Cap. XX).
- 45: *dictātōr*: magistrate elected for a six-month (maximum) emergency term; the dictator was *magister populī* (“master of the infantry”); *Magister Equitum* (“master of the cavalry”), second in command to the dictator.
- 48: *sēditiō*: “insurrection, sedition.”
- 49–50: *tamquam* (reported reason: see grammar section); *ipse*: i.e., *populus*.
- 51: *per quōs*: relative clause of purpose (Cap. XXXIX).
- 54: *Coriolī, Coriolōrum*: town in Latium.
- 57–58: *Cn. Marcius*: usually referred to as *Coriolānus*, an honorific cognomen he earned fighting the city; *Volscōrum civitatem*: in apposition to *Coriolōs*.
- 60: *mīliārium*: the emperor Augustus set up the *mīliārium aureum* (“golden milestone”) in the forum to mark the end point of all military roads. Distances from this point to other places were given in terms of the milestones leading from this first one (but at the time referred to, *mīliārium* = *mille passūs*).
- 61–64: *oppugnātūrus*: future participle for a pluperfect subjunctive in a past contracfactual condition = *oppugnāvisset*, protasis *vēnissent*: Coriolanus was intending to attack, if his mother and wife had not come; the future participle gives the sense that Coriolanus was on the point of, he would have, had his mother and wife not come.
- 64–66: *quī...esset*: descriptive (potential) relative clause with *secundus*; the descriptive relative clause is frequent with words such as *ūnus, sōlus (quī)* (Caps. XXXIX, XLIV).
- 71–72: *quī...debērent*: descriptive relative clause (Caps. XXXIX, XLIV); *singulī*: “each of whom,” “each individually.”

- 82–83: *in opere et arāns*: later Latin likes phrases that are not parallel (i.e., here we have a prepositional phrase linked with a present participle); *toga praetexta*: a toga fringed with a purple stripe was worn by higher magistrates; here the *toga praetexta* stands for the office of *dictātor* that Cincinnatus was about to assume. It was also worn by free-born children until they came of age for the toga of manhood (*toga virilis*).
- 88: *decemvirī*: this board of ten men codified the laws of Rome and had them inscribed on twelve bronze tablets, known as the “twelve tables” (*XII tabulae*).
- 90: *stipendia*: both a year of military service (in the plural) and the pay or salary (in singular), whence we get “stipend.”
- 98: *urbī*: dative with *vīcīnae*; Rome is “the city.”
- 108–109: *eī*: *Camillō*; *quasi...dīvīssisset*: reported reason (see grammar section).
- 114: *quicquam*: used only in negative clauses (Cap. XXVI); subject of *potuit*.
- 115–116: *nē obsidērent*: purpose clause initiated by the ablative absolute *acceptō aurō*.
- 117–118: *Gallīs superventum est*: impersonal passive; *supervenīre*: “overtake,” “fall upon.”
- 121: *triumphāns*: the elaborate celebratory parade for victorious Roman generals, the Triumph, wound its way through the city, ending in the forum (see Cap. XXXVI: *Ad hoc templum imperātor victor post triumphum ascendit, ut Iovī Optimō Māximō sacrificium faciat, dum ducēs hostium, quī in triumphō ante currum imperātōris ductī sunt, ad supplicium trāduntur*, i.e., they were killed).

Post urbem captam: 124–180

- 126: *prīmō* sc. *annō*.
- 140: *post aliquantum* (sc. *tempus*); *nūllōs* (*tribūnōs*) *placuit fierī*: *placuit nūllōs* (*tribūnōs*) *fieri*.
- 151–152: *sublātō torque aureō collōque suō impositō*: “doubled” ablative absolute: *torque aureō sublātō* (*et*) *impositō*; *collō suō*: dative with *impositō*; *Toquātī*: note that Titus Manlius had, before defeating the Gaul in single combat, only two names, the *prae-*

- nōmen* (Titus) and *gentilicium* (Mānlius); *Torquātus* becomes his *cognōmen* and is passed on to his descendants; so too with *Corvīnus* (l.171).
- 158: *mīlitēs praestāre*: cities conquered by Rome had to furnish (*praestāre*) soldiers for the Roman army.
- 160: *quī modus...efficiēbat*: “and this measure yielded 60,000 or more armed men.”
- 161: *parvīs adhūc Rōmānīs rēbus*: concessive = *cum rēs Rōmānae adhūc parvae essent*.
- 166: *eī* = *Valeriō*.
- 164–171: *Marcus Valerius* becomes *Marcus Valerius Corvīnus*: see note on lines 151–152.
- 178: *in Rōstrīs*: see XXXVI.87–91: *Ante Comitium est locus superior ex quō ōrātōrēs verba faciunt ad populum*. ‘*Rōstra*’ *nōmen est huius locī, quia rōstrīs nāvium captārum ōrnātur ‘rōstrum’ enim vocantur eae hastae ferreae quae ē prōrā nāvis longae ēminent velut rōstrum avis*.

Samnītēs: 181–214

- 183–184: *Samnītās*: Greek names in the 3rd declension plural often retain the -ās ending (instead of ēs); cf. ll.189, 205, 207.
- 188: *nē sē absente pugnāret*: indirect command.
- 190–191: *capitis damnātus*: the genitive is used with judicial expressions: accusations, condemnations (such as here), and acquittals; he was condemned with the loss of his head; “*quod sē vetante pugnāset*”: subjunctive of reported reason (implied *ōrātiō obliqua*) (Cap. XLII).
- 195–196: *sub iugum*: the illustration in your text is a bit misleading. The “yoke” under which the Roman soldiers were forced to pass was made by making an arch of three spears, two uprights, and a third as a transverse bar.
- 196–197: *pax solūta est*: the army had been coerced into making peace, which is legal only when ratified by the Senate; it was therefore revoked.
- 200: *aquam Appiam induxit*: Appius Claudius had built the first of the great Roman aqueducts (*aquaeductus*), known as the *Aqua*

Claudia, from his *gentilicium*, while the road he had built is called the *Via Appia*.

204: *lēgātus datus fuisset*: “had been given to him (*eī*) as a lieutenant.”

***Pyrrhus*: 215–305**

216: *quia...fēcissent*: subjunctive of reported reason (Cap. XLII).

224: *dūcī, ostendī...dīmītī*: all present passive infinitives with *iussit* (l.223).

225: *quaecumque ā Rōmānīs agerentur*: subjunctive for a subordinate clause in implied indirect statement (Cap. XLII).

226: *cum iam fugeret*: when he was beginning to flee; *iam* with the imperfect shows an action as just starting.

230: *adversō vulnere*: the soldiers were killed while standing their ground and fighting, not running away; hence their wounds were in front, not in their backs.

232–233: *sē tōtīus orbis dominum esse potuisse, sī tālēs sibi milītēs contigissent*: past contrafactual condition in *ōrātiō obliqua*; *posse* is in the infinitive instead of the subjunctive (see Cap. XLIII, grammar section on *posse, oportēre, debēre*).

238: *terrōre exercitūs*: ablative of cause (Cap. XXXVII) and objective genitive (Cap. XXV).

255: *bīnōrum hostium*: distributive numbers (Cap. XXX): to regain their former status, each had to bring back the armor (*spolia*) stripped from two slain enemy soldiers.

266: *Tarentum*: accusative of place to which (so too line 281).

267: *interiectō annō*: “after the lapse of a year,” “the second year later.”

269: *vīcīna castra*: i.e., two camps near each other.

273–274: *quae...spopondisset*: subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*: *iussit... (ea) dīcī quae...*

275: *difficilius*: comparative of the adverb.

289: *vēnēre* = *vēnērunt* (cf. l.292: *commōvēre*).

Bellum Pūnicum primum: 306–430

- 314: *in fidem acceptae*: taken under the protection of Rome.
- 328: *plūrimum possent*: “were extremely powerful.”
- 334: *in marī pugnātum (est)*: impersonal passive.
- 361–362: *Et subācta Āfrica tunc fuisset, nisi quod tanta famēs erat ut diūtius exercitus exspectāre nōn posset*: *fuisset* marks the apodosis of a past contrafactual condition; the indicative protasis *nisi quod* (“except for the fact that”) cuts off the possibility of the Romans conquering (they would have conquered except for the fact that there was a famine).
- 369: *neque in aliquō animus hīs infractus fuit*: “nor in anyone was courage unboken by these events.”
- 388: *nihil quasi Rōmānus ēgit*: “did not act at all like a Roman,” i.e., behaved as if he enjoyed none of the rights of being a Roman citizen.
- 392: *tantī*: genitive of value (Cap. XXIX).
- 395: *nūllus admīsīt*: “no one granted an audience to.”
- 414: *Lilybaeum*: modern Marsala.
- 418: *īnfīnitum*: “an endless supply.”

Iānus iterum clausus: 431–473

- 439: *modius trīticī*: the *modius* is the standard Roman measure for grain; *trīticum*, -ī is wheat.
- 445: *Rōmānīs*: with *pārēre*, not *condiciōnibus*.
- 451: *iīs*: dative with *contigerat*.
- 459: *prō Rōmānīs cōsēnsit*: “united on the side of the Romans.”
- 462: *per cōsulem tantum*: adverb, not adjective: “by the consul alone.”
- 472: *stīpitī*: dative with compound *imposita*.

Spolia Opima Tertia (Aenēis VI.855–856): 475–477

- 477: *super-ēminēre*: “be conspicuous beyond all others.”

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

collēga, -ae (<i>m.</i>)	colleague
dictātūra, -ae	dictatorship
pompa, -ae	public procession
praetexta, -ae	toga with purple border

2nd

castellum, -ī	fort, stronghold
corvus, -ī	raven
elephantus, -ī	elephant
fiscus, -ī	public treasury
historicus, -ī	historian
iūgerum, -ī	area of about 2/3 of an acre
iugum, -ī	yoke, ridge
meritum, -ī	merit
miliārium, -ī	milestone
modius, -ī	a Roman dry measure, “peck”
naufragium, -ī	shipwreck
patrimōnium, -ī	patrimony, fortune
quadriennium, -ī	four years
tribūnus militum	tribune of the military
tribūnus plēbis	tribune of the people
triennium, -ī	three years
tritīcum, -ī	wheat
venēnum, -ī	poison

3rd

calamitās, -ātis (<i>f.</i>)	misfortune, calamity
cēnsor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	censor (magistrate)
dēprecātiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	entreaty, plea
diūrnitās, -ātis (<i>f.</i>)	long duration
explōrātor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	scout, spy
favor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	goodwill, favor
honestās, -ātis (<i>f.</i>)	honesty, virtue

permūtātiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	exchange
pugnātor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	fighter, combatant
stīpes, -itis (<i>m.</i>)	stake, stick
sūdor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	sweat
tīrō, -ōnis (<i>m.</i>)	recruit
unguis, -is (<i>m.</i>)	nail, claw

4th

complexus, -ūs	embrace
cōsulātus, -ūs	consulate
flētus, -ūs	weeping

5th

perniciēs, -ēī	destruction
-----------------------	-------------

VERBA

-āre

(damnō) damnāre	condemn, sentence
(dēprecōr) dēprecārī	beg, entreat
(perdomō) perdomāre	subjugate
(persevērō) persevērāre	persist, continue
(remandō) remandāre	send back word
(reparō) reparāre	repair, restore, renew
(repudiō) repudiāre	reject, refuse to accept
(sollicitō) sollicitāre	solicit, incite
(tractō) tractāre	handle, treat, manage
(vindicō) vindicāre	claim, avenge

-ēre

(obtimeō) obtinēre (< tenēre)	hold, gain, obtain
(superēmineō) super-ēminēre	stand out above

-ere

(cōnsenēscō) cōnsenēscere, -uisse	grow old
(dēcipō) dēcipere (< capere)	deceive
(dēmergō) dēmergere, -merisse, -mersum	sink, plunge

(excīdō) excīdere, -disse, -sum	destroy
(expavēscō) expavēscere, -avisse, -atum	become frightened (at)
(impellō) impellere (< pellere)	strike, drive, compel
(īnfringō) īnfringere (< frangere)	break, crush
(obsequōr) obsequī (< sequī)	comply with, obey
(perimō) perimere (< emere)	destroy, kill
(praesūmō) praesūmere (< sūmere)	take for oneself, assume
(redigō) redigere (< agere)	drive back, bring, reduce
(regredior) regredī, -gressum	go back, return
(restituō) restituere, -uisse, -utum	restore, rebuild, reinstate
(subigō) subigere (< agere)	subdue, drive, force
(trānsigō) trānsigere (< agere)	carry through, finish
(tribuō) tribuere, -uisse, -ūtum	grant, attribute
-īre	
(comperio) comperīre, -erisse, -ertum	find out, learn, discover
(supervenio) supervenīre (< venīre)	appear, surpass

ADIECTĪVA

1st/2nd

honōrificus, -a, -um	honorable
incognitus, -a, -um	unknown
īnfinītus, -a, -um	unlimited, infinite
quadringentēsimus, -a, -um	four hundredth
rōstrātus, -a, -um	having a beaked prow
septuāgēsimus, -a, -um	seventieth
sexāgēsimus, -a, -um	sixtieth
torquātus, -a, -um	wearing a collar, necklace
trānsmarīnus, -a, -um	from beyond the seas
trecentēsimus, -a, -um	three hundredth

3rd

cōsulāris, -e	consular
grandis, -e	big, large

īnfāmis, -e	disgraced
īsignis, -e	noted, remarkable
nāvālis, -e	naval
singulāris, -e	single, singular, unique
trux (<i>gen. trucis</i>)	savage, grim

ADVERBIA

amplius	more
invicem	mutually, one another
retrō	back
secundō	for the second time
tertiō	for the third time

XLVII: QVADRAGESIMVM SEPTIMVM: GRAECI ET ROMANI (Aulus Gellius)¹

I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION

This chapter is taken from a collection of essays (*commentārii*) written by *Aulus Gellius* about AD 150 and published in twenty books under the title *Noctēs Atticae*. The collection comprises his gleanings from years of reading and jotting down bits that intrigued him—a habit that was not peculiar to Gellius. The preface explains his decision to name his collection *Attic Nights*:

...*quoniam longinquīs per hiemem noctibus in agrō, sicuti dixi,
terrae Atticae commentātiōnēs hāsce lūdere ac facere exorsī
sumus...*

Lūdere is important here: the *Attic Nights* represent the intellectual leisure time of a second-century AD member of the Roman elite. The essays cover a great variety of subjects (linguistic, philosophical, legal, literary, etc.) based on his extensive reading of Greek and Latin authors, whom he often quotes. Aulus Gellius has preserved many passages from lost works. The initial *commentārius* presents a chronological comparison of famous Greeks and Romans. Aulus Gellius observes that the illustrious Greek statesmen, philosophers, and poets lived long before Rome became a great power, and that Greek art and literature flourished long before the first Roman literary works appeared.

Most of the works of early Roman authors mentioned here are lost, except for some fragments, but twenty comedies by *Plautus* and six by *Terentius* (Terence) have been preserved. We also have a treatise *de Agrī Cultūrā* by *Catō*, which is the oldest surviving prose work in Latin.

Two short pieces from the same collection follow: one contains the story of the origin of the *Sibylline Books* (*librī Sibyllīni*), the other some observations on

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

the different oaths uttered by men and women (observations which are confirmed by usage in the comedies of Plautus and Terence).

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Graeci et Rōmānī (Ex Aulī Gelliī ‘Noctium Atticārum’ librō XVII capitulum XXI): 1–165

- 412: *ut...habērēmus, nē...dicerēmus*: two purpose clauses introduce the sentence before we get to the main verb (*excerpēbamus*); *cōspectum* < *cōspectus*, -ūs: “a view, survey”; *incōspectum* < *incōspectus*, -a, -um: “indiscreet, imprudent,” clearly a pun; *chronicī* = χρονικά: the Greek version of *annāle*: chronological records of important events; *quibus temporibus flōruissent... nōbīlēs insignēsque...fuissent*: indirect questions. Gellius is making notes (*excerpēbamus*) from the *chronicī* so his readers know the answer to when illustrious Greeks and Romans were in their prime (*flōruissent*).
- 15: *dē pluribus (hominibus)...coniectūra fierī/coniectūram facere*: “make a conjecture, an inference about many others.”
- 21: *Silviī*: see XLI.70–73.
- 22: *in prīmō* (sc. *librō*) *annālium*; cf. I.25: *in prīmō Chronicōrum*.
- 27–28: *ex illō nōbīlī numerō sapientum*: Solon (638–558 BC) was one of a group of seven men famed for their wisdom.
- 32: *id* (the tyranny of Pisistratus) *eī* (i.e., *Solōnī*) *praedīcentī nōn crēditum est*: impersonal passive with dative (Cap. XL).
- 33: *Tarquinius*: XLV.1.
- 37: *Nepōs Cornēlius* = *Cornēlius Nepōs* (Cap. XLIX).
- 38: *Tullus Hostilius*: XLIII.2–3.
- 39: *poēmatīs*: ablative of respect with *clārum et nōbilem*.
- 47: *tribūnōs (plēbis)*: XLVI.50.
- 48–49: *Coriolānus*: XLVI.56ff.
- 53: *plērāque Graeciā: plērique, -aeque, -aque*: “most (of)” (Cap. XXXIII).

- 60–61: *per eas tempestates*: you learned (Cap. XVI) *tempestas* as “storm,” but its primary meaning is “period of time.” For the *decemviri legibus scribundis* (dative of purpose) and Twelve Tables, cf. XLVI.88.
- 73–74: *quibus*: ablative of comparison, *nātū*, ablative of respect, both with *posterior*.
- 75: *quibusdam temporibus iisdem vixerunt*: there’s no easy way around this clumsy phrase; “at certain times (i.e., not all of their lives) they lived at the same time,” or, literally: “they lived at certain same times” = *iisdem ferē temporibus*.
- 80: *Athēniēnsibus*: dative with *praepositī sunt*.
- 83: *Camillus*: XLVI.104, etc.
- 81–82: *Sōcratēs Athēnīs capitis damnātus est*: genitive of the charge/penalty (Cap. XLVI, note on lines 190–191).
- 90–92: *Mānlius...convictus est...damnātusque capitis*: genitive of the charge/penalty.
- 106: *inque eō tempore*: *in* + a qualified ablative refers to the circumstances rather than the time.
- 118–119: *cōsulēs Tiberius Veturius et Spurius Postumius*: XLVI.194–195.
- 120: *sub iugum*: XLVI.195–196.
- 125: *Pyrrhus*: XLVI.215ff.
- 130: *senātū mōvērunt*: removed from the Senate.
- 131: *Nota* = *nota censōria*: the mark put by the names of those whom the censors condemn; *causam istī notae subscripsērunt*: accusative and dative with compound verb (Cap. XXXVII); *quod...comperissent...habēre*: subjunctive of reported reason (Cap. XLI); *grātiā*: with preceding genitive “for the sake of”; *argentum factum*: “wrought silver, silver plate”; there were sumptuary laws at Rome putting a limit on luxury.
- 136: *bellum adversum Poenōs primum*: XL.306ff.
- 139: *annīs postea paulō plūribus quam vīgintī*: ablative of degree of difference with an ablative of comparison (Caps. XVI, XLIII): “afterward by a little more than twenty years.”

- 145–150: Reading help: [*quibus (cōsulibus) nātum esse Q. Ennium poētam*] *M. Varrō...scrīpsit; eumque (= Ennium)...duodecimum Annālem scrīpsisse idque ipsum Ennium in eōdem librō dicere.*
- 152–155: *dē amīcōrum sententiā*: “on the advice of his friends”; *quod...esset iūrāsetque...habēre*: subjunctive of reported reason (Cap. XLII).
- 164–165: *longius*: the comparative can mean “too,” as here: “too long”; *bellum Poenōrum secundum*; cf. the beginning of the chapter; Gellius tells us his intention is to write about distinguished Greeks and Romans from the time of the founding of the city to the Second Punic War.

Librī Sibyllinī (Ex Aulī Gelliī ‘Noctium Atticārum’ librō I capitulum XIX): 166–193

- 166: For the Sibyl, see XL.288; the Sibylline books of oracles were consulted during times of crisis.
- 176: *quasi dēsiperet*: subjunctive of reported reason (Cap. XLVI); for *quasi* with the subjunctive of reported reason, see Cap. XLVI.
- 178: *eōdem pretiō*: ablative of price (so too ll.183–184) (Cap. VIII).
- 185: *ōre iam sēriō atque attentiōre animō*: ablative of description (Cap. XXXII).
- 186: *insuper* = “over”; *insuper habēre* = *contemnere*.
- 187: *nihilō*: ablative of degree of difference with the comparative *minōre* (Caps. XVI, XLIII).
- 188–190: *nusquam locī*: *locī* is a partitive genitive after the adverb *nusquam*; *constitit*: see above: “it has been agreed.”

Dē iūre iūrاندō (Ex Aulī Gelliī ‘Noctium Atticārum’ librō XI capitulum VI): 194–206

- 202: *facile dictū*: ablative of the supine (Cap. XXII).
- 205: *iūs iūrاندum*: “a sworn oath.”

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

adnotātiuncula, -ae	short note
cōfidentia, -ae	self-confidence
coniectūra, -ae	inferring, conjecture
cōstantia, -ae	steadiness, persistence
historia, -ae	account, story, history
hospita, -ae	(female) guest, stranger
libra, -ae	balance, pound (327 g)
philosophia, -ae	philosophy
tragoedia, -ae	tragedy

2nd

astrologus, -ī	astronomer
cognōmentum, -ī	surname
commentārius, -ī	notebook, record
dīvortium, -ī	divorce
dubium, -ī	point of separation
foculus, -ī	hearth
philosophus, -ī	philosopher
quīndecimvirī, -ōrum (pl.)	board of fifteen priests
sacrārium, -ī	sanctuary
scriptum, -ī	writing, book
tyrannus, -ī	tyrant

3rd

iūs iūrandum (iūris iūrandī) (n.)	oath
obsidiō, -ōnis (f.)	siege
poēma, -atis (n.)	poem

VERBA

-āre

(celebrō) celebrāre	go to a place frequently or in great numbers, celebrate, extol
(circumvāllō) circumvāllāre	beset, surround

(cōnflīctō) cōnflīctāre	harass, distress
(dēiūrō) dēiūrāre	swear
(dēlīrō) dēlīrāre	be mad
(exagitō) exagitāre	stir, worry, harass
(mercōr) mercārī	buy, purchase
(nōbilitō) nōbilitāre	make famous
(obtrectō) obtrectāre	criticize, disparagement
(percontōr) percontārī	inquire (about), ask
(vēnumdō) vēnumdare (< dare)	put up for sale
(vexō) vexāre	harass, trouble, ravage

-ēre

(flōreō) flōrēre, flōruisse	bloom, flourish
-----------------------------	-----------------

-ere

(convincō) convincere (< vincere)	find guilty, convict
(dēpellō) dēpellere (< pellere)	drive down/off, avert
(dēsciscō) dēsciscere, -īvisse, -ītum	defect, withdraw
(dēsipiō) dēsipere, -uisse	be out of one's mind
(deūrō) deūrere (< ūrere)	burn
(excerpō) excerpere, -sisse, -tum	pick out
(exūrō) exūrere (< ūrere)	burn up
(obrēpō) obrēpere (< repere)	creep up, steal up
(prōpōnō) prōpōnere (< pōnere)	set up, propose
(subscrībō) subscrībere (< scrībere)	write underneath
(trānsgrediōr) trānsgredi, -gressum	cross

irregular

(obeō) obire (< īre)	meet, visit, go into
----------------------	----------------------

ADIECTĪVA

1st/2nd

chronicus, -a, -um	written in the form of annals; annalistic
cōmicus, -a, -um	of comedy, comic

diūtinus, -a, -um	long, prolonged
ducentēsimus, -a, -um	two hundredth
factus, -a, -um	wrought
incōspectus, -a, -um	unfounded
plērusque, plera-, plerum-	most (of), the greater part
quīngentēsimus, -a, -um	five hundredth
tragicus, -a, -um	tragic
ūndēvīcēsīmus, -a, -um	nineteenth

3rd

annālis, -e	relating to a year
nātūrālis, -e	natural, of nature
orientālis, -e	eastern
sterilis, -e	barren, sterile

ADVERBIA

ecquid	...? if, whether
īnsuper	in addition
subinde	immediately afterward
temere	heedlessly

ALIA

edepol	by Pollux!
mecastor	by Castor!
mehercle	by Hercules!
nihilō	no, by no means
pondō	in weight, pounds

XLVIII: DVODEQVINQVAGESIMVM: BELLVM PVNICVM SECVNDVM (Livy)¹

[Ex T. Līvii 'ab Urbe Conditā' librīs XXI–XXX]

I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION

This long chapter contains extensive excerpts from Livy's description of the Second Punic War (218–201 BC), as well as selections from the *periochae*, or summaries, of Livy's history (as well as a selection from Eutropius). The outstanding Carthaginian leader in this war was *Hannibal*, who had sworn life-long hostility to Rome.

The direct cause of the war was Hannibal's attack on the Spanish city of *Saguntum*, Rome's ally. On hearing that the city had fallen after a heroic defense, the Romans immediately declared war on Carthage (218 BC). Hannibal then led a large army from Spain across the Pyrenees and the Alps to northern Italy, where he defeated the Romans in two battles. The following year he marched south across the Apennines and ambushed a Roman army at Lake Trasimene (*lacus Trasumennus*). After these serious reverses the Romans appointed *Fabius Māximus* dictator. Fabius harassed Hannibal's army but avoided open battle. In 216, the consuls *Terentius Varrō* and *Aemilius Paulus* took the field against Hannibal at *Cannae*. Although numerically superior, the Romans suffered a shattering defeat: Aemilius Paulus was killed along with 50,000 Romans. After this, the greater part of southern Italy went over to Hannibal.

Meanwhile the Romans defeated Hannibal's brother *Hasdrubal* in Spain and in the following years, fought with some success in Italy. Hasdrubal crossed the Alps with a new army to join forces with his brother but was defeated and killed (207 BC). When the young Roman general *P. Cornēlius Scīpiō* succeeded in moving the war from Spain to Africa, the Carthaginians were forced to recall Hannibal. After his defeat at *Zama* in 202 Carthage was forced to make peace with Rome on severe terms.

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

In this chapter you read—with omissions, but no other changes—Livy’s accounts of the siege of Saguntum and the declaration of war (from book 21), of the battle of Lake Trasimene and its repercussions in Rome (from book 22), of the battle of Cannae and the effect of the news in Carthage (from books 22 and 23), and finally of the recall of Hannibal and the conclusion of peace (from book 30). The summarizing passages in between are from the extant ancient abstracts (*Periochae*, *περιοχαί*) of Livy’s history supplemented with a passage from Eutropius. *Periochae* of all except two of Livy’s 142 books survive (written not by Livy, but sometime around the fourth century AD).

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Iūs iūrandum Hannibalis [Ex librō XXI]: 1–90

- 4: *Hannibale duce*: ablative absolute.
- 6: *opibus*: ablative of respect (Cap. XXXIX).
- 7–8: *hīs ipsīs...fuit*: dative of possession (Cap. XII); *tantum vīrium aut rōboris*: partitive genitives with neuter substantive (*tantum*, cf. Cap. XLIV).
- 9–11: *Rōmānīs indignantibus*: ablative absolute; *quod...inferrent... quod...crēderent*: subjunctive of reported reason (Cap. XLII); *imperitātum*: impersonal passive + dative (*victīs*); *victōribus*: dative with compound verb (*inferre*).
- 12–17: *Fāma est* is followed by the accusative + infinitive; *Hannibalem...iūre iūrandō adāctum (esse)*; *adāctum esse*: infinitive from *adigere* = *ad* + *agere*; *adigere iūre iūrandō*: “cause to take an oath”; *fore* = *futūrum esse*.
- 15: *eō* = *in Hispāniam*.
- 20–21: *factio*: “a political group,” “faction.”
- 25–28: *ut finis...esset amnis Hibērus...libertās servārētur*: the terms of the treaty (*foedus*); *Saguntinī*: the inhabitants of the town Saguntum; dative of reference with *libertās servārētur*.
- 29–30: *quīnam...esset*: indirect question; *quīnam*: interrogative pronoun (Cap. XXIII); *extemplō*: “immediately.”
- 33: *pūberem*: i.e., of military age.
- 39–40: *nē quandō...exsuscitet*: *nē (ali) quandō*; negative purpose clause (Cap. XLII, RECĒNSIŌ).

- 41: *optimus quisque*: *quisque* with the superlative, “all the most spirited of the young men” (Cap. XXXI).
- 42: *meliōrem* (sc. *partem*).
- 45–46: *crēdere*, *intuērī*: historical infinitives (so too *mālle*, *cōnfidere*, *audēre*, ll.50–52).
- 48: *discernerēs*: see grammar section above on the generalizing potential subjunctive.
- 50: *ubi* (*ali*) *quid*: *ubi*, “whenever,” subjunctive with indefinite relative clause.
- 57: *nihil vērī*, *nihil sānctī*: partitive genitives with neuter pronoun (Cap. XLIV).
- 58: *religiō*: “scruples,” “fear of the gods.”
- 59: *trienniō*: abative of time.
- 60–61: *merēre* (*stipendia*): “serve” (in the army); *nūllā rē praetremissā*: ablative absolute enclosing the descriptive relative clause *quae...esset*, especially common with indefinite or negative antecedents (Cap. XXXIX); *agenda magnō futūrō ducī*: dative of agent with the gerundive (Cap. XXXI).
- 62–64: *velut...mandātum esset*: *velut* (“as,” “as if,” Cap. XXVI); the subjunctive is used to underscore the contrafactual nature of the comparison.
- 64–65: *Quibus oppugnandīs quia*: the *quia* is postponed after the ablative of means: “Because by attacking these people (i.e., of Saguntum).”
- 66–68: *ut non petiise...sed...tractus vidērī posset*: i.e., led to an inevitable war by attacking Saguntum’s neighbors whose land lay outside Rome’s stated border.
- 70: *opulentusque praedā*: ablative of respect, cf. 77 (Cap. XXXIX).
- 87: *fugam facere*: “to put to flight, cause to flee.”

***Saguntum excissum*: 91–218**

- 95–99: *retulissent...abstinēret*: see above on technical vocabulary; *placuisset*: see Cap. XLVI “Resolutions of the Senate”; cf. l.101: *relāta...rēs*.
- 100: *omnium spē celerius*: “faster than everyone’s anticipation” (not “hope”).

- 101: *dē integrō*: “anew” (Cap. XLII).
- 110: *īnfestō exercitū*: in military language, the movement of troops usually does not have *cum*: “with a hostile army.”
- 113: *eum (mūrum)*; *vīnea* means both “vine” and “vineyard”; in military language, it is a covering made like an arbor that protects besieging soldiers.
- 115: *in suspectō locō*: i.e., a place considered more likely to be attacked.
- 117: *summovēre = summovērunt*: “drove away.”
- 118–119: *animus*: “courage”; *haud fermē*: “scarcely, hardly.”
- 122–123: *nōn multum abesset quī...dēsererentur*: negative consecutive (result) clause, “not so far from, not so far but that” (Cap. XL); *dēserere*: abandon, desert.
- 129: *mūrī*: genitive with *quantum*.
- 135: *fūsum fugātumque (hostem)*: “routed and put to flight.”
- 138–139: *missī obviam* + dative (*quibus*): “sent to meet”; *quī dīcerent*: relative clause of purpose (Cap. XXXIX) + *ōratiō oblīqua*; *Hannibalī*: dative with *operae esse*, “to have the leisure to.”
- 141: *appārēbat*: impersonal, as frequently, “it was clear” (i.e., to Hannibal).
- 144: *pars altera = factiō altera*.
- 147–149: *viamque ūnam ad id...sī...vīvat*: the *sī* clause gives the content of *id*, which refers to *regnum*.
- 151–152: *unde arcentur foedere*: by the conditions of the *foedus* (ll.25–28).
- 155: *bonus*: sarcastic.
- 158–161: *Dēdēmus*: future indicative (i.e., not a deliberative question); *cēnsēō...mittendōs*: see section on technical vocabulary, above; *quī...nūntient*: relative clause of purpose (Cap. XXXIX); *ut...dēdant*: indirect command (Cap. XXIX).
- 163–164: *adeō*: “indeed, for”; *prope*: adverb, “nearly”; *Hannibalis erat*: i.e., on Hannibal’s side: partitive genitive.
- 166: *tempus terere*: “wear away time, waste time” (see XLV.220 and cf. below l.550: *tempus teritur*).
- 167: *mīlitem = mīlitēs*: collective noun.

- 173–174: *eōs*: object of *adorta est*; *aliquantō*: ablative of degree of difference.
- 175–176: *minōrem in diēs urbem Saguntīnī faciunt*: i.e., the defensible area of the city was growing daily smaller; *inopia omnium*: objective genitive (Cap. XXV).
- 177–179: *omnia hostium*: “of the enemy, belonged to the enemy”; *expectātiō externae opis*: objective genitive (Cap. XXV).
- 180–181: *Alcorus Hispānus*: Alcorus the Spaniard, also the subject of the next sentence—Alcorus was in Hannibal’s army but was also known at Saguntum; *trāditō palam tēlō*: ablative absolute; *cūstōdibus*: dative with *trāditō*.
- 184: *senātum dare* + dative: “give someone an opportunity to address the Senate.”
- 185–186: *vōbīs...est*: dative of possession.
- 192–193: *bīnīs vestīmentīs*: distributive numerals because “two apiece, two each.”
- 199: *senātui*: dative with *permixtum esset*, i.e., the people’s council became mingled with the senate so they could hear.
- 202–203: *eōdem*: adverb, “to the same place” (Cap. XLV); *sēmet*: *-met* is an intensive enclitic.
- 205–211: *cum signum imperātōrī dedisset*: subject, *cohors*; *nōn...occāsiōne*: what Hanibal was thinking (*ratus*); *omnēs pūberēs*: all the young men of military age.
- 215: *patrēs*: object of *cēpit*. *pudor nōn lātī auxiliī*: *pudor* with genitive of thing (Cap. XXIII): objective genitive.
- 216: *dē summā rērum*: the good of the state, the common welfare (a frequent political expression); *velut si...esset*: present contrafactual.

Bellum Carthāginiēnsibus indictum: 219–253

- 220: *nōminātae prōvinciae*: the conquered areas in which the consuls would operate in the coming year; *iūssī*: sc. *cōsulēs*; *sortīrī*: i.e., a two-step process: first the provinces to which consuls will be assigned are named, then the consuls draw lots.
- 223: *quanta parārī posset*: indirect question (Cap. XXIX).
- 228: *iustō equitātū*: *iustus* used of military units means “at full strength.”

- 233–237: *mittunt ad percontandōs Carthāginiēnsēs...et...ut indicērent*: both expressions of purpose (see Cap. XLII or summary of purpose clauses); *id quod factūrī vidēbantur*: indicative parenthetical statement within the reported (indirect) future protasis in the subjunctive.
- 238–239: *senātus datus esset*: see above, note to line 184.
- 242: *cēseam*: “I should think” (see section on potential subjunctive above).
- 244: *nisi...icta (est)*; *foedus icere*: “strike a treaty,” “make a pact.”
- 247–248: *parturuit*: desiderative of *pariō*, *parere*, *peperī*, *partum* (Cap. X, “give birth”): desire to bring forth, produce, or to be in labor; *pariat*: jussive subjunctive; *sinū ex togā factō*: “creating a fold/pocket in his toga.”
- 250: *sub hanc vocem*: “immediately after/as a response to this speech”; *daret*: reported imperative; *utrum vellet*: indirect question.
- 253: *quibus acciperent*: subordinate clause in indirect speech (Cap. XXXVI).

Iter Hannibalis in Italiam: 254–271

- 255–256: *in hiberna (castra)*: winter quarters.
- 257–258: *dē integrō*: “anew, afresh” (Cap. XLII).
- 262: *experiochā*: see introduction to this chapter (as well as Cap. XLI).
- 262–264: *Pŷrēnaeum*: the Pyrenees; *Pŷrēnaeus saltus/Pŷrēnaei montēs*: mountains between (modern) Spain and France.
- 267: ‘*Āfricānī*’...*nōmen*: as a cognomen; cf. *Torquātus* and *Coriolānus*, Cap. XLVI, note to lines 57–58.
- 269: *Āpennīnum*: the Apennine Mountains, which run like a spine down the Italian peninsula.

Lacus Trasumennus [Ex periochā librī XXII et ex librō XXII]: 272–388

These excerpts provide an opportunity of comparing Livy’s original with the later summary.

- 275: *cōs*: the regular abbreviation of *cōsul*, in which the *n* was not pronounced.
- 280: *quod agrī est*: partitive genitive with neuter pronoun (Cap. XLIV).

- 282–283: *māximē montēs...subit*: “most closely goes up to the foot of the mountains.”
- 284: *via perangusta*: the prefix *per-* before adjectives and adverbs has intensive force (“very...”).
- 284–285: *ubi...cōsideret*: adverbial final clause in secondary sequence with historical present; *modo*: i.e., only those troops.
- 288: *ad ipsās faucēs saltūs*: “close to the very entrance of the mountain pass/defile”; *faucēs* = “throat,” used for a narrow entrance.
- 289–290: *ut, ubi intrāssent...essent*: both a purpose (final) clause and a condition in implied *ōrātiō obliqua* (reporting Hannibal’s reasons for placing the troops); the pluperfect subjunctive represents a future perfect: “So that, when the Romans have entered...everything would be...”
- 292: *inexplōrātō*: adverb, i.e., without first making a reconnaissance.
- 294: *id tantum hostium*: partitive genitive with neuter pronoun (Cap. XLIV).
- 297–299: *clausum...et circumfūsum*: both with *hostem*; *signum...invādendī*.
- 300: *eō magis...quod*: “all the more because.”
- 301: *nebula*: i.e., the fog/mist off the lake; *campō quam montibus*: ablatives: “thicker on the plain than on the mountains.”
- 302: *Rōmānus* = *Rōmānī*: collective noun.
- 303–305: *ante...quam satis instruerētur...aut...possent*: anticipatory subjunctives (Cap. XLII); *stringī gladii*: cf. *gladiis strictis* (XXXVII.352), *strictō gladiō* (XLIII.134); *stringī* is present passive infinitive.
- 306: *perculsīs* < *percellere* (Cap. XLII): ablative absolute.
- 307: *ut...patitur*: i.e., to the degree that time and the terrain allowed.
- 312: *in dexterā*, sc. *manū*.
- 313–314: *salūtis spem*: objective genitive (Cap. XXV); *dux adhortātorque* are predicative with *factus* (*fieri*): “each man became his own leader and exhorter.”
- 315–318: *Tantus fuit...ut...sēnserit*: result (consecutive) clauses express the consequence that follows a cause and generally take a subjunctive of incomplete action (present or imperfect). When,

- however, the author wants to move the focus from the impetus (leading verb) to the outcome (subordinate verb), the perfect subjunctive is used, an exception to the rule for sequence of tense (Cap. XLII, RECĒNSIŌ); *cursū*: ablative, “from their course.”
- 321: *rōbora virōrum*: *rōbus*, -*oris* (n.) is an exceptionally hard oak, thence “hardness, strength” (see l.8); when used of soldiers it means “the best troops,” subject of *sequēbantur*.
- 324: *Īnsuber*: *Īnsubria* was in northern Italy, near Milan; *faciē quoque*: i.e., in addition to his distinguishing armor, ablative of means with *nōscitans*.
- 325–328: *populāribus...dēpopulātus*: *populārēs* are fellow members of your *populus*; *dēpopulārī*: ravage, pillage (also from *populus*, with debated etymology); *perēemptōrum...civium* < *perimere*, -*emisse*, -*emptum* = *perdere*, *dēlēre*) with *Mānibus*: the spirits of the dead.
- 332: *pavōrī*: dative with intransitive verb *obstāre*.
- 337–338: *inter paucās (clādēs)...clādēs*: a disaster “among few (disasters)”; i.e., one of the worst (*clādēs*, -*is*, Cap. XLII).
- 341–342: *petiēre* = *peti(v)ērunt*; *periēre* = *periērunt* (Cap. XLII).
- 347: *frequentis cōtiōnis modō turba*: “like a crowded assembly of the people”; *versa*: with *turba*.
- 351: *alius ab aliō implētī*: *alius* is in apposition to *implētī*.
- 354–355: *exercitūs victī*: genitive with *cāsūs*; *quot...tot*: “as many as.”
- 356–357: *merēre (stipendia)*: see note to lines 60–61; *ignōrantium*: with *eōrum...quorum*; *quae fortūna...esset*: indirect question.
- 358–359: *quid spēret aut timeat*: indirect deliberative question (Cap. XXIX); direct would be “*Quid spērēmus aut timeāmus?*”
- 360: *posterō*: sc. *diē*: “on the next day and for several days following.”
- 363–364: *circumfundēbantur*: “kept crowding around” + dative *obviīs*; *priusquam...inquīsiissent*: although *priusquam*, when it refers to something anticipated or expected, is generally followed by the imperfect subjunctive (Cap. XLII), there are a few isolated examples (four of them in Livy) where *priusquam* is followed by the pluperfect subjunctive. Here, the pluperfect subjunctive stands for a future perfect: “they could not be torn away before they (will have) asked.”

- 365: *cernerēs*: see grammar section above on the 2nd person singular generalizing potential subjunctive.
- 375–377: *quōnam...possent*: indirect question; *resistī*: present passive infinitive representing the impersonal passive.
- 379–381: *quattuor...circumventa (esse)*: *ōrātiō oblīqua*.
- 382–383: *dictātōrem...magistrum equitum*: Cap. XLVI, introduction and note on line 45.
- 386: *vidērētur*: impersonal 3rd person + dative, “seems right, good” to someone.
- 387: *Penātibus*: Cap. XXXVIII, introduction.

Q. Fabius Māximus Cūnctātor [Ex periōchā librī XXII]: 389–406

- 394–395: *tamquam*: on the grounds that, accusing him of being; *Efficere ut* + subjunctive: noun clause of result (Cap. XXVIII, RECĒNSIŌ; Cap. XXXVII).
- 398: *discrīmine*: ablative of separation with *liberātus*.
- 401–405: core of sentence: *Hannibal...praesidium...fugāvit et...transgressus est saltum*.
- 406: *Ūnus homō nōbīs cunctandō restituit rem*: this famous line comes not from Livy but Ennius’s *Annālēs* (XXXVI.164–165); it is written in dactylic hexameter (Cap. XXXIV): *ūnūs hō | mō nō | bīs cūnc | tān dō | rēstītū | it rēm*.

Cannae [Ex Eutropiī Breviārīi librō III et ex Liviō librō XXII]: 407–592

These excerpts provide another opportunity of comparing Livy’s original, this time with Eutropius’s *Breviārium*.

- 411: *Fabiō*: i.e., Quintus Fabius Maximus.
- 413: *nōn aliter...quam*: “in no other way...than”; *differendō*: gerund ablative of means.
- 414: *cum*: with *pugnātum esset*, not *impatientiā*, which is an ablative of cause (Cap. XXXVII).
- 419–420: *Poenum* = *Poenos*: collective noun.
- 421: *bīna castra*: distributive numerals are used with *pluralia tantum* (Cap. XXX, XXXIII).

- 422: *utrisque castris affluens* < *adfluere* + dative; *aditus*, -ūs: “an access”; *aquātor*: “a water carrier.”
- 428: *inconditam turbam*: i.e., the *aquātōrēs*; *in...portās*: all one prepositional phrase; *ēgressī*: the Numidians; *ēvectī sunt*: “they advanced” (cf. 1.6: *Cornēlius equō vehitur*); *statiōnem...prō vallō*: a guard post built in front of the camp fortifications.
- 430–435: structure: *adeō...ut*: result clause; *ea ūna causa...quod*: causal clause; *ea ūna causa...tenuerit Rōmānōs nē extemplō trānsirent*: clause of hindering (see grammar section above); *ab tumultuāriō auxiliō*: *tumultuārius*, in military language, means “hastily raised, put together quickly or suddenly”; *auxilium*: collective for *auxilia*, -ōrum: auxiliary troops, usually formed from allies, here: the Numidians; *ea modo ūna causa*: the reason (*causa*) is contained in the clause *quod...fuit*: when the consuls were in the field together, the high command alternated on a daily basis; Varro is, Livy tells us, the impatient one (1.14).
- 436: *nihil cōsultō Paulō*: ablative absolute, i.e., without asking Paulus’s opinion.
- 439: *eās quās*: with *cōpiās*.
- 443: *intrā peditēs...iūctī*: the infantry was stationed toward the inside (i.e., from the allied cavalry at the furthest end, *extrēmī*) and joined (*iūctī*) to the Roman infantry at the center (*in mediū*).
- 448: *Baliārēs*, -ium: inhabitants of the Balearic Islands (Maiorca and Minorca, now called Menorca) off the coast of Spain—they were famous as slingers.
- 449–450: *ut...ita*: “as...in the same way” (Cap. XIX).
- 455: *stetere* = *stetērunt*.
- 462–463: *frontibus...adversīs*: ablative of attendant circumstances: i.e., the cavalries charged each other head on, because there was no room for maneuvering.
- 469: *sub...finem*: “toward the end of.”
- 471–472: *impulere* = *impulērunt*; *cuneus*: a wedge, so troops that form a protruding wedge (see marginal illustration).
- 474–475: *Āfrī circā iam cornua fēcerant*: “The Africans on the sides [i.e., of the Romans who have flattened the projecting wedge

- (*cuneus*) and are proceeding into the apparently retreating hollow (*sinus*) in the battleline (*aciēs*)] had now made the wings of the battle line (ends of a horn, surrounding the Romans).”
- 476: *extendendō*: ablative of means (Cap. XXV) of gerund; object: *cornua*; *et = etiam*: “even.”
- 477–479: *dēfūctī nēquīquam proeliō ūnō*: i.e., the battle against the wedge (*cuneus*) of Gauls and Spaniards was won, but to no good purpose since the Romans are now surrounded.
- 479–480: *nōn tantum...sed etiam = nōn solum...sed etiam* (Cap. XX); *eō...quod*: “for this reason, that...”
- 484: *proelium restituit*: “revived, restored the battle.”
- 485–486: *omissis...equīs*: i.e., the cavalry dismounted to fight; *et = etiam* with *ad regendum equum*; *dēficiēbant*: “were failing” + accusative (*cōnsulem*); *dēficere*, usually intransitive, can also be used transitively.
- 489: *pellere*: i.e., *fugāre*; so too *pepulērunt*, l.490.
- 496: *virium aliquid*: partitive genitive with neuter pronoun (Cap. XLIV).
- 497–498: *nē...fēceris*: prohibition (Cap. XXXII).
- 500: *macte virtūte estō*: a phrase that is found sixteen times in Latin literature, almost half of them in Livy: “honored in your manliness/virtue” or “well done, bravo”; *cavē...absūmās*: *cavē*, with or without *nē*, plus the subjunctive: “beware, avoid, guard against” (Cap. XXVII).
- 501: *exiguum tempus...ēvādendī*.
- 503: *patere*: imperative of *patior*, *patī*.
- 505: *Haec eōs agentēs*: *haec* is the object of *eōs agentēs* (which is, in turn, the object of *oppressere* (= *oppressērunt*); *agentēs = dīcentēs*.
- 506–507: *ignōrantēs quis esset*: indirect question.
- 522–523: *nōbilitāte...strāge*: ablatives of respect (Cap. XXXIX) with *pār...gravior foediorque*, respectively; *patere* < *patior*, *patī*, *passum*: imperative.

- 524: *ad Alliam...ad Cannās*: *ad* does not always imply motion but can signify “at” or “in regard to”; cf. below, line 551: *ad* + numbers, “about”; *Allia*: see margins.
- 528–529: *suādērentque ut...sūmeret et daret*: indirect command (Cap. XXVII).
- 530–533: *ratus* (< *reor, rēri*) *cessandum(esse)*; *minimē*: in replies, means not “very little” but “not at all” and is emphatic; *ut...scias*: purpose clause enclosing indirect question (*quid...āctum*); *ut...sciant*: purpose clause with indirect statement: i.e., *ut sciant me venisse prius quam sciant me venturum esse*.
- 532: *equite* = *equitibus*: collective noun.
- 534–535: *Hannibalī nimis laeta rēs est vīsa māiorque quam ut eam statim capere animō posset*: comparative clause (see grammar section above); *capere animō*: grasp mentally, take in; *voluntātem*: “inclination, desire.”
- 537: *pēnsāre*: “weigh”; *temporis opus esse*: usually with ablative or infinitive (Cap. XIX), very rarely with genitive.
- 538: *dī dedēre* (= *dedērunt*): *dedere* is stronger than *dare*, and *nīmīrum* is here, as frequently, ironic or sarcastic.
- 540: *salūtī fuisse urbī atque imperiō*: double datives (Cap. XXXVI).
- 544: *ad multum diē*: “till late in the day”: partitive genitive with neuter pronoun (Cap. XLIV); *dūcere*: here used intransitively of a general: lead, march.
- 547: *mātūrior ipsius spē*: ablative of comparison with a comparative adverb (Cap. XXIV); cf. *lentius spē* (XLV.97).
- 551: *ad* + numerals: “about,” see also line 565.
- 555–556: *genere clāra ac divitiīs*: ablatives of respect (Cap. XXXIX); some of the narrative has been omitted here and *cēterum* (“moreover”) *cum*, etc., begins a new subject, the choice of leader.
- 560: *proximē*: temporal, “very recently.”
- 565: *ad quattuor mīlia*: “about, approximately.”
- 569: *Rōmam*: accusative of place to which with *allātum fuerat*, which introduces the indirect statements *nē...sociōrumque*.
- 577–578: *Hannibalis...factam*: i.e., has become his; *tantā mōle*: “by such a heap (of disaster)”; see XLII.28; *nūlla alia gēns...nōn obruta esset*: *nūlla...nōn*, “every”; past potential subjunctive.

- 589: *classī...stantī*: datives with *praeesset*.
 590: *cōsulī ut...venīret*: implied indirect command with *scribendum*.

Māgō nūntius victōriae [Ex librō XXIII]: 593–681

- 597: *dēficiētēs*: “defecting” (Cap. XLI).
 598: *mare Inferum*: the Tyrrhenian (Tuscan) sea off the western coast of Italy, as opposed to the *Adriaticum/Superum Mare* off the eastern coast, separating Italy and the Balkan Peninsula.
 603–604: ‘*ut suae lēgēs, suī magistrātūs Capuae essent*’: *suae, suī*: both refer to Capua; Capuae is dative; *ut...essent*: noun clause with *condiciō*, “stipulations to the effect that.”
 605: *urbem*: i.e., Capua.
 606–608: *precantibus...nē...utque*: indirect commands; *nē (ali)quid sēriae rei*: partitive genitive with neuter pronoun (Cap. XLIV).
 610: *ōrātiō perblanda*: see note above on line 284.
 612: *praepondere* + accusative and dative: “put *x* (acc.) ahead of *y* (dat.).”
 617: *nōn ex ipsā aciē*: i.e., not immediately after the battle.
 619: *dēficiēbant*: see note above to line 597.
 630: *anulōs aureōs*: these are the gold rings worn by Roman knights.
 631–632: *mētientibus*: dative of reference, “according to those who measured them”; *sint quīdam auctōrēs*: + the indirect report of what those *auctōrēs* have written (*dīmidium suprā trēs modiōs explēvisse*).
 633: *īsigne*: “distinctive mark of rank,” referring to the gold rings.
 636–637: *et tot aciēs victōris etiam cōpiās parte aliquā minuisse*: *aciēs = pugnae*; *etiam victōris*: i.e., in addition to the losses of the Romans, with *cōpiās*; *parte aliquā*: “in some degree.”
 639: *bene meritis dē*: *bene merērī dē* + ablative: “deserve well from”; *meritis* is dative with *militibus*.
 642: *Hannō*: leader of the opposite faction, see l.36.
 644: *paenitet*: see Cap. XL on impersonal verbs.
 648: *Respondeam Himilcōni*: “I might answer...” (see section on potential subjunctive).

- 649: *dēsiise...dēsītūrum*: from *dēsinere*, “stop, desist”; + complementary infinitives (*paenitēre, incūsāre*).
- 652–653: *Himilcōnī cēterisque Hannibalis satellitibus*: dative with *laeta; iam*: “already.”
- 656–657: *quō magis dare quam accipere possumus vidērī pācem*= (*tempore*) *quō possumus vidērī magis dare quam accipere pācem; vereor nē...ēvādat*: fear clause (see above, RECĒNSIŌ).
- 659–663: *Quid aliud rogārēs, sī essēs victus?...Quid aliud, sī spoliātus, sī exūtus castrīs essēs, peterēs?*: mixed contrafactual conditions: protases present tense, apodoses past; *exuere*: “deprive, strip of.”
- 660: *bīna castra*: see above, note to line 421.
- 665: *velim seu Himilcō seu Māgō respondeat...*: “I would like H. or M. to answer...” (see section on potential subjunctive above).
- 666: *Latīnī nōminis*: allied to Rome with certain rights.
- 670–671: *quid animōrum quidve speī*: partitive genitive with neuter pronoun (Cap. XLIV); *scīre velim*: “I would like to know” (see section on potential subjunctive above).
- 675: *allātum est*: impersonal.
- 677: *quā diē*: the usually masculine *diēs* can be feminine, especially when it refers to a fixed time (Cap. XIII).
- 679: *senātūs cōsultum*: see above on technical vocabulary; here about the Carthaginian “Senate.”

Mārcellus et Scīpiō [Ex Periochā librōrum XXIII–XXX]: 682–777

- 696–697: *servōrum māximē operā*: *operā* in the ablative means “through the agency of.”
- 704: *ante annōs*: before he turned thirty-six, the legal age for an aedile.
- 708: *et ingentem virum gessit*: “he conducted himself as a great man.”
- 711–713: *annō octāvō quam in Hispāniam iērunt*: there is an implicit comparison after designations of time (and expressions of number or quantity) that sparks the *quam* which here can be treated like *postquam*.
- 720–721: *sibi mortem cōscīre*: “to commit suicide.”
- 722: *secūrī ferīri*: i.e., “to behead.”

- 723–724: *antequam legeret: priusquam + subjunctive* (Cap. XLII); *in sinū*: in a fold of his clothing (to read later); *lēge agī*: “proceed according to law, execute the sentence.”
- 726: *comitiīs* (dative) *apud populum quaererētur*: the question was put to the vote of the people in the comitia.
- 727: *volente* with complementary infinitive *suscipere*, the object of which is *id*.
- 734: *speculandī causā*: purpose (Cap. XXVI).
- 741: *ductū*: Cap. XLVIII, verbal nouns: “under the leadership of.”
- 742: *nōn minōre operā*: “no less through the agency of...”; cf. lines 696–697.
- 743: *ita*: with *relictīs castrīs*.
- 751: *si in Āfricam trāiēcisset*: pluperfect subjunctive represents a future perfect indicative in the protasis of a condition in *ōrātiō obliqua* in secondary sequence; the protasis must be supplied from *auxilium pollicēbātur* (see summary of conditions).
- 755: *Syphāx*: king of a Numidian tribe neighboring that of Masinissa.
- 760: *Utica*: in Africa. Scipio had been beseiging Utica for forty days.
- 761: *Lūstrum*: every five years the censors made a census after which there was a lustration, a purifying sacrifice consisting of a swine, sheep, and bull, called a *suovetaurilia* (XLIV.377).
- 766: *bīna castra*: see above, line 421.
- 768–769: *per*: “through the agency of”; *cēpit*: subject is Scipio.
- 770–772: Sophonisba chose to drink the poison (*venēnum*) rather than to be taken to Rome with Scipio as part of the spoils of war; the *periochae*, being summaries, do not give the full story.
- 772–773: *Effectum est...ut...*: noun clause of effecting (*verba curandī*: Caps. XXVII, XXXVII).

Reditus Hannibalis atque clādēs [Ex librō et Periochā librī XXX]:

778–865

- 779: *nihil ultrā reī*: partitive genitive with neuter pronoun (Cap. XLIV) separated by adverb.
- 788: *exsultāre*: “to revel, boast”; *efferet sēsē*: *sē efferre* = “elevate oneself, be haughty.”

- 787–790: *hāc dēfōrmitāte*: ablative of cause (Cap. XXXVII) with the genitive *reditūs mei*; *tam P. Scīpiō...quam Hannō* both are subjects of *exsultābit atque effērent sēsē*; *domum nostram*: i.e., the Barca lineage (see ll.20–21).
- 791–800: *ōrātiō obliqua* dependent on *ferunt*; *in sē quoque*: with *exsecrātum*; *quod...dūxisset*: subjunctive of reported reason (Cap. XLII); *mīlitem* = *mīlitēs*: collective noun; *cruentum*: with *mīlitem*: i.e., immediately when they were still covered in (Roman) blood after the battle of Cannae; *cōsensuisse*: “had grown old.”
- 813: *Hadrūmētum*: Hannibal’s military base during the battle at Zama.
- 814: *priusquam excēderet* (Cap. XLII); *expertus* < *experīrī* (Cap. XLII), the object of which is *omnia*.
- 820–823: *omnēs*: object of *stimulābat*; *ad Carthāginem dēlendā*: see summary of expressions of purpose (Cap. XLII); *tam mūnītae et tam validae urbis*: objective genitives with *obsidiō*; take *esset* both with *quanta rēs* and with *obsidiō*; *reputārent* is subjunctive with *cum*; *esset* in indirect question dependent on *reputārent*.
- 824–825: *condiciōnēs...ut*: see above, note to lines 603–604.
- 826–834: *tenērent...redderent...domārent...gererent...redderent...facerent...solverent...darent*: reported imperatives; *pēnsiōnibus aequiis*: “in payments of equal amounts.”
- 835–836: *Hās condiciōnēs*: object of both *referre* and *ēderent*; *domum*: i.e., Carthage.
- 837: *quam...esset*: subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua* (Cap. XXXVI); subject of *esset* is *pāx*; *quam*: “how.”
- 839–840: *nē...mitterent lēgātōs*: negative command in *ōrātiō obliqua* = *nōlite mittere*.
- 845: *vidērētur*: cf. note to line 386 above.
- 850: *iūssit*: sc. Scipio.
- 851: *quīdam tradunt* = *quīdam narrant, scribunt*.
- 852–853: *tam lūgubre fuisse Poenīs quam sī ipsa Carthāgō ārdēret*: *quam sī* introduces a conditional comparative clause, which follows sequence of tense (here secondary).

- 854–858: *Annīs ante quadrāgintā pāx cum Carthāginiēnsibus postrēmō facta est, Q. Lutātiō A. Mānliō cōsulibus*: Livy is referring to the First Punic War (264–241 BC); *Bellum initum annīs post tribus et vīgintī, P. Cornēliō Ti. Semprōniō cōsulibus, finitum est septimō decimō annō, Cn. Cornēliō P. Aeliō cōsulibus*: Second Punic War (218–201 BC).
- 863: *pondō*: see section on Libra/Pondus in Cap. XLVII.

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

angustiae, -ārum (<i>pl.</i>)	narrowness, pass, defile
armātūra, -ae	armament, armed troops
funda, -ae	sling
impatientia, -ae	impatience, lack of endurance
indūtia, -ārum (<i>pl.</i>)	armistice, truce
lancea, -ae	lance, spear
perfuga, -ae	deserter
reliquiae, -ārum (<i>pl.</i>)	remnants, remains
summa, -ae	total, sum, main part
trāgula, -ae	spear, javelin
victima, -ae	victim (sacrificial)
vigilia, -ae	night watch

2nd

acervus, -ī	heap, pile
angulus, -ī	angle, corner
cōsultum, -ī	resolution
cuneus, -ī	wedge
dīmidium, -ī	half
excidium, -ī	destruction
hiberna, -ōrum (<i>n. pl.</i>)	winter quarters
mōmentum, -ī	movement, motion; moment
mūnīmentum, -ī	fortification
oppidānī, -ōrum (<i>m. pl.</i>)	townspeople
pālus, -ī	stake

praetōrium, -ī	general's tent
sarmentum, -ī	brushwood, branch
supplēmentum, -ī	reinforcement, supplement
viāticum, -ī	provision for a journey
vitium, -ī	defect, fault, vice

3rd

adhortātor, -ōris (m.)	one who encourages
aedilis, -is (m.)	aedile (magistrate)
aquātor, -ōris (m.)	one who fetches water
ariēs, -ētis, (m.)	ram, battering ram
calcar, -cāris (n.)	spur; stimulus
dēfōrmitās, -tātis (f.)	deformity
dēspērātiō, -tiōnis (f.)	desperation
expectātiō, -tiōnis (f.)	awaiting, expectation
faucēs, -ium (f. pl.)	upper part of the throat; opening; pass
grātēs (nom. and acc. f. pl.)	thanks
maeror, -ōris (m.)	grief
missile, -is (n.)	missile
obses, -idis (m.)	hostage
obtrectātiō, -tiōnis (f.)	criticism, disparagement
oppugnātiō, -tiōnis (f.)	attack, assault
pēnsiō, -ōnis (f.)	payment, installment
possessiō, -ōnis (f.)	possession, occupation
praetor, -ōris (m.)	praetor (magistrate)
prōpraetor, -ōris (m.)	propraetor
quaestor, -ōris (m.)	quaestor (magistrate)
satelles, -itis (m.)	attendant, henchman
statiō, -tiōnis (f.)	station, post

4th

aditus, -ūs	approach, access
apparātus, -ūs	preparation, equipment
assēnsus, -ūs	approval, assent
commeātus, -ūs	supplies, provisions
reditus, -ūs	return
trānsitus, -ūs	crossing, passage

VERBA

-āre

(adamō) adamāre	fall in love with
(alligō) alligāre	tie, fasten to
(aquor) aquārī	fetch water
(assignō) assignāre	assign, allocate
(castigō) castigāre	correct, reprove
(comparō) comparāre	prepare, provide; compare
(cōsultō) cōsultāre	deliberate, debate
(crīminor) crīminārī	accuse
(dēnuntiō) dēnuntiāre	denounce
(dēpopulor) dēpopulārī	sack
(ēnervō) ēnervāre	weaken, enervate
(epulor) epulārī	dine, feast
(exanimō) exanimāre	kill; die
(exsultō) exsultāre	jump up; rejoice
(exsuscitō) exsuscitāre	rouse, kindle
(grātificor) grātificārī	oblige, gratify (+ <i>dat.</i>)
(irritō) irritāre	excite, stimulate
(luxurior) luxuriārī	revel, live in luxury
(nōscitō) nōscitāre	recognize
(obligō) obligāre	bind
(pālor) pālārī	stray, be dispersed
(pēnsō) pēnsāre	weigh, ponder, consider
(perōrō) perōrāre	conclude (a speech)
(pervāstō) pervāstāre	completely devastate
(quassō) quassāre	shake, damage, batter
(speculor) speculārī	spy, reconnoiter
(succlāmō) succlāmāre	shout in response

-ēre

(absterreō) absterrēre (< terrēre)	scare away
(circumsedeō) circumsedēre (< sedēre)	besiege
(expleō) explēre (< plēre)	fill, complete, satisfy
(īnsideō) īnsidēre (< sedēre)	hold, occupy, be seated
(oppleō) opplēre (< plēre)	fill up, cover

(permisceō) permiscēre (< miscēre)	mix thoroughly
(profiteor) profitērī (< fatērī)	declare, offer
(prōmineō) prōminēre (< minēre)	project, stick out
(prōmoveō) prōmovēre (< movēre)	push forward, advance
(submoveō) submovēre (< movēre)	remove, drive off

-ere

(adigō) adigere (< agere)	drive, compel (to)
(adsuēscō) adsuēscere, adsuētum	get accustomed
(affluō) affluere (< fluere)	flow near
(assurgō) assurgere (< surgere)	rise
(āvellō) āvellere, āvelisse	tear away
(circumfundō) circumfundere (< fundere)	pour/spread around
(contrādicō) contrādicere (< dicere)	speak against, oppose
(dēposcō) dēposcere (< poscere)	demand
(dēscribō) dēscribere (< scribere)	draw, describe
(dētrahō) dētrahere (< trahere)	pull off, remove
(diripio) diripere (< rapere)	plunder, loot, rob
(dispōnō) dispōnere (< pōnere)	arrange, station
(disserō) disserere (< serere)	discuss, argue
(ēvehō) ēvehere (< vehere)	carry out, <i>pass.</i> ride out
(exclūdō) exclūdere (< claudere)	shut out, cut off
(exscindō) exscindere (< scindere)	demolish, destroy
(exuō) exuere, exūtum	take off, deprive of
(frendō) frendere, frenduisse, frēsum	gnash one's teeth
(inquīrō) inquīrere (< quaero)	inquire, make inquiries
(interpōnō) interpōnere (< pōnere)	place between
(intrōdūcō) intrōdūcere (< dūcere)	lead/bring in, introduce
(irruō) irruere (< ruere)	rush in, charge

(nītor) nīti, nīusm	exert oneself, strive
(obruō) obruere (< ruere)	cover up, bury, crush
(obsistō) obsistere, -stitisse, -stitutum	resist
(ommittō) ommittere (< mittere)	abandon, leave off/out
(patēscō) patēscere, patuisse	be laid open, extend
(perfungor) perfungī (< fungī)	carry through, finish (+ <i>abl.</i>)
(pervādō) pervādere (< vādere)	go through, spread, pervade
(praecēdō) praecēdere (< cēdere)	go on ahead, precede
(praetervehor) praetervehī (< vehere)	ride/drive/sail past
(prōcidō) prōcidere, prōcidisse (< cadere)	fall forward, collapse
(prōsternō) prōsternere (< sternere)	knock down, overthrow
(rescindō) rescindere (< scindere)	demolish, cancel, annul
(subdō) subdere (< dare)	lay under, subdue, substitute
(succingō) succingere (< cingere)	surround
(trāicio) trāicere (< icere)	take across, cross, pierce
(trāscendō) trāscendere (< scendere)	climb across, cross
(trānsvehō) trānsvehere (< vehere)	carry (<i>pass.</i> sail) across
(vergō) vergere	slope, point, turn
-īre	
(blandior) blandīri	coax, urge
(circumveniō) circumvenīre	surround
(commūniō) commūnīre	fortify
(ēmūniō) ēmūnīre	fortify
(expediō) expedīre	make ready, extricate, explain
(mētior) mētīri	measure
(nequiō) nequīre	be unable
(parturiō) parturīre	be ready to give birth to
(sortior) sortīri	draw lots

irregular**(differo) differre (< ferre)**

postpone, defer, differ

ADIECTĪVA**1st/2nd****callidus, -a, -um**

clever, cunning

cōnfertus, -a, -um

dense, compact

fūnestus, -a, -um

deadly, grievous, sinister

impeditus, -a, -um

obstructed, encumbered

imprōvisus, -a, -um

unforeseen, unexpected

incautus, -a, -um

incautious, unsuspecting

labōriōsus, -a, -um

hard, laborious

praetōrius, -a, -umof the commander; (*m.*) an
expraetor**perangustus, -a, -um**

very narrow

solitus, -a, -um

usual

tumultuārius, -a, -um

hurried, disorderly

ūnicus, -a, -um

one and only, sole

vagus, -a, -um

wandering

3rd**cōsulāris, -e**consular; (*m.*) an exconsul**equestris, -e**

equestrian

habilis, -e

fit, appropriate

libēns (*gen. libentis*)

willing, glad

lūgubris, -e

sad, grievous

memorābilis, -e

memorable

quīnquerēmis, -ehaving five banks of oars; (*f.*) ship
with five banks of oars**recēns (*gen. recentis*)**

fresh

repēns (*gen. repentis*)

sudden, unexpected

sōspes (*gen. sōspitis*)

safe and sound

tolerābilis, -e

tolerable

trirēmis, -ehaving three banks of oars; (*f.*)
ship with three banks of oars

PRONŌMIA

ecquis ecquid

anyone/thing who? anyone,
anything

sēmet

intensive of sē

ADVERBIA

alibi

elsewhere

haudquāquam

by no means

inexplōrātō

without reconnoitering

macte (virtūte estō)

well done!

tūtō

safely

vidēlicet

evidently, of course

vixdum

scarcely yet, only just

CONIŪGĀTIŌNĒS

necdum

and (/but) not yet

XLIX: VNDEQVINQVAGESIMVM: HANNIBAL (Nepos)¹

[*Ex Cornēlii Nepōtis librō ‘dē Excellentibus Ducibus Exterārum Gentium’*]

I. ØRBERG’S INTRODUCTION

Cornēlius Nepōs (ca. 100–ca. 25 BC) wrote a chronicle of world history, of which only fragments survive quoted by Aulus Gellius (see Cap. XLVII, ll.25 and 37) as well as a collection of biographies, *dē virīs illūstribus*. From this collection, we still have the book dealing with foreign generals. The last biography in the book is that of *Hannibal*, which is reproduced in this chapter.

Cornelius Nepos is not a very reliable historian. With your knowledge of events, you can detect some inaccuracies in his report: he has Hannibal march on Rome immediately after the battle of Cannae and then tells of events that took place the previous year.

Nepos, however, is not writing history, but biography, and his narrative is very different from that of Livy.

From Nepos we learn what Hannibal did after his defeat at Zama. Under his competent leadership, Carthage soon recovered, but when the Romans demanded his surrender, he took refuge with king *Antiochus III* of Syria. Hannibal encouraged the king to invade Italy, but Antiochus only sent an army to Greece, where he was beaten by the Romans (see next chapter). Hannibal fled to Crete and from there to king *Prūsias* of *Bithynia*. A delegation was sent from Rome to demand his surrender, but Hannibal escaped this humiliation by taking poison (183 or 182 BC).

The concluding text is Livy’s account of a conversation, which Scipio is said to have had with Hannibal at Ephesus. The conversation presents an interesting, albeit fanciful, portrait of the two great generals.

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Hannibal, Hanilaris fīlius, Karthāginiēnis: 1–255

- 3: *superārit* = *superāverit*: syncopated form (see grammar section above); perfect subjunctive in a consecutive noun clause with *vērū est* (Cap. XXXVII).
- 5–6: *antecēdat*: subjunctive in subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua* (Cap. XXXVI); *quotienscumque*: *cumque* makes *quotiens* indefinite (cf. l.38, and below, l.55: *quācumque*).
- 7: *congressus...discessit*: subject is Hannibal; *eō*: *populus Rōmānus*.
- 13: *patriā pulsus*: 195 BC, see lines 147ff.
- 15–18: *nam*: introduces the reason for the preceding statement (as in line 6), but the explanation of *animō bellāre cum Rōmānīs* is here postponed until after the introduction of Antiochus; *ut omittam*: “Leaving out Philip,” “Passing by Philip”; *absēns*: sc. Hannibal was in Italy when Philip V, king of Macedon, became an enemy of the Romans.
- 19–25: *Ad quem cum* (l.19)...*commemorāset* (l.25) is all part of the *cum* clause; *quem/eius*: Antiochus; *commemorāset* = *commemorāvisset*, syncopated form (see grammar section above); ... *lēgātī...Rōmānī, quī...explōrārent darentque operam cōsiliīs clandestinīs*: relative clause of purpose (Cap. XXXIX); *operam dare...ut*: “to endeavor that” + subjunctive (see above section on idioms); *ut Hannibalem in suspiciōnem rēgī addūcerent*: purpose clause (Caps. XXVIII, XLII); *tempore datō*: “when the opportunity presented itself.”
- 28: *Karthāgine*: ablative of place from which.
- 31–32: *ab eō petere coepissem nē dubitāret dūcere*: indirect command (Cap. XXVII, *verba postulandī*).
- 34–35: *cētērīs (hominibus) remōtīs*: ablative absolute; *tenentem*: sc. *mē*.
- 36: *fore* = *futūrum esse* (Cap. XLV).
- 37–38: *nēmīnī dubium esse dēbeat quīn*: Cf. Cap. XL (*nōn dubitō quīn*, l.8); *eādem mente*: ablative of description (Cap. XXXII).
- 40–42: *cēlāris* = *cēlāveris*: usually with two accusatives (“hide something from someone”); future condition, as is *frūstrāberis sī nōn...posueris*.

- 43: *Hāc...quā dīximus: quam dīximus*: an accusative relative pronoun can be attracted into the case (ablative) of its antecedent.
- 44–45: *Hasdrubal*: Hannibal's brother-in-law (XLVIII.20); *suffectus*: "chosen or elected in place of someone else" (here because the elder Hasdrubal had died).
- 47: *Karthāginem*: accusative of motion: the announcement had to "travel" to Carthage.
- 48: *quīnque et vīgintī annīs*: ablative of comparison with *minor*.
- 50: *Saguntum foederātam*: i.e., allied to the Romans by a *foedus* ("treaty").
- 52: *cum Hasdrubale frātre*: his actual brother, not the brother-in-law of lines 44–45.
- 55: *quācumque*: adv.; see above on *quotienscumque* (l.6).
- 57: *Alpēs, -ium*: feminine plural.
- 62: *itinera mūnīvit*: "he opened up travel routes"; *elephantus ornātus īre*: as opposed to *homo inermis vix poterat rēpere* ("crawl," l.63); war elephants were equipped (*ornātus*) with towers.
- 68: *tertiō*: adverb, "for a third time."
- 69–70: *manum cōnserere*: "engage in close combat."
- 71: *Ligurēs*: inhabitants of Liguria, the Ligurians.
- 74: *etiāmnunc*: "even yet, even under these circumstances."
- 76: *occīdit*: with both clauses (*C. Flāminium...circumventum* and *C. Centēnium...occupantem*).
- 85–86: *urbī*: dative with *propinquīs...montibus*; *morārī*: delay, stay; *cum...habuisset...reverterētur*: subject is Hannibal.
- 88–90: *Hic*: Hannibal; *exercitūs*: objective genitive with *ūllō dētrīmentō*; *dedit verba*: "tricked" (see section on idioms, above).
- 91: *sarmenta...dēligāta*: Cf. XLVIII.402–403.
- 92: *eiusque generis*: genitive of description.
- 96–97: *magistrum equitum*: Cap. XLVI; *parī ac dictātōrem imperiō*: ablative of description or quality; adjectives which mark equality or similarity often take *atque* or its shortened form *ac*; *parī ac*: "equal to."

- 99: *in Lūcānīs*: the Lucani lived in southern Italy; *absēns*: Hannibal's brother Mago was in charge (XLVIII.58).
- 102: *longum est*: "it is tedious, too long," cf. XLVII.164: *sed prōgressī longius sumus*.
- 103–104: *quantus ille fuerit*: "How great he was" indirect question.
- 110: *fugārat* = *fugāverat*: syncopated form (see grammar section above).
- 107: *dēfēsum*: supine (Caps. XXII, XLV).
- 111–112: *impraesentiārum*: perhaps from "*in praesentiā rērum*": "for the present"; *componere bellum*: "put an end to the war"; *quō valentior posteā congredērētur*: relative clause of purpose with a comparative; *quō valenior* = *ut eō valentior* (see grammar section above).
- 113: *convēnit...convēnerunt*: *convēnit* is impersonal (Cap. XLI), *convēnerunt* is personal; both signify reaching an agreement.
- 115: *incrēdibile dictū*: ablative of respect of supine (Cap. XXXIX).
- 117: *Numidae, -ārum* (m. pl.): Numidians, fighting for the Romans.
- 122: *ācerrimē*: "very/most vigorously, vehemently."
- 124: *nihilō sētius*: "nonetheless."
- 125: *ūsque ad...cōsulēs*: temporal, "up to the time when Sulpicius and Aurelius were consuls."
- 125–130: *lēgātī...vēnērunt, quī...agerent...[et] corōnā aureā eōs dōnarent simulque peterent*: relative clause of purpose (Cap. XXXIX); (for *corōnā aureā...dōnarent*, see grammar section above); *peterent ut...essent...redderentur*: indirect command (Cap. XXVII, *verba postulandī*); *obsidēs*: "hostages."
- 131: *ex senātūs cōsultō*: "by decree of the senate," cf. XLVIII.679.
- 132: *quō locō*: i.e., at Fregellae.
- 133–136: *quod Hannibalem, cuius...foret...habērent*: subordinate clauses in *ōrātiō obliqua* (Cap. XXXVI); *cuius operā*: "through whose agency," Cf. Cap. XLVIII.696–697; *foret = esset* (Cap. XLIII).
- 141: *parī...ac*: see above, note to lines 96–97.
- 147–148: *Hōs Hannibal ratus suī exposcendī grātiā missōs: ratus...missōs*: compressed indirect statement dependent on the participle *ratus* (from *reor, rēri*: "think"); *grātiā*: just like *causā* (Cap. XXVI);

- grātiā* in the ablative can take a preceding genitive to mean “for the sake of, in order to”; *suī* is the genitive of the reflexive pronoun *sē* (cf. *meī* and *tuī* as genitives of *ego* and *tū*) (Cap. XXIX) = *ratus hōs...missōs esse ut sē exposcerent*.
- 148–149: *senātus darētur*: *senātum dare* + dative: “give someone an opportunity to address the Senate.”
- 149–150: *clam* <-> *palam*.
- 151–152: *nāvēs...quae eum comprehenderent sī possent cōsequī, mīsērunt*: both a relative clause of purpose (Cap. XXXIX), “sent ships to,” and conditional (future condition in secondary sequence), “to seize him if they could catch him”; *pūblicārunt* = *pūblicāvērunt*: “confiscate.”
- 153: *iūdicārunt* = *iūdicāvērunt*.
- 154–156: *sī...voluisset...dīmīcāset* (= *dīmīcāvisset*): past contrafactual condition.
- 158: *vidēbat...nūllā dēseruit in rē*: subject is Hannibal (i.e., Hannibal continued to support Antiochus even though the latter was a disappointment); *praefuit*: subject is Antiochus.
- 159: *iisque*: ablative of means referring to the ships (and their military crew).
- 162: *suī*: sc. *mīlītēs*, his own soldiers.
- 163–164: *verēns nē*: fear clause (Caps. XXXII, XLVIII); *accidisset...sī suī fēcisset potestātem*: past contrafactual condition; “*potestātem suī facere*”: to create an opportunity (for others) to have access to oneself; *suī* is the genitive of the reflexive pronoun *sē* (cf. l.148; Cap. XXIX).
- 165: *ut...cōsiderāret*: purpose; *quō sē cōferret*: indirect question.
- 166–167: *in magnō sē fore...nisi quid prōvidisset*: future condition in *ōrātiō oblīqua*, secondary sequence; in direct speech: *in magnō periculō erō, nisi quid prōvīderō*.
- 170: *plumbum*, -ī: “lead”; *summās*: sc. *amphorās*.
- 172–173: *simulāns sē suās fortūnās illōrum fideī crēdere*: the change in pronouns reflects a shift in locution. What Hannibal said (direct statement) was “*meās fortūnās vestrae fideī crēdo*”; in *ōrātiō oblīqua*, the pronouns shift (see Cap. XLIII on pronoun changes): “I entrust my fortunes to your honesty,” becomes in

reported speech, “he entrusted his fortunes to the honesty of those men.” But in Nepos’s narrative, “those men” (*illōrum*) are represented as “these men, the ones I was just writing about” (*hīs...inductīs*).

- 177: *īnscientibus iīs*: ablative absolute; *tolleret...dūceret*: sc. as object *amphorās*.
- 181–182: *eōdem animō*: ablative of description; *neque aliud quicquam...quam*: “nothing other than.”
- 183: *quem*: i.e., *Prūsiam*.
- 188: *quō magis cupiēbat*: *quō* = *et eō*: “and therefore, for this reason.”
- 189–190: *quem sī remōvisset, faciōra sibi cētera fore arbitrābātur*: condition in *ōrātiō obliqua* in secondary sequence (Cap. XLIII); the direct statement would have been: “*sī eum remōverō, faciōra mhi cētera erunt*”; *fore* = *futūrum esse*, the future infinitive of *esse*; *remōvisset* represents a future perfect indicative in secondary sequence (see summary of conditions).
- 191: *tālem iniit ratiōnem*: *inīre ratiōnem*: “to reckon, calculate”; “hit on the following plan.”
- 193: *classe...erant dēcrētūrī*: “they were intending to contend by naval battle”; *erat pugnandum*: impersonal passive of the passive periphrastic with an intransitive verb (Cap. XL).
- 199–200: *praecipit...quem sī aut cēpissent aut interfēcissent, magnō iīs...praemiō fore*: condition in *ōrātiō obliqua* (Cap. XLIII), dependent on a historical present (Cap. XXXVII), hence the secondary sequence; the direct statement would have been: *eum sī aut cēperitis aut interfēcero, magnō vobis praemiō erit*.
- 202: *Bithyniī*: Prusias (as the marginal note to l.180 in your text points out) was king of Bithynia.
- 208: *concitārunt* = *concitāvērunt*.
- 210: *quid potissimum*: “what most of all,” i.e., the snakes or the enemy ships.
- 215: *accidit...ut...cēnārent*: noun clause of result (Cap. XXXVII).
- 219–221: *quī Hannibale vivō numquam sē sine īnsidiīs futūrōs existimārent*: relative causal clause, “because they thought” (Cap. XXXIX); *mīsērunt...quī ab rēge peterent*: relative clause of purpose (Cap. XXXIX).

- 222–223: ‘*nē inimīcissimum suum sēcum habēret, sibiue dēderet*’: indirect command with *petere* (Cap. XXVII, *verba postulandī*); the reflexive pronouns do not all refer to the subject of the main verb (*peterent*, l.221); *sēcum habēre* means “to keep to oneself,” that is, for Prusias to keep the Romans’ greatest enemy (*inimīcissimum suum*, Hannibal) to himself (*sēcum*, Prusias) but turn him over to them (*sibi*, the Romans). The switch of referents for reflexives in indirect speech is not uncommon, but it rarely impedes understanding.
- 224–226: *illud recūsāvit nē id ā sē fierī postulārent: recūsāre* (“object to”) here takes an object clause (*nē* + the subjunctive); *illud*: i.e., the latter request; *quod adversus iūs hospitīi esset*: descriptive (potential) clause (Cap. XLII); “*ipsī, sī possent, comprehenderent*”: condition in *ōrātiō obliqua* (Cap. XLIII); direct statement would have been “*ipsī, sī potestis, comprehendite eum!*” The sequence is secondary; the protasis is subjunctive as a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua* (Cap. XXXVI) and the protasis is subjunctive as a reported imperative, virtually an indirect command.
- 228: *datum erat mūnerī: mūnerī* is dative of purpose: “to give for the purpose of a gift/to give as a gift” (Caps. XXXVI, XL); *aedificārat = aedificāverat*.
- 230: *nē ūsū venīret*: “lest it should happen” (see section on idioms, above).
- 239: *aliēnō arbitriō*: “on someone else’s decision.”
- 241: *cōnsuērat = cōnsuēverat*: syncopated form (see grammar section above); *cōnsuēscere = cōnsuēvisse*: “get accustomed,” like *nōscere* “get to know” (Cap. XXIV) have a present sense in the perfect tense and an imperfect sense in the pluperfect; *cōnsuēverat = solēbat*: “was accustomed.”
- 243–244: *Quibus cōsulibus interierit, nōn convenit*: for *nōn convenit*, see note above on line 113; *quibus...interierit*: indirect question.

Scīpiō et Hannibal [Ex T. Līvii librī XXXV Periochā]: 256–275

- 259: *Ephesī*: locative; Ephesus is near the coast of Asia Minor (see map in Cap. LIII of your text).
- 260–261: *sī fierī posset*: if it were possible (Cap. XXXVI); *eī...eximeret*: dative: “remove from him.”

- 266: *visere*: “to go to see,” “to visit” (Cap. XXX).
 267: *Quaerenti*: sc. *Scīpiōnī* = *cum Scīpiō quaereret*.
 269: *loca capere*: “set up a position, select a place for camp”; *praesidia disponere*: “set up guard posts” (military terms).

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

amphora , -ae	amphora (jar)
avāritia , -ae	greed, avarice
corōna , -ae	wreath

2nd

adversārius , -ī	opponent, adversary
arbitrium , -ī	decision, wish
biduum , -ī	two days
classiārii , -ōrum (<i>pl.</i>)	marines
dētrīmentum , -ī	harm, loss
plumbum , -ī	lead
praeceptum , -ī	instruction, order
prōpatulum , -ī	forecourt
puerulus , -ī	small boy

3rd

cohortātiō , -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	exhortation
cōnsuētūdō , -inis (<i>f.</i>)	custom, habit
doctor , -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	teacher, learned man
facultās , -ātis (<i>f.</i>)	capability, possibility, (<i>pl.</i>) resources
hērēditās , -ātis (<i>f.</i>)	inheritance
nātiō , -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	people, nation
patrēs cōscriptī	senators
serpens , -entis (<i>m.</i>)	snake, serpent
suspiciō , -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	suspicion
vectīgal , -ālis (<i>n.</i>)	tax

4th

dīlēctus, -ūs	recruitment; choice
obitus, -ūs	death
vīsus, -ūs	sight, vision

VERBA**-āre**

(comprobō) comprobāre	approve, confirm
(cōsiderō) cōsiderāre	observe, reflect
(dēbilitō) dēbilitāre	weaken
(dēligō) dēligāre	tie up, fasten
(dispālōr) dispālārī	wander about
(ēnumerō) ēnumerāre	count up, enumerate
(īnfītiōr) īnfītiārī	deny
(īnsidiōr) īnsidiārī	lie in wait, lie in ambush
(mētor) mētārī	measure off, lay out
(peragrō) peragrāre	travel over
(prōfligō) prōfligāre	defeat decisively, crush
(pūblicō) pūblicāre	make public property, confiscate
(verba dō) verba dare	deceive, cheat

-ēre

(dissideō) dissidēre (< sedēre)	disagree, differ
(indigeō) indigēre, -uisse, -itum	need, desire
(prōvideō) prōvidēre (< vidēre)	see to it, take care

-ere

(acquiēscō) acquiēscere, -ēvisse, -ētum	go to rest; die
(antecēdō) antecēdere (< cēdere)	precede, surpass
(concīdō) concīdere, -īdisse, -īsum	fall (down), collapse
(concipiō) concipere (< capere)	receive, catch, conceive
(congregiōr) congregī, -gressum	meet, join battle, fight
(cōnserō) cōnserere, -uisse, -tum	join, connect

(cōnsuēscō) cōnsuēscere, -ēvisse, -ētum	get used/accustomed to
(excidō) excidere, -idisce, -isum	fall out, be dropped
(eximō) eximere (< emere)	take away, remove
(obdūcō) obdūcere (< dūcere)	draw over (to cover)
(pendō) pendere, pependisse, pensum	weigh, pay
(rēpō) rēpere, rēpsisse, rēptum	crawl
(sēiungō) sēiungere (< iungere)	separate
(sufficiō) sufficere (< facere)	appoint, substitute

ADIECTĪVA

1st/2nd

aēneus, -a, -um	of bronze/copper
districtus, -a, -um	busy
foederātus, -a, -um	federated, allied
nauticus, -a, -um	nautical, naval
prīstinus, -a, -um	former, original, pristine
rōbustus, -a, -um	strong, robust
venēnātus, -a, -um	poisoned, poisonous

3rd

excellēns (<i>gen. excellentis</i>)	outstanding
exter, -era, -erum	external, foreign
fictilis, -e	earthen, earthenware
imprūdēns (<i>gen. imprudentis</i>)	ignorant, imprudent
innumerābilis, -e	countless, innumerable
īnsciēns (<i>gen. īnscientis</i>)	not knowing, unaware

ADVERBIA

aliās	at another time, at another place
eā	that way, there
fortuītō	by chance, fortuitously
hāc	this way
impresentiārum	at the present moment

posteaquam	afterward, since
nōnnihil	not a little, something
potissimum	preferably, especially
quotiēscumque	every time that
setius	nonetheless
utpote	namely
ūtrobique	in both places

L: QVINQVAGESIMVM: GRAECIA LIBERATA (Livy)¹

[Ex T. Livii 'ab Urbe Conditā' librīs XXXI–XLV]

I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION

The victory over Carthage gave the Romans control of the Western Mediterranean. They now directed their attention to the East. In this chapter, you read extracts from Livy's account, supplemented by the *periochae*, of the conflict between Rome and the two great powers of the Eastern Mediterranean, *Macedonia* and *Syria*.

The Romans feared that king Philip (*Philippus*) V of Macedonia (221–179 BC), who had supported Hannibal in the Second Punic War, would conquer all the free states of Greece and the kingdom of *Pergamum* in Asia Minor. To prevent this, they declared war and sent an army to “liberate” Greece. After a few years' fighting, the Romans, under *Flāminīnus*, won a decisive victory over Philip (197 BC), and during the Isthmian Games at Corinth, the liberation of Greece was solemnly proclaimed. Only in 194, after conquering the insubordinate tyrant *Nabis* of Sparta, could Flamininus leave Greece with his army, and in Rome he celebrated a triumph lasting three days.

The next war was with king *Antiochus* III of Syria (223–187 BC), who ruled a large kingdom in the Eastern Mediterranean including most of Asia Minor. Antiochus invaded Greece, where he was supported by the Aetolians, but was defeated by the Romans at *Thermopylae* in 191. The Roman consul *Acilius* put an end to the war in Greece by capturing the heavily fortified city of *Hēraclēa* from the Aetolians. The Romans, commanded by *L. Cornēlius Scīpiō*, the brother of Scipio Africanus, carried the war over to Asia Minor. With the support of king *Eumenēs* of Pergamum, they defeated Antiochus in 190 and compelled him to give up Asia Minor west of Mount Taurus.

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

After the death of king Philip, his son *Perseus* succeeded to the throne of Macedonia. The new king's aggressive policy brought about a new war with Rome, which lasted four years and ended with the final defeat of *Perseus* by *L. Aemilius Paulus* at the battle of Pydna in 168. Macedonia was now made a Roman province.

At the end of book 45 of his Roman history, the last that has been preserved, Livy tells of the events after the battle of Pydna: the arrival of the news in Rome, the capture of *Perseus*, and *Aemilius Paulus*'s splendid triumph. A few days before and after this triumph, the victorious general lost his two youngest sons, but he bore this terrible blow with Roman virtue and gravity. In a public speech to the people, he expressed his gratitude that the gods had seen fit to let the change of fortune that must follow upon such a great success overtake his family and not Rome. Chapter 51 will take up the narrative of Roman history with *Paulus*' son who was adopted by *Scipio Africanus* (*Publius Cornelius Scipio Aemelianus*). The summary (*periocha*) of Book 46 shows *Paulus* as a man of great integrity:

L. Aemilius Paulus, quī Persen vīcerat, mortuus. Cuius tanta abstinentia fuit ut cum ex Hispāniā et ex Macedoniā immensās opēs rettulisset, vix ex auctiōne eius redactum sit, unde uxōrī eius dōs solverētur (*abstinentia*: self-restraint; *auctio*, *ōnis*: an auction to sell his goods after his death; *redactum* < *redigere*: brought back; *dōs*, *dōtis*: dowry: this marriage portion would have been returned to his wife after *Paulus*' death).

Notā bene: This chapter covers about eighty years of Roman history, with excerpts from books 31 through 45 of Livy's *ab Urbe Conditā*. That's about 740 pages of Latin text in the Teubner Edition, here represented in 676 lines of Latin. Such a condensation of material gives a rather sweeping view of Roman history, highlighting a few events and eclipsing, by necessity, others.

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Philippus [EX LIBRĪS ET PERIOCHĀ LIBRŌRUM XXXI–XXXIV]: 1–97

- 13–14: *in faucibus*: *fauces*, *-ium*: “narrow opening” or “mountain pass” (Cap. XLVIII.288); *fugātumque coēgit in rēgnū revertī*: i.e., *coēgit Philippum fugātum in rēgnū revertī* or *coēgit Philippum postquam ille fugātus est in rēgnū revertī*.
- 15: *sociūs Aetōlīs*: in military terms, troops are used as an ablative of means instead of agent (*ab* + ablative).

- 18–19: *cum Philippō...aciē victō dēbellāvit*: “he finished the war with Philip by defeating his army in battle at Cynoscephalae”; *aciēs*, -*eī* (f.): the front line of battle; here: “an army arranged for battle”; it can also mean the battle itself (cf. XLVIII.636).
- 22: *signīs collātīs*: the *signa* (“banners” or “standards”) of a Roman army symbolized the army itself and, as well as being of paramount importance, are part of many military idioms; *signa conferre* means “to engage in close battle.”
- 25: *in cōtiōne*: i.e., in front of the people.
- 27: *brevī*: sc. *tempore*.
- 28–29: *in villam pūblicam*: the *Villa Pūblica*, located in the *Campus Mārtius* (XXXVI.8–9); Livy 4.22 cites its construction for the use of the censors in 434 BC (*Eō annō C. Fūrius Paculus et M. Geganius Macerīnus cēnsōrēs villam pūblicam in campō Mārtiō probāvērunt, ibique primum cēnsus populī est āctus*).
- 32–34: *mōre māiōrum*: the *mōs māiōrum* (“the way our ancestors did things”) was the touchstone of Roman cultural practice: “in the traditional practice,” “in the traditional manner”; *dēcrētī*: sc. *sunt*; *daret*: subjunctive in a jussive subjunctive in indirect speech implied by *cōnsiliō*.
- 36–46: *ut omnēs...habērent...dēdūceret...trāderet...habēret...gereret...daret...populō Rōmānō*: noun clause giving the content of the conditions of peace (*lēgēs*); were they in direct speech, they would have been jussives subjunctives.
- 39–43: *quae = quae Graecōrum cīvitatēs*; so too *vacuās (cīvitatēs)*; *Isthmiōrum tempus*: the Isthmian Games (*lūdicrum*, 1.49 = *lūdus*) at the Isthmus of Corinth, celebrated every five years; *nāvēs tēctās*: i.e., ships with decks.
- 45: *iniussū senātūs*: like *iussū* (Cap. XLI), *iniussū* is found only in the ablative with a genitive or a possessive adjective.
- 50–52: *cum...tum = et...et* (Cap. XLII); *ad solitōs modo ūsūs*: “not only for the usual enjoyments” (i.e., going to the games and the market).
- 53–54: *qui...status...esset?*: indirect question.
- 55–56: *praecō*, -*ōnis* (Cap. XLIV); *tubicen*, *tubicinis* (Cap. XLII).
- 59: *immūnēs*, i.e., *vectīgālibus*: *immūnis*, -*e* (Cap. XLIV); *vectīgal*, -*ālis* (Cap. XLIX).

- 61: *Magnētas*: Greek names in the 3rd declension plural often retain the -ās ending (instead of -ēs).
- 64–65: *māius gaudium fuit quam quod...acciperent*: relative comparative clause (Cap. XLVIII); *crēdere*: historical infinitive, subject: *quisque*.
- 71–72: *nihil omnium bonōrum*: partitive genitive with neuter pronoun (Cap. XLIV); *multitūdīnī*: dative with the comparative *grātius*, “more pleasing to...”
- 78–80: *in ūnum*: “into one place, together”; *cupientium, iacientium*: genitives with the ablative absolute *ruente turbā*; *adīre contingere*: two separate actions without a conjunction (called asyndeton) = *adīre et contingere*; *periculō*: ablative of separation with *procul* (Cap. XXXVI).
- 81–88: *quae...bella gerat prō libertāte aliōrum! nec hoc...praestet, sed...trāiciat...ubique...sint*: the relative clause, which extends over the punctuation (i.e., all the verbs have [*gens*] *quae* as subject), can be interpreted as simply a subordinate clause in *ōratiō obliqua* (Cap. XXXVI) or a relative descriptive (generic) clause (Cap. XLI).²
- 83: *suā impensā*: “at its own expense.”
- 84–86: *hoc*: subject of *praestet*; *finitimīs*: “neighbors, people on its borders”; *propinquae vicinitātis*: genitive of description; *vicinitas*: “proximity, vicinity.”
- 86–88: *maria trāicere*: “cross the seas”; *trāiciat nē...sit, ubique...sint*: a compound purpose clause, the first element marked negative by *nē*, the second unmarked but positive (i.e., *ut ubique*).
- 88–89: *liberātās*: sc. *esse* (still part of the reported speech of the people—but it’s also the accusative of exclamation; see Cap. XXXIX).

Triumphus Flāminīnī [Ex librō XXXIV]: 98–128

- 100: *Vēris initiō*: “at the beginning of spring,” cf. l.140; *vēnit*: sc. *T. Quīnctius Flāminīnus*.
- 101: *in contiōnis modum*: “in the manner of an assembly.”
- 102: *ōrsus* < *ordiri*: i.e., *coepit loqui*; *Rōmānīs*: dative; Livy switches construction midsentence (leaving *imperātōrum* not strictly

2. As you will learn the more you read Latin, a simple and exact classification of a clause is not always possible—or necessary.

- dependent on anything); this construction is called *anacoluton* and is best interpreted as indicated by the marginalia in the text (*et ab rēbus gestīs imperātōrum*).
- 106: *in animō esse*: “to have in mind,” “to have an intention” (cf. margin of XLIII.250–251).
- 107–108: *respiciunt*: i.e., the assembled Greeks; *praesidium*: i.e., *Rōmānum*.
- 110–111: *prōsequentibus cūctīs...acclāmantibus*: ablative absolute; *Elatēa*: see line 35.
- 112: *unde erat trāiectūrus*: here, as often, the future participle signals intention: “whence he planned to cross over” (to Italy).
- 114: *prope trimphantēs*: the adverb qualifies that the atmosphere was one of a triumph, but an actual triumph has to be declared by the senate.
- 115–117: *senātus...Quīntiō...datus est*: *senatus dare* + dative: “give someone an opportunity to address the Senate”; *ad rēs gestās ēdisserendās*: purpose.
- 119–120: *aurum argentumque factum infectumque et signātum*: gold and silver both “wrought” (*factum*), “unwrought” (*infectum*), and “embossed” (*signātum*); *aurī*: genitive with *milia*; *pondō*: “in weight.”
- 122: *dōna cīvitatū*: in apposition to *corōnae*.
- 123: *hostia* = *victima*: animal for sacrifice (Cap. XXXIX).
- 127: *ut exercitū...dēportātō*: *ut* = *prō ut* (*prout*); causal, “as.”

Antiochus [Ex librīs et periochā librōrum XXXV–XXXVIII]: 129–275

- 138–139: *in conviviīs et vīnum sequentibus voluptātibus*: “in dinner parties and in the pleasures that follow upon (drinking) wine.”
- 143: *dūcere*: used of a general in an absolute sense, “march, move”: historical infinitive.
- 146: *omnī contractā iuventūte*: ablative absolute; *contractā*: “collected, gathered together.”
- 148: *quō* = *et eō* (adverb); *aliquantō*: ablative of degree of difference with *pauciōrēs*.
- 153: *in septentriōnem versa*: *versa* refers to Epirus grammatically, by extension to the whole list of cities, *septentriōnem* (Cap. XVI);

this whole section is best read with an eye on the map on p. 262 of your text.

- 154: *Phthiōtae Achaeī*: the Achaeans of Phthiotis.
- 158: *prōmunturium* (Cap. XXXIX).
- 161: *in cuius valle ad Māliacum sinum vergente*: i.e., the valley verges on the Malian bay.
- 162–163: *Haec ūna militāris via est quā trādūcī exercitūs, sī nōn prohibeantur, possint*: a main clause with *ūnus* (or *sōlus*) is often followed by a descriptive relative clause (Caps. XXXIX, XLII), while the *sī nōn prohibeantur* is equivalent to a negative proviso clause (*dummodo nē...*): see Cap. XL.
- 165–167: *locus appellātur, nōbilis Lacedaemoniōrum adversus Persās morte magis memorābilī quam pugnā*: *morte* and *pugnā* are both ablatives of respect with *nōbilis* (the Greek historian Herodotus narrates the famous battle of Thermopylae in Book VII of his Persian Wars).
- 168: *haudquāquam parī...animō*: i.e., unequal to the courage of Leonidas (the Spartan leader) at the time (*tum*) of the Persian War (see margin note).
- 169: *cum duplicī vāllō fossāque et mūrō etiam permūniisset omnia*: for the parts of a Roman army camp, see Cap. XII.
- 171: *eā*: “on that side” (sc. *parte*).
- 172: *praesidiō*: dative of purpose (Cap. XXXVI).
- 176–177: *timor...nē...inveniret*: fear clause (Caps. XXXII, XLVIII); *ad trānsitum*: “as a means of passage.”
- 187: *priusquam* + subjunctive (Cap. XLII).
- 188–189: *artā fronte, ad nātūram et angustias locī*: the *frons* of a battle-line is the vanguard (front); *ad*: “in accordance with.”
- 192: *ab omnī parte*: “on every side,” cf. ll.215–216; *aditūs*: object of *temptantēs*.
- 194: *locō*: ablative of separation with *pulsī*.

- 195: *prope alterum vāllum, hastīs prae sē obiectīs*: the ablative absolute tells us how the “Macedonians”³ created a second, virtual (*prope*) rampart with their long spears held out in front.
- 195–200: *Multi* (sc. *Rōmānī*) *aut recessissent aut plūrēs cecidissent, nī M. Porcius ab iugō Callidromī, ...appāruisset*: past contrafactual condition.
- 200–201: *Macedonēs quīque aliī = Macedonēs et aliī quī*; *prīmō*: adverb, “at first.”
- 203: *subsidiō*: dative of purpose (Cap. XXXVI); *ut primum*: Cap. XXXVII.
- 204: *aperuērunt < aperīre*: open, reveal.
- 205: *tantus repente pavor omnēs cēpit ut abiectīs armīs fugerent*: result clause.
- 206: *perexiguā*: the prefix *per-* before adjectives and adverbs has intensive force (“very...”).
- 207: *sub adventum*: “around the time of his arrival.”
- 211–213: *Inde cōsul M. Catōnem, per quem scīret...Rōmam mīsīt*: relative clause of purpose with verb of motion (Cap. XXXIX); *quae gesta esset*: indirect question (Cap. XXIX and *Notā Bene* in Cap. XXXIX); *haud dubiō auctōre*: i.e., so that the senate would hear the news from a reliable source.
- 216: *equō moenia est circumventus*: “rode his horse around the walls” (cf. l.6, *Cornēlius equō vehitur*).
- 217: *Hēraclēa sita est in rādīcibus Oetae montis, ipsa in campō, arcem imminentem locō altō et undique praecipitī habet*: i.e., the city itself lies at the foot of the mountain in a plain but also has a citidel high up on the mountain.
- 221: *operibus magis quam armīs*: *opus, -eris* (n.) as a military term is either “fortification” or “a siege-engine.”
- 225: *segnius*: comparative adverb from *sēgnis, -e*, “more slowly.”
- 226–227: *dīmīcātiōne*: ablative of separation with *vacuum*.
- 228: *diurnō*: dative with *continuātus...est*.

3. As the marginalia tells you, these are Antiochus’s soldiers drawn up in Macedonian fashion.

- 231: *quartā vigiliā*: ablative of time; the night was divided into four watches (*vigiliae*) of three hours each.
- 232: *ab unā* (sc. *parte*); *tenēre intentōs milītēs*: *intentōs* is predicative: “keep the soldiers alert.”
- 235: *quī oppugnārent intentī signum expectābant*: *expectāre*, a verb that signals an expectation for the future, is often followed by an anticipatory subjunctive with the verb conforming to sequence of tense (compare the conjunction *dum* + the anticipatory subjunctive in Cap. XL); here, the relative clause reveals what the alert troops are ready to do when they get the sign.
- 240: *ab urbe*: i.e., the Romans who were approaching the citadel from the city below.
- 241–242: *nūllā ibi praeparātā rē ad...tolerandum*: ablative absolute with a gerundive purpose clause explaining *rē*.
- 245: *pācis petendae orātōrēs*: gerundive phrase; genitive of description that is equivalent to a purpose clause.
- 260–261: *omnibus prōvinciīs...cēderet*: ablative of separation, “withdraw from” (Cap. XXXVIII).
- 262: *cognōmine frātrī exaequātus*: i.e., ‘*Āfricānus*’, cf. l.271; *frātrī*: dative with *exaequāre*; *cognōmine*: ablative of respect (Cap. XXXIX).
- 263: *Eumenis*: genitive (*Eumenēs*, *-is*); *quō iuvante*: ablative absolute.
- 266: *praefectōs classis*: the *praefectus* is the person in charge, and *praefectus classis* is an admiral.
- 271: *peculātus*, *-ūs*: “embezzlement of public money”; here, genitive of the charge with *accūsātus damnātūque* (Cap. XLVI).

Perseus victus [Ex librīs et periochā librōrum XL–XLV]: 276–383

- 281–283: *Eumenēs...questus est*: *queror*, *querī*, *questum* means “to complain”; here, Eumenes is making a formal complaint to the Senate; *in populum Rōmanūm referuntur*: *referuntur*: see Cap. XLVIII on *referre*; an official announcement made to the Roman people; *ob quās (iniūriās)*; *eī*: i.e., Perseus.
- 287: *parum*: “too little, not enough.”

- 288: *dē agrō*: about respective territories (Carthage claimed the Numidians under Masinissa had illegally appropriated a considerable amount of land).
- 290: *continet*: the unstated subject is Book XLIII (see margins).
- 299: *rebellāset*: syncopated pluperfect subjunctive (Cap. XLIX); for *rebellāre*, see Cap. XLV.
- 302: *Tertiō diē Perseum quam pugnātum erat*: there is an implicit comparison after designations of time (and expressions of number or quantity) that sparks the *quam* which here can be treated like *postquam* (cf. XLVIII.711–713).
- 308: *diē alterō*: “on the second day.”
- 311: *Persea*: Greek accusative singular of Perseus.
- 316–317: *praeceptam...laetitiam*: i.e., the people were already celebrating.
- 324–325: *ēvānuīt*: *ēvānescere*, *ēvānuisse*: “vanish, disappear”; *certae rei gaudium*: objective genitive (Cap. XXV); *gaudium* is a more inward joy than *laetitia*, which refers to a more outward expression of joy (ll.317 and 330); *tamquam* qualifies *certae*; *insidēre*: “settle, occupy” (+ dat.).
- 326: *vērīs nūntiīs*: ablative of means with *fīrmātum est*.
- 329–330: *Et altera...laetitia*: subject: “another outbreak of joy,” i.e., a second story about the crowd’s joy; *circēnsis turbae*: genitive with *laetitia*; *similis vērī*: *similis* takes the dative or, as here, the genitive.
- 330–334: *C. Liciniō cōsulī...ēscendentī...trādidisse dīcitur*: flexible word order allows the important person in this sentence (the consul) to be put in a position of prominence, as frequently; the consul was “going up” to a position whence he could give the signal for the race to start.
- 333: *quī...dīceret*: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō oblīqua* (Cap. XLII); *laureātās litterās*: dispatches announcing victory were adorned with laurel leaves.
- 335–336: *ad forōs pūblicōs*: from *forus*, *-ī* (not *forum*, *-ī*): the rows of seats in the Circus reserved for senators and knights (Livy I.35: *loca dīvīsa patribus equitibusque*); cf. l.339, *prō forīs pūblicīs*.
- 340: *signīs collātīs*: “in a pitched battle,” see line 22.

- 351–352: *dē...referrētur*: see Cap. XLVIII, section on technical vocabulary, still with *ut* (l.350); *vēnissent* is equivalent to a future perfect indicative (in secondary sequence).
- 355–357: *ingentem...*: with *turbam*, object of the participle *trahentēs*, sc. *lēgātī*.
- 358: *tantum temporis retentī dum exponerent*: i.e., they were retained (by the Senate) as much time as needed to relate; *tantum* is not correlative here with *quantae*; *tantum* is neuter singular with partitive genitive; *quantae* is interrogative adjective with *rēgiae cōpiae*; *dum*: anticipatory subjunctive (Cap. XL).
- 361: *iactūra*: “loss”: an idiom from seafaring, it comes from *iacere* and means “a throwing overboard” (see Cap. XXIX).
- 365: *eadem haec*: neuter plural (i.e., the same news they had reported to the Senate).
- 367: *prō sē quisque*: “each on his own behalf.”
- 368–369: *īre...complēri*: historical infinitives (Cap. XLIV).
- 371–372: *in quīnque diēs*: “for five days”; *circā omnia pulvīnāria*: “around all the couches of the gods,” standard phrasing for the giving of a *supplicātiō* at all the temples.
- 378: *In cōsulis verba iūrāverant*: “took the military oath”; *in verba iūrāre* is to swear according to a defined formula.
- 379: *nūntiā(vē)runt*: syncopated perfect.
- 380: *Gentius*: cf. ll.291, 298.
- 381–382: L. Anicius was the praetor and general in charge; *ductū auspicīoque L. Aniciī praetōris* refers to *rēs gestae*.

Perseus captus [Ex librō XLV]: 384–506

- 386: *ignōbilēs*: men of no rank or distinction.
- 388: *sortī hūmānae*: dative with the compound *illacrimāre*.
- 388–392: *quod quī...oppugnāset...esset*: subjunctive of reported reason (Cap. XLII); *rēgnō*: ablative with *contentus*; *fānī religiōne*: “by of the sacredness of the shrine,” parallel with *nōn viribus suis*; Reading help: *quod quī paulō ante nōn contentus rēgnō Macedoniae Dardanōs Illyriōsque oppugnāset, is tum āmissō exercitū, extorris rēgnō, in parvam īnsulam compulsus, supplex, fānī religiōne, nōn viribus suis tūtus esset*.

- 394: *fortūnam suam*: object of *ignōrantis*.
- 397: *cuius nōminis obliviscendum victō esset*: indirect question; *obliviscendum esset*: impersonal passive of intransitive verb (Cap. XL and RECĒNSIŌ, Cap. XLIV); *victō*: dative of agent with gerundive (Cap. XXXI).
- 403–405: *Perseō...amplectente, Paulō...tendente*: ablative absolutes; ‘*ut sē suaque omnia in fidem et clēmentiam populi Rōmānī permitteret*’: indirect command (Cap. XXIX).
- 406–407: *Dum haec aguntur, classis Cn. Octāvīi Samothrācam est ap-pulsa...*: in the omitted text, Octavius also tries to convince Perseus to surrender at Samothrace (cf. ll.311–312).
- 409–410: *trānsīre*: historical infinitive (Cap. XLIV); *fugae*: objective genitive with *cōnsilium*, which is the object of *capere*.
- 413: *sublātum < tollere*: “to take on board (ship).”
- 418: *fugae*: objective genitive with *cōnsciīs*; *posticum*: back door.
- 421: *dum...dēferrētur*: anticipatory subjunctive (Cap. XL).
- 423: *vagārī, vagātum*: Cap. XLIII; *petēbat!*: bear in mind that all punctuation in your text is modern, not ancient.
- 428–429: *Macedonas*: Greek names in the 3rd declension plural often retain the -ās ending (instead of -ēs), cf. l.535; *ēlēctī*: with *liberī*; *rēgis*: with *ministerium*.
- 430: *nē tum quidem*: “not even then” (Cap. XVII).
- 433–435: *sī trānsīrent...servātūrōs (esse)*: future condition in *ōrātiō oblīqua* (Cap. XLIII); *essent...habērent...reliquissent*: verbs in subordinate clauses in *ōrātiō oblīqua* go into the subjunctive according to sequence of tense (Cap. XXXVI).
- 441: *trādīdit*: subject = Perseus.
- 443: *eōdem*: adverb, “to the same place” (Cap. XLV), i.e., the praetorian ship.
- 446–447: *in (suā) potestāte eum esse et addūcī*: “Perseus was under his (Octavius’s) control and being conducted to him (Paulus)”; *esse in potestāte* is a legal phrase meaning “to be under someone’s control.”
- 448: *Secundam eam Paulus (sicut erat) victōriam ratus = Paulus ratus eam esse secundam victōriam*: Pydna being the first

- victory and the surrender of Perseus the second; *sicut erat*: “as in fact it was.”
- 451: *manēre frequentēs*: i.e., “to remain continuously or regularly.”
- 453: *aliās*: adverb, “at any other time” (Cap. XLIX); *Syphāx*: a Numidian king during the Second Punic War.
- 454: *patrum aetāte*: “in their fathers’ time.”
- 455–457: *praeterquam quod*: “beyond that” (i.e., that Syphax was brought into a Roman camp as a captive king); *comparandus*: i.e., Syphax with Perseus; *nec suā (fāmā) nec gentis fāmā*: ablatives of respect with *comparandus*; *accessiō*: “an addition,” here used to mean that Syphax was not the main enemy, the *caput bellī* (Hannibal was); for *Gentius*, see lines 290–300.
- 458–462: *nec ipsius tantum patris avīque cēterōrumque quōs sanguine et genere contigēbat fāma cōnspectum eum efficiēbat* = *nec tantum fāma ipsius patris avīque cēterōrumque (quōs sanguine et genere contigēbat) efficiēbat eum cōnspectum*; *contingere aliquem aliquā rē*: to be connected to someone in some way, so “the reputation of those to whom he was related by blood and family”; the *nec tantum* (= *et non tantum*) is picked up by *sed* in the next clause: *sed effulgēbant*: Perseus gets to “shine” through his association, as the king of Macedon, with Philip II and Alexander the Great.
- 464–465: *nūllō...quī...faceret*: descriptive relative clause (Caps. XXXIX, XLII).
- 467: *submōtō*: *submovēre* when used of lictors is a technical term that means “clear away (people standing in the way)”; it can be used impersonally, both as a finite verb and, as here, in the ablative.
- 469–472: [Cōnsul] *submittentemque sē [= rēgem] ad pedēs sustulit*: *attingere genua*: to lower himself to the ground and touch (the consul’s) knees would have been a sign of submission; much of the action in this compressed sentence takes place in participles—pay attention to the cases to make interpretation easier.
- 473–476: *quā iniūriā subactus*: “incited by what injustice”; *quō...addūceret*: the adverb *quō* (“to the end that,” “with the result that”) here completes the consecutive clause (result clause, Cap. XXVIII; *RECĒNSIŌ*, Cap. XLII): Perseus’s intention was so reckless and dangerous that it led to his own destruction.

- 477–480: *Sī...accēpissēs, minus...mīrārer*: contracfactual condition (Cap. XXXIII; Cap. XLI): this condition is “mixed”: the protasis is past (“if you had received”) while the apodosis is present (“I would be less amazed”); the apodosis of the condition introduces an indirect statement (*ignōrāsse tē*), which in turn introduces an indirect question (*quam gravis aut amīcus aut inimīcus esset populus Rōmānus*).
- 481–484: *pācis...meminissēs*: verbs of remembering and forgetting (Cap. XXXII) take the genitive; *quōrum*: antecedent is the *iīs* in *cum iīs* (i.e., the Romans); *quōrum...expertus essēs*: subordinate clause in indirect statement (Cap. XXXVI).
- 486: *nec...nec...respondēret*: take the negatives closely with the verb: Perseus didn’t respond either when questioned or blamed.
- 489–491: *cāsibus cognita populī Rōmānī clēmētia nōn modo spem tibi, sed prope certam fidūciam salūtis praebet* = *clēmētia populī Rōmānī cognita cāsibus* (ablative of the source of the information: “known in”) *multōrum rēgum populōrumque* (genitives with *cāsibus*) *praebet tibi nōn modo spem (salūtis) sed prope certam fidūciam salūtis*.
- 492: *Graecō sermōne...Latinē*: Paulus, like many elite Romans, spoke Greek in addition to Latin.
- 496: *decet*: with both *cōnsulere* and *crēdere*; *cum*: causal; *quid...ferat*: indirect question.
- 499: *infringet* < *in* + *frangere*.
- 501: *invītātus*: entertained.

Macedonia prōvincia [Ex librō XLV]: 507–601

- 510–511: *includit* with *regnī*, genitive with *finis*; *numerābant*: the implied subject is the Macedonians.
- 514: *obscurā...famā*: ablative of description (Cap. XXXII).
- 515–517: *inde ac per eum*: *ac* (*atque*) = *et*: both from the time of Philip (*inde*) and through his efforts (*per eum*); *sē...continuit...amplexa*: subject is *gēns Macedonum* (also the subject of *superfūdīt* in line 518).
- 519–520: *primum*: the list is continued by *hinc* (l.521), *tum* (l.522), and *inde* (l.523); *quā*: adverb, “where” (Cap. XXXVII); *prope*: modi-

- fies *immēnsō*; *immēnsō spatiō*: ablative of description; *omnia... suae diciōnis fēcit*: (Alexander) “put all under his authority.”
- 521: *Arabas*: Greek names in the 3rd declension plural often retain the -ās ending (instead of -ēs).
- 524: *distractum* < *distrahere*: “pull apart, break up” (Cap. XLIII).
- 527: *stetit*: subject is *Macedonum rēgnum*.
- 528–529: *dē prōvinciīs referentibus*: the idiom *referre* (*ad senātum*) is used about submitting an issue for the deliberation of the Senate (Cap. XLVIII).
- 530–531: *dē sententiā lēgātōrum*: “in accordance with the judgment of the legates”; *rēs componere*: “restore to their proper condition”; *dōnec...composuissent*: represents a future perfect indicative in a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō oblīqua* in secondary sequence.
- 533–534: *decem...quīnque* (*lēgātōs*); *in*: i.e., to be sent into.
- 536: *ut...appārēret*: impersonal, as frequently, “to make it clear” + dative.
- 540: *ad Aeginium et Agassās dīripiendās*: *dīripere* is a military term meaning “plunder, lay waste.”
- 542: *ūtī*: + ablative *initiō* (Cap. XXVII).
- 544–545: Your text leaves out Paulus’s command that statue bases in front of the Temple of Apollo, begun by Perseus to support statues of himself, be used to support statues of Paulus. A base from one of these statues survives in the museum at Delphi.
- 545–546: *ad spectāculum*: i.e., sightseeing; the *Eurīpus* is a strait between the Greek mainland and the island of Euboea; *tantae insulae... iūnctae*: in apposition to Euboea; *ponte*: ablative of means; *continentī*: dative of the participle, sc. *terrae*: the mainland.
- 548–549: *statiōne*: ablative of respect with *inclutum*; *quondam*: “formerly”; *mille navium*: genitive with *statiōne*.
- 551: Agamemnon is *rēx ille rēgum*, “that famous king of kings,” because he was head of the Greek expedition against the Trojans; he used his daughter Iphigenia as a human sacrifice to propitiate Artemis (Diana).
- 555: *praeses, praesidis*: guardian, the one who presides over, with *arcis*: the acropolis.

- 556: *alterō diē*: “the next day.”
- 557–558: *praebuēre*: *praebuērunt*.
- 559: *opibus*: ablative of respect with *haud parem*.
- 562: *aegrī...sacrāverant*; *mercēdem*: in apposition to *quae* (= *dōna*); *remediōrum salūtārium*: objective genitive with *mercēdem*.
- 567–568: *haud secus quam sī...immolātūrus esset*: “hardly otherwise than if” = “just as if”; the sense of futurity is achieved through the use of a future participle; imperfect subjunctive in a conditional clause of comparison in secondary sequence.
- 572–573: *dēnōs principēs*: a group of ten leaders from each of the city-states (*cīvitātēs*); distributive number (Cap. XXX).
- 577–579: *sermōne Graecō referēbat*: Octavius translated everything Paulus had said into Greek.
- 584–587: *Nōmina deinde sunt recitāta...mors dēnūtiāta*: in a section omitted from your text, Livy explains that the people deported to Italy were all cronies of Perseus and thus represented a danger to Greek freedom; with this in mind, the next sentence (that Paulus gave laws as if to allies) does not seem so odd; *placēret*: see Cap. XLVI for the language of official decrees and resolutions.
- 591–594: *artificum...multitūdō et āthlētārum et nōbilium equōrum*: *multitūdō* with all three genitives; *convēnit*: singular to agree with *multitūdō* but applies to both *multitūdō* and *lēgatiōnēs*; *omnis generis*: genitive of description (Cap. XIX).
- 594–595: *quidquid...solet*: subject of *factum est*; *deōrum hominumque causā*: *causa* with preceding genitive (Cap. XXVI).
- 597: *ad quae*: i.e., *ad spectācula danda*; *prūdentia*: “skill”; Paulus wanted the Greeks to see how sophisticated he was at giving games (a skill at which Romans at that point had little practice: *rudēs*).
- 599: *epulae, -ārum*: “a feast”; *et opulentiā et cūrā eādem*: ablatives of manner; *dictum*: “saying.”
- 600: *eiusdem esse*: “characteristic of the same person”: see grammar section above.

Fortūna pūblica et prīvāta [Ex librīs et periochā librōrum XLV]:**602–676**

- 608: *Secūtī...filiī duo Q. Māximus et P. Scīpiō*: Paulus originally had four sons; the two that followed their birth father's chariot had been given up in adoption to Quintus Fabius Maximus and P. Cornelius Scipio. They took the names of their adoptive families and added a form of the birth name as a further *cognōmen* (thus the *Aemiliānus* in both their names); see lines 670–671.
- 613: *hostium*: i.e., the Romans, Perseus's enemies.
- 615–616: *duōbus datīs in adoptiōnem* (the two in line 608); *quōs...sōlōs nōminis, sacrōrum familiaeque hērēdēs*: *hērēdēs* is predicative (whom he had as the sole heirs); the genitives give the content of the legacy (*nōminis, sacrōrum familiaeque*).
- 619–621: *dēstinantēs*: “intending, fixing their minds on” with *similēs... triumphōs*; *vehī...oportuerat*: “should have been carried” (but weren't): see Cap. XLIII, note to lines 353–354.
- 623: *mōre cēterōrum imperātōrum*: for *mōre* (“in the manner of”) and the genitive, see note above to lines 32–34.
- 626–627: *et quā felictāte...et quae duo fulmina*: indirect questions; *perculerint < percellere* (Cap. XLII).
- 629: *spectāculō vōbīs*: double dative (Cap. XXXVI).
- 630: *paucīs*: sc. *verbīs*.
- 631–632: *eō quō dēbeō animō* (see marginalia = *eō animō quō dēbeō*): ablative of manner (Cap. XXV).
- 633–634: *classem...solvere*: “launch the fleet.”
- 641: *saltus, -ūs*: “a narrow pass” (Cap. XLI); *ad*: “near.”
- 642: *redēgī < redigere*: “drive back” (Cap. XLVI).
- 645: *gravius*: adjective with *bellum* (not the comparative adverb).
- 646: *secundārum*: here, “favorable”; *velut prōventus, -ūs*: like a “crop,” “harvest” (i.e., successful result).
- 648: *gaza*: a Persian word that passed into Greek and then Latin, meaning “treasure.”
- 651: *eōque*: “and for that reason” (i.e., *nimia*).
- 653: *trāiciendā < trāicere < trans iacere*: “throw across”: here, “transport” (contrast meaning in note on lines 81–88 above).

- 655: *quod ultrā precārer*: descriptive relative clause with indefinite antecedent (as often).
- 660: *meā tam insignī calamitāte*: ablative of cost; *dēfūctam*: finished (its cycle of rolling downward) (*ex summō retrō volvi*) from being too much (*nimia*, l.651).
- 661–662: *lūdibrium*: “mockery of” + genitive; *interpositus* (< *interponere*) + dative: *triumphus interpositus est duōbus fūneribus*: “set in between.”

Graecia Capta [Q. Horātius Flaccus: Epistulae II.1.156–157]: 677–680

Graēcīā cāptā fērūm victōrēm cēpīt, ēt ārtēs

intūlīt āgrēstī Lātiō.

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

ārea, -ae	open space, site
āthlēta, -ae (m.)	athlete, prizefighter
clēmētia, -ae	clemency, mercy
disciplīna, -ae	instruction, discipline
fidūcia, -ae	trust, confidence
gaza, -ae	treasure
impēnsa, -ae	cost, expenditure
māceria, -ae	brick or stone wall, garden wall
mercātūra, -ae	trade, commerce
opulentia, -ae	sumptuousness
scālae, -ārum (pl.)	ladder
trānsfuga, -ae (m.)	deserter

2nd

coniūrātī, -ōrum (pl.)	conspirators
documentum, -ī	example, proof
impedimentum, -ī	obstacle
lembus, -ī	small boat

ministerium, -ī	office of a minister, ministry, service
posticum, -ī	backdoor
subsidium, -ī	support, help, resource
tabernaculum, -ī	tent
tribūtum, -ī	tax
trīduum, -ī	three days

3rd

accessiō, -ōnis (f.)	addition, accessory
adoptiō, -ōnis (f.)	adoption
artifex, -icis (m.)	craftsman, master, artist
callis, -is (f.)	track, path
expeditiō, -ōnis (f.)	foray, raid, expedition
fōns, fontis (m.)	spring, source
incolumitās, -ātis (f.)	soundness, safety
lis, litis (f.)	dispute, lawsuit
māiōrēs, -um (m. pl.)	ancestors
miserātiō, -ōnis (f.)	compassion, pity
murmur, -uris (n.)	mutter, murmur
mūtātiō, -ōnis (f.)	change, alteration
nāvālia, -ium (n. pl.)	dockyard
ōmen, -inis (n.)	sign, token, omen
percontātiō, -ōnis (f.)	interrogation, question
praeses, -idis (m./f.)	guardian
pulvīnar, -āris (n.)	couch for the gods
rādix, -icis (f.)	root, foot, base
servātor, -ōris (m.)	savior
successor, -ōris (m.)	successor
supplicātiō, -ōnis (f.)	thanksgiving
trānsitiō, -ōnis (f.) (< trānsīre)	crossing over, defection
tribūnal, -ālis (n.)	dais, platform
vertex, -icis (m.)	whirlpool, peak, pole
vīcinitās, -ātis (f.)	neighborhood, vicinity
voluptās, -ātis (f.)	pleasure, delight

4th

conventus, -ūs	assembly
ēventus, -ūs	outcome, result
flātus, -ūs	blowing, breeze
fremitus, -ūs	rumble, growl
mercātus, -ūs	market, fair
peculātus, -ūs	embezzlement
prōventus, -ūs	growth, crop, harvest
sēnsus, -ūs	power of perception, sensation

5th

prōgeniēs, -ēī	offspring, descent
-----------------------	--------------------

VERBA**-āre**

(abaliēnō) abaliēnāre	separate, alienate
(acclāmō) acclāmāre	shout, proclaim
(amplō) amplāre	extend, enlarge
(contemplor) contemplārī	look at, observe
(continuō) continuāre	continue, prolong
(dēportō) dēportāre	convey, bring back
(dēstinō) dēstināre	designate, establish
(distō) distāre	be distant
(exaequō) exaequāre	make equal
(hībernō) hībernāre	spend the winter
(illacrimō) illacrimāre	weep over
(pācō) pācāre	subdue
(praeoccupō) praeoccupāre	preoccupy
(prōnūntiō) prōnūntiāre	proclaim, announce
(trānsportō) trānsportāre	carry across, transport

-ēre

(aveō) avēre	be eager, desire, long
(dēfleō) dēflēre (< flēre)	weep for
(effulgeō) effulgēre, -fulsisse, -fulsum	shine forth
(percēnsēō) percēnsēre, -cēnsuisse	enumerate, survey

-ere

(abscēdō) abscēdere (< cēdere)	go away, withdraw
(cōnsurgō) cōnsurgere (< surgere)	stand up, rise
(dēlitēscō) dēlitēscere, -uisse	hide oneself
(dēvehō) dēvehere (< vehere)	carry, convey
(dīlūcēscō) dīlūcēscere, -lūxisse	dawn, become light
(dirimō) dirimere (< emere)	divide, interrupt
(ēdisserō) ēdisserere, -seruisse, -serutum	set forth, expound
(incrēscō) incrēscere (< crēscere)	grow, increase
(īnsīdō) īnsīdere (< sīdere)	occupy, settle, be fixed
(intercēdō) intercēdere (< cēdere)	intervene, intercede
(intermittō) intermittere (< mittere)	interrupt, discontinue
(porrigō) porrigere (< regere)	stretch out
(prōsequor) prōsequī (< sequī)	accompany, honor
(submittō) submittere (< mittere)	lower
(superfundō) superfundere (< fundere)	pour over
(trāsmittō) trāsmittere (< mittere)	send over, cross

-īre

(permūniō) permūnīre	fortify
----------------------	---------

irregular

(circumeō) circumīre (< īre)	go around, outflank
(introeō) introīre (< īre)	enter

ADIECTĪVA**1st/2nd**

artus, -a, -um	close, tight, deep
cōnsciūs, -a, -um	privy (to), accomplice (+ <i>gen.</i>)
cōnspectus, -a, -um	conspicuous, remarkable
contentus, -a, -um	stretched, content, satisfied
diurnus, -a, -um	of the day, daily
īnfectus, -a, -um	unwrought, not effected
inviūs, -a, -um (< via)	trackless, impassable

laureātus, -a, -um	adorned with laurel
mīrābundus, -a, -um	wondering, full of wonder
perexiguus, -a, -um	very small
praetextātus, -a, -um	wearing a toga praetexta
praetōrius, -a, -um	of the praetor; of the general
pullus, -a, -um	somber, grey
quīnquāgēsīmus, -a, -um	fiftieth
signātus, -a, -um	marked, sealed
violentus, -a, -um	violent, impetuous

3rd

extorris, -e (< terra)	exiled, banished
ignōbilis, -e	unknown, of low birth
immemor, (gen. -oris)	unmindful, forgetful (of) (+ <i>gen.</i>)
inexpugnābilis, -e	impregnable
sēmiermis, -e (< arma)	half-armed

ADVERBIA

plērumque	mostly
porrō	forward, ahead
raptim	hurriedly
tantummodo	only, merely
utcumque	no matter how, however
violenter	violently, impetuously
vulgō	commonly

PRAEPOSITIONĒS

secus	otherwise
--------------	-----------

CONIUNCTIONĒS

nī	= nisi: unless, if not
-----------	------------------------

ALIA

quaesō	I ask you, please
---------------	-------------------

LI: VNVM ET QVINQVAGESIMVM: SCIPIO AEMILIANVS (Livy/Sallust)¹

[*Ex T. Livi 'ab Urbe Conditā' librōrum XLVIII–LXI Periochīs*]

I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION

Book 45 of Livy's *ab Urbe Conditā* is the last to have survived. The hope of finding at least some of the remaining books has never been fulfilled. But instead of the full text, we have brief summaries, called the *Periochae*, of the content of the 142 books. In this chapter, we reproduce extracts from the *Periochae* of books 48–61, which deal with the period from the Third Punic War (149–146 BC) to the death of *Gāius Gracchus* (121).

Under the terms of the peace following the Second Punic War, Carthage was not allowed to build ships nor conduct wars (XLVIII.825–834). The Numidians were an inveterate problem for Carthage (XL.25–28). In a shrewd political move, Masinissa had befriended Rome during the Second Punic Wars (XLVIII.750–752). Following the Second Punic War, the Numidians made incursions into Carthaginian territory. Reports of Carthage mobilizing to defend itself and of supplies of timber (for the building of ships) angered the Romans.

The son of Aemilius Paulus, *P. Cornēlius Scīpiō Aemiliānus*, figures largely in this period of Roman history. He had been adopted by P. Cornelius Scipio, the son of Scipio Africanus, and in accordance with Roman custom, he was given the name of his adoptive father with the second cognomen *Aemiliānus* after his birth father. He was an outstanding general and statesman. When the Third Punic War broke out in 149, he served with distinction in Africa. In the following year, he was elected consul although under the normal age, and in 146 he conquered and destroyed Carthage. In the same year, the Romans destroyed the rich Greek city of Corinth, the center of the Achaean League (*Concilium Achāicum*) which had rebelled against Rome. Scipio's last exploit was the con-

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

quest of *Numantia*, the capital of the *Celtibērī* in Spain, in 133. This put an end to organized resistance to the Romans in Spain.

During the following years, internal conflicts emerged in Rome. There was popular discontent with the ruling class, the *nōbilitās* or *ōrdō senātōrius*, who had a monopoly of all public offices. This discontent was fostered by social problems resulting from the wars, which had dispossessed many Italian peasants of their land. *Tiberius* and *Gāius Gracchus* proposed agrarian reforms intended to provide land for the thousands of landless peasants who had come to Rome.

The Gracchi paid with their lives for their reform policy, but their work had a lasting effect on Roman politics. From then on the conservative senators, who called themselves *optimātēs*, “the best,” struggled with a strong reformist party, known as *populārēs*.² At the end of the chapter you read an extract from the *Bellum Iugurthinum* (see Cap. LII) by Sallust (*Sallustius*); the historian gives his opinion of the political conflicts in Rome and the reasons for them. While the summaries represent Livy taking a censorious tone about the activities of the Gracchi, the excerpt from Sallust clearly shows his sympathy for the reformers. The waning of Roman values is a recurrent theme in Latin literature. Sallust dates the onset of this decline to the removal of Rome’s greatest enemies (especially Carthage):³

luxuriae enim peregrinae orīgō ab exercitū Asiaticō invecta in urbem est. iī primum lēctōs aerātōs, uestem strāgulam pretiōsam, plagulās et alia textilia, et quae tum magnificae supellēctilīs habēbantur, monopodia et abacōs Rōmam advēxērunt. tunc psalteriae sambūcistriae et convīvālia alia lūdōrum oblectāmenta addita epulis; epulae quoque ipsae et cūrā et sūmptū maiōre apparārī coeptae. tum coquus, vilissimum antiquīs mancipium et aestimātiōne et ūsū, in pretiō esse, et quod ministerium fuerat, ars habērī coepta. vix tamen illa quae tum cōspiciēbantur, sēmina erant futūrae luxuriae.

Tiberius and Gaius Gracchus were closely connected with the family of the Scipios. Their mother, *Cornēlia*, was a daughter of Scipio Africanus, and their sister, *Semprōnia*, married Scipio Aemilianus. These family relations are shown in the genealogical table of the Scipio family on p. 294 of *RŌMA AETERNA*. The first ancestor is *Scīpiō Barbātus*, whose sarcophagus with a legible inscription is pictured at the beginning of the chapter.

2. Although *populārēs* had been in use since Plautus, the word *optimātēs* was coined by Cicero, so makes its first recorded appearance at least fifty years after the Gracchi.

3. Livy puts it earlier, when Gaius Manlius Vulso triumphed over the Asiatic Gauls (*ab Urbe Condita* 39).

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Bellum Pūnicum tertium: 1–118

- 1: *Gulussa, Masinissae filius*: for Masinissa, king of Numidia and friend of Rome during the Second Punic War, see XLVIII.750–751: *Et amicitia facta cum Masinissā, rēge Numidārum*. Gulussa continued the tradition of being *amicus Rōmānus*.
- 4: *bellum indicere*: “declare war” (Cap. XLIII).
- 5–6: *temere*: adv.: “heedlessly, rashly” (Cap. XLVII); *explōrātum*: supine (Cap. XXII).
- 9: *dēprehendere*: “observe” or “detect” (especially to catch someone doing wrong); the subject of *dēprendisse* is *sē*.
- 11: *cōnfestim* (Cap. XLII) = *statim*.
- 13: *placuit*: “it was decided” (by the Senate); so too line 25 below (Cap. XLVI: resolutions of the senate).
- 14: *exussissent* < *exūrere* (Cap. XLVII): “burn up.”
- 15–16: *referrent (ad senātum)*: see XLVIII, section on technical vocabulary.
- 20–23: *Inter C. & S...dīversis certātum sententiis est*: impersonal (*certātum est*): Cato and Scipio exchange arguments (*dīversae sententiae*) in the Senate; *alter sapientissimus*: Cato; *alter optimus*: Scipio.
- 26–27: *sociō, amicō*: datives with compound *intulissent*.
- 30–31: *Uticēnsēs*: citizen of Utica (XLVIII.760): “*cīvītās Āfricae maritima*” (marginalia).
- 36: *perstārētur*: impersonal passive.
- 38–39: *acceptis...īnstrumentis bellī (sī qua Carthāgine erant)*: all part of one ablative absolute, with the clause *quōs imperāverant* referring to *obsidibus* and *sī qua Carthāgine erant* to the weapons and instruments of war; *sī qua* = *sī aliqua*.
- 44–45: *Obsidērī oppugnārīque coepta est Carthāgō ā L. Mārcio M'. Mānilio cōsulibus*: with passive infinitives the perfect passive of *incipere*, here *coepta est*, is used in preference to the active *coepit*, *-ērunt* (i.e., *L. Mārcius M'. Mānilius cōsulēs Carthāginem obsidēre et oppugnāre coepērunt*).

- 46–49: *cum...caderentur*: all one clause; *irrūpissent* < *irrumper*: “burst into, force one’s way in” (Cap. XLII); *oppidānus*, -ī: “a townsman” (< *oppidum*).
- 48–53: Reading help (a good sentence for comparing the style of Livy with the much more careless prose of the *periochae*): *et...castrōrumque* connect the two main clauses (reworded): *per Scīpiōnem castellum Rōmānum liberātum est* and *Scīpiō praecipuam glōriam castrōrum liberātōrum tulit*; *castrōrum liberātōrum*: objective genitive with *glōriam*.
- 53–54: *irritus*: “invalid, ineffectual”; *Carthāginis*: objective genitive with *oppugnātiōne*.
- 56: *saltum inīquum*: “a steep, disadvantageous mountain pass”; *prīmō*: adverb (cf. *deinde*, l.57).
- 58–59: *complūrium*: genitive plural with *sententiīs*, which in turn is an ablative of means with *victus*: Scipio was overruled.
- 62–63: *turma*, -ae: troop, division of the Roman cavalry (XLIII.297); *incolumēs* < *incolumis*, -e: “safe, unharmed” (Caps. XXXIII, XLI); *et* = *etiam*, “even.”
- 64: *prōmptus*, -a, -um: “prompt, keen, ready” (Cap. XLV); *prōmptiōris linguae*: genitive of description (Caps. XIX, XXXVI).
- 66: *umbrās volitāre*: “flit about like shadows.”
- 69: *fābulam*: i.e., that he is the son of Perseus (for whom, see Cap. L): he apparently physically favored the former king.
- 72: *ēducandum*: gerundive of purpose with *traditum* (Cap. XXXVI).
- 80–81: *ēdidit* < *ēdere*: produce, perform; *adeō...ut...genuerit*: result clause.
- 86: *item*: Scipio; *Phamae*: Phameas Hamilco.
- 94–95: *suffragantis plēbis* is genitive with *certāmine*, while *repugnanti-bus eī* (*plēbī*) *aliquamdiū patribus* is an ablative absolute; *lēgibus solūtus*: “exempted from the laws.”
- 97: *Pseudo-Philippus*: i.e., Andriscus (l.67); *caesō...praetōre*.
- 101: *per partēs*: “part by part, bit by bit.”
- 103: *extrā sortem*: “without drawing lots”; see the note at XLVIII.220 (*Nōminātae iam anteā cōsulibus prōvinciae erant; tum sortīri iussī*).
- 106–108: *castra...sita...dēlēta sunt*.

- 110: *quam = postquam.*
- 116: *patris suī: Aemilius Paulus.*
- 117–118: *lūdōs fēcīt trānsfugāsque ac fugitīvōs bēstiīs obiēcīt: deserters and runaways were thrown to the beasts as a part of the lūdī in thanksgiving to the gods and celebration of the Roman victory.*

Bellum Achāicum: 119–138

- 120: *Achaeīs: the inhabitants of Achaea, the Achaean league (Achāicum concilium, l.122), an organization of the city-states of Achaea (territory to the west of Corinth) which may date back to the fifth century BC. By this period, membership included all of the Peloponnese, including Corinth; Corinthī: locative.*
- 121: *sub diciōne Philippī: see Cap. L Graecia Liberāta.*
- 125–126: *mortem sibi cōnsciscere: “commit suicide”; cf. XLVIII.720 (Prīncipēs Campānōrum venēnō sibi mortem cōnscīvērunt).*
- 131: *auxiliō: dative of purpose (Cap. XXXVI).*
- 132: *abstinetissimum virum ēgit: “behaved/acted as a most temperate man” (cf. XLVI.388: nihil quasi Rōmānus ēgit).*
- 135: *Andriscō: see l.67.*
- 137–138: *signa aerea marmoreaque: bronze and marble statues removed from Greece and brought to Rome.*

Hispania pācāta: 139–215

- 142: *Lūsītānia: territory on the west-central and southern coast of Hispania.*
- 144–146: *nihilō: ablative of comparison with comparative adverb fēlicius: Tantumque terrōris...ut...exercitū: fear clause (Cap. XXXII); cōnsulārī with both duce, exercitū.*
- 147: *Celtibērōs: the Celtiberians lived in central Spain.*
- 150: *Termestīnōs: the inhabitants of Termes, a town in Celtiberia.*
- 151–152: *Numantīnī: the inhabitants of Numantia, a city in Celtiberia; pācem infirmātam: infirmāre: “nullify, make void.”*
- 153–154: *rēbus in Hispaniā prosperē gestīs: not an ablative absolute, but a dative with lābem (“stigma, blot”) imposuit; aequīs*

- condiciōnibus*: “on equal terms,” as opposed to ones that favored Rome.
- 162: *salūbris*, -e: conducive to health; here, conducive to better behavior, “improving”; genitive of description.
- 165: *caesus*: i.e., flogged, but not killed, as *sēstertiō nummō vēniit* (from *vēnīre*, not *venīre*) shows.
- 172: *accidit*: you have learned *accidere* (Cap. XXVI) as “happen,” but it can also be used (as here, with *vōx*) to mean “strike the senses” + dative (*cōnscendentī*).
- 174: *exūtus*: deprived of + ablative of separation.
- 180: *Gallaecōs*: inhabitants of Gallaecia, also called Callaecia, territory in northwest Hispānia.
- 181: *Vaccaeōs*: the Vaccaeī lived in central Hispānia.
- 182–183: *Ad exsolvendum foederis Numantīnī religiōne populum (Rōmānum)*: *religiōne*: ablative of separation with *exsolvendum*; *religiōne foederis*: the sacred oath contained within a treaty.
- 188–190: *cōsulātus*: “the office of consul”; *illī*: dative with *nōn liceret*.
- 196: *in opere*: “at work.”
- 197–198: *septēnōs*: distributive, “seven each” (Cap. XXX); *incēdentī*: dative with *dīcēbat*; *vāllāre*: to use *vāllī* (“stakes”) to build a *vāllum* (“rampart”), here used metaphorically to mean “protect.”
- 199–201: *dēsinitō*: future imperative (Cap. XXXIII); Scipio will give the order to stop carrying the stakes after...; *Quem mīlitem... dēprehendit, sī Rōmānus esset...cedīdit*: general condition with an iterative subjunctive in the protasis for repeated action.
- 200: *vītis*: grapevine; *cecīdit*: see note above to line 165 on *caesus*.
- 205: *mōs esset*: often followed by a noun clause of result (Caps. XXXVII), also, as here, with dative (*aliīs imperātōribus*) and infinitive.
- 206: *in pūblicās tabulās*: “into the public accounts.”
- 205: *ex hīs (mūneribus)*.
- 208ff: *pābulātum*: supine of purpose (Cap. XXIII); *quia diceret*: *quia* almost always takes the indicative, unless it is followed by a subjunctive of reported reason (Cap. XLV); rarely, as here, the verb of saying can get drawn into the subjunctive as reported reason; “*velōcius eōs absūmptūrōs frūmentī quod habērent, sī*

plūrēs fuissent”: future condition in *ōrātiō obliqua* in secondary sequence. In direct speech, the condition would have been: “*velōcius ī absūment frūmentī quod habent, sī plūrēs fuerint*”; *frūmentī quod*: partitive genitive; the antecedent of *quod* (i.e., *id*) is, as often, to be supplied by the reader.

Gracchī et lēgēs agrāriāe: 216–279

- 220–222: *exardescere*: to be inflamed into (such a state of rage); *in eum furōrem exārsit ut*: result clause; *abrogāret*: deprive + accusative of thing and dative of person (i.e., *M. Octāviō...dēfendentī*); *lēge lātā*: ablative absolute, “by passing a law.”
- 224: *creāret*: second part of the result clause.
- 225: *quā sibi lātius agrum patefeceret*: “by which law a greater expanse of land would lie open to them”; i.e., the triumvirs expanded the amount of land that could be judged private or part of the *ager pūblicus*.
- 226: *quā...quā*: adverbs, “where.”
- 228–229: *spērandī*: with *cupiditātem*; *amplum modum*: object of *spērandī*.
- 230–232: “*ut...dīviderētur*”: i.e., the terms of the law he revealed.
- 235–236: *in Gracchum*: “against Gracchus”; *perōrāsset*: the *perōrātiō* is the end of the speech, but the verb means, in addition to “bring a speech to its close,” to “argue from beginning to end.”
- 236–237: *ad populum*: i.e., compelled to go (*raptus*) from the Senate to the Rostra in the forum; *plēbī*: dative with *dēlātus*; *cōntiōnārī*: “to deliver a speech before the assembly.”
- 239: *ab optimātibus*: see the introduction to this chapter.
- 243: *rogātiō*: a proposed law; + *ferre* = *lēgem ferre* (marginalia).
- 244: *licēret*: impersonal; *vellet*: subject is the candidate for *tribūnus plēbis*.
- 251: *adversārētur*: i.e., opposed the commission of the triumvirs.
- 253: *tamquam*: “as if, on the grounds that” + subjunctive of reported reason (Cap. XLVI).
- 255: *simultās*: quarrel (Cap. XLV).
- 263: *frūmentāriam* (sc. *lēgem*); *sēnīs* (*assibus*): distributive number (Cap. XXX); *triens*, *-entis*: one third (as an *as*), both are ablatives of price.

- 267: *consentientem...corrumperet*: i.e., seduce (by offer of more power) the knights, destroying the current agreeable balance of power; *in Cūriam*: i.e., be enrolled in the Senate; the Equestrians were a separate order, although they shared the same interests as the Senators.
- 269–270: *bis tantum vīrium*: “twice as much power” (i.e., six hundred of the nine hundred members of the Senate would be Equestrians).
- 272: *colōniae dēducerentur*: *colōniam dēducere*: “to lead out (and establish) a colony”; *ūna*: sc. *colōnia*.
- 277–278: *vocātō...populō*: ablative absolute.

Cīvitas Dīlacerāta [Ex C. Sallustii Crispī ‘Bellō Iugurthīnō’]: 280–326

- 284–285: *ortus est* (< *orīrī*) + ablative of source; *dūcere*, like *habēre*, can mean “consider”; *ante Carthāginem dēlētā*: same construction as *ab urbe conditā*: “before the destruction of Carthage.”
- 288: *bonae artēs*: “good moral practices.”
- 290–292: *incessēre* = *incessērunt*; *quod*: antecedent is *ōtium*; *asperius acerbiusque*: comparative adjectives with *ōtium*.
- 293: *nōbilitās*: collective noun with plural verb: *coepēre* = *coepērunt*.
- 299: *agitābātur*: *agitāre*, frequentative of *agere*, is a favorite word of Sallust; *bellī domīque*: like *domī militiaeque* (Caps. XLI, XLIV): locatives; *paucōrum*: i.e., the nobles.
- 302: *cum paucīs*: i.e., they share the plunder with few; *dīripere*: “plunder, ravage.”
- 303–304: *Intereā parentēs aut parvī liberī militum, uti quisque potentiōrī cōnfīnis erat, sēdibus pellēbantur*: poor farmers called off to war left behind parents and children unable to keep up small farms, which were taken over by their wealthy neighbors to create huge farms, called *lātifundia*.
- 306: *ipsa* = *avāritia cum potentiā*.
- 308: *quī...antepōnerent*: descriptive relative clause (Cap. XXXIX); *antepōnere*: “to put *x* (accusative) in front of *y* (dative).”
- 309: *permixtiō*: “disturbance created by mixing together.”
- 313: *in libertātem vindicāre*: “set free, emancipate”; *paucōrum*: again, the nobles.

- 314: *eō*: “for that reason” (with *perculsa*).
- 316: *eadem*: neuter plural object of *ingredientem*.
- 317–318: *alterum...alterum*: “the one...the other”; *colōnīs dēdūcendīs*: dative of purpose (Cap. XLVII).
- 319: *Gracchīs*: dative.
- 320–321: *bonō*: dative, sc. *hominī*; *satiūs*: “better”; *iniūriam*: object of *vincere*; *malō mōre*: ablative of manner.
- 322: *eā victōriā*: ablative with *ūsa* (< *ūtor*).
- 323–324: *plūs...timōris quam potentiae*.
- 325: *pessum*: adverb: “to the ground”; *pessum dare*: “put an end to, ruin, destroy.”

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

abundantia, -ae	overflow, abundance
cavea, -ae	cage, coop
colōnia, -ae	settlement, colony
furca, -ae	fork, forked frame
lascīvia, -ae	wantonness
luxuria, -ae	extravagance, luxury
modestia, -ae	restraint
offēnsa, -ae	offense, resentment
senecta, -ae	old age

2nd

dēcrētum, -ī (< <i>cernere</i>)	resolution, decree
fragmentum, -ī (< <i>frangere</i>)	fragment, piece
nervus, -ī	sinew, muscle; vigor
praeverbium, -ī	prefix
scortum, -ī	prostitute, harlot
subsellium, -ī	bench
vāllus, -ī	stake (for a palisade)

3rd

aedilitās, -ātis (f.)	aedileship
actiō, -ōnis (f.) (< agere)	action, delivery
dissēnsiō, -ōnis (f.) (< sentīre)	disagreement
dominātiō, -ōnis (f.)	dominion, power
ēruptiō, -ōnis (f.) (< rumpere)	a breaking out, sally, eruption
formidō, -inis (f.)	dread, terror
lābēs, -is (f.)	stain, disgrace
optimātēs, -ium (m. pl.)	the nobility
paelex, -icis (f.)	concubine
permixtiō, -ōnis (f.)	mixture, disturbance, chaos
prōditor, -ōris (m.)	traitor
quaestiō, -ōnis (f.)	inquiry, subject of inquiry
rogātiō, -ōnis (f.)	proposed law, bill
triēns, -entis (m.)	third of an <i>as</i>
vēnātor, -ōris (m.)	hunter

4th

circuitus, -ūs	rotation, circumference
tribūnātus, -ūs	office of tribune

VERBA

-āre

(adversor) adversārī	oppose, resist (+ <i>dat.</i>)
(agitō) agitāre	move, stir, plan
(complōrō) complōrāre	lament, bewail
(dīlacerō) dīlacerāre	tear to pieces
(exonerō) exonerāre	unburden
(īnfirmō) īnfirmāre	weaken, refute, annul
(pābulor) pābulārī	forage
(perrogō) perrogāre	ask in turn
(perstō) perstāre	stand firm, persist
(prōmulgō) prōmulgāre	announce, publish
(suffrāgor) suffrāgārī	vote for, support
(vāllō) vāllāre	fortify, defend
(vindicō) vindicāre	claim, avenge
(vituperō) vituperāre	criticize, blame

-ēre

(admisceō) admiscēre -miscuisse	mix (in), add
(polleō) pollēre	be strong
(vigeō) vigēre, -uisse	be vigorous

-ere

(abstrahō) abstrahere (< trahere)	remove, separate
(antepōnō) antepōnere (< pōnere)	place before, prefer
(dētegō) dētegere (< tegō)	uncover, disclose
(dispergō) dispergere, -sisse, -sum	scatter, disperse
(ēvincō) ēvincere (< vincere)	conquer; persuade
(exārdēscō) exārdēscere, -ārsisse	flare up
(fingō) fingere, finxisse, fictum	form, make up, invent
(obstruō) obstruere, -struxisse, -structum	bar, block
(polluō) polluere, -uisse, -ūtum	soil, violate, degrade
(recīdō) recīdere, -cidisse, -āsum (< caedere)	cut away, cut down
(revincō) revincere (< vincere)	conquer
(sēcernō) sēcernere (< cernere)	separate, detach
(sublegō) sublegere (< legere)	gather

irregular

(coēo) coīre (< īre)	come together, gather
----------------------	-----------------------

ADIECTĪVA**1st/2nd**

agrārius, -a, -um	agrarian
bellicus, -a, -um	of war, military
ēruditus, -a, -um	well instructed, learned
extrāneus, -a, -um	foreign, stranger
frūmentārius, -a, -um	of or belonging to wheat, grain
ignōminiōsus, -a, -um	disgraceful
irritus, -a, -um	invalid, ineffectual
moderātus, -a, -um	restrained, moderate

modestus, -a, -um	restrained, modest, calm
noxius, -a, -um	guilty
perniciōsus, -a, -um	destructive, disastrous
prōgnātus, -a, -um	born, son (of) (+ <i>abl.</i>)
ratus, -a, -um	valid, fixed, certain
remōtus, -a, -um	remote, distant
sēditiōsus, -a, -um	seditionous

3rd

abstinēns, (<i>gen.</i> -entis)	self-restrained
asper, -era, -erum	rough, harsh, grievous
cōnfīnis, -e	adjacent, neighboring
ēloquēns, (<i>gen.</i> -entis) (< loquī)	eloquent
praedīves, (<i>gen.</i> -itis)	very rich
salūber, -bris, -bre	healthy, salutary
triumvirālis, -e	of the triumvirs

PRONŌMINA

quīvīs, quaevīs, quodvīs	no matter what, any
---------------------------------	---------------------

ADVERBIA

satius	better, preferable
---------------	--------------------

NUMERĪ

octōgēsīmus, -a, -um	eightieth
septēnī, -ae, -a	seven (each)

ALIA

per vicem	by turns, one after another
pessum dāre	destroy, ruin

LII: ALTERVM ET QVINQVAGESIMVM: IVGVRTHA (Sallust)¹

[Ex C. Sallustii Crispī 'Bellō Iugurthinō']

I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION

The Roman historian Sallust, C. Sallustius Crispus (86–ca. 34 BC), was on Caesar's side during the civil war between Caesar and Pompey. Caesar rewarded him by making him governor of *Numidia*. His knowledge of this province was useful to him in writing his *Bellum Iugurthinum*, a description of the war that the Romans had to wage for six years (112–106) against the Numidian king Jugurtha (*Iugurtha*), the grandson of *Masinissa*. Cap. LII contains excerpts from this work.

If Jugurtha was able to become a dangerous adversary of Rome, it was largely due to the incompetence and corruption of Roman politicians. Time after time Jugurtha succeeded in bribing influential Romans to comply with his demands. In this way he became absolute ruler of Numidia; when finally the Romans declared war, he bribed the consul *Calpurnius Bēstia* to cease hostilities. The disclosure of such corruption within the Senate aroused a storm of indignation in the Roman people. Jugurtha was summoned to Rome under safe conduct to give evidence, but he bribed one of the tribunes to forbid him to speak.

The first Roman commander to oppose Jugurtha effectively was Q. *Metellus*; but before winning a final victory, he was succeeded by C. *Marius*. Marius was a *novus homō* in Roman politics, i.e., the first man in his family to obtain high public office. Marius put an end to the war in Numidia and with the help of his young staff officer *Lucius Cornēlius Sulla*, caught Jugurtha in a trap. The king was taken to Rome to adorn Marius's triumph.

An opponent of the aristocratic senatorial government, Sallust emphasizes the inefficiency of the ruling class and the achievements of Marius during the Jugurthine war.

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

II. AUXILIA LEGENDI

- 4: *obviam itum est*: impersonal passive + dative (for the idiom, see Cap. XXXIX).
- 5: *huiusce modī*: *-ce* is a demonstrative particle adding further “pointing” to the demonstrative *huius*, genitive of description dependent on *reī*, itself dependent on *initium*.
- 10: *Scīpiō Āfricānus*: Cf. XLVIII.266–267.
- 12: *facinora*: *facinus* is often used in Latin to denote a crime, but it comes from *facere* and can just mean, as here, “deed, act.”
- 13: *Syphax*: XLVIII.764–774; L.453–457.
- 15: *rēgi dōnō dedit*: double dative (Cap. XXXVI); object is *quās-cumque...cēperat*.
- 21: *ortus*: i.e., *nātus*.
- 24–26: *Quī = et is* (Cap. XXXIX); *vīribus, faciē, ingeniō*: ablatives of respect (Cap. XXXIX); *multō māximē*: *multō* intensifies the adverb *māximē*; *nōn sē luxuī neque inertiae corrumpendum dedit*: Cap. XXXVI. Note the switch after l.26 from indicative to historical infinitives.
- 28: *cum...anteīret...tamen...esse*: *cum* concessive (Cap. XXXVII) in a subordinate clause in indirect statement; *glōriā*: ablative of respect (Cap. XXXIX).
- 33: *rēgnō suō glōriae fore*: double dative (Cap. XXXVI).
- 34–35: *exāctā suā aetāte et parvīs liberīs*: ablative absolutes; *crescere*: increase in power and esteem.
- 36–37: *multa cum animō suō volvēbat*: *volvere* here, “reflect upon,” as often: *mortālium*, i.e., *hominum*.
- 39: *ad hoc*: adverbial “moreover, in additon.”
- 40–41: *ex quibus, sī tālem virum dolīs interfēcisset, nē qua sēditio aut bellum orīrētur, ānxius erat*: *interfēcisset* represents a future perfect indicative in the protasis reported condition in secondary sequence; the apodosis is a fear clause (*nē...orīrētur*) from *ānxius erat*.
- 42–43: *neque per vim neque insidiīs*: Sallust likes such unparallel juxtapositions (instead of *neque vī neque insidiīs* or *neque per vim neque per insidiās*).

- 44: *manū prōmptus*: “ready in respect to his hand,” i.e., a man of action, quick to take action.
- 45: *obiectāre*: “expose him to” + dative (“toss him in front of”).
- 47: *bellō Numantīnō*: see Cap. LI, *Hispania pācāta*.
- 49–50: *ostentandō, saevitiā*: ablatives of means, again, note lack of strict parallelism; *occāsūrum*: future participle of *occidere* (“die,” related to *cadere*) not *occidere* (“strike down,” related to *caedere*).
- 52: *aliter ac = aliter quam*.
- 53: *ubi = ubi primum* (Cap. XXXVII).
- 56–57: *pārendō/eundō*: ablatives of means of the gerund (Cap. XXVI).
- 57–59: *tantam...ut*: result clause (Cap. XLII); *Numantīnīs māximō terrōrī esset*: double dative.
- 61–62: *novī*: for the *novus homo*, see the introduction to this chapter; *quibus*: dative; *bonō honestōque*: neuter substantives, ablatives of comparison with *potiōrēs*; *potior* (“more preferable”) comes from same root as *posse* and has a positive form *potis* (“possible, able”); *factiōsī*: i.e., given to allying themselves with factions supporting political interests; *apud sociōs*: i.e., in the provinces among the allies.
- 64–66: *accendēbant*: imperfect of repeated action; *sī...occidisset fore uti...potirētur...esse*: indirect statement dependent on the gerund (abl.) of the frequentative *pollicitandō*; *potirī*: usually with the ablative, here with the genitive; *occidisset*: represents future perfect indicative in protasis of a reported future condition, with the apodosis *fore uti*.
- 69: *prō cōtiōne*: i.e., in a speech given before the assembled soldiers.
- 70–72: *privātim*: i.e., he should not solicit the friendship of individuals but the state; *neu quibus*: *neu = nēve (nē-ve)* and thus *quibus = aliquibus*; *quibus* is dative with *largirī*, which you learned in Cap. XVII means “give generously,” but which often carries the pejorative meaning “to bribe.”
- 74: *multōrum*: genitive of possession; *suīs artibus*: see Cap. LI, note on line 288.
- 75–76: *quās...redderet*: relative clause of purpose; *eārum (litterārum)*.
- 78: *certō sciō*: “I know for a fact”; *tibi...gaudiō*: double dative.

- 79: *ut...sit...nītēmur*: final (purpose) clause of the end strived after (*verba curandī*); cf. l.120: *ēnītiminī nē*.
- 81: *Ēn*: exclamatory particle, like *ecce*; *tē atque avō suō Masinissā*: ablatives of respect with *dignum*.
- 84: *grātiā*: not only the favor and esteem (both given and received) but also the influence standing and influence one attains through this esteem.
- 91: *huiusce modī*: see note above on line 5.
- 93–94: *quam sī genuissem*: comparative clauses follow sequence of tense; *exīstimāns nōn minus mē tibi quam sī genuissem ob beneficia cārum fore*: i.e., *exīstimāns mē, ob beneficia, tibi fore nōn minus cārum quam sī genuissem*.
- 95–96: *ut omittam*: “Leaving out the other (*alia*)...”
- 103–105: *moneō obtestorque tē uti hōs, quī tibi genere propinquī, beneficiō meō frātrēs sunt, cārōs habeās*: i.e., *moneō obtestorque tē uti habeās hōs cārōs, quī tibi genere propinquī, beneficiō meō frātrēs sunt*; *uti...mālīs*: present subjunctive of *mālle* (Caps. XXVIII, XXXIII).
- 108: *queas*: *quīre* (see marginalia) is not found in all forms; *queas* is 2nd person singular present subjunctive “one is not able” (Cap. XLI).
- 109–110: *fīdum* is predicate: “what person outside the family (*aliēnum*) will you find loyal.”
- 114–115: *aetāte...prior*: i.e., *māior nātū*; *nē aliter quid ēveniat*: like line 79, final (purpose) clause of the end strived after (*verba curandī*); *aliter*: other than the good situation they now enjoy.
- 117: *facere*: sc. *iniūriam* (as opposed to *accipere iniūriam*).
- 121: *ficta*: i.e., insincere.
- 122: *animō agitabat*: cf. ll.36–37.
- 125: *iūsta, -ōrum*: fitting ceremonies, esp. for funerals; *rēgulī*: diminutive of *rēgēs*: princes.
- 129: *cōsulta*: i.e., *cōsulta rēgis*: all of Micipsa’s decrees.
- 132: *ipsum illum*: Jugurtha himself (emphatic).
- 135–137: *ea...quibus; cum animō habēre = in animō habēre*: “intend, have in mind”; *ea...quibus...caperētur*: indirect question.

- 140–141: *finēs...cōstituī*: i.e., they divided the kingdom among them (*singulīs*); *ad utramque rem*: i.e., *thēsaurōs* and *finēs imperiī*.
- 144: *thesaurīs*: with *propinqua*; *proximus lictor*: for the lictors see the introduction to Cap. XLII; the *prīmus lictor* walked first in the procession and the *proximus lictor* was last in line and therefore closest to the magistrate and the one most likely to receive the magistrate's orders. Either the idea of attendants like lictors had been adopted in Numidia, or Sallust is describing the relationship in the cultural terms of his audience.
- 145–146: *quem...cāsū ministrum oblātum*: “whom by chance was offered to him as an accomplice.”
- 146–147: *ille*: Jugurtha; *impellitque uti...eat*: indirect command; *tamquam* with *visēns*: “as if/as though going to look it over.”
- 148: *vērae* (*clāvēs*).
- 149: *postulāret*: subordinate clause in *ōrātiō oblīqua*.
- 155: *clausa*: “locked rooms.”
- 156: *tugurium*: “hut,” like *casa* (in margins), a very simple dwelling, as opposed to *domus* or *villa*.
- 157: *quō*: adverb of place to which; *initiō*: ablative of time when.
- 164: *illum alterum*: Jugurtha.
- 165–166: *partim...aliās*: another example of Sallust's fondness for *variātiō* in the same phrase; *imperiō suō*: dative.
- 167–168: *quī...docērent*: relative clause of purpose (Cap. XXXIX).
- 169: *frētus, -a, -um*: “relying upon” + ablative.
- 172: *patrātīs*: *patrāre*, cf. *impetrāre* = *in* + *patrāre* (Cap. XLII).
- 173: *omnis Numidiae potiēbatur*: *potīrī* with genitive instead of ablative.
- 177–178: *praecipit...uti*: indirect command.
- 179–180: *postrēmō quaecumque possint largiundō parāre nē cūntentur* = *postrēmō nē cūntentur largiundō parāre quaecumque possint*.
- 181–182: *aliīs*: indirect object of *misēre*.
- 187–209: This is an abridged version of Adherbal's speech as found in Sallust.
- 190: *nepōtem*: “grandson.”

- 195–196: *vōs in meā iniuriā dēspectī estis*: “in the wrongdoing done to me, you are being scorned.”
- 199–201: *quod in familiā nostrā fuit*: “as much as was in our family’s power”; *quod in familiā nostrā fuit praestitit uti in omnibus bellis adesset vōbīs* = (*nostra familia*) *praestitit (id) quod in familiā nostrā fuit: uti in omnibus bellis adesset vōbīs*.
- 201–202: *per ōtium*: as opposed to *in omnibus bellis*; *uti...simus*: consecutive noun clause with *in vestrā manū est*.
- 205–206: *Quid agam? Aut quō...accēdam?*: deliberative questions (Caps. XXIX, XLI).
- 211: *frētī*: see note to line 69; *paucīs*: sc. *verbīs*.
- 216: *Numantiae*: locative.
- 218–219: *Senātus...consultitur*: the consul or presiding member of the Senate put the matter formally before the Senate to get their opinion.
- 221–223: *grātiā, vōce...omnibus modīs*: ablatives of means with *nitēbantur*; *nitēbantur* = *contendēbant*; *prō*: “on behalf of.”
- 229: *verō*: dative with *anteferēbat* (*ferre/ponere x* [accusative] to *y* [dative]).
- 230: *dēcrētum...uti*: subjunctive noun clause with the words of the decree.
- 232–235: *Opīmius*: as with Scaurus (ll.226–228), Sallust first praises the man he is about to vituperate; *C. Gracchō et M. Fulviō Flaccō interfectīs*: see LI.275–279.
- 238: *perfēcit ut*: consecutive noun clause of result (Cap. XXXVII); *anteferre* + accusative and dative: see note to line 229.
- 240: *paucīs (hominibus)*: dative with *cārrior*.
- 247–252: Reading help: *Postquam...Iugurtha...videt...animum intendit*; clauses in *ōrātiō obliqua* follow *videt* [*sēsē adeptum [esse] praemia sceleris*], *ratus* [*certum esse [id] quod ex amicīs apud Numantiam accēperat*] and *accēperat* [*omnia Rōmae vērālia esse*]; *accēperat*: sometimes subordinate clauses in *ōrātiō obliqua* are left in the indicative; *simul et*: “and at the same time”; *animum intendere*: “direct one’s thoughts.”
- 263: *questum*: supine.

- 265: *dēcrēvit*: i.e., Adherbal *dēcrēvit*.
- 265–266: *eō magis*: “all the more because he” but with the negative *neque* it becomes “not at all” or “no less”; *quippe quī*: *quippe* introduces an explanation; it can be used, as here, with indicative (“inasmuch as”) or with a descriptive relative clause.
- 268: *manū*: “band.”
- 270: *cēterum*: “moreover”; *quā*: adverb “wherever.”
- 271–272: *vāstāre...augēre*: historical infinitives (Cap. XLIV).
- 272: *eō...uti...esset*: result.
- 278: *plerumque noctis*: neuter pronoun with partitive genitive (Cap. XLIV): “the greater part of the night.”
- 280–281: *partim, aliōs*: see note above on lines 165–166; *sumētēs*: with *aliōs*.
- 282–285: *multitūdō togātōrum*: a great number of Roman civilians (not soldiers); *moenibus*: ablative of separation; *nī...fuisset...coep-tum atque patrātum bellum foret*: past contrafactual condition.
- 286: *vīneīs*: see note on XLVIII.113.
- 287–288: *tempus lēgātōrum...antecapere*: “take (the town) before the time of the legates’ return.”
- 291: *adulēscētēs*: perhaps underscores the Senate’s disparagement of the Numidian problem; *lēgantur, quī ambōs rēgēs adeant...nūntient*: relative clause of purpose (Cap. XXXIX).
- 292: *verbīs*: “on behalf of,” “in the name of.”
- 297: *rūmor clēmēns*: i.e., milder than the truth of the situation.
- 298: *quōrum*: with *ōrātiō*.
- 300–301: *ab optimō quōque*: for *quisque* with the superlative, see Cap. XXXI = “all the best men.”
- 304–305: *quō plūra...eō minus*: *quō* and *eō* are used with comparatives as correlatives: “the more...the less”; *fēcisset*: subordinate clause in *ōrātiō oblīqua*.
- 305–306: *dolīs*: ablative of means; *vītae suae*: dative with *īnsidiātum (esse)*.
- 308: *iūs gentium*: i.e., the law of nations, to act in self-defense; *factūrum...sī...prohibuerit*: future condition in *ōrātiō oblīqua*.

- 311: *cōpia*: + genitive “opportunity of.” Adherbal was in the besieged town of Cirta.
- 317: *temptāre*: historical infinitive (Cap. XLIV).
- 320: *trahī*: “extended, prolonged.”
- 321–323: *eōs...cōfirmat uti...pergerent*: indirect command, “encouraged, inspired.”
- 325: *fuēre quī* + descriptive relative clause with an indefinite antecedent (Caps. XXXIX, XLII).
- 327–328: *illīs rēgis fautōribus*: dative of agent with *ēnīsum est*, a *verbum curandī* that takes the clause *nē tāle dēcrētum fieret* (see note to line 79 above).
- 330: *grātiā*: as often, “influence.”
- 336–337: *accēdat*: jussive: a reported command; *ubi*: “when”; *accēpit*: “heard”; *audīverat*: indicative even though it is in *ōrātiō oblīqua* because it represents a fact outside of the indirect speech.
- 341–342: *quod ab oppugnātiōne nōn dēsisteret*: subjunctive of reported reason (Cap. XLII).
- 344: *Cirtae*: locative; *Italicī*: i.e., the *togātī* mentioned above, Italians living in Cirta.
- 345–347: *cōfīsī*: “trusting”: begins the indirect statement (*propter magnitudinem populī Rōmānī*) *inviolātōs sēsē fore*; *dēditiōne factā*: ablative absolute; *dēfensābantur*: Sallust likes frequentative verbs (*dēfensārī* < *defendere*); see also *adventāre* (below, l.363).
- 348: *vītam pacīscatur*: i.e., surrender on the condition that his life be spared.
- 349: *fidē*: ablative of comparison with *potiōra*; see note to lines 61–62.
- 350: *sī adversārētur*: imperfect subjunctive representing a future indicative in virtual *ōrātiō oblīqua* (Cap. XLII); Adherbal was thinking “if I go against them” (*sī adversar*); *adversārī*: “to resist or oppose in what one says or thinks,” as opposed to what one does (*resistere, obsistere*).
- 359: *quī...portārētur*: relative clause of purpose.
- 362: *iisque praecipit...aggrediantur*: indirect command without *ut*.

- 365–366: *dēditum*: supine; *nisi...vēnissent* = *nisi vēnistis*; *dēcrēvēre...uti...dēcēderent*: jussive noun clause.
- 376: *bellum trahere*: see note above on line 320.
- 381: *potentiae*: dative with *infestus*.
- 383: *datā fidē publicā*: i.e., a guarantee of safe conduct; *indiciūm*: “evidence, testimony.”
- 384–385: *pecūniae acceptae*: genitive of the charge (Cap. LXVI).
- 390–391: *tametsī...erat...C. Baebium...parat*: Sallust leaves out the *tamen* that one might expect after *tametsī*; although (*tametsī*) Jugurtha was very confident, bolstered (*cōfirmātus*)...he (still) acquired (*parat*) Baebius; *cuius impudentiā...mūnītus foret*: consecutive clause (result) stemming from the *magnā mercēde* (but this is one of many Latin clauses about whose syntactical classification one could argue at length—other candidates are purpose and virtual *ōrātiō obliqua*).
- 397–401: *quamquam...intellegat*: subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua* introducing an indirect question (*quibus...ēgerit*); *sī aperiat...sitam*: reported condition: “if he tells the truth, there is hope for him.”
- 404–405: *Baebius*, as *tribūnus plēbis*, has the right of veto, against which the Senate can do nothing.
- 407: *quae ira fieri amat*: “the things which anger loves to give rise to.”
- 408: *lūdibriō*: dative of purpose “held as an object of derision.”
- 410: *exagitābat*: i.e., made them anxious; *animi augēscunt*: i.e., at again besting the Senate and the people.
- 413: *Iugurthae*: dative with *adversus* = *contrā Iugurtham*.
- 416–417: *Huic...persuādet...petat*: indirect command with *ut* omitted; *quoniam ex stirpe Masinissae sit*: subjunctive of reported reason (Cap. XLII).
- 419: *Quae postquam* = *et postquam ea* (*quae* = *et ea*).
- 420–422: *Bomilcarī...imperat...paret ac...interficiat*: indirect command with *ut* omitted; *Iugurtha* is subject of *imperat*.
- 426–427: *īnsidiās tendit*: *tendere* on analogy with stretching out nets for prey; *ex eō numerō quī ad caedam parātī erant* = *ex eō numerō*

- eōrum quī ad caedam parātī erant; paulō incōnsultius*: comparative adverb with ablative of degree of difference.
- 433: *eō*: adverb, i.e., toward Rome.
- 434–435: *urbem vēnālem et mātūrē peritūram, sī ēmptōrem invēnerit!*: future condition in *ōrātiō obliqua*.
- 445: *armōrum aliquantum*: “a considerable amount of weaponry”; neuter with partitive genitive.
- 452: *homō novus*: see introduction to this chapter and lines 61–62.
- 455: *aegrē ferēs*: *fere* with adverb: to “take” in a certain way (Cap. XXI)—also *aegerrimē tulit* in line 458; Metellus is angry because he wants sole credit for the victory; *bellum trahere*: see note on line 320 above.
- 457: *Quirītēs*: a Sabine name that the Romans used of themselves as citizens in their civic as opposed to military capacity.
- 459–463: *num...sit*: indirect question; *sī quem...mittātis*: fills out the thought of *num id mutāre melius sit*—to send another member of the nobility instead of Marius; *Hominem multārum imāginum et nūllius stipendiī*: genitives of description; *imāginēs* were the ancestral portraits of noble ancestors on which the nobility prided themselves; these were carried in funeral processions; a man of *nūllius stipendiī* is one who has never served in the army and thus has no military experience; *ēvenit ut...quaerat*: noun clause of result (consecutive noun clause) (Cap. XXXII).
- 463–466: *sciō...quī...coeperint*: descriptive relative clause (Caps. XXXIX, XLII); i.e., they don’t begin to study military science until they are already in an office that will require military leadership; Marius’s speech has been abridged.
- 471: *faciant idem māioribus*: “let them do the same thing (i.e., *contemnere*) to their ancestors.”
- 475–476: *quantō...tantō*: ablatives of degree of difference of the correlatives (Cap. XLIII); *illōrum*: their ancestors.
- 477: *Huiusce rei inopiam*: objective genitive; *huiusce rei* refers to illustrious ancestors; *meamet*: *mea* + *met* (intensive particle), i.e., as opposed to those of his ancestors.
- 481: *nova nōbilitās*: as soon as he became consul, Marius became *nōbilis*.

- 484: *fidei causā*: “in order to obtain your trust.”
- 487: *adversō corpore*: because he was facing the battle, not running away.
- 491: *composita*: polished and rhetorical; *parvī*: genitive of value (Cap. XXIX); *facere* + genitive of value and accusative of thing is a common idiom.
- 492: *illis*: dative; *artificiō*: ablative with *opus est* (Cap. XXXII).
- 494–496: *quippe quae*: see note above on lines 265–266; *doctōribus*: dative with intransitive *prōfuerant*; *nihil* is adverbial; *doctus sum* + accusative of thing learned.
- 505–507: *tūtārī* < *tūērī*: “guard, protect”: another example of Sallust’s fondness for frequentatives; *avāritiam, imperitiā atque superbiam*: i.e., not Jugurtha’s but the Roman generals’ who fought him; *locōrum sciēns*: objective genitive; the army (and leaders—*ducum*, l.508) referred to are Roman, not Numidian: Marius is recruiting soldiers.
- 514–515: *Quae sī dubia aut procul essent, tamen omnēs bonōs rei pūblicae subvenīre decēbat*: mixed condition with present contrafactual as protasis and imperfect indicative in apodosis: even were the protasis true (which it isn’t), it would still be fitting; verbs of obligation and duty, already have a potential sense and occur in the indicative in contrafactual apodoses.
- 519–520: *commeātū*: “supplies.”
- 522–523: *scribere* = *conscribere*: “enlist, enroll”; *ex classibus*: for the division of the Roman people into five classes based on wealth, see introduction to Cap. XLIV; *uti cuiusque libidō erat*: “according to each one’s eagerness” (i.e., he signed up anyone who wanted to go); *capite cēnsōs*: described at XLIV.327–329.
- 533–534: *effūsōs hostēs*: i.e., the Romans will have to split up to pursue the dispersed kings.
- 539: *antevenīre*: “anticipate.”
- 542: *armīs*: ablative of separation with *exuere*: “strip of, deprive of”; they had to divest themselves of their weapons and flee.
- 545: *levī imperiō*: ablative of description: “ruled with a light hand”; *habēbantur*: “considered” (Cap. XXVIII).

- 548: *praeter oppidō propinqua = praeter loca oppidō propinqua: alia omnia (sunt)...*
- 549–550: *eius (oppidī) potiundī...cupīdō*: objective genitive of gerundive (*potīrī* often takes the genitive in Sallust, but it can also take the ablative and the accusative, the easiest explanation here).
- 550–551: *cum...tum = et...et.*
- 556–557: *uti...ēgrederentur parātōs esse iubet*: noun clause giving the content of *parātōs*.
- 560–561: *intervallō*: ablative of degree of difference with *nōn amplius*; *quam occultissimimē potest*: *quam* + superlative (Cap. XXVII).
- 568–569: *ad hoc...potestāte*: last item in the list of subjects of *coēgēre*.
- 572–573: The abridgment of the narrative causes a slightly jarring transition here. In the full narrative Sallust explains that the treatment of Capsa, although it was *contrā iūs bellī*, was a military necessity because of its strategic location and the inhabitants' character.
- 579: *tantī virī rēs admonuit*: *admonēre* can mean “recalls to mind” + accusative, or, as here, genitive; *nōs*: Sallust inserts himself into the narrative.
- 585: *altitūdō*: “height” or, as here, “depth, extent”; *ad simulanda negōtia*: “for feigning things are other than they are.”
- 591–592: *simul et*: “and at the same time” (above 249); *Bocchum*: see lines 449–451.
- 593: *addūceret*: imperative in indirect statement.
- 596–597: *sī...compositum foret = compositum esset*: pluperfect subjunctive representing a future perfect indicative in a conditional protasis in *ōrātiō obliqua* in secondary sequence (apodosis to be understood from *pollicētur Numidiae partem tertiam*); *bellum compōnere*: “bring a war to an end.”
- 600–601: *vix decimā parte diēi relictā*: the day was divided into twelve parts, the length of which varied with the time of year (and thus position of the sun).
- 604: *capientēs*: subject of *dēfensābant*; *aliōs*: object.
- 606: *tegere*, sc. *mīlitēs*.

- 613: *locī difficultātis*: in a section that has been omitted, Marius has led the army up a steep slope.
- 620: *dē imprōvīsō*: adverbial, “unexpectedly.”
- 629–630: *hibernācula*, *-ōrum*: “tents for winter quarters,” “winter quarters”; *expeditus*, *-ī* < *expedire*: i.e., a lightly armed (unimpeded) soldier who can therefore move quickly; *loca sōla*: “deserted places.”
- 631: *obsessum*: supine; *turrim* < *turris*, *-is* (f.) (Cap. XXXVII) one of the few pure *i*-stem nouns (Cap. XVI).
- 635: *sī placeat*: i.e., *Mariō*.
- 638: *cognōscit*: “makes himself familiar with.”
- 639: *indūtiae*, *-ārum*: “truce, cessation of hostilities.”
- 640–641: *lēgātis*: with *petentibus*.
- 644: *memor* + genitive (Cap. XXXVIII).
- 645: *facere grātiā*: “grant dispensation,” “overlook an offense.”
- 646: *meruerit*: future perfect.
- 649: *funditor*: a soldier who fights with a sling, “a slinger.”
- 650: *in campīs patentibus*: “on the open plains.”
- 653: *praesidiō*: dative of purpose.
- 654: *eum* (*diem*).
- 658–659: *totiēs fūsum*: with *Numidam*.
- 661: *castra mētābatur*: “was pitching camp”; *cum...nūntiant*: *cum inversum* (Cap. XXVII).
- 662–663: *duum mīlium intervāllō*: see note on lines 560–561.
- 671: *dēligeret*: reported command.
- 675: *id omittō*: *id* = *bellum facere*; *omittere*: “stop, cease.”
- 681–682: *in grātiā habēre*: “to feel grateful.”
- 685: *rētulisse*: see grammar section above on *rēferre*.
- 686–688: *cōpiā Iugurthae*: access to Jugurtha; *Quem sī...trādidisset... adventūram*: future condition in *ōratiō oblīqua*.
- 691–692: *cuius*: objective genitive with *avidissimus*.

- 695–697: *posse...pōnī*: indirect statement within an indirect statement, dependent on *cognitum (esse)*; *pōnī* = *compōnī*; for *bellum compōnere*, see note on lines 596–597 above; *exquīreret*: indirect imperative (so too *daret* at line 701).
- 700–702: *parum*: “too little”; *operam dare*: see Cap. XLIX, idioms; *ūnā*: adverb, “together”; *venīrētur*: impersonal passive, with *ab omnibus*.
- 707: *ex illius sententiā*: “in accordance with Sulla’s demand.”
- 712: *prōcēdit*: subject is Bocchus; *facillimum vīsū*: supine in ablative of respect (Cap. XXXIX); *insidiantibus (Rōmānīs)*.
- 723: *magnā glōriā*: ablative of manner (Cap. XXV).

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

adulēscētia , -ae	youth
concupīna , -ae	concubine
ignāvia , -ae	idleness, cowardice
imperītia , -ae	inexperience, ignorance
impudentia , -ae	shamelessness
inertia , -ae	idleness, sloth
pēnūria , -ae	scarcity, want
phalerae , -ārum (<i>pl.</i>)	military decoration
sapientia , -ae	wisdom
sarcina , -ae	pack, kit
socordia , -ae	sluggishness, indolence

2nd

ācta , -ōrum (<i>n. pl.</i>)	deeds, actions
administer , -trī	assistant, helper
artificium , -ī	skill, art, cunning
flāgitium , -ī	disgrace
hibernācula , -ōrum (<i>n. pl.</i>)	winter camp/quarters
inceptum , -ī	undertaking, enterprise
indiciū , -ī	information, disclosure

iūsta, -ōrum (<i>n. pl.</i>)	due ceremonies, funeral rites
latrōcinium, -ī	robbery
necessārius, -ī	relative, friend
quīnquennium, -ī	five years
rēgulus, -ī	petty king, prince
reus, -ī	defendant, accused
suffīxum, -ī	suffix
vexillum, -ī	standard, ensign

3rd

adoptātiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	adoption
altitūdo, -inis (<i>f.</i>)	height, depth
asperitās, -ātis (<i>f.</i>)	roughness, ruggedness
cicātrīx, -īcis (<i>f.</i>)	scar
clāritūdo, -inis (<i>f.</i>)	fame, renown
commūtātiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	change
cōnsultor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	adviser, counselor
difficultās, -ātis (<i>f.</i>)	difficulty
dīvīsiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	division
ēemptor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	buyer
funditor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	slinger
īnsidiātor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	waylayer, one who lies in ambush
largītiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	largesse, bribery
largītor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	one who gives generously
negōtiātor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	trader, agent
pollicitātiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	promise
speculātor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	scout, spy

4th

ēgressus, -ūs	going out
sonitus, -ūs	noise, sound

VERBA**-āre**

(adoptō) adoptāre	adopt
(adventō) adventāre	approach
(arrogō) arrogāre	claim as one's own; claim for someone else

(cōfirmō) cōfirmāre	assure, encourage
(dēprāvō) dēprāvāre	pervert, distort
(disceptō) disceptāre	decide, debate, discuss
(dīvulgō) dīvulgāre	make public, divulge
(equitō) equitāre	ride on horseback
(haesitō) haesitāre	hesitate, be uncertain
(iaculor) iaculārī	throw (the javelin)
(impugnō) impugnāre	attack, oppose
(negitō) negitāre	deny repeatedly
(obiectō) obiectāre	throw before or against; expose, abandon
(observō) observāre	observe, respect
(obtestor) obtestārī	beseech, implore
(occursō) occursāre	run to meet
(patrō) patrāre	achieve, carry through
(pollicitor) pollicitārī	promise
(scrūtor) scrūtārī	examine, search
(sustentō) sustentāre	sustain, maintain, endure
(tūtor) tūtārī	protect
-ēre	
(permaneō) permanēre (< manēre)	remain, continue
-ere	
(accersō) accersere, -īvisse, -ītum	send for, fetch
(acquīrō) acquīrere, -īvisse, -ītum	acquire, procure
(adnītor) adnītī, -īsum	exert oneself, strive
(antecapiō) antecapere (< capere)	anticipate
(anteferō) anteferre (< ferre)	prefer
(appetō) appetere (< petere)	try to reach, seek, desire
(atterō) atterere (< terere)	wear (down), weaken
(augēscō) augēscere	begin to grow, increase
(dēfēndō) dēfendere, -isse, -ēsum	defend, maintain

(dērelinquō) dērelinquere (< relinquere)	leave behind
(dīlābor) dīlābī (< lābī)	fall apart, perish
(ēnītor) ēnītī, ēnīsum	strive, exert oneself
(extollō) extollere (< tollere)	raise, praise, extol
(exuō) exuere, -uisse, -ūtum	take off, deprive of
(illicō) illicere, -ēxisse, -ectum	entice, attract
(īnsuēscō) īnsuēscere, -ēvisse, -ētum	become accustomed
(intendō) intendere, -disse, -tum	strain, direct, strive
(pacīscor) pacīscī, pactum	contract/stipulate for
(pertimēscō) pertimēscere, -muisse (< timēre)	be frightened (of)
rēfert (meā) rēferre	it is important (for me)
(strepō) strepere, -uisse	make a noise
(tābēscō) tābēscere, -uisse	waste away, decay
-īre	
(anteveniō) antevenīre (< venīre)	forestall, anticipate
(mōliōr) mōlīrī, mōlītum	labor, strive
(obveniō) obvenīre (< venīre)	meet, fall to the lot of
(subveniō) subvenīre (< venīre)	come to help (+ <i>dat.</i>)
irregular	
(queō) quīre, quīvisse, quitum	be able to

ADIECTĪVA

1st/2nd

abditus, -a, -um	hidden, remote
adulterīnus, -a, -um	forged, false
avidus, -a, -um	greedy, eager (+ <i>gen.</i>)
contumēliōsus, -a, -um	insulting, outrageous
decōrus, -a, -um	becoming, fitting
dēfessus, -a, -um	worn out, tired
factiōsus, -a, -um	factious, scheming
fācundus, -a, -um	eloquent
flāgitiōsus, -a, -um	disgraceful
frētus, -a, -um	relying on, confident of (+ <i>abl.</i>)

imbēcillus, -a, -um	weak
incōnsultus, -a, -um	thoughtless, rash
incultus, -a, -um	uncultivated, untilled
opportūnus, -a, -um	convenient, exposed (to)
permagnus, -a, -um	very large
portuōsus, -a, -um	having many harbors
praedātōrius, -a, -um	plundering
sēmisorpnus, -a, -um	half-asleep
tumulōsus, -a, -um	hilly

3rd

familiāris, -e	intimate (as noun: close friend)
mediocris, -e	moderate, ordinary
pollēns (<i>gen. pollentis</i>)	strong, powerful
sciēns (<i>gen. scientis</i>)	having knowledge of (+ <i>gen.</i>)
vehemēns (<i>gen. vehementis</i>)	violent, vigorous
vēnālis, -e	for sale

ADVERBIA

abundē	amply, more than needed
accūrātē	carefully
dē/ex imprōvisō	unexpectedly, suddenly
dehinc	next, then
īlicō	at once
in prōmptū	visible, manifest, easy
mātūrē	quickly, early
necessāriō	necessarily, unavoidably
ōcissimē	most quickly
partim	in part, partly
quippe	inasmuch as, for
sēcrētō	in private

CONIUNCTIŌNĒS

tametsī	although, notwithstanding
----------------	---------------------------

LIII: CAPITVLVM QVINQVAGESIMVM TERTIVM: MARIVS ET SVLLA¹

[*Ex Eutropiū Breviāriō ab urbe conditā, V et VI*]

I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION

This chapter contains the part of Eutropius's history which deals with the years 105–67 BC. In this period Rome continued to expand its power in the East, while at home it was weakened by internal dissension that finally ended in a bloody civil war. The great generals Marius, Sulla, and Pompey (*Pompēius*) saved Rome from external enemies. In the years 102 and 101 Marius checked and defeated the advancing Germanic tribes of the *Cimbri* and *Teutones*. In 90 a number of Italic peoples, who had been allies of Rome, started a revolt in order to obtain Roman citizenship; in this "Social War" (*bellum sociāle*, from *socius*, "ally") Sulla distinguished himself. He was therefore chosen by the senate to command the Roman army that was sent to fight Rome's new enemy, king *Mithridātēs* of *Pontus*, who had subjugated most of Asia Minor and Greece. However, the Roman people wanted Marius to be sent against Mithradates, so Sulla had first to march on Rome to oust Marius and his supporters. Then he crossed to Greece, where he defeated Mithridates in several battles; but before he had won the final victory, he made peace with Mithridates and returned with his army to Rome. The popular party had seized power during his absence, but Sulla crushed his opponents and took cruel revenge on them.

In this civil war young Pompey fought on Sulla's side and won such spectacular victories in Sicily and Africa that Sulla granted him a triumph in spite of his young age. In 76 BC Pompey went to Spain, where he helped to crush the rebellion of *Sertōrius*, a supporter of Marius who had offered strong resistance for several years. Returning from Spain in 71 BC Pompey conducted mopping-up operations after the Servile War (*Bellum servile*) against *Spartacus*, the glad-

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

iator who had incited a large number of slaves to open warfare against their Roman masters.

In the meantime Mithridates had started a new war against Rome by occupying Bithynia, whose late king had bequeathed his kingdom to the Romans. The Roman general *Lūcullus* drove Mithridates out of Bithynia and even invaded his own kingdom of Pontus, so that he had to seek refuge with king *Tigrānēs* of *Armenia*, his son-in-law. Lucullus marched into Armenia and defeated Tigranes, but a mutiny among the troops he had left in Pontus prevented him from following up his victories. Mithridates launched a new offensive and regained Pontus. Lucullus was then recalled and superseded by *M'. Acilius Glabriō* in 67 BC.

In the same year Pompey was given the command of the war against the well-organized pirates who, in collusion with king Mithridates, made the whole Mediterranean unsafe and even threatened Rome's supply lines. Within a few months Pompey succeeded in ridding the seas of pirates.

In 66 BC, while Pompey was in *Cilicia* on the south coast of Asia Minor with his army, the tribune of the people, *C. Mānilius*, proposed a law (*Lēx Mānilia*) giving Pompey supreme command of the war against Mithridates. Among the speakers who pleaded for the law in the popular assembly were *C. Iūlius Caesar* and *M. Tullius Cicerō*.

This is the time when Cicero began to assert himself in Roman politics. The chapter ends with an extract from Cicero's work *Brūtus* or *dē clārīs ōrātōribus*, in which he tells us about his training as an orator, his relations with other famous orators of the time, and his election as praetor for 66 BC—the year he made his great speech for Pompey—and as consul for the year 63 BC.

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Bellum Cimbricum: 1–28

- 7–9: *Timor...nē...veniret*: fear clause (Cap. XLVIII).
 11: *eī...dēcrētum*: allotted to him by decree.
 13: *prōtrahēbatur*: imperfect of repeated action.
 26: *ex hīs*: sc. *signīs*.

Bellum sociāle: 29–48

- 32: *cessārent*: syncopated perfect.
 37: *occīsus est*: repeat with all three subjects.
 43: *Sulla*: Cap. LII.

Bellum Mithridaticum primum: 49–104

- 52: *bellō cīvīlī*: dative.
- 53–59: Structure: *cum Sulla...mitterētur...isque...tenēret, ut...tolle-
rentur, Marius affectāvit ut...mitterētur*; *affectāre*: “aim at,”
“strive to.”
- 69: *eī*: *populō Rōmānō*.
- 70–71: *sī...faceret...et ipse paterētur*: condition in indirect discourse
but apodosis attracted into the subjunctive; see marginal note
in text.
- 96: *dē pāce agī*: passive of *agere dē* + ablative: “negotiate about.”

Bellum cīvīle: 105–152

- 110: *prōscripsērunt*: people who were proscribed were not only
exiled (*exsulem*, margins) but also forfeited their property.
- 115: *trāiēcīt < trāicere* (Cap. XLVIII); *gestūrus*: future participle of
purpose or intention (Cap. XLII).
- 127: *Praeneste*: accusative of place to which (Cap. XL).
- 132: *īnsatiābilī irā*: ablative of cause (Cap. XXXVII).
- 143: *īngentī glōriā*: ablative of manner (Cap. XXV).
- 144: *quod*: “a thing which.”
- 150: [*bella*] *cōnsūmpsērunt*.

Sertorius: 153–187

- 161: *quī Iugurtham rēgem vīcit*: Cap. LII.
- 164: *impār pugnae*: “unequal to the fight.”
- 181: *īn diciōnem redēgit*: “he brought (the Isauri) back (*redigere*)
under (Roman) dominion (*diciō*).”

Bellum Mithridaticum tertium: 188–275

- 195: *ab eō aciē*: “by him (Mithradates) in a battle.”
- 204: *mīlia*: sc. *mīlitum*.
- 216: *Italiae*: dative with *calamitatēs*; *bellō*: dative with compound
verb.
- 223: *nāvālem*: sc. *pugnam*; *eius*: i.e., Mithradates’s.

- 226: *invāsīt* (sc. *et*) *cēpit*: asyndeton (lack of connectives) adds to the sense of Lucullus's rapidity.
- 232: *eīdem*: dative of separation or disadvantage (Cap. XXXVIII); *susceptus*: "received," "given shelter to."
- 233–235: *quī...imperābat, vīcerat, ...occupāverat*: another list in asyndeton.
- 238–240: *rēgem...venientem*.
- 246–247: *occāsionem...irrumpendī*.
- 248: *Lūcullō parantī*: dative with *successor est missus*.
- 251: *Bessīs*: dative with *intulit*.
- 258–259: *māiōre glōriā*: ablative of manner; *tantōrum rēgnōrum*: objective genitive; *cum...redisset*: *cum* causal.
- 273: *ēgregius*: predicate.

***M. Tullius Cicerō [Ex M. Tullii Cicerōnis 'Brūtō' sive 'Dē clārīs ōrātōribus']*: 276–412**

- 286: *iūre cīvīlī instituerētur*: *instituere* ("form the mind," "instruct") + ablative; *iūs cīvīle*: "civil law."
- 288: *audiēbat*: often used of listening to the lectures (or as here, speeches) as a student.
- 295–296: *genere ferventī ac vehementī*: ablative with *ūterētur*; a vigorous (*vehmens*) and passionate (*fervens*)—and physically taxing—oratorical style (*genus*).
- 297: *aliquamdiū*: "for some time" (Cap. XLVII).
- 309: *meditātiō*: a synonym for *cōgitātiō*, as the marginal note says, but also, and more to the point here: "practice," "exercise"; cf. *exercitātiōnibus* in l.309.
- 312–315: *vel quod...vel quod*: *quod* causal, *vel* gives not mutually exclusive alternatives and is almost *et...et*; *cōnsuētūdinem*: + objective genitive *dīcendī*; *nisi...docērī*: contrafactual condition.
- 318–319: *quantum nōs efficere potuissēmus*: "to the (greatest) extent that we (i.e., "I") had been able to accomplish"; subjunctive by attraction because it is an integral part of the thought in the purpose clause to which it is subordinated.
- 322–323: *tantum...ut...esset*: result clause; *commendātiōnis* is partitive genitive with neuter pronoun *tantum* (Cap. XLIV); *ūlla...*

- quae...vidērētur*: generic relative clause after negative antecedent (Cap. XXXIX).
- 333–334: *laterum magna contentiō*: great straining of the lungs; *latera* are the flanks of the upper body, also used to refer to the power of the lungs in oratory; *eō magis...quod*: “all the more because.”
- 337–338: *potius...quam*: rather than; *quodvīs*: Cap. LI; *addeundum...discēdendum*: sc. *esse* with both.
- 341–342: *ut*: substantive noun clause with *ea causa*, i.e., *ea causa ut* (Cap. XXXVII); *proficiscendī*: gerund with *causa*.
- 348: *veteris Acadēmīae*: the “old” Academy refers to Plato’s philosophical school in the grove of Academus; in Cicero’s time there was a school of Platonic philosophy called the “new” Academy.
- 349–351: *fui*: Cicero’s use of the perfect here shows he is thinking of this time as an episode in his past rather than the extent of time (six months) that he spent with Antiochus. *studium...renovāvī*: the thought between the object (*studium*) and the verb (*renovāvī*) is expanded by *cultum*, *auctum*, both of which refer to *studium*; *hōc...doctōre*: ablative absolute.
- 355–356: *post* = *postea*; *studeō* + dative: devote (oneself) to; *ipsis libentibus*: a nod both to their graciousness and his own talent.
- 358–359: *assiduissimē*: constantly.
- 361: *prīncipēs*: predicate (“were counted as the most distinguished”).
- 363–364: *cum...tum*: *et...et*; *in vērīs causīs*: i.e., ones that he actually delivered; *scriptōrem*: implies not just for his own cases but as a writer for others.
- 366–367: *sī modo*: “if only” limits the statement; Molon applied himself to subdue, “if he could,” Cicero’s overly exuberant style.
- 368: *iuvenīlī quādam*: take with both nouns *impūnitāte et licentiā*; *dīcendī*: also with both nouns.
- 372: *dēferverat*: “had stopped boiling,” “had calmed down,” cf. l.295 (*genere ferventī*).
- 372–373: *vīrēs*: take also with *accesserat*; *mediocris habitus*: a normal appearance (i.e., Cicero’s body was no longer too thin but in the middle between extremes).
- 374–375: *mē*: object of *incitārent*.

- 377–378: *rēs est mihi cum aliquō*: “I am concerned with”: i.e., Cicero saw Hortensius as his principal rival.
- 380: *ūnum...annum*: accusative of extent of time: “during that one year.”
- 383: *Siciliēnsis annus*: “a year in Sicily.”
- 384: *prīnceps*: i.e., *prīnceps orātōr*.
- 386–387: *quidquid esset*: with *illud*, a gesture of modesty in regard to his talent; subordinate clause in indirect discourse.
- 389: *nimis multa videor dē mē* (sc. *loquī* or *dīcere*): “I seem to be talking much too much about myself”; *ipse praesertim* (sc. *cum loquar*): “especially (since) I myself (am doing the talking).”
- 394: *patrōciniō*: acting as a legal advocate; *Siciliēnsī*: just as the *annus Siciliēnsis* (the Sicilian year) means “a year in Sicily,” in *patrōciniō Siciliēnsī*: in legal advocacy for the Sicilians.
- 398: *nostrum illud quod erat*: sc. *ingenium orātōrium* as at l.385 (*illud, quidquid esset*); *quod erat* and *quantumcumque erat*: both to soften what could be construed as Cicero vaunting his talent when his point is to underscore the work necessary to succeed at oratory (ll.91–92).
- 399–400: *ut...omittam*: “leaving a lot unsaid” (Cap. LXIX notes 15–18).
- 402: *nam*: explains the *incrēdibilī populī voluntāte* in l.401; *exquīsītius*: “extremely attentive to detail,” with *genus*; *novitāte*: ablative of means.

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

cēnsūra , -ae (f.)	ensorship
doctrīna , -ae (f.)	teaching instruction
ēloquentia , -ae (f.)	eloquence
figūra , -ae (f.)	form, appearance
praetūra , -ae (f.)	praetorship
quaestūra , -ae (f.)	quaestorship

2nd

aedilicius, -ī (m.)	exaedile
biennium, ī (n.)	two years
clībanārius, -ī (m.)	cuirassier; heavily armored soldier
patrōcinium, -ī (n.)	protection, defense
patrōnus, -ī (m.)	patron, leader, advocate
prōpositum, -ī (n.)	objective, point
sagittārius, -ī (m.)	archer, Bowman

3rd

āctor, -ōris (m.)	pleader, advocate
assiduitās, -ātis (f.)	perseverance
celeritās, -ātis (f.)	speed, swiftness
commendātiō, -ōnis (f.)	recommendation, praise
contentiō, -ōnis (f.)	tension, exertion
exercitātiō, -ōnis (f.)	exercise, practice
gracilitās, -ātis (f.)	slenderness, thinness
impūnitās, -ātis (f.)	impunity, license
īfirmitās, -ātis (f.)	weakness
interniciō, -ōnis (f.)	annihilation, massacre
mātūritās, -ātis (f.)	ripeness, maturity
meditātiō, -ōnis (f.)	reflection, practicing
moderātiō, -ōnis (f.)	moderation, restraint
remissiō, -ōnis (f.)	relaxation
rhētor, -oris (m.)	teacher of rhetoric
varietās, -ātis (f.)	variety, diversity

4th

successus, -ūs	success
-----------------------	---------

VERBA**-āre**

(abundō) abundāre	overflow, be rich (in) (+ <i>abl.</i>)
(applicō) applicāre	attach
(commentor) commentārī	think about, practice
(commoror) commorārī	stay, linger
(commūtō) commūtāre	change (completely)

(congregō) congregāre	bring together, gather
(dēclāmitō) dēclāmitāre	make practice speeches
(ēlabōrō) ēlabōrāre	work out, prepare
(ēlūcubrō) ēlūcubrāre	prepare by lamplight
(exercitō) exercitāre	train, exercise
(moderor) moderārī	temper, moderate
(redundō) redundāre	overflow, be exuberant
(reportō) reportāre	carry back, bring home
(suppeditō) suppeditāre	supply
-ēre	
(asserō) asserere, -uisse, -rtum	claim
(dēfervēscō) dēfervēscere	calm down
(diffluō) diffluere	overflow
(ēvertō) ēvertere	overturn, overthrow
(excellō) excellere	be outstanding, excel
(perspicō) perspicere	survey, recognize
(prōscribō) prōscribere	proscribe, outlaw
(reprimō) reprimere, repressisse, -essum	check, repress, restrain
(resīdō) resīdere, -sēdisse	sink back, subside
-īre	
(oboediō) oboedire	obey (+ <i>dat.</i>)

ADIECTĪVA

1st/2nd

celebrātus, -a, -um	crowded, celebrated, famous
commōtus, -a, -um	nervous, unsettled, emotionally moved
disertus, -a, -um	eloquent
exercitātus, -a, -um	practiced, proficient
exquīsitus, -a, -um	attentive to every detail, meticulous
īnfinītus, -a, -um	unlimited, infinite
numerōsus, -a, -um	numerous, many
ōrnātus, -a, -um	embellished, distinguished
perfectus, -a, -um	perfect
pīrāticus, -a, -um	of pirates

prōcērus, -a, -um

tall, long

quantuscumque, -a, -um

however great/much

sescentēsimus, -a, -um

six hundredth

3rd**fervēns** (*gen. -entis*)

hot, boiling, ardent

īnsatiābilis, -e

insatiable

iuvenīlis, -e

youthful

lēnis, -e

gentle, mild

locuplēs (*gen. -ētis*)

rich, wealth

sociālis, -e

of allies, social

vulgāris, -e

common, everyday

ADVERBIA**praesertim**

especially

NUMERĪ**quīntō**

for the fifth time

LIV: QVINQVAGESIMVM QVARTVM: CN. POMPEIVS MAGNVS (Cicero)¹

[Ex M. Tullii Cicerōnis orātiōne dē imperiō Cn. Pompēiī]

I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION

This chapter contains the main part of Cicero's speech *dē imperiō Cn. Pompēiī* (or *prō lēge Māniliā*), the speech that Cicero delivered in support of the law that gave Pompey the command of the Roman army in the war against king Mithridates.

Cicero's short introduction, here omitted, aims to win over his audience, thus making them more receptive to what he has to say. Cicero proceeds to his argument, telling his audience exactly how he will proceed: the character of the war, the magnitude, and the appropriate general (*dē genere bellī...de magnitūdine...dē imperātōre dēligendō*, 17–19). The first section gives a survey of the military situation in the East after the recall of Lucullus. His argument points to the following ways that Rome's vital interests are at stake in the war:

1. The honor of the Roman people is involved, for Mithridates' murderous assault on Roman citizens must not remain unavenged.
2. Rome's Eastern allies, who are overrun or threatened to be overrun by the enemy, are eagerly hoping for Roman help.
3. The war has had serious consequences for the revenues of the Roman State, since it makes it impossible to levy taxes (*vectīgālia*) in the richest of all the provinces of the Empire.
4. A large number of Roman citizens are threatened with economic ruin. Especially threatened are members of the equestrian order (*ōrdō equester*) including the *pūblicānī*, the provincial tax collectors.

In the following section (*dē magnitūdine bellī*), Cicero deals with the war situation in greater detail. He describes Lucullus' successful campaign and Mithridates'

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

headlong flight. In carefully chosen words, he alludes to the soldiers' failing discipline, which has provoked the new enemy offensive, and the defeat of the Roman army.

After evoking the seriousness of the situation, Cicero turns to the real issue: the appointment of a new commander in the war against Mithridates. He mentions the necessary qualifications of a great general and shows that Pompey possesses them all. This leads to an unreserved eulogy of Pompey's brilliant achievements in all the wars he has fought, especially in the recent war against the pirates. Cicero concludes that Pompey is the only one who can win the war, especially since he happens to be stationed with a strong army near the theater of war.

There is no doubt that Cicero's admiration for Pompey's military ability was genuine. And indeed Pompey proved to be the right man for the task. The Lex Manilia was passed, giving Pompey supreme command in the East; he defeated both Mithridates and Tigranes and extended Roman rule over vast new territories.

The Cicero text is followed by extracts from the extant summaries of books 100–102 of Livy. The subject is Pompey's great victories in the East, ending with the conquest of Jerusalem (*Hierosolyma*) in 63 BC. In the same year, Cicero, as consul, disclosed the conspiracy that Catiline (*Catilina*) had organized in order to seize power in Rome. Catiline was forced to leave Rome, the leaders of the conspiracy were caught and executed, and the next year Catiline himself was killed in battle.

Finally, there is an extract from Eutropius about Caesar's wars of conquest in Gaul (which he has described himself in his *Commentārii dē bellō Gallicō*) about Crassus's unsuccessful campaign against the Parthians (*Parthi*) and about the civil war between Caesar and Pompey. This civil war ended with Pompey's defeat in the battle of *Pharsālus* (48 BC) and his flight to Egypt, where he was killed.

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Quirītēs! 1–19

- 3: *Quirītēs*: Cicero's speech is not to the senate but to the people of Rome from the rostra in the forum.
- 4: *alter relictus, alter lacessitus*: the rest of the sentence applies to each subject (i.e., *alter relictus...arbitrātur, alter lacessitus arbitrātur*).
- 6: *Equitibus Rōmānīs*: dative; the knights were heavily invested in the collection of taxes in the East and thus in danger of personal

financial losses (in addition to the losses to the Roman treasury); *honestissimīs*: from the meaning of “morally probative” acquires the additional sense of “respectable.”

- 7–15: all in *ōrātiō obliqua*, giving the reported contents of the letter; *vestrīs vectīgālibus*: dative with *finitimum*: i.e., “your revenues,” meaning “the places from which you collect revenues”; *successerit*: perfect subjunctive in a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*; *parātum esse*: refers to Glabrio, accusative in indirect statement.
- 16: *Causa quae sit vidētis*: you might expect *causam* (the object of *vidētis*) but here, as very commonly, the antecedent (*causa*) is attracted into the case of the pronoun (*quae*) that introduces the indirect question (*Quae sit causa?*).

Dē genere bellī: 20–178

- 21–23: *eius bellī quod...dēbeat*: descriptive relative clause (Cap. XXXIX).
- 23–31: *agere*, as you have already seen, has a wide range of meanings. *Agere* in the passive marks what is “at stake” or “in question”: *in quō agitur populī Rōmānī glōria...agitur salūs sociōrum...aguntur certissima populī Rōmānī vectīgālia...aguntur bona multōrum cīvium...* The repetition of the same word at the beginning of a series of clauses is called *anaphora*, a frequent and effective rhetorical device; *cōsulere* + dative: meaning, “consult the interests of,” “take care of.”
- 32: *glōriae, laudis*: objective genitives with *appetentēs, avidī*.
- 36–38: *quī...cūrāvit*: In 88 BC over 80,000 civilians (Roman citizens and Italian settlers) were killed at Mithradates’s behest.
- 40–41: *sed ab illō tempore annum iam tertium et vīcēsimum rēgnat*: *iam* is used with the accusative of duration of time (Cap. XIII) to show how long something has been going on (present, as here) or had been going on (imperfect).
- 45–46: *ita...ut*: result (so too in lines 49–50).
- 46: *insignia victōriae (insigne, -is, n.)*: i.e., Sulla and Murena brought back the trappings of victory, but Mithrades was still in power, as the next sentence makes clear.

- 50–52: *laus est tribuenda [ob id] quod ēgērunt, venia [est] danda [ob id] quod reliquērunt.*
- 56–64: See “Reading Long Sentences” in the introduction to this book in which this complex period is made easier by separating out the subordinate clauses. Here is a rewritten simplification of the sentence:
- Mithradātēs māximās classēs aedificāvit ōrnāvitque; exercitūsque permagnōs quibuscumque ex gentibus poterat comparāvit; simulavit sē Bosporānīs finitimīs suis bellum inferre. Deinde (i.e., postea) usque in Hispaniam lēgātōs ac litterās mīsīt ad eōs ducēs quibuscumque bellum gerēbāmus. [Hoc fēcīt] ut, cum duobus in locīs disiūctissimīs māximēque dīversīs ūnō cōsiliō ā bīnīs hostium cōpiīs bellum terrā marique gererētur, vōs ancipitī contentiōne districtī dē imperiō dīmicārētis.*
- 56–58: *rem cōnferre ad/in aliquid = rē ūtī; quibuscumque...potuisset:* “from whatever peoples he had been able.”
- 60: *quibuscum = cum quibus.*
- 65–66: *Sertōriānae atque Hispaniēnsis:* genitives referring to *partis*.
- 69: *rēs gestae:* “accomplishments.”
- 70–72: *fēlicitātī, virtūtī, culpaē, fortūnae:* datives with *tribuenda esse*.
- 74: *eī:* dative of disadvantage; *falsa:* also with *laus*.
- 76–77: *vidēte quem vōbīs animum suscipiendum putētis:* literally: “consider (*vidēre*) what disposition (*animum*) you think must be adopted by you”; *quem...putētis:* indirect question.
- 81: *quō...animō:* ablative of description.
- 82–83: *Corinthum patrēs vestrī, tōtīus Graeciae lūmen, exstīnctum esse voluērunt = patrēs vestrī voluērunt Corinthum, tōtīus Graeciae lūmen, exstīnctum esse.*
- 86: *Illī = patrēs vestrī* (also line 88).
- 90–93: *Vidēte nē = cavēte nē:* Cf. line 27; *pulcherrimum fuit:* subject is the clause *tantam...trādere*; so too *id...posse* is the subject of *turpissimum sit*.
- 94: *Quid?:* Cicero is very fond of an emphatic *quid* beginning a sentence. Here *quid quod* might be translated as “what about the

- fact that,” but sometimes the emphatic *quid* means something like “how” or “why,” and sometimes it is almost untranslatable.
- 97: *tōtī Asiae*: dative with *imminent*.
- 101–104: *dēposcere*: with *audent*; *id*: refers to *dēposcere*; *cum praesertim vōs alium* [i.e., *M. Acīlium Glabriōnem*] *miseritis*: *cum* causal.
- 105: *in quō summa sint omnia*: “on whom depends everything of critical importance” (lit., “all the most important things”).
- 107: *tametsī*: “although”; *vēnerit*: subordinate clause in indirect statement.
- 111–112: *dignōs...quōrum...commendētis*: descriptive relative clause (Cap. XLII).
- 113–115: *hōc* = “for this reason”; *eius modī hominēs...mittimus ut*: result clause from *eius modī* (“men of the sort that the result is...”).
- 117: *hunc*: i.e., Pompey (the *talīs vir* of line 112); *audiēbant*: “kept hearing about.”
- 124: *ūnā cum*: “along with.”
- 126–128: *cum dē māximīs vestrīs vectigālībus agātur*: impersonal *agī* + *dē*; cf. LIII.96, *iussit cum Sullā dē pāce agī*; *tanta*: i.e., so small (in comparison with Asia); *iīs...contentī*: satisfied with + ablative, i.e., the revenues are so small it’s almost not worth keeping the other provinces safe from incursion.
- 132: *omnibus terrīs*: dative with *antecellat*.
- 133: *bellī ūtilitātem*: “what is useful for war.”
- 136: *dētrīmentum accipitur*: “a loss is suffered.”
- 139: *pecua* < *pecū*; one of several words for “farm animals.”
- 141–142: *decuma* = *decima*, from *decimus*, -a, -um (i.e., a tenth part of the profits); as the marginalia in the text tell you, it equals *decima pars frūgum*, a tithe which forms the landowners’ tax in the provinces; *scriptūra*, -ae: a tax paid on public pastures (see marginalia: *mercēs prō pāstīōne in agrō pūblicō*).
- 145: *vectigālīa pēnsitant*: “pay taxes.”
- 149: *salīnae*, -ārum (f. pl.): “salt-works.”
- 149–150: *sē habēre*: “be in a certain condition or state” (e.g., *magnō periculō*).

- 152: *quī vōbīs fructuī sunt*: double dative: dative of tendency (*fructuī*) and dative of reference (*vōbīs*); see Cap. XXXVI.
- 153–154: *eōs...calamitatē...formīdine liberātōs*: ablative of separation with *liberāre*.
- 155–159: Reading help: main clause: *Ac nē illud quidem vōbīs neglegendum est* followed by explanatory relative clause (*quod...dictūrus*) and a relative clause explaining the content of *illud* (*quod...pertinet*: *bona* here means “goods” in the material sense); *quōrum...habenda est ratiō*, as explained in the margins, “make an account, calculation for”; antecedent of *quōrum* is *cīvium Rōmānōrum*.
- 160: *honestissimī*: see above on line 6 for *honestus*; *ōrnatissimī*: “adorned with all the good qualities.”
- 161–162: *quōrum ipsōrum* = the *pūblicānī*; *vōbīs cūrae esse*: another double dative (see line 152).
- 166–168: *hominēs..., quibus vōs absentibus cōsulere dēbētis*: cf. ll.29–31 above: *cōsulere* + dative meaning “consult the interests of.”
- 169: *Est...hūmānitātis vestrae...sapientiae (vestrae)*: genitives of characteristic (a form of partitive genitive): “it is part/characteristic of your sense of human dignity...wisdom.”
- 171–172: *multōrum...nōn posse*: indirect statement with *vidēre*.
- 175–178: *num dubitandum vōbīs sit*: indirect question; *ad id bellum incumbere in quō...dēfendantur*: subordinate clause in the indirect statement, but the relative pronoun (*id* refers to *bellum*) can also lead to a descriptive subjunctive clause: “the kind of war in which...”

Dē magnitūdine bellī: 179–272

- 184: *vōbīs*: dative of agent with gerundives.
- 185–206: a very long period: Cicero begins with a purpose clause (*ut omnēs intellegant*) with a dependent indirect statement (*mē L. Lūcullō...impertire laudis*) that itself contains a correlative clause of comparison (*tantum...quantum*); the main verb (*dīcō*) then ushers in a long list, in indirect statement, of what Lucullus has accomplished. The best way to approach such a long period is to read it several times: the first time, just get the structure, as outlined in the introduction (“Reading Long Sentences”). In order to do this, it’s best to look for signals:

- *atque ut...intellegant*: tells you we have a *ut* +subjunctive clause (you'll have to wait for a bit to figure out what kind); *intellegant* leads you to expect *ōrātiō obliqua*.
 - *tantum...quantum*: comparative correlative clause ("as much as") in the subjunctive because the *quantum* clause is a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*.
 - *dīcō*: now you know *atque ut* is a purpose clause ("I am telling you so that"), and you can expect another indirect statement giving the content of what Cicero wants to tell his audience.
- 192: *quam* (i.e., *urbem*)...*liberāvit*: indicative in a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua* emphasizes the fact of Lucullus's accomplishment; the indicative in l.200 (*erant*) comes in a parenthetical, explanatory clause.
- 206–207: *laudis*: partitive genitive with *satis*; *atque ita*: also with *laudis*: "such praise that."
- 216–219: i.e., *praedicant eam* (Medeam) *dissipāvisse membra frātris suī in iīs locis quā parēns persequerētur sē* (Medeam).
- 227: *diffidentem rēbus suis*: dative, "in despair about his circumstances."
- 231–233: *numquam...putāvit*: i.e., with whom the Romans had no intention of interferring.
- 235–236: *causā* + a preceding genitive of the gerund or gerundive (Cap. XXVI).
- 238: *tametsī...tamen*: "although...nevertheless."
- 239: *ūsus erat*: "had experienced" + ablative.
- 242: *fuit enim illud extrēmum ut*: the upshot was that... (see note above on lines 175–178).
- 245: *cōfirmārat* = *cōfirmāverat*.
- 247–249: *fieri solēre...ut*: consecutive noun clause; *ferē*: "for the most part; *fortūnae alliciant opēs*; *eōrum*: *multōrum*.
- 251–252: *tantum*: object of *efficere*; *tantum...quantum*.
- 254: *eō*: ablative with *contentus* and refers to the *ut...attingeret*.
- 259: *praeterire*: the *praeteritiō*, or "passing over," is a common rhetorical feature in which a speaker calls attention to something

by saying he will not talk about it. Here Cicero spares the listeners a rehearsal of the defeat while still reminding them of the danger of the enemy; cf. *praetereō* (l.268).

- 263: *aliquā ex parte*: “in some degree.”
- 264–266: *modum statuendum (esse) + dative (diūturnitātī); vetere exemplō*: “in accordance with long-standing precedent.”
- 269: *quantum...putētis*: subjunctive in an indirect question dependent on *coniectūrā perspicite*.

Dē imperātōre dēligendō: 273–536

- 274: *quārē esset*: indirect question.
- 276: *restat ut*: “it remains that” + consecutive noun clause.
- 278–280: *utinam...habērētis*: unfulfilled wish in present time (Cap. XXXIX); *cōpiam tantam...ut*: result clause; *quemnam...praeficiendum (esse) putārētis*: indirect question.
- 282–285: *ūnus*: alone; *quī...glōriam, memoriam virtūte superārit*: perfect subjunctive (*superāverit*) in a descriptive relative clause (*ūnus quī*) with an ablative of specification (*virtūte*), with the second object (*memoriam*) needing to be understood in terms of the first (*glōriam*): Pompey’s military prowess (*virtūs*) has surpassed the glory not only of his contemporaries but also (that recorded in) the historical accounts of men of the past (*memoria antīquitātis*).
- 286–288: Cicero takes up each of the four qualities in order; the section on the virtues of Pompey is by far the longest, divided itself into military valor (to line 373) and then a transition (ll.374–379) to a more encompassing definition of virtue.
- *scientia rei militāris*: ll.289–307.
 - *virtūs*: ll.308–455.
 - *auctōritās*: ll.456–492.
 - *fēlicitās*: ll.493–519.
- 289–290: *Quis igitur hōc homine scientior umquam aut fuit aut esse dēbuit?*: One of the several examples in this speech of a rhetorical question, a formal question asked to produce an effect and not to be answered. The obvious answer to the question is: *Nēmō!* But no answer is expected; the rhetorical question is

- Cicero's way of saying that there never was a more knowledgeable man than Pompey.
- 291: *bellō...hostibus*: ablatives of attendant circumstances.
- 292–293: *extrēma pueritia miles...fuit*: *extrēmus*, -a, -um can mean “end of”; *medius* (Cap. XXX), “middle of” and *primus* (e.g., *primā aestāte*, XXXVIII.3), “beginning of.”
- 294–295: *cum hoste...cum inimicō*: Cicero is drawing a distinction between an enemy of the state (*hostis*) and a personal enemy (*inimicus*).
- 301–302: *quod...genus...in quō...exercuerit*: descriptive relative clause (Cap. XXXIX).
- 305: *gesta...confecta*: “waged...brought to an end.”
- 306: *in ūsū militārī*: “in military skill” (acquired by practice).
- 309–310: *quid est quod quisquam...possit*: this rhetorical question (see 289–290) expects the negative “*nihil est quod...*” The verb of the relative clause (*quod...possit*) is in the subjunctive because it is a relative clause of tendency (see Cap. XXXIX), also sometimes called a descriptive relative clause or a relative clause of characteristic.
- 312: *vulgō*: the ablative of *vulgus* is equivalent to an adverb, “commonly.”
- 316ff: *testis*: anaphora of the same word “witness” seven times in rapid succession at the beginning of a series of clauses (ll.316, 318, 320, 321, 323, 325, 329), the seventh an encompassing plural (*testēs*).
- 319–320: *multīs periculīs*: ablative of separation with *explicāvit*; *terrōre*, *celeritatē*: ablatives of means.
- 321: *eōrum ipsōrum*: i.e., *hostium*.
- 330–332: *omnia dēnique maria, cum ūniversa, tum in singulīs ōrīs omnēs sinūs atque portūs*: i.e., both the seas taken as a whole and in each of the bays and ports individually.
- 336: *hieme*: ablative of time when; *refertō...marī*: ablative of attendant circumstances.
- 338–340: *quis umquam arbitrārētur...*: *arbitrārētur* is imperfect potential subjunctive; the question is rhetorical: “who ever would

have thought?” Answer: no one. The questions that follow are indicative to emphasize their historical fact.

- 343: *cuī praesidiō*: double dative.
- 346–350: *Tantam...tam...ut...audiātis*: result clause.
- 353–354: *obeundī negōtīi...cōnsequendī quaestūs*: gerundive genitives with *studiō*.
- 361–362: *duābus Hispāniīs et Galliā Trānsalpīnā praesidiīs ac nāvibus cōnfirmātā*: an adjective can modify the closer noun (*Galliā Trānsalpīnā*) but refer to both (*duābus Hispāniīs et Galliā Trānsalpīnā*).
- 368–369: *partim ūnīus huius sē imperiō ac potestātī dēdidērunt*: the genitive depends on the datives *imperiō ac potestātī* but is thrown to the front of the clause to put the emphasis on Pompey. The skillful movement of words to an emphatic place in the sentence (often the very beginning or the end) is called *hyperbaton*.
- 372–373: *Pompēius extrēmā hieme apparāvit, ineunte vēre suscēpit, mediā aestāte cōnfēcit*: see note on lines 292–293 above. Here *extrēmā* and *mediā* mean “end of” and “middle of.” Cicero could have written “*prīmō vēre*” as a parallel to *extrēmā hieme* and *mediā aestāte*. Instead, he varies the expression by using *ineunte vēre* using the ablative absolute with the present participle of *in-īre*.
- 380: *quantā innocentīā*: ablative of description; so too the following ablatives.
- 384: *cōnsiderēmus*: hortatory subjunctive (Cap. XXX); *summa enim sunt omnia*: i.e., in Pompey can be found the highest quality of all the virtues.
- 385: *ex aliōrum contentiōne*: “in comparison with other generals”: Cicero goes on to denigrate the behavior of other, unnamed *imperātōrēs*.
- 386–387: *ūllō in numerō putāre*: to consider of any account/value; *ūllō*, used only in negative contexts, demonstrates that the question is rhetorical and expects a negative response (Cap. XIX); *vēneant atque vēnierint*, from *vēnīre* (Cap. XXXVI), not *venīre*.
- 393: *pecūniam in quaestū relinquere*: “to loan money at interest.”
- 396: *ante*: adverb.

- 398: *quōcumque ventum sit*: for the impersonal *ventum esse*, see Cap. XL.
- 401: *recordāminī*: imperative.
- 402–405: *plūrēs*: with *urbēs...an...cīvītātēs*; *armīs*, *hibernīs*: ablatives of means, both with genitives.
- 408–409: *cētērīs*: dative with *excellere*.
- 408–411: *tantum...ut nōn modo...sed nē...quidem...dicātur*: result clause; *nocuisse* + dative (*cuiquam pācātō*).
- 413–415: *sumptum facere in aliquem*: spend money on someone; *vīs*: force, violence; *nē cupientī...cuiquam*: i.e., even those who want to incur expense on the military's behalf are not allowed.
- 424: *retardārunt* = *retardāverunt* (cf. below, *obtemperārint*, l.512 and *obsecundārint*, l.513).
- 430–432: *omnēs...intuentur*.
- 433–434: *hāc quondam continentiā*: ablative of description; *fuisse* and *quondam* both refer the listener to the past and liken Pompey to the great men of Roman history; *quod*: antecedent is 'crēdere *fuisse hominēs Rōmānōs hāc quondam continentiā*'.
- 435: *falsō*: adverb; *memoriae proditum*: "handed down as a record/memorial" (< *prodere*).
- 440: *dē aliōrum iniūriīs*: i.e., about the wrongs done to others.
- 442: *dignitāte*, *facilitāte*: ablatives of respect; *principibus*, *īfīmīs*: datives with *excellit* and *par*, respectively.
- 443–444: *dicendī gravitāte et cōpiā*: Pompey spoke with fluency (*cōpia*) serious authority (*gravitās*); ablatives of respect (as is *cōnsiliō*); *in quō ipsō*: i.e., in the oratorical art.
- 445: *hōc ipsō ex locō*: addressing the people from the rostra in the forum.
- 446–448: *fidem*: with *sānctissimam*; *hūmānitāte tantā est*: ablative of description; *difficile dictū* (Caps. XXII, XXXIX).
- 451: *quisquam dubitābit quīn*: for *quīn* clauses with *dubitāre*, see Caps. XXIX, XLII; the rhetorical question supplies the necessary negative; cf. l.457: *nēmīnī dubium est quīn*.
- 452: *nostrae memoriae*: partitive genitive with *bella*.

- 457–458: *plūrimum posse*: “to have the greatest ability.”
- 461–462: *ut* depends on *tantīs rēbus* (result clause).
- 458–463: The subject of *pertinēre* is *quid hostēs, quid socii dē imperātōribus nostrīs exīstiment* (subjunctive in an indirect question with *quis ignōrat*); the result clause (*in tantīs rēbus*) *ut aut metuant aut contemnant, aut ōderint aut ament* separates the subject (*hominēs*) of the indirect statement dependent on *sciāmus* from its predicate (*commovērī*).
- 467: *quō*: adverb.
- 470: *sibi*: i.e., *populō Rōmānō*; *omnium gentium*: genitive with *commūne*.
- 472–475: *ut...cōfirmem*: suggests that Cicero has much more he could say; *quantum...in bellō*: indirect question; *sūmantur*: hortatory subjunctive.
- 478–479: *spē ac nōmine*: ablatives of cause; *quantam...potuisset*: comparative clause.
- 479–486: Reading help: ablative absolute followed by relative clause (*acceptā...admonuī*), followed by *cum* circumstantial (*cum...habēret*) and a past contrafactual condition (*āmīssissetis...nisi fortūna...attulisset*); *dīvinitus*: “by divine providence.”
- 489–492: *quī...perfēcerit, quī...dēfenderit*: relative causal clauses (Cap. XXXIX).
- 493–494: *praestāre dē sē ipsō*: offer surety for on one’s own behalf.
- 499–500: as in lines 361–362, *commissōs* refers to both *imperia mandāta* and *exercitūs* but agrees only with the closer noun, *exercitūs*.
- 500–503: *quibusdam summīs virīs*: dative with *adiūncta*.
- 505–507: *hāc...moderātiōne...ut...ut*: result clauses; *nē...videātur*: purpose clause.
- 509: *domī militiae = domī militiaeque*: “at home and abroad.”
- 517: *ut...sit*: with *velle et optāre* (l.519).
- 518–519: for *causā* with preceding genitives, see note above on lines 235–236.
- 525: *bonī*: partitive genitive with *tantum*.

- 528–530: *sī...esset...erat dēligendus atque mittendus*: like modal verbs (e.g., *posse*, *dēbēre*, etc., Cap. XLVI) in contrafactual conditions future participles and gerundives with a past tense of *esse* are regularly in the indicative, not subjunctive.
- 532: *ab iīs quī habent*: i.e., other generals who have armies under their control.

Finis Mithridatis [Ex T. Livii librōrum C–CIII Periochīs]: 537–569

The juxtaposition of the summaries (*periochae*) of Livy's work with the Cicero you've just read underscore Cicero's rhetorical periods. The summaries are just that: synopses of information, while Cicero's points are meant to be listened to, not read, and he conveys his message as much by the construction of his sentences as by the content.

- 552: *parum*: "too little, not sufficiently."
- 554–555: *Hierosolyma*: Jerusalem.
- 558–559: *dē caede...incendiīs...rē pūblicā*.
- 556–564: *Catilīna*: You can learn more about Lucius Sergius Catilina and his conspiracy against Rome from both Sallust (who wrote a history of the event and an excerpt of whose history of the war against Jugurtha you read in Cap. LI) and Cicero, who published four speeches against Catiline (*In Catilīnam* I–IV).

Finis Pompēi [Ex Eutropii Breviarii librō VI]: 570–617

- 575: *vicendō*: ablative of means with *prōcessit*: see Cap. XXVI.
- 582–583: *contrā ōmen et auspicia*: the pre-battle signs showing the gods' approval or disapproval of a proposed action; *duce*: in apposition to *Surēnā*.
- 601–602: *prīmō proeliō*: see note above on lines 372–373.
- 608: *subāctūrae si...dūcerentur*: as the margin note tells you, *subāctūrae* (agreeing with *Rōmānae cōpiae*) here is equivalent to *quae subigere potuissent*, that is, equivalent to the apodosis of a contrafactual condition: the troops would have been able to conquer the whole world were they being led against barbarians. For the imperfect (*dūcerentur*) and a future participle (*subāctūrae*) see above note on lines 528–530 and Cap. XLVI.

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

administra, -ae	assistant, helper
continentia, -ae	restraint, self-control
cultūra, -ae	cultivation, care
decuma, -ae	tithe, tenth part
innocentia, -ae	innocence, integrity
latebrae, -ārum	hiding place
macula, -ae	stain, blemish
misericordia, -ae	pity
repulsa, -ae	defeat (in an election)
querimōnia, -ae	complaint, protest
scientia, -ae	knowledge
scriptūra, -ae	tax on grazing rights
temperantia, -ae	self-control, moderation

2nd

dēsiderium, -ī	desire, longing
domicilium, -ī	dwelling, residence
firmāmentum, -ī	support, strength
incommodum, -ī	disadvantage, misfortune
nāviculārius, -ī	ship-owner
perfugium, -ī	place of refuge, shelter
pūblicānus, -ī	tax-gatherer, publican

3rd

admurmurātiō, -ōnis (f.)	murmur
amoenitās, -ātis (f.)	pleasantness, beauty
amplitūdō, -inis (f.)	size, extent, greatness
antīquitās, -ātis (f.)	antiquity, ancient times
cognitiō, -ōnis (f.)	getting to know, study
collēctiō, -ōnis (f.)	collecting, gathering
comparātiō, -ōnis (f.)	preparation, provision, comparison
coniūrātiō, -ōnis (f.)	conspiracy, plot
cōspirātiō, -ōnis (f.)	agreement, conspiracy
dēlectātiō, -ōnis (m.)	delight, pleasure

dēliberātiō, -ōnis (f.)	deliberation
excursiō, -ōnis (f.)	sortie, sally
facilitās, -atis (f.)	ease, facility
gravitās, -ātis (f.)	weight, gravity, dignity
hūmānitās, -atis (f.)	human feeling, culture
irruptiō, -ōnis (f.)	violent entry, assault
longinquitās, -ātis (f.)	remoteness
mānsuētūdō, -inis (f.)	mildness, clemency
oblīviō, -ōnis (f.)	a forgetting; oblivion
offēnsiō, -ōnis (f.)	setback, misfortune
opīniō, -ōnis (f.)	opinion, belief
opportūnitās, -ātis (f.)	convenience, advantage
pāstiō, -ōnis (f.)	pasturage
petitiō, -ōnis (f.)	pursuit, candidature
prōgressiō, -ōnis (f.)	advance
rēmex, -igis (m.)	oarsman, rower
splendor, -ōris (m.)	brightness, splendor
ūbertās, -ātis (f.)	fruitfulness
ūtilitās, -ātis (f.)	interest, advantage
vilitās, -ātis (f.)	cheapness, low price

4th

centuriātus, -ūs	office of century
exōrsus, -ūs	beginning
frūctus, -ūs	produce, fruit
quaestus, -ūs	income, profit
sūmptus, -ūs	expenditure, expense

Heteroclitic

pecua, -um (n. pl.)²	farm animals
--	--------------

VERBA

-āre

(adōrnō) adōrnāre	equip
(attenuō) attenuāre	make thin, reduce
(commendō) commendāre	entrust, commit

2. For *pecus* see grammar section for this chapter.

(concertō) concertāre	fight
(coniūrō) coniūrāre	swear together, conspire
(cōnsalūtō) cōnsalūtāre	greet, hail
(dēvocō) dēvocāre	call away, divert
(exportō) exportāre	export
(dissipō) dissipāre	scatter, spread
(inflō) inflāre	inflate, puff up, elate
(minitor) minitārī	threaten
(negōtior) negōtiārī	do business, trade
(obsecundō) obsecundāre	comply with, obey (<i>intr. + dat.</i>)
(obtemperō) obtemperāre	obey (<i>intr. + dat.</i>)
(opīnor) opīnārī	think, believe
(pēnsitō) pēnsitāre	pay
(praedicō) praedicāre	declare
(recordor) recordārī	call to mind, recollect
(recreō) recreāre	restore, revive
(retardō) retardāre	delay, hold up
(remoror) remorārī	delay, linger
(tardō) tardāre	make slow, delay
-ēre	
(medeor) medērī (+ <i>dat.</i>)	heal, cure, remedy
-ere	
(affingō) affingere (< <i>ingere</i>)	add, fabricate
(affligō) affligere, -ixisse, -ictum	cast down, deject, afflict
(antecellō) antecellere	surpass, excel
(concupiscō) concupiscere, -iuisse (< <i>cupere</i>)	desire, covet
(congerō) congerere (< <i>gerere</i>)	bring together, collect
(dēprimō) dēprimere (< <i>premere</i>)	press down, sink
(dēprōmō) dēprōmere (< <i>prōmere</i>)	take out
(ēmergō) ēmergere (< <i>mergere</i>)	come out, emerge
(ēruō) ēruere, -uisse, -utum	unearth, clear up
(expetō) expetere (< <i>petere</i>)	request, demand, desire

(inveterāscō) inveterāscere, -āvisse (< vetus)	grow old, become fixed
(īrāscor) īrāscī, īrātum (< īra)	be angry
(laccessō) laccessere, -īvisse, -ītum	challenge, provoke
(prōficiō) prōficere (< facere)	progress, be successful
-īre	
(impertiō) impertīre, -īsse, -ītum (< pars)	give a share of, impart

ADIECTĪVA

1st/2nd

adventīcius, -a, -um	from without, foreign
coniūrātus, -a, -um	sworn, joined by an oath
disiūctus, -a, -um	distant
exsecrandus, -a, -um	accursed
gnāvus, -a, -um	diligent, active
imperātōrius, -a, -um	of a general
inaudītus, -a, -um	unheard (of)
ingrātus, -a, -um	unpleasant, ungrateful
iniūriōsus, -a, -um	unjust, wrongful
īnsolitus, -a, -um	unusual, unwonted
opīmus, -a, -um	rich
ōrnātus, -a, -um	adorned, distinguished
permultī, -ae, -a	a great many
religiōsus, -a, -um	devout, holy
taeter, -tra, -trum	foul, horrible
tempestīvus, -a, -um	timely, suitable
ūndēquīnquāgēsīmus, -a, -um	forty-ninth

3rd

impudēns (<i>gen. impudentis</i>)	shameless, impudent
innocēns (<i>gen. innocentis</i>)	innocent, blameless
lacrimābilis, -e	mournful, pitiful
perbrevis, -e	very short
vectigālis, -e	tax-paying, tributary

ADVERBIA**cōsultō**

deliberately

quōcumque

(to) wherever

ALIA**propter esse**

to be nearby

LV: QVINQVAGESIMVM QVINTVM: DE RE PVBLICA (Cicero)¹

[Ex M. Tullii Cicerōnis *dē rē pūblicā libris*]

I. ØRBERG'S INTRODUCTION

After suppressing the Catilinarian conspiracy, Cicero regarded himself as the savior of the Roman people. Nevertheless, his expectation of a brilliant political career as the leader who was to unite all good forces in defense of the established order was deeply disappointed. The optimates, fearing Catiline, had ensured Cicero's election as consul. But in the following years, Cicero was pushed into the background, as Pompey came to an understanding with the leaders of the democratic party, Caesar and Crassus (the First Triumvirate, 60 BC, LIV.555–556). When the tribune *P. Clōdius*, Cicero's bitter opponent, had him exiled in the spring of 58, Pompey and Caesar acquiesced. When, after eighteen months in exile, he returned to Rome (in 57), Cicero largely retired from public life and devoted himself to literary work. During the years 54–52, he wrote the *dē Rē Pūblicā*, a treatise on political science. The last two chapters of *RōMA AETERNA* contain extracts from this work.

Dē Rē Pūblicā is a dialogue in six books modeled on the *Republic* of Plato (who is mentioned by the participants more frequently than appears in our excerpt). Apart from the conclusion, *Somnium Scīpiōnis*, the work was lost until December 1819, when Angelo Mai, the head of the Vatican Library, discovered a manuscript from ca. AD 400 containing most of books I and II and fragments of books III–V. The manuscript was discovered in a palimpsest (*palimpsestus*, from Greek, meaning 're-scraped'): often the costly pages of a book were reused by painting over an older text (in this case, Cicero's *dē Rē Pūblicā*) to make room for a new one. *Dē Rē Pūblicā* was discovered underneath Augustine's commentary on the Psalms. Page 386 shows the text (with

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

Augustine's text removed); as you can see, the scribes wrote in narrow columns in capital letters without word breaks or punctuation.

In Cap. LV, you read extracts from books I and II of *dē Rē Pūblicā*. It is a dialogue between *Scīpiō Aemiliānus* and some of his friends who arrive at his country house in 129 BC during the *fēriae Latīnae*, a three-day religious holiday (that commemorated the alliance of the Latins with the Romans: Varro, *de linguā Latīnā*, 6.25). Immediately after this holiday, Scipio was found dead in his bed (see Cap. LI.251–253). It was widely held that he had been murdered at the instigation of his brother-in-law *C. Gracchus*, whose reform efforts he had opposed. This turbulent political situation is the background for Cicero's dialogue.

After a preliminary discussion about astronomy, Scipio's learned friend *C. Laelius* raises the question of how to unite the conflicting parties in Rome. He asks Scipio to set out his ideas about the best form of government. Government, according to Cicero, is the exercise and application of virtue; knowledge of virtue is not enough. This exercise and application is government: *Nec vērō habēre virtūtem satis est, quasi artem aliquam, nisi ūtāre (= ūtāris). Etsi ars quidem, cum eā nōn ūtāre, scientia tamen ipsa tenērī potest, virtūs in ūsū suī tota posita est. Ūsus autem eius est maximus civitātis gubernātiō (dē Rē Pūblicā I.2).*

Our text begins with Scipio's definition of '*rēs pūblica*' and goes on to discuss the three forms of government: *rēgnum*, *cīvitās optimātium*, and *cīvitās populārīs* (Cicero's translation of the Greek terms *monarchía*, *aristocratía*, and *dēmocratía*). As serious objections can be raised to each of the forms, he advocates a combination of the three. The essence of the Roman republic derives from this combination.

In book II, Scipio describes the development of Rome from earliest times. This selection includes his account of the first two kings, Romulus and Numa, and his presentation of Tarquinius Superbus as an illustration of the degeneration of monarchy into tyranny.

The discussion continues for two days (books III–VI). Recovered fragments and references in later authors show that they discussed the qualities of the ideal statesman (*rēctor rei pūblīcae*) and the honors and rewards that await him. Scipio then relates a strange dream he had twenty years before. The dialogue ends with this dream, the *Somnium Scīpiōnis* (see Cap. LVI).

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Persōnae: 1–10

P. Scīpiō Aemilānus Āfricānus, senex

Q. Aelius Tūberō, iuvenis

L. Fūrius Philus, senior

P. Rutilius Rūfus, adulēscēns
C. Laelius, senex
Sp. Mummius, senex
C. Fannius, iuvenis
Q. Mūcius Scaevola, iuvenis
M'. Mānilius, senex

***Fēriae Latīnae* (from Book I): 11–156**

- 11–15: Sentence structure: double *cum* clause: *cum P. Āfricānus... cōstituisset* and (*cum*) *familiārissimīque...dixissent*; each of the *cum* clauses has an accusative + infinitive: *cōstituisset in hortis esse* and *dixissent ventitātūrōs sē esse* (= *ad tē ventitābimus*); main subject/verb: *Q. Tūberō, sorōris filiū, primus vēnit*; *hic Pauli filiū*: for Scipio Aemilianus Africanus as the son of Aemilius Paulus, see L.670–672; *ventitāre*: frequentative verb of *venīre*; *māne* (Cap. XIII): “in the morning.”
- 15–16: *cōmiter*: adverb from *cōmis*, -e (Cap. XLIV), “kindly, affably”; *tam māne*: idiomatic, “so early.”
- 22: *permagnum est*: “a very great thing”; *ōtiōsum*: with *tē*; *mōtū*: “disturbance,” “upheaval.”
- 24: *mehercule*: see Cap. XLVII; *operā*: Cap. XXXIV: “exertions, labor”; ablative of respect (Cap. XXXIX; so too *animō*).
- 26: *relaxēs oportet*: see grammar section above.
- 28: *abūtī*: here in a good sense (not “abuse”): fully enjoy + ablative of means (*ūtī*, Cap. XXVII); *fieri potest*: Cap. XXXVI.
- 29–30: *aliquid*: accusative as adverb, “somewhat, in some degree”; *ut...admoneāmur*: purpose.
- 31: *visne...videāmus*: see grammar section above.
- 32–33: *dē istō “alterō sōle”*: Cicero talks about this (among others) prodigy also at *dē Dīvinātiōne* (Book I.97).
- 35: *Quam vellem...habērēmus*: see grammar section; Panaetius: Stoic philosopher from Rhodes, to whom Cicero refers frequently and whose Middle Stoicism was the basis for Cicero’s *dē Officiīs*.
- 36: *cum...tum*: Cap. XXXVI.
- 38: *loquar*: future indicative.

- 39: *nostrō illi familiārī*: dative with *assentior*; *quō*: ablative of comparison, i.e., *Panaetiō*.
- 40: *eius modi*: genitive of description (Cap. XLII).
- 41–43: *quī...dēposuerit...dixerit*: causal clause (Caps. XXXIX, XLII); *dixerit ea (quae...quaererentur) aut māiōra...aut nihil...attinēre; quam...possit*: comparative clause.
- 54: *Numantiae*: for Scipio at Numantia, see LI.186ff.
- 59: *puer*: Romans often referred to male slaves as “*puer*.”
- 61: *ē cubiculō*: Tubero had come to him *māne*, before Scipio had a chance to dress; it was not unusual for Romans to entertain close friends *in cubiculō*.
- 62: *inambulāre*: “walk up and down.”
- 65: *generōs* < *gener*, *-erī*: “son-in-law.”
- 67–68: *convertit sē in porticū et coniēcit in medium Laelium*: i.e., he had been facing them, turned around, and arranged the group around Laelius.
- 69: *militiae*: locative (XLII.222), as is *domī* (I.70).
- 72–73: *ūnō aut alterō spatiō*: *spatium*, “space,” can be used to refer to the act of walking through a space: “one or two rounds of the portico”; *essent*: with *collocūtī*.
- 74–75: *placitum est ut*: “it seemed a good idea to.”
- 81–82: *agendum accūrātius*: i.e., speak and behave more formally (lit.: “with more care”) as a reflection of respect in which the assembled company is held.
- 86–87: *quidnam* (Cap. XXIII: “what in the world?”) *sentīrem*: indirect question; *dē hōc quod...cōnstāret*: “about this thing about which there is agreement” (*cōnstāre*: Cap. XLVII).
- 88: *ain’ vērō* = *aisne vērō*: other than here, this expression occurs only in the Roman comedians Plautus and Terence; Cicero usually uses “*ain’ tu*” and “*ain’ tandem*.” The expressions are very colloquial (humorously so, coming so soon after *agendum accūrātius*).
- 92: *quae*: i.e., *domus*.
- 94: *quamque* = *et quam*; *domicilium*, *patriam*: both predicate, “as a home,” “as a fatherland.”

- 98: *avidōs sapientiae*: objective genitive (Cap. XXV).
- 102: *aliquid*: i.e., about the two suns; *sērius*: “too late.”
- 104: *integrum*: “fresh, new” (they haven’t started a discussion yet).
- 105: *concesserō*: using an independent future perfect where we might expect the future is a feature of colloquial speech.
- 106: *immō vērō*: *immō* means “on the contrary,” and *vērō* strengthens it.
- 107: *parumper*: “for a little while.”
- 109: *quōs*: antecedent *astrōrum*: *Archimēdēs*, cf. XLVIII.708–710; the *spaera aēnea* of which they speak is one of two models of the heavens that Marcellus (see Cap. XLVIII) took after the siege of Syracuse; one he had in his home, and the other was deposited in the Temple of Virtue; *arte mirābili*: ablative of manner with *effectā*.
- 111: *eius modī*: “of that sort,” (Cap. XLII) genitive of description.
- 117: *cum tū...quaesieris, ego...putem*: both verbs go with *cum*.
- 118–120: *quid enim mihi*: quid “why”; *mihi*: ethical dative (see grammar section above); *hōc avunculō*: “with this man (i.e., Scipio) as an uncle”: ablative of attendant circumstances with *nātus*.
- 122–123: *Tiberius Gracchus*: LI.57ff.
- 125: *nē metueritis*: perfect subjunctive in a negative command (Cap. XXXII).
- 126: *nūllus*: i.e., *sōl alter*; *sit sānē*: jussive: “by all means (*sānē*) let there be (a second sun)”; *modo nē*: “provided it is not.”
- 127: *scīre*: with *possumus* (l.129).
- 129–130: *fieri potest ut* (Cap. XXXVI).
- 131–132: *secus*: adverb “other than it should be”; *sī id effectum sit*: i.e., an undivided Senate and people.
- 134: *nōbīs*: dative of agent.
- 136: *ūsui civitātī*: double dative (Cap. XXXVI).
- 140–141: *potissimum*: superlative adverb; *rogēmus*: hortatory subjunctive followed by an indirect command.

- 148–149: *prīncipem reī pūblicaē*: you have seen *prīnceps* meaning “emperor” (Cap. XXXVI) and “leading men”; Laelius is calling Scipio the “most distinguished citizen of the republic”; *dē... dīcere*: the content of *id... fierī voluī*; *aequum*: fair and right that the leading man should speak first.
- 150: *solitum*: modifies *tē*; the historian Polybius (ca. 200–118 BC, cf. XLIX.246) was deported to Italy after the battle of Pydna (L.302ff) against Perseus, where he met and became close to Scipio. He was with Scipio at the destruction of Carthage (*Bellum Pūnicum Tertium*, LI.1ff) and the destruction of Corinth (*Bellum Achāicum*, LI.119ff).
- 152: *multa colligere*: i.e., bring together many points, arguments.
- 154–156: *fēceris...gratum*: “you will have done all of us (*nōbīs omnibus*) a favor.”

Dē tribus rērum pūblicārum generibus: 157–242

- 158: *ut poterō*: “as much as I am able.”
- 159–161: *eā lēge...ut*: “on the grounds that”: noun clause of result (Caps. XXXII, XXXVII); *omnibus*: ablative with *ūtendum esse*; *velīs*: 2nd person singular indefinite in a condition in *ōrātiō oblīqua* dependent on *crēdō*; *eius reī* depends on *nōmen*; *quod sit nōmen eius reī*: indirect question with *conveniat*; *quid dēclārētur*: indirect question with *explicētur*; Scipio wants to begin by defining terms, specifically, *rēs pūblica*.
- 170: *quōquō modō congregātus: quōquō modō* (“in any way at all”) is disparaging.
- 175: *domiciliōrum causā*: “for the sake of” + preceding genitive.
- 177–178: *distīctam*: agrees with the closer noun (*urbem*) but applies also to *oppidum*.
- 189: *rēgī*: from *rēgēre*, not *rēx*, *rēgis*.
- 191: *sī teneat*: protasis of ideal condition (Caps. XXXIII, XLI).
- 199: *aliquō...nōn incertō statū*: ablative of description.
- 200–202: *expertēs...cōmūnis iūris et cōnsiliī*: genitive with adjective *expers* (< *ex* + *pars*, Cap. XLV); *particeps* < *partem capere*: “take a share in” + genitive.
- 203: *careat: carēre* + ablative of separation (Cap. XX).

- 215–216: In the sections omitted, Scipio says each of the three unmixed constitutions contain the seeds of their own destruction and on their own do not make for a stable state.
- 218–220: *praestat...praestābit*: on *praestāre*, “stand out, be superior,” see Cap. XXXVIII; *rēgiō...ipsī*: dative with *praestābit*; *ex tribus primīs...modīs*: Scipio recommends a mixed constitution.
- 222–223: *auctōritātī*: dative with *impartitum ac tribūtum*; *prīncipum*: genitive; *iūdictiō voluntātī*: dative with *servātās*.
- 225: *quā* (*auctōritāte*); *carēre*: see note above on line 203; *diūtius*: comparative adverb: “for too long a time”; *liberī*: “free people.”
- 226–229: *prīma*: neuter plural: the three unmixed constitutions (ll.182–185); the rest of the sentence gives a summary of the flaws discussed in the omitted passage (see ll.215–216).
- 233–236: *nōta sunt omnibus quaesita autem ā nōbīs iam diū*: i.e., they have subjected the general opinion to detailed inquiry; *nūllam* (*rem publicam*) *omnium rerum publicarum...conferendam esse*.
- 240: *ad exemplum*: “as a model, example.”

***Dē vetere rē publicā Rōmānā* (from Book II): 243–471**

- 250–251: *fuissent*: causal clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*; *cōstituissent*: subjunctive in descriptive relative clause in indirect statement; *singulī...quī suam quisque...cōstituissent*: for *suam quisque*, see Cap. XVIII: “individuals who each established his own...”; *rem publicam*: the list of prominent political leaders which follows shows Scipio is not talking about a *rēs publica* in the Roman sense.
- 253: *quae* (*rēs publica*); *esset*: subordinate clause in indirect statement.
- 255–257: *nōn ūnīus...ingeniō sed multōrum*: the ablative of means goes with both genitives; *vīta...saeculīs et aetātibus*: ablatives of time within which (“during the lifetime...”).
- 257–259: *neque ūllum ingenium tantum...ut*: result clause; *quem*: the antecedent is *quisquam*.
- 259–261: *ūnō tempore*: take closely with *cūncta ingenia collāta*: i.e., the intelligence of those living at one time if gathered into one could not...; *tantum...ut*: result.
- 267: *aliquam*: sc. *rem publicam*.

- 269–272: Easier word order: *Quod exōrdium īnstitūtae reī pūblicaē habēmus tam clārum ac tam omnibus nōtum quam huius urbis condendae prīncipium profectum ā Rōmulō?* (*Quod* is an interrogative adjective.)
- 272–275: *Quī nātus...dīcitur...iussus esse: dīcitur* with nominative and accusative, Caps. XIII and XXXVI; *ob labefactandī rēgnī timōrem*: objective genitive (Cap. XXV).
- 275–276: *silvestris bēluae*: with *ūberibus*; *esset...sustentātus*: although the myth applies to both brothers, only Romulus is the focus.
- 277–280: *ut adolēverit*: “when”: subjunctive in a subordinate clause in *ōrātiō obliqua*; *vīribus, fērōcitate*: ablatives of respect; *omnibus*: dative with *praestitisse*; *tantum...ut*: result; *quī...agrōs ubi hodiē est haec urbs incolēbant*: the indicative shows that, in the mind of the speaker, these clauses are extraneous to the indirect statement.
- 285: *auspicātō*: one word ablative absolute < *auspicārī*, “after taking the auspices,” part of Romulus’s thinking (i.e., if the auspices were good); easier word order: *prīmum cōgitāvisse urbem condere et firmāre rem pūblicam dīcitur*.
- 287–290: *novum quoddam et subagreste cōsiliū*: object of *persecūtus est*; *perceleriter...subagreste*: *per* as a prefix “very”; *sub*: “somewhat.”
- 291: *magnī hominis et iam tum longē prōvidentis*: genitive of characteristic with *cōsiliū*.
- 292: *honestō...locō*: ablative of source with *ortās*; when they went to neighboring villages asking for wives, the early Romans were mocked with a questioning suggestion that they open the city to the asylum of women as well (Cap. XLII.28–31). The only woman, the assumption is, who would need an asylum is one of damaged virtue, thus the stress on women of virtuous character in *honestō locō*.
- 293: *lūdōrum grātiā*: *grātiā* with a preceding genitive, like *causā* (l.175); *quōs* (*ludōs*).
- 295: *amplissimārum*: here, “esteemed.”
- 298: *īcit*: perfect tense (present: *īcit*).
- 299: *mātrōnīs ipsīs quae raptae erant ōrantibus*: ablative absolute surrounding a relative clause.

- 300: *ascīvit*: *asciscere* involves a measure of decision-making: “to approvingly receive (information) as true or (a person/state) in some capacity.”
- 303–312: Reading help: *cum* clause, followed by concessive clauses (*quamquam dēlēgerat...populumque...discrīperat...sed quamquam*) that contain two subordinate clauses, followed by the main (*tamen*) clause; *nōmine*: with agreeing *suō* and both genitives (*Tatiī, Lucumōnis*); *quās cūriās eārum nōmine...quae*: antecedent of *quae* is *eārum*; *pācis et foederis*: objective genitives with *ōrātrīcēs*; *quae ex Sabīnīs virginēs raptae postea fuerant ōrātrīcēs pācis et foederis*: see Cap. XLII.151–159; *ea* = *tribūs et cūriās*; *multō*: with *magis*.
- 314: *Lycūrgus*: cf. l.252; *Spartae*: locative.
- 316: Easier word order: *cīvitātēs (singulārī imperiō et potestāte rēgiā) tum melius gubernārī et rēgī sī auctōritās optimī cuiusque ad illam vim dominātiōnis adiuncta esset; singulārī...rēgiā*: ablatives of means; *optimī cuiusque...auctōritās: quisque* with superlative: “all the best men” (Cap. XXXI).
- 317–318: *quasi senātū fultus*: Cicero uses *quasi* when employing metaphorical speech; *fulcīre* (“prop up”): applicable only metaphorically to the Senate.
- 319: *cum* concessive: “although.”
- 322: *auspiciīs...obsecūtus est*: “yielded to.”
- 325–326: *auspiciīs...augurēs*: the *augurēs* were a group of priests whose responsibility it was to observe natural signs (including the flights of birds: *auspicium* < *avēs, spicio*) as signs from the gods meant to guide future actions (XLII.289–302); *cooptāvit*: Romulus chose augurs.
- 327–330: Death of Romulus: XLII.221ff.
- 329: *tantum est cōsecūtus ut*: “he was so successful that”; *cōsequī*: “succeed.”
- 330–331: *opīniōnem*: i.e., even if not true, the rumor proves his greatness; *nēmō...mortālīs*.
- 332: *potuit*: past potential: “one one could have” (Cap. XL).
- 334–336: with sense markers: *ut id (dē Rōmulō) (Proculō Iūliō, hominī agrestī), crēderētur quod multīs iam ante saeculīs (nūllō aliō dē mortālē) homines credidissent; id*: an adverbial accusative with

- the impersonal passive *crēderetur*; *Proculō Iūliō, hominī agrestī*: dative with *crēderetur*: i.e., he was believed.
- 337: *quō (= ut) illī (patrēs) ā sē invidiam interitūs* (objective genitive with *invidiam*) *Rōmulī pellerent*.
- 343: *ut*: “as.”
- 345–347: *vidēmus...tē ingressum (esse); ratiōne ad disputandum novā quae nusquam est in Graecōrum librīs*: Scipio has broken away from the Greek precedent and is taking a new approach to analyzing the best form of state; the Romans were in constant competition with the Greeks, and this is a reminder that they were innovators on their own terms; *prīnceps ille*: Plato (cf. ll.267–268); Laelius’s comparison of Scipio’s process versus Plato’s seems a bit tendentious.
- 348: *āream*: Plato’s building ground was his *Republic*.
- 350–351: *ā vītā hominum abhorrentem et mōribus*: i.e., because it was an ideal state, not one based on actual lived experience; *exemplārī*: cf. *exemplum* (l.240).
- 354–355: *ut...tribuere...mālīs quam...fingere et disputēs...*
- 358: *tē reliquōs rēgēs persquente*: ablative absolute.
- 360: *quibus*: dative with *tribuisset*; *eōrum liberōs*: the descendants of the original *pātrēs* were called *patriciī*.
- 365: *dēsideriō*: ablative of cause.
- 366–367: *novam et inaudītam...ratiōnem; interrēgnī ineundī*: objective genitive with *ratiō*; *cēterīs gentibus*: dative of reference: “by other peoples.”
- 368: *quoad*: “as long as; up to the point that”; like *dum* (Cap. XL), *quoad* takes the subjunctive when it looks forward to what is anticipated; *ut...esset*: purpose clause.
- 371–373: *fūgit*: i.e., escaped his mind; *nōn dēligendum...sed habendum*: “not chosen but held” (Sparta’s kingship was hereditary); *sī modo*: “if only”; *potuit*: indicative for subjunctive with a modal verb (see line 332).
- 374: *quī modo = dummodo + subjunctive*: “provided that” (Cap. XL); *Herculis stirpe generātus*: ablative of source (Caps. XXX–VII): the two royal families of Sparta were thought to be descendants of Hercules.

- 375–376: *etiam*: modifies *tum*; *vīdērunt virtūtem et sapientiam rēgālem* (*quaerī oportēre*), *nōn prōgeniem quaerī oportēre*.
- 379–380: *Numa*: XLII.281ff; *ascīvit*: see note above on line 300; *accīvit*: XLIV.150 (marginalia); *accīre*: “summons” (rare); *Sabīnum* = Numa; *Curibus*: Cures, a Sabine town, ablative of place from which.
- 381–383: *incēnsōs*: with *hominēs Rōmānōs*; *īnstitūtō Rōmulī*: because of Romulus’s practice; *bellicīs studiīs*: ablatives of means with *incēnsōs*; *exīstimāvit eōs paulum ab illā cōnsuētūdine esse revocandōs*: Cf. XLII.303–305.
- 385: *virītim*: adverb < *vir*.
- 386: *colendīs agrīs*: ablative of means; *commodīs omnibus*: ablative with *abundāre*.
- 388: *convalescere*: “gain strength”; *quōrum*: i.e., *iūstitia et fidēs*; *patrōciniō*: “defense,” “protection” Cf. LIII.293.
- 390–391: *auspiciīs māiōribus inventīs*: i.e., auspices marked as especially significant.
- 390–400: Numa and the priesthoods: cf. XLIII.325ff.
- 392–393: *sacrīs...pontificēs quīnque praefēcit*; *praeficere* + accusative and dative (“put ‘acc.’ in charge of ‘dat.’”); *cōnsuētūdine et cupiditāte*: ablatives of cause (Cap. XXXVII).
- 403: *Polybius*: see note above to line 150.
- 405: for the importance of *diūrnitas*, see lines 179–183.
- 407–411: Cf. Cap. XLV.
- 412: *rēx ille*: Tarquinius Superbus; *prīmum*: picked up by *deinde* (l.415).
- 413: *integrā mente*: ablative of description.
- 418ff: Cap. XLV.230ff.
- 421: *ingeniō et virtūte*: ablatives of respect with *praestāns* (Cap. XXXIX).
- 423: *prīvātus*: i.e., did not hold public office.
- 425–430: *Quō auctōre et prīncipe*: ablative absolute.
concitāta: with ablatives of means *querēllā* and *recordātiōne*; *exsulem...esse iussit*: XLV.317–320.

- 431–432: *dē rēge dominus*: i.e., from being a king he turned into a master; *ūnīus-que vitiō*: because of the fault of one man; *reī pūblicae*: with *genus*; cf. ll.179–286.
- 435: *consulere* + dative: “take care of, look to the interests of”; *ut parēns* < *parēns*, -*entis* (*pārēre*), not *pārēre*.
- 436: *quam* + superlative (Cap. XXVII): “the best possible condition.”
- 439: *simulatque* = *simul atque* (Cap. XXXVII).
- 442–443: *figūrā, immanitāte*: ablatives of respect (Cap. XXXIX); *immānitas*: “monstrousness.”
- 448–449: *sit*: jussive; *perītus, tūtor, prōcūrātor* + objective genitives (Cap. XXV).
- 451: *facite ut agnōscātis*: noun clause of result (Cap. XXXVII).
- 455: *decemvirōs*: XLV.85–88.
- 462: *virīs bene dē rē pūblicā meritīs*: “for men who have deserved good from the republic.”
- 466–468: *bonīs...rēctōribus*: dative of agent with *servāta*, which refers to *stabiliōra...genera*.

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

aliēnigena , -ae (<i>m.</i>)	foreigner, stranger
bēlua , -ae	beast, wild animal
caerimōnia , -ae	rite, ceremony
fēriae , -ārum (<i>pl.</i>)	festival days, holidays
īnsolentia , -ae	unusualness; arrogance
sphaera , -ae	globe, sphere

2nd

prātulum , -ī	meadow, lawn
cūnābula , -ōrum (<i>n. pl.</i>)	cradle

3rd

aequābilitās, -tātis (<i>f.</i>)	equality
celebritās, -tātis (<i>f.</i>)	large assembly; renown
commūniō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	partnership, sharing
cōnfūsiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	mixture; disorder, confusion
coniūctiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	union, conjunction
cōnsiderātiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	consideration, reflection
cōstitūtiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	constitution; order, arrangement
dēpopulātiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	plundering
discriptiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	distribution
disputātiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	an arguing, discussion
exemplar, -āris (<i>n.</i>)	pattern, model
ferōcitās, -ātis (<i>f.</i>)	fierceness; ferocity
firmitūdo, -dinis (<i>f.</i>)	stability, firmness
immānitās, -tātis (<i>f.</i>)	monstrousness, brutality
inīquitās, -tātis (<i>f.</i>)	unfairness
ōrātrix, -trīcis (<i>f.</i>)	female suppliant
pariēs, -etis (<i>m.</i>)	wall (of a house)
perceptiō, -ōnis (<i>f.</i>)	a gathering; perception
prōcūrātor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	manager, superintendent
rēctor, -ōris (<i>m.</i>)	ruler, governor

4th

arbitrātus, -ūs (< arbitrārī Cap. XXII)	choice, decision
coetus, -ūs (< coīre Cap. LI)	gathering, society
dominātus, -ūs (< dominārī Cap. XXXVII)	dominion, power
excessus, -ūs (< excēdere Cap. XXXVIII)	departure, death
impulsus, -ūs (< impellere Cap. XXXIX)	impact, impulse
interitus, -ūs (< interīre Cap. XLI)	death
interventus, -ūs (< intervenīre (Cap. XLIV)	arrival

VERBA

-āre

(accomodō) accommodāre	fit, adapt
(approbō) approbāre	approve
(commūnicō) commūnicāre	share
(cooptō) cooptāre	choose (as colleague)
(disputō) disputāre	argue, discuss
(flāgitō) flāgitāre	demand insistently
(generō) generāre	beget, produce
(investigō) investigāre	inquire into, investigate
(labefactō) labefactāre	shake, undermine
(locuplētō) locuplētāre	enrich
(maculō) maculāre	stain, defile
(multō) multāre	punish
(nūncupō) nūncupāre	designate, call
(obscurō) obscurāre	obscure, darken
(relāxō) relāxāre	relax, relieve
(sociō) sociāre	join, unite
(ventitō) ventitāre	come frequently

-ēre

(attineō) attinēre (< tenēre)	concern, relate to
(compāreō) compārēre, -uisse	appear
(perhibeō) perhibēre (< habēre)	report, say

-ere

(abūtor) abūtī, -ūsum (+ abl.)	use up, take advantage of
(asciscō) asciscere, -scīvisse, -scītum	admit, adopt
(assequor) assequī (< sequī)	attain to, achieve
(assīdō) assīdere (< sidere)	sit down
(conquīrō) conquīrere (< quaerere)	search out, investigate
(distinguō) distinguere, -xisse, -ctum	distinguish, mark, characterize
(existō) exsistere, -itisse, -itum	appear, arise

(nancīscor) nancīscī, nactum/ nanctum	get, obtain, find, meet
(recidō) recidere (< cadere)	fall back
-īre	
(dēvinciō) dēvincīre (< vincīre)	bind
(dissentiō) dissentīre (< sentīre)	disagree
(fulciō) fulcīre, -sisse, -tum	hold up, support
(impartiō) impartīre = impertīre (Cap. LIV)	give a share of, impart

ADIECTĪVA

1st/2nd

adultus, -a, -um (< adolēscere Cap. XLI)	fullgrown, adult
apricus, -a, -um	sunny
fēriātus, -a, -um	keeping holiday
inveterātus, -a, -um	hardened by age, of long-standing
pergrātus, -a, -um	very pleasing
periūcundus, -a, -um	very agreeable
permolestus, -a, -um	very troublesome
perpaucī, -ae, -a	very few
prōnus, -a, -um	leaning forward, inclined
quaestōrius, -a, -um	of, belonging to a quaestor
ratus (reor)	valid, fixed, certain in proportion
sempiternus, -a, -um	everlasting, eternal
subnīxus, -a, -um	resting on, relying on

3rd

aequābilis, -e	equal
dēterior, -ius	worse
particeps (<i>gen. participis</i>) (+ <i>gen.</i>)	having a share in
populāris, -e	of the people, popular
pudēns (<i>gen. pudentis</i>)	modest, behaving properly
silvestris, -e	of the woods, wild
stabilis, -e	firm, stable
subagrestis, -e	somewhat rustic

PRONŌMINA

quāliscumque, quālecumque of whatever sort

ADVERBIA

parumper	for a short while
paululum	a little
perceleriter	very quickly
postrīdiē	on the following day
sērius (<i>comp. of sērō</i>)	rather late, too late
sērō	late, too late
vicissim	in turn

CONIUNCTIONĒS

atquī	but, and yet
quamvis	however, although

ALIA

hercule	by Hercules! really!
----------------	----------------------

LVI: QVINQVAGESIMVM SEXTVM: SOMNIVM SCIPIONIS (Cicero/Horace)¹

[Ex M. Tullii Cicerōnis *dē rē pūblicā* librō VI
et
Ex Q. Horātii Flaccī ‘*Carminum*’ librō I, *carmen XXII ad Fuscum*]

I. ØRBERG’S INTRODUCTION

The *Somnium Scīpiōnis* has been preserved in full because it was separately transcribed and annotated by the Neo-Platonist Macrobius in the fifth century AD. Even in antiquity, it was considered a free-standing narrative in addition to being a part of *dē Rē Pūblicā*.

Scipio tells about his visit to king Masinissa of Numidia during the Third Punic War. The ninety-year-old king entertained his Roman visitor with stories about his famous grandfather, Scipio Africanus the Elder (*Māior*), whom he remembered from the Second Punic War. After this conversation, Scipio dreamed that his grandfather appeared before him among the heavenly stars and spoke to him about the great deeds he was to perform for his country and about the reward awaiting him in heaven. Scipio’s dead father, Aemilius Paulus (Cap. L.608ff.), also stepped forward and spoke admonitory words to his son. The grandfather went on to describe the structure of the universe—the immovable earth surrounded by eight revolving spheres—and the music of the spheres, which the human ear cannot perceive. He pointed out the five zones of the globe, only two of which are habitable. He put forward evidence for the immortality of the soul (taken from Plato’s *Phaedrus*) and concluded with an exhortation to use one’s immortal soul in the service of one’s country.

The *Somnium Scīpiōnis* should not be taken as “the ancient view” but *one* ancient view. It is heavily influenced by Stoicism.

As an appendix, the Cicero text is followed by an Ode, i.e., a lyric poem, by Horace (Q. *Horātius Flaccus*, 65–8 BC). The poem begins with a Stoic sentiment

1. For an explanation of the line number references convention, see p. xxvi.

that coordinates well with Cicero's text. It also demonstrates the kind of rhetorical argument often found in Horace's poetry: the first two stanzas make a claim, the middle two give an illustrative example, and the final two the poet's broad application of the lesson to be learned. Guiltlessness is a safeguard against all dangers, the poet solemnly declares. He illustrates (not very solemnly) this maxim with an incident that happened while he was strolling in the woods and singing about his beloved *Lalagē*: a formidable wolf turned away and fled! The poem concludes that he will always love and sing about Lalage wherever he may travel.

The addressee, Aristius Fuscus, was Horace's close friend. As the addressee, he appears here and in Epistles 1, letter 10. He also plays a role in Satire 1.9 (as the man who refuses to help Horace get away from the unwanted attentions of a man in the forum) and in Satire 1.10 (as a respected reader of Horace's poetry). If Horace's poetry is any guide, the two friends shared a sense of humor and, although this ode was set to music as a hymn in the early nineteenth century and solemnly sung, there is little solemn about it.

Horace's models are the Greek lyric poets Alcaeus (*Alkaios*) and Pindar (*Pindaros*). The meter in the present poem is called *Sapphic* after the Greek poetess *Sapphō*. In the GRAMMATICA LATINA section, there is an explanation of the meter and the division of the poem into four-line stanzas (*strophae*).

II. AUXILIA LEGENDĪ

Masinissa senex: 1–19

- 4: *nihil...potius, quam ut Masinissam convenīrem*: comparative clause + subjunctive (Cap. XLVIII).
- 6: *ut* = when + indicative.
- 7: *grātēs*: archaic form of *grātiām*, used especially in prayers.
- 10–11: *nōmine ipsō*: as it recalls his good friend Africanus; ablative of means with *recreor*: “invigorated.”
- 16: *apparātū rēgiō*: “with royal magnificence,” a different sense from XLVIII.126.

Fātōrum via: 20–60

- 21: *cubitum*: accusative supine of purpose.
- 22–23: *quī...vigilāssem*: causal clause; *artior...somnia*: “a deeper sleep” or, taken closely with *complexus*: “sleep embraced me more close(ly).”

- 24: *fit...ut*: noun clause of result (Cap. XXXVII).
- 26: *Ennius*: see Cap. XXXVI note on line 162.
- 28: *imāgine*: a wax image of distinguished ancestors kept in the home: see Cap. LII, note on lines 459–463.
- 30: *cohorruī* < *cohorrescere*: “shudder”; *ades*: imperative + *animō*: “pull yourself together”; although the phrase can also mean “pay attention.”
- 34–35: *dē excelsō et plēnō stēllārum illūstrī et clārō quōdam locō*: four adjectives in two pairs describe *quōdam locō*: *excelsō et plēnō stēllārum* and *illūstrī et clārō*.
- 37–38: *id cognōmen...partum quod*.
- 40: *obieris* < *ob-eō*, *īre* (cf. *obviam*).
- 41–42: *dēligēre*: future passive (*dēligēris*); *absēns*: i.e., even though not in Rome for the elections.
- 43: *currū in Capitōlium invectus*: i.e., in a triumph.
- 44: *nepōtīs*: for land reform of Tiberius Gracchus, see LI.216ff.
- 46: *ostendās oportēbit*: see grammar section above; *patriae*: dative with *ostendās*.
- 47–48: *ancipitem*: “two-headed”; i.e., unfixed, undecided.
- 49–52: *septēnōs octiēs*: distributive adjective + distributive adverb: 8 x a group of 7 years; mystical numbers (*plēnus*, “complete”); *alter alterā* (Cap. XXXVII, *RECĒNSIŌ*), matched by mystical language (*summam fātālem*).
- 55–56: *nē multa (dīcam)*: idiomatic: “lest I go on too long” (of getting to the point); *cōstituās oportet*: see grammar section above; *sī...effūgeris*: on the rumors surrounding Scipio’s death, see LI.251–256.

***Mors et vīta*: 61–113**

- 62: *quō* = *ut* when used with a comparative (*alacrior*): Cap. XLIX.
- 66: *fruor* + ablative (Cap. XXXVIII).
- 67–68: *quod quidem in terrīs fiat*: descriptive relative clause expressing a limit or restriction (“nothing more acceptable (*acceptius*) of what (at least) happens on earth”); *sociātī*: agrees with closer noun (*coetūs*), refers also to *concilia*.

- 73: *Paulus*: Aemilius Paulus, father of Scipio (L.668–671).
- 84: *nōn est ita*: “no” (just as *est ita* can mean “yes”).
- 87: *hāc lēge*: according to this law; *hāc lēge...quī = hāc lēge ut*: relative noun clause (*verba postulandī*, Caps. XXVII, XXXVII); these clauses are partly result explaining the content of the *lēx*, and partly purpose, looking to the inherent demand.
- 90: *sīdera*: constellations, while *stella* is an individual star.
- 92–93: *et tibi...et piīs omnibus*: datives of agent with gerundive *retinendus*.
- 94: *iniūssū*: “without the order”; *ille* refers to *animus*.
- 98: *cole*: imperative (*colere*); *in parentibus, propinquīs, patriā*: “in the case of/in respect of.”
- 107: *eae magnitudinēs*: “those vastnesses.”
- 112–113: *me imperiī nostrī...paenitēret*: for *paenitēre* with accusative of person and genitive of thing, see Cap. XL; subjunctive in a result clause (*ita...parva...ut*).

***Cursūs stēllārum*: 114–139**

- 117: *tibi*: ethical dative (Cap. LV).
- 120: *arcēns*: “enclosing” (*arcēre*, Cap. XXXIX).
- 121: *īfixī illī cursūs sempiternī*: the “fixed stars” of the outermost rim that seems not to move relative to the other stars.
- 122–123: *septem*: sc. *cursūs*; *contrārio mōtū...atque*: a movement different than (the movement of) the sky.
- 126: *horribilis terrīs*: because Mars is the god of war.
- 138: *nūtū*: *nūtus* is a downward movement, usually of the head, a nod, but also, as here, the force of gravity.

***Cantus sphaerārum*: 140–170**

The description of the music of the spheres is difficult and has inspired much scholarly argument. The notes below aim at elucidating the Latin not the dynamics of the vision.

- 144–148: *Hic*: sc. *sonus*; *prō ratā parte*: “proportionally”; *coniūctus*: “composed”; *intervāllis*: understand (from the next clause) the pushing onward (*impulsū*) and movement (*mōtū*) of the

- heavenly bodies (*orbium*)—these cause the irregular but harmonized pauses (musical intervals) that occur in the constant motion of the heavens; *acūta*: “sharp or high-pitched”; *gravis*: “heavy or low-pitched”; *concentus*, -ūs: “harmony.”
- 149: *nātūra fert ut: verba postulandī*: “nature requires that” (Cap. XXVII); *extrēma*: as the context makes clear, this refers to the outer edges as judged from the middle, not just the outer rim.
- 156–158: *eadem vīs est duōrum*: the rotation of the moon and the *caelum* move at different speeds but with the same power or energy; *septem...quī numerus rērum omnium ferē nōdus est*: for seven as one of the perfect numbers, see lines 49–52.
- 159: *nervīs*: strings on a musical instrument; *cantibus*: *cantus*, -ūs is properly the music made by voice or instrument.
- 162: *obsurduērunt*: “have grown deaf.”
- 164: *Catadūpa*, -ōrum: a famous waterfall (cataract) on the Nile.
- 166–168: *hic*: the sound of the music of the spheres; *tōtīus mundī*: genitive with *conversione*; *sonitus*: “the sound (made by)” + ablative, *incitātissimā conversione*.
- 169–170: *nequītis*: < *nequeō*, *nequīre*, plural because although he is talking to Scipio, he refers to all living people; *aciēs* is often used of acuity of vision.

***Angustiae terrārum*: 171–231**

- 178–181: *quam celebritātem...quam...glōriam*: interrogative adjectives; *expetendam*: “that ought to be sought,” i.e., worthwhile; *habitārī*, *habitātur*: impersonal; *ubi habitātur* with *in ipsīs quasi maculīs*; *vāstās sōlitūdinēs interiectās (esse)* with *vidēs*.
- 187–188: *quibusdam...cingulīs*: ablative of means dependent on and enclosing *redimītam* (< *redimīre*: “encircle”) and *circumdatam* (“wrapped around”), which refer to *terram*.
- 189–190: *verticibus ipsīs*: ablative with *subnīxōs* (“propped up by, supported by”); *ex utrāque parte*: “on both sides” (i.e., poles of the earth); *pruīnā*: “frost.”
- 193: *nihil ad vestrum genus*: a common idiom sc. (as in margins), *pertinet*.

- 194: *aquilō, -ōnis* (m.): “the north wind”; *cerne*: imperative of *cernere*, “perceive”; *quam*: interrogative adverb introducing indirect question (so too in line 199: *quam sit parvus vidēs*).
- 197–198: *marī quod ‘Atlanticum’, quod ‘Magnum’, quem ‘Oceanum’*: *Atlanticum* and *Magnum* are both adjectives, while *Oceanus* is a proper name (masculine gender), and the gender of the relative (*antecedent marī*) has been attracted into the gender of *Oceanus*.
- 200–201: *cuiusquam nostrum nōmen*: “the name of any of us”: *cuiusquam* (< *quisquam*, used in negative contexts) is genitive with *nōmen* and *nostrum* is partitive genitive with *cuiusquam* (Caps. XXIX, XL).
- 203–204: *in reliquīs (orientis aut obeuntis sōlis) ultimīs aut (aquilōnis austrīve) partibus*: *reliquīs*, *ultimīs* refer to all *partibus*, while the partitive gentives, east (*orientis...sōlis*) or west (*obeuntis sōlis*), north or south (*aquilōnis austrīve*) enumerate them; *Quibus*: i.e., the furthest regions of the world.
- 208–210: *sī cupiat...prodere; prōlēs*: “offspring” (XLVI.851); *nostrum*: see note above on lines 200–201.
- 211: *tempore certō*: “at fixed times.”
- 214: *quid...interest + accusative and infinitive*: “what difference does it make that...”
- 215–216: *nūllus*: sc. *sermo*; *certē meliōrēs*: according to the persistent Roman belief that their ancestors were more virtuous than their contemporaries.
- 217–218: *nōmen nostrum*: adjective, not genitive of pronoun; *memoriam cōsequī*, “achieve the memory (of)”; *ūnīus annī*: i.e., of a year measured by the completion of all stellar rotations.
- 225: *dēficere sōl*: an eclipse of the sun; a second eclipse (l.228) will signal the end of a complete year.
- 230: *habētō*: future imperative, “consider the year complete.”

***Dē glōriā aeternā et animō immortālī*: 232–298**

- 233–234: *dēspērāveris*: perfect subjunctive in the protasis of a futureless-vivid condition; the sense of the condition: if you should lose hope of eternal life here, what value is the tiny bit of glory that you attain on earth? (i.e., “none”); *magnīs et praestantibus*

- virīs*: dative of possession with *omnia sunt*; *quantī*: genitive of value (Cap. XXIX).
- 236: *partem exiguam*: i.e., *vīcēsīmam partem* (ll.230–231).
- 237–239: *sī volēs...dēderis...posueris*: indicatives in a future-more-vivid condition.
- 241: *quid...loquantur*: indirect question; *ipsī videant*: jussive, “let them see to it” (i.e., that’s their concern, not yours).
- 247: *bene meritīs dē patriā*: *meritīs* is dative with *aditum patet*; the expression is idiomatic: to those who have “earned well” (proved deserving) from the point of view of someone else (*dē* + the ablative).
- 248–249: *vestigīs*: dative with *ingressus* (cf. our “followed in your foot-steps”); *decorī vestrō*: dative with intransitive *dēfui*.
- 251: *ēnītere*: imperative.
- 253: *mēns cuiusque is est quisque*: “the mind (heart, soul) of each person is that person”; *mēns* is that hegemonic principle of life (in the *Tusculan Disputations* 3.5, Cicero says *mēns cui regnum totius animī ā naturā tribūtum est*).
- 254–258: *tam...quam*.
- 258–260: *ut...sic*: “as...so”: POINTS OF STYLE, Cap. XIX; *mundum...mortālem*: object of *movet*.
- 261: *movētur*: “is in motion, moves itself,” not “is moved” (which implies an external propulsion); see line 265: *quod sē ipsum movet*.
- 266: *cēterīs*: dative with *hic fōns, hoc prīncipium*.
- 269–270: *nec enim esset id prīncipium quod gignerētur aliunde*: contrafactual (*quod* “whatever” instead of *sī*): “whatever arises/comes into being from another source (other than itself) could not be this beginnning/first principle/originator.”
- 271–272: *prīncipium exstīnctum*: the participle (as often) implies a condition: “if the beginning has been deprived of life.”
- 275–277: *vel concidat...cōsistat necesse est nec...nanciscātur*: see grammar section above on *necesse est* + the subjunctive; both subjects go with all verbs: *omne caelum omnisque nātūra concidat et cōsistat nec vim ūllam nanciscātur; quā moveātur*: generic/descriptive consecutive clause (see below l.280).

- 279–280: *quod...moveātur*: subordinate clause in indirect statement; *quis est qui...neget*: descriptive relative clause (Caps. XXXIX, XLII).
- 292–293: *dēdidērunt*: < *dēdere* + accusative and dative, “surrender” (Cap. XLI); *eārum* = *voluptātibus*.
- 294: *libīdinum*: genitive with *impulsū*; *oboedientium* agrees with *libīdinum*; *voluptātibus* is dative with *oboedientium*.
- 295: *corporibus*: ablative of separation with *ēlāpsī*.
- 296–297: *multīs...saeculīs*: ablative of time within which.

***Integer Vītae*: 299–325**

- 300–301: *carminum*: genitive plural of *carmen*, “lyric poem”; *Fuscum*: see introduction to this chapter above.
- 302: *integer vītae scelerisque pūrus*: epexegetical genitives (see grammar section).
- 303–304: *egēt*: *egēre* (Cap. XXXVII), like *carēre*, with ablatives of separation *iaculīs*, *arcū*, *gravidā phaeretrā*; *Maurus*, -a, -um: the *Maurī* live in *Maurētānia*; cf. Cap. LII.
- 306: *Syrtēs*: *Syrtis* (Greek Σύρτις) means “sandbank”; *Syrtis Māior* and *Syrtis Minor* are gulfs in the area of the Mediterranean Sea around Africa (see margins).
- 307: *facturus*: with *integer*, *pūrus*; *iter facere*: “journey.”
- 308: *Caucasus*: mountain range between Black Sea and Caspian Sea in Asia; cf. above, line 201 and margin; *quae loca* = *loca quae*; *fābulōsus*: “storied”; i.e., about which people tell a lot of stories.
- 309: *lambit*: like the *lupa* of XLI.230–231: *Quōs lupa nūtrit.../et lambit linguā corpora bīna suā*.
- 310: *namque*: introduces the exemplum that “proves” Horace’s assertion in lines 1–8 of the poem; *silvā...in Sabīnā*: Horace owned a farm and villa in the Sabine hills.
- 311: *Lalagēn*: A girl’s name, *Lalagē*, from the Greek Λαλαγή, related to the Greek verb “lalein” (λαλεῖν), which means “chat, prattle.”
- 312: *cūrīs...expeditīs*: *expedire* means “to unshackle the feet, to free”; it is used of light-armed soldiers who are free of heavy burdens (in this case, anxieties, *cūrae*) and thus able to travel quickly.

- 313: *inermem: sine armīs*, modifies *mē* (l.9).
 314: *portentum* (Cap. XLVI): “monster.”
 315: *Dauniās*: only here in Latin; Daunus a legendary king of Apulia (in the *Aeneid*, Turnus’s father); subject of *alit*.
 316–317: *Iuba*: king of Numidia and part of Mauretania (contemporary with Horace); *leōnum*: objective genitive with *nūtrix*; *ārīda nūtrix*: in apposition to *tellūs*.
 318: *piger, -ra, -rum* (Cap. XXI): “lazy” (see margins); *pigrīs*: ablative of place where.
 320: *latus*: i.e., the furthest edge.
 320–321: *urget*: agrees with *malus Iuppiter* but refers to *nebulae* as well.
 323: *domibus*: dative with *negātā*.

III. VOCĀBULA

NŌMINA

1st

illecebra, -ae	enticement, allurement
pharētra, -ae	quiver
pruīna, -ae	hoarfrost, rime
zōna, -ae	belt, zone

2nd

aesculētum, -ī	oak forest
aevum, -ī	lifetime, life
cingulus, -ī (also: cingulum, -ī)	belt
nōdus, -ī	knot, bond
pūctum, -ī	dot, point, speck
radius, -ī	ray

3rd

caelitēs, -um (m. pl.)	gods
candor, -ōris (m.)	whiteness, brightness
cōservātor, -ōris (m.)	savior, guardian
conversio, -ōnis (f.)	rotation, revolution
ēluviō, -ōnis (f.)	flood, inundation

exustiō, -ōnis (f.)	conflagration
fulgor, -ōris (m.)	flash; flash of lightning
limes, -ītis (m.)	path, track
moderātor, -ōris (m.)	ruler, director
pietās, -tātis (f.)	respect, devotion, dutiful conduct
posteritās, -tātis (f.)	future, posterity
tellūs, -ūris (f.)	earth
temperātiō, -ōnis (f.)	fit proportion, organizing principle

4th

ānfractus, -ūs	orbit (of the sun); lit. bending, recurving
concentus, -ūs	harmony
nūtus, -ūs	nod, gravitation
pulsus, -ūs	thrust, impulse

VERBA**-āre**

(amputō) amputāre	cut off
(animō) animāre	give life to
(collācrimō) collācrimāre	burst into tears
(dilatō) dilatāre	spread, expand
(laxō) laxāre	loose, untie, release
(lūstrō) lūstrāre	irradiate, purify, survey
(pervolō) pervolāre	move rapidly, rush, fly
(trānatō) trānatāre	swim across
(volūtō) volūtāre	roll, pass, whirl

-ēre

(arrīdeō) arrīdēre (< ridēre)	smile at
(cieō) ciēre, cīvisse, citum	set in motion, move
(contueor) contuērī (< tuērī)	look at, contemplate
(ēlūceō) ēlūcēre (< lūcēre)	shine forth

-ere

(accolō) accollere (< colere)	live near
(cohorrēscō) cohorrēscere	shudder
(cōnectō) cōnectere, -uisse, -xum	join together

(dēfugiō) dēfugere (< fugere)	escape, avoid
(īnfigō) īnfigere (< fīgere)	fix, fasten
(īngemēscō) īngemēscere	groan, moan
(īnsistō) īnsistere, -itisse	stand (on), pursue
(interrumpō) interrumpere (< rumpere)	break up, cut, interrupt
(obrigēscō) obrigēscere, -uisse	become stiff
(obsurdēscō) obsurdēscere, -uisse	become deaf
(offendō) offendere, -disse, -sum	hit upon, come upon, find
(renāscor) renāscī, -ātum	be reborn, be recreated
-īre	
(dēfīniō) dēfīnīre (< finīre)	delimit
(redimiō) redimīre, -isse, -ītum	encircle, surround

ADIECTĪVA

1st/2nd

aestīvus, -a, -um	of summer
aestuōsus, -a, -um	sweltering, seething
āridus, -a, -um	dry, barren
cadūcus, -a, -um	ready to fall, perishable
citimus, -a, -um (sup. of citer)	nearest
concitātus, -a, -um	fast, rapid
excelsus, -a, -um	lofty, high
excitātus, -a, -um (< excitāre Caps. XIV, XIX)	lively, vigorous, loud
extimus, -a, -um (sup. of exter)	outermost, farthest
fābulōsus, -a, -um	fabulous, celebrated in fable
globōsus, -a, -um	spherical, round
hērēditārius, -a, -um	inherited, hereditary
inanimus, -a, -um	lifeless, inanimate
incitātus, -a, -um (< incitāre Caps. XXXVII, XXXVIII)	fast-moving, rapid
lacteus, -a, -um	milky
rutilus, -a, -um	red
stēllifer, -era, -erum	star-bearing
subiectus, -a, -um (+ dat.)	situated under

torridus, -a, -um	scorched, parched
trānsversus, -a, -um	placed crosswise

3rd

alacer, -cris, -cre	lively, eager, keen
austrālis, -e	southern
fātālis, -e (cf. fātum, -ī Caps. XXXIV, XXXIX)	fateful, destined
fragilis, -e (< frangere Caps. XXIV, XLIII, XLVI)	fragile, frail
habitābilis, -e (< habitāre Caps. V, XLIII)	habitable
hebes (<i>gen.</i> hebetis)	dull, blunt
immōbilis, -e (< movēre)	immovable, motionless
inhospitālis, -e (< hospes, l.30, hospitālis, ll.42, 45)	inhospitable
lūnāris, -e (< luna, l.13)	of the moon, lunar
septentrionālis, -e (< septentrionēs, ll.16, 50)	northern

ADVERBIA

aliunde	from another place, person, thing
citrō: ultrō citrōque	to and fro, on both sides
quōcircā	hence, therefore
quoūque	how long? till when?
ōcius (<i>comp.</i> without positive)	quicker, sooner
octiēs (Cap. XXX: distributive numbers)	eight times
subter	below, underneath

Latin–English Vocabulary

Reprinted with permission from LINGVA LATINA PER SE ILLUSTRATA:
LATIN–ENGLISH VOCABULARY II. © Hans H. Ørberg 1998.

A

ā/ab/abs *prp + abl* from, of,
since, by
ab-aliēnāre turn away,
alienate
ab-dere -didisse -ditum
hide
ab-ditus -a -um hidden,
remote
ab-dūcere take away, carry
off
ab-errāre wander away, stray
ab-esse ā-fuisse be absent/
away/distant, fall short, be
wanting
ab-horrēre ab be inconsis-
tent with
ab-icere throw away
ab-igere -ēgisse -āctum
drive away
ab-ire -eō -iisse go away
ab-olēre efface, obliterate
ab-olēscere -ēvisse be
effaced/forgotten
ab-ripere drag away,
carry off
ab-rogāre repeal, cancel
ab-rumpere break off
abs *v.* ā/ab/abs
abs-cedere go away,
withdraw
absēns -entis *adi* absent
ab-solvere free, acquit
abs-terrēre frighten away,
deter
abs-tinēns -entis self-
restrained
abs-tinēre -uisse -tentum
keep off

abs-trahere remove,
separate
ab-sūmere consume,
waste, destroy
abundāns -antis overflow-
ing, abundant
abundantia -ae *f* overflow,
abundance
abundāre (+ *abl*) overflow,
be rich (in)
abundē amply, more than
needed
ab-ūti + *abl* use up, take
advantage of
ac *v.* atque/ac
ac-cedere approach, come
near
ac-cendere -disse
-ēnsūm light, inflame
acceptus -a -um + *dat* well-
liked, popular
accersere -ivisse -ītum
send for, fetch
accessiō -ōnis *f* addition,
accessory
ac-cidere -disse happen,
occur, be heard
ac-cingere gird, *pass* gird
oneself
ac-cipere receive, get,
hear
ac-cīre summon, send for
ac-clāmāre shout, proclaim
ac-colere live near
ac-commodāre fit, adapt
ac-cubāre recline at table
ac-cumbere -cubuisse lie
down at table
accūrātē carefully

ac-currere -rresse -rsum
come running
ac-cūsāre accuse
ācer -cris -cre keen, active,
fierce
acerbus -a -um sour, bitter
acervus -ī *m* heap, pile
aciēs -ēī *f* line of battle,
battle, sight
ac-quiēscere go to rest, die
ac-quirere -sīvisse
-sītum acquire, procure
ācta -ōrum *n pl* deeds,
actions
āctiō -ōnis *f* action, delivery
āctor -ōris *m* pleader,
advocate
acūtus -a -um sharp
ad *prp + acc* to, toward, by,
at, till
ad-amāre fall in love with
ad-dere -didisse -ditum
add
ad-dūcere lead, bring (to)
ad-eō *adv* to such a degree,
so, too
ad-esse af-fuisse (+ *dat*) be
present, stand by
ad-hortāri encourage, urge
on
ad-hortātor -ōris *m* one
who encourages
ad-hūc so far, till now, still
ad-icere add
ad-igere -ēgisse -āctum
drive, compel (to)
ad-imere -ēmisse
-ēptum take away
(from), steal

ad-ipīscī -eptum obtain	ad-vehere carry, convey (to)	aestimāre value, estimate
ad-īre -eō -iisse -itum go to, approach	advena -ae <i>m/f</i> immigrant, foreigner	aestīvus -a -um of summer
aditus -ūs <i>m</i> approach, access	ad-venīre arrive	aestuōsus -a -um sweltering, seething
ad-iungere join to, add, attach	adventāre approach	aetās -ātis <i>f</i> age, lifetime, life
ad-iuvāre help	adventicius -a -um from without, foreign	aeternus -a -um eternal, everlasting
ad-minister -trī <i>m</i> assistant, helper	adventus -ūs <i>m</i> arrival	aethēr -eris <i>m</i> heaven, upper air, ether
ad-ministra -ae <i>f</i> assistant, helper	adversārī oppose, resist	aevum -ī <i>n</i> time space, lifetime, life
ad-ministrāre conduct, administer	adversārius -ī <i>m</i> opponent, adversary	affectāre strive after, aspire to
ad-mīrārī admire, wonder at	adversus/-um <i>prp</i> + <i>acc</i> toward, against	affectus -a -um affected by illness, ill
admīrātiō -ōnis <i>f</i> wonder, admiration	adversus -a -um facing, opposed, front, contrary, unfavorable	affectus -ūs <i>m</i> mood, feeling
ad-miscēre mix (in), add	ad-vertēre turn, direct (toward)	af-ferre at-tulisse al-lātum bring, report, announce, bring about, cause
ad-mittere let in, admit	ad-vocāre call, summon	af-ferre affect, stir, visit with
ad-modum <i>adv</i> very much, quite	aedēs -is <i>f</i> temple, <i>pl</i> house	af-fingere add, fabricate
ad-monēre remind, advise, urge	aedificāre build	af-firmāre assert, affirm, prove
ad-monitus -ūs <i>m</i> advice, prompting	aedificium -ī <i>n</i> building	af-fligere -xisse -ctum cast down, deject, afflict
ad-movēre move near, put to	aedilicius -ī <i>m</i> ex-aedile	af-fluere flow near
admurmurātiō -ōnis <i>f</i> murmur	aedilis -is <i>m</i> aedile (magistrate)	Āfricus -ī <i>m</i> south-west wind
ad-nectere -xuisse -xum attach, connect	aedilitās -ātis <i>f</i> aedileship	age -ite + <i>imp</i> come (on)! well, now
ad-nīti exert oneself, strive	aeger -gra -grum sick, ill	ager -grī <i>m</i> field
adnotātiuncula -ae <i>f</i> short note	aegrē with pain, unwillingly	agere ēgisse āctum drive, do, perform, act, spend, live, <i>pass</i> go on
adolēscere -ēvisse grow up	aegrōtare be ill	agere (cum) discuss, plead
ad-optāre adopt	aegrōtus -a -um sick	agitur (rēs/dē rē) is at stake
adopt(āt)iō -ōnis <i>f</i> adoption	aēneus -a -um of bronze/ copper	āctum est (dē) it is all up (with)
ad-ōrāre worship, adore	aequābilis -e equal	agger -eris <i>m</i> rampart
ad-orīrī attack	aequābilitās -ātis <i>f</i> equality	ag-gredi -ior -gressum attack, set about, try
ad-ōrnāre equip	aequālis -is <i>m/f</i> person of the same age	agitāre move, stir, plan (vītam) agitāre live
ad-stāre stand by	aequāre make equal, equal	animō/sēcum agitāre think about, consider
ad-suēscere get accustomed	aequē equally	agitātiō -ōnis <i>f</i> brandishing
adolēscēns -entis <i>m</i> young man	aequinocetium -ī <i>n</i> equinox	agmen -inis <i>n</i> army on the march, file
adolēscētia -ae <i>f</i> youth	aequor -is <i>n</i> surface, sea	agna -a <i>f</i> ewe lamb
adulter -erī <i>m</i> adulterer	aequus -a -um level, equal, fair, calm	
adulterinus -a -um forged, false	āēr -eris <i>m</i> air	
adulterium -ī <i>n</i> adultery	aerārium -ī <i>n</i> public treasury	
adultus -a -um full-grown, adult	aerātus -a -um fitted with bronze	
aduncus -a -um hooked, curved	aereus -a -um of bronze/ copper	
	aes aeris <i>n</i> copper, bronze, money	
	aesculētum -ī <i>n</i> oak forest	
	aestās -ātis <i>f</i> summer	

agnōscere -ōvisse recognize
agnus -ī *m* lamb
agrārius -a -um agrarian
agrestis -e rustic, boorish,
m peasant
agricola -ae *m* farmer,
m peasant
ain' you don't say? really?
aiō ais ait aiunt say
āla -ae *f* wing
alacer -cris -cre lively,
eager, keen
ālātus -a -um winged
albus -a -um white
alere -uisse altum nurse,
feed, nourish
āles -itis *f* large bird
aliās *adv* at another time
al-ibi *adv* in another place,
elsewhere
alinēnigena -ae *m* foreigner,
stranger
aliēnus -a -um someone
else's
aliō *adv* elsewhere
ali-quamdiū for some time
ali-quandō once, at last
ali-quantum a good deal
ali-quī -qua -quod some
ali-quis -quid someone,
something
ali-quot *indēcl* some,
several
aliter otherwise
ali-unde from elsewhere,
from others
alius -a -ud another, other
alii...aliī some...others
alius aliā viā each in his
own way
al-licere -iō -lēxisse -lectum
attract
al-ligāre tie, fasten (to)
al-loquī speak to, address
altāria -ium *n pl* altar
altē deep, deeply
alter -era -erum one, the
other (of two), second
altitūdō -inis *f* height,
depth
altum -ī *n* the open sea
altus -a -um high, tall,
deep
alveus -ī *m* trough
amāns -antis *m* lover

amāre love
amārus -a -um bitter
amātōrius -a -um of love
ambō -ae -ō both, the two
ambulāre walk
ā-mēns -entis out of one's
mind, mad
amica -ae *f* girlfriend
amicitia -ae *f* friendship
amictus -ūs *m* mantle,
cloak
amicus -ī *m* friend
amicus -a -um friendly
ā-migrāre go away, remove
ā-mittere lose
amnis -is *m* river
amoenitās -ātis *f* pleasant-
ness, beauty
amoenus -a -um lovely,
pleasant
amor -ōris *m* love
amphitheātrum -ī *n*
amphitheater
amphora -ae *f* amphora
(jar)
am-plectī -xum embrace,
cling to
ampliāre enlarge
amplificāre enlarge
amplitūdō -inis *f* size,
extent, greatness
amplius *adv comp* more
amplus -a -um large, big
amputāre cut off
an or,...(really)? if
anceps -cipitis double,
undecided
ancile -is *n* sacred shield
ancilla -ae *f* female slave,
servant
ānfrāctus -ūs *m* orbit
(of the sun)
anguis -is *m* snake, serpent
angulus -ī *m* angle, corner
angustiae -ārum *f pl*
narrowness, pass, defile
angustus -a -um narrow
anima -ae *f* breath, life,
soul, ghost
anim-ad-vertere notice
animal -ālis *n* animal,
living being
animāre give life to
animus -ī *m* mind, soul,
courage

in animō est (mihi) I
have in mind, intend
annālēs -ium *m pl* annals
anniversārius -a -um
annual
annus -ī *m* year
annuus -a -um for one
year, annual
ante *prp + acc, adv* in front
of, before
anteā before, formerly
ante-capere anticipate
ante-cēdere precede,
surpass
ante-cellere surpass, excel
ante-ferre prefer
ante-hāc formerly
ante-īre precede, surpass
ante-pōnere place before,
prefer
ante-quam before
ante-venire forestall,
anticipate
antiquitās -ātis *f* antiquity,
ancient times
antiquus -a -um old,
ancient, former
antrum -ī *n* cave, cavern
ānulus -ī *m* ring
anus -ūs *f* old woman
ānxius -a -um worried,
worrying
aper *apri m* wild boar
aperire -uisse -rtum open,
disclose
apertus -a -um open
apis -is *f* bee
ap-parāre prepare, arrange
apparātus -ūs *m* prepara-
tion, equipment
ap-pārēre appear
appellāre call, address
ap-pellere drive, bring (to)
ap-petere try to reach,
seek, desire
ap-plicāre attach
ap-pōnere place (on),
serve
ap-portāre bring
ap-prehendere seize
ap-probāre approve
ap-propinquāre (+ *dat*)
approach, come near
apricus -a -um sunny
Aprilis -is (mēnsis) April

aptē neatly, aptly	armilla -ae <i>f</i> bracelet	atrōx -ōcis <i>adi</i> dreadful, atrocious
aptus -a -um suitable, convenient	ar-ridēre smile at	attat! ah!
apud <i>prp</i> + <i>acc</i> beside, near, by	ar-ripere grasp, take hold of	attentus -a -um attentive
aqua -ae <i>f</i> water	ar-roḡāre claim	at-tenuāre make thin, reduce
aquārī fetch water	ars artis <i>f</i> art, skill	at-terere wear (down), weaken
aquātor -ōris <i>m</i> one who fetches water	artifex -icis <i>m</i> craftsman, master, artist	at-tinēre <i>ad</i> concern, relate to
aquila -ae <i>f</i> eagle	articifium -ī <i>n</i> skill, art, cunning	at-tingere -tigisse -tāctum touch, reach, arrive at, adjoin
Aquilō -ōnis <i>m</i> north (north-east) wind	artus -a -um close, tight, deep	attonitus -a -um stunned, stupefied
āra -ae <i>f</i> altar	arvum -ī <i>n</i> (plowed) field	auctor -ōris <i>m</i> originator, founder, advocate, guarantor
arānea -ae <i>f</i> spider, cobweb	arx arcis <i>f</i> hill-top, citadel	auctor esse advise, advocate, relate
arāre plow	as assis <i>m</i> as (copper coin)	auctōritās -ātis <i>f</i> authorization, authority
arātor -ōris <i>m</i> plowman	a-scendere -disse climb, go up, mount	audācia -ae <i>f</i> boldness, audacity
arātrum -ī <i>n</i> plow	a-sciscere -īvisse -ītum admit, adopt	audāx -ācis <i>adi</i> bold, audacious
arbiter -trī <i>m</i> eyewitness, arbitrator	asinīnus -a -um ass's	audēre ausum esse dare, venture
arbitrārī think, believe	asinus -ī <i>m</i> ass, donkey	audire hear, listen
arbitrātus -ūs <i>m</i> choice, decision	asper -era -erum rough, harsh, grievous	dictō audiēns esse obey
arbitrium -ī <i>n</i> decision, wish	a-spergere -sisse -sum sprinkle, scatter (on)	au-ferre abs-tulisse ab-lātum carry off, take away
arbor -oris <i>f</i> tree	asperitās -ātis <i>f</i> roughness, ruggedness	au-fugere run away, escape
arcēre keep away	a-spicere look at, look	augēre -xisse -ctum increase
arcessere -īvisse -ītum send for, fetch	assēnsus -ūs <i>m</i> approval, assent	augēscere grow, increase
arcuātus -a -um arched	as-sentire/-rī + <i>dat</i> agree with, assent	augur -is <i>m</i> augur
arcus -ūs <i>m</i> bow, (triumphal) arch	as-sequī attain to, achieve	augurium -ī <i>n</i> augury, omen
ārdēns -entis burning, ardent	as-serere -uisse -rtum claim	augustus -a -um venerable, majestic
ārdere -sisse -sum burn	as-sidere sit down	Augustus -ī (mēnsis) August
ārdor -ōris <i>m</i> burning, fire, ardor	assiduitās -ātis <i>f</i> perseverance	aula -ae <i>f</i> palace
arduus -a -um steep	assiduus -a -um constantly present	aura -ae <i>f</i> breeze, wind
ārea -ae <i>f</i> open space, site	as-signāre assign, allocate	aurātus -a -um gilded
argenteus -a -um silver-, of silver	as-sumere take, lay claim to	aureus -a -um gold-, <i>m</i> gold piece
argentum -ī <i>n</i> silver	as-surgere rise	aurīga -ae <i>m</i> charioteer, driver
arguere -uisse -ūtum reveal, affirm, accuse	astrologus -ī <i>m</i> astronomer	auris -is <i>f</i> ear
argūmentum -ī <i>n</i> proof, argument	astrum -ī <i>n</i> star, constellation	aurōra -ae <i>f</i> dawn
āridus -a -um dry, barren	asylum -ī <i>n</i> refuge, asylum	aurum -ī <i>n</i> gold
ariēs -etis <i>m</i> ram, battering ram	at but, yet, at least	auspicārī take the auspices
arma -ōrum <i>n pl</i> arms	āter -tra -trum black, dark	
armāre arm, equip	āthlēta -ae <i>m</i> athlete, prizefighter	
armātūra -ae <i>f</i> armament, armed troops	atque/ac and, as, than	
armātus -a -um armed	atquī but, and yet	
amentum -ī <i>n</i> (herd of) cattle	ātrium -ī <i>n</i> main room, hall, house	

auspiciū -ī *n* omen taken from birds
Auster -trī *m* south wind
austrālis -e southern
aut or
 aut...aut either...or
autem but, however
autumnus -ī *m* autumn
auxiliū -ī *n* help, assistance
auxilia -ōrum *n pl* auxiliary forces
avāritia -ae *f* greed, avarice
avārus -a -um greedy, avaricious
ā-vehere carry off; *pass* go away
ā-vellere -lis -e -vulsum tear away
avēre be eager, desire, long
āversus -a -um having the back turned
ā-vertere turn aside, divert, avert
avidus -a -um (+ *gen*) greedy, eager
avis -is *f* bird
avitus -a -um of his grandfather
ā-volāre fly off, rush off
avunculus -ī *m* (maternal) uncle
avus -ī *m* grandfather

B

baculū -ī *n* stick
bālāre bleat
balneae -ārum *f pl* public baths
balneum -ī *n* bath, bathroom
barba -ae *f* beard
barbarus -a -um foreign, barbarian
basilica -ae *f* basilica
bāsium -ī *n* kiss
beātus -a -um happy
bellāre wage war, fight
bellātor -ōris *m* warrior
bellicōsus -a -um warlike
bellicus -a -um of war, military
bellum -ī *n* war
bellus -a -um lovely, pretty

bēlua -ae *f* beast, wild animal
bene well
beneficiū -ī *n* benefit, favor
benignus -a -um kind, benevolent
bēstia -ae *f* beast, animal
bēstiola -ae *f* small animal, insect
bibere -bis *e* drink
bibliothēca -ae *f* library
bīduum -ī *n* two days
biennium -ī *n* two years
bīnī -ae -a two (each)
bis twice
blandīrī coax, urge
blandus -a -um charming, ingratiating
boārius -a -um cattle-
bonum -ī *n* good, blessing
bonus -a -um good
bōs bovis *m/f* ox
bracchium -ī *n* arm
brevī *adv* soon
breviārium -ī *n* summary
brevis -e short
brūtus -a -um brutish

C

cachinnus -ī *m* laugh, guffaw
cadere cecidisce fall
cadūcus -a -um ready to fall, perishable
caecus -a -um blind
caedere cecidisce cae- sum beat, fell, kill
caedēs -is *f* killing, slaughter, blood
caelestis -e celestial, *m pl* gods
caelitēs -um *m pl* gods
caelum -ī *n* sky, heaven
caerimōnia -ae *f* rite, ceremony
calamitās -ātis *f* misfortune, calamity
calamus -ī *m* reed, pen
calcar -āris *m* spur
calceus -ī *m* shoe
calida -ae *f* hot water
calidus -a -um warm, hot
callidus -a -um clever, cunning
callis -is *f* track, path
calor -ōris *m* warmth, heat
campus -ī *m* plain
cancer -crī *m* crab, Cancer
candelābrum -ī *n* candle-
 brum
candidus -a -um white, bright
candor -ōris *m* whiteness, brightness
canere cecinisse sing, crow, play, sound, sing of, prophesy
canis -is *m/f* dog
cantāre sing, sing of
cantus -ūs *m* singing, music
capere -iō cēpisse cap- tum take, catch, capture, get, hold
capillus -ī *m* hair
capitulum -ī *n* chapter
capra -ae *f* goat
captivus -ī *m* prisoner-
 of-war
caput -itis *n* head, chief, capital, person, life, death
 penalty
carcer -eris *m* prison
cardō -inis *m* door pivot, hinge
carēre + *abl* be without, lack
carīna -ae *f* keel, ship
cāritās -ātis *f* high price, love, esteem
carmen -inis *n* song, poem
carō carnis *f* flesh, meat
carpentum -ī *n* two-
 wheeled carriage
carpere -psisse -ptum gather, pick, crop
cārus -a -um dear
casa -ae *f* cottage, hut
castellum -ī *n* fort, stronghold
castigāre correct, reprove
castigātor -ōris *m* one who
 reproves
castitās -ātis *f* chastity
castra -ōrum *n pl* camp
castus -a -um chaste
cāsus -ūs *m* fall, chance, accident
catēna -ae *f* chain

caterva -ae <i>f</i> band, troop, crowd	certāmen -inis <i>n</i> contest, fight	circum-vāllāre beset, surround
cauda -ae <i>f</i> tail	certāre contend, fight	circum-vehī go round, travel round
caudex -icis <i>m</i> trunk, blockhead	certē certainly, at any rate	circum-venire surround
causa -ae <i>f</i> cause, reason, case	certō <i>adv</i> for certain	circus -ī <i>m</i> circle, orbit, circus
<i>gen</i> (/meā) + causā for the sake of	certus -a -um certain, sure	cis <i>prp</i> + <i>acc</i> on this side of
causalis -e causal	certiōrem <i>facere</i> inform	citātus -a -um speeded up, swift
cautus -a -um cautious	certum <i>mihi</i> <i>est</i> my mind is made up	citerior -ius <i>comp</i> nearer
cavea -ae <i>f</i> cage, coop	cervus -ī <i>m</i> stag, deer	citimus -a -um <i>sup</i> nearest
cavēre <i>cāvisse</i> cautum beware (of)	cessāre leave off, cease	citō <i>adv</i> , <i>comp</i> citius quickly
cavus -a -um hollow	cēteri -ae -a the other(s), the rest	citrā <i>prp</i> + <i>acc</i> on this side of
cēdere <i>cessisse</i> go, withdraw	cēterum <i>adv</i> besides, however	citrō : <i>ultrō</i> <i>citrōque</i> to and fro, on both sides
cēlāre conceal (from)	cēterus -a -um remaining	civilis -e civic, civil
celeber -bris -bre crowded, well-known	charta -ae <i>f</i> paper	civis -is <i>m/f</i> citizen, countryman
celebrāre celebrate, extol	chronicī -ōrum (librī) annals	civitas -ātis <i>f</i> state, city, citizenship
celebrātus -a -um celebrated	cibus -ī <i>m</i> food	clādēs -is <i>f</i> disaster, defeat
celebritās -ātis <i>f</i> crowding, reputation	ciātrix -icis <i>f</i> scar	clām secretly
celer -eris -ere swift, quick	ciēre <i>civisse</i> <i>citum</i> set in motion, move	clāmāre shout
celeritās -ātis <i>f</i> speed, swiftness	cingere -nxisse -nctum surround	clāmitāre shout loudly
cella -ae <i>f</i> temple chamber, chapel	cingulus -ī <i>m</i> belt	clāmor -ōris <i>m</i> shout, shouting
celsus -a -um tall	cinis -eris <i>m</i> ashes	clandestīnus -a -um secret, clandestine
cēna -ae <i>f</i> dinner	-cipere -iō -cēpisse -ceptum	clāritūdō -inis <i>f</i> fame, renown
cēnāre dine, have dinner	circā <i>prp</i> + <i>acc</i> , <i>adv</i> round, round about	clārus -a -um bright, clear, loud, famous
cēnsere -uisse -sum think, decide, assess	circēnsēs -ium <i>m pl</i> games in the circus	classiārī -ōrum <i>m pl</i> marines
cēnsor -ōris <i>m</i> censor (magistrate)	circēnsis -e of the circus	classis -is <i>f</i> fleet, class (of citizens)
cēnsūra -ae <i>f</i> censorship	circiter about	claudere -sisse -sum shut, close, enclose
cēnsus -ūs <i>m</i> assessment, registration	circu-īre -eō -iisse -itum go round, outflank	claudus -a -um lame
centēsimus -a -um hundredth	circuitus -ūs <i>m</i> rotation, circumference	clāva -ae <i>f</i> club, cudgel
centum a hundred	circum <i>prp</i> + <i>acc</i> , <i>adv</i> round, round about	clāvis -is <i>f</i> key
centuria -ae <i>f</i> century (unit of 100)	circum-agere cause to turn round	clēmēns -entis <i>adi</i> mild, lenient
centuriātus -a -um voting in centuries	circum-dare surround, put round	clēmētia -ae <i>f</i> clemency, mercy
centuriātus -ūs <i>m</i> office of centurion	circum-dūcere lead round	clibanārius -ī <i>m</i> cuirassier
centuriō -ōnis <i>m</i> centurion (officer)	circum-fundere pour/ spread round	clipeus -ī <i>m</i> round shield
cēra -ae <i>f</i> wax	circum-īre -eō -iisse -itum go round/about, outflank	clivus -ī <i>m</i> slope, sloping street
cerebrum -ī <i>n</i> brain	circum-sedēre besiege	cloāca -ae <i>f</i> sewer
cernere <i>crēvisse</i> <i>crētum</i> discern, perceive	circum-silire -uisse hop about	co-alēscere -aluisse grow together, coalesce
	circum-sistere -stitisse surround	
	circum-stāre stand round, surround	

- cocus** -ī *m* cook
coep- coept- *v.* incipere
coepta -ōrum *n pl* under-
 taking, enterprise
co-ercēre keep in control,
 restrain
coetus -ūs *m* gathering,
 society
cōgere co-ēgisse -āctum
 compel, force, summon
cōgitāre think
cōgitātiō -ōnis *f* thought,
 reflection
cognātus -a -um related
cognitiō -ōnis *f* getting to
 know, study
cognōmen -inis *n* surname
cognōmentum -ī *n* surname
cognōscere -ōvisse -itum
 get to know, recognize
co-horrēscere -ruisse
 shudder
cohors -rtis *f* cohort,
 bodyguard
cohortārī exhort
cohortātiō -ōnis *f*
 exhortation
co-ire -eō -iisse -itum
 come together, gather
colere -uisse cultum culti-
 vate, foster, devote oneself
 to, worship
col-lābī fall down, collapse
col-lacrimāre burst into
 tears
col-laudāre commend,
 praise
collēctiō -ōnis *f* collecting,
 gathering
collēga -ae *m* colleague
col-ligāre tie up, bind
col-ligere -lēgisse -lēctum
 gather, collect
collis -is *m* hill
col-locāre place
col-loquī talk, converse
colloquium -ī *n* conversa-
 tion, parley
col-lūcēre shine
collum -ī *n* neck
colōnia -ae *f* settlement,
 colony
colōnus -ī *m* (tenant-)
 farmer, settler
color -ōris *m* color
- colossus** -ī *m* large statue,
 colossus
columba -ae *f* pigeon, dove
columna -ae *f* column
coma -ae *f* hair
comes -itis *m* companion
cōmicus -a -um of comedy,
 comic
cōmis -e kind
comitārī accompany
comitātus -ūs *m* escort,
 retinue
comitia -ōrum *n pl* assem-
 bly of the people
commeātus -ūs *m* supplies,
 provisions
com-memorāre mention
com-mendāre entrust,
 commit
commendātiō -ōnis *f*
 recommendation, praise
commentārī think about,
 practice
commentārius -ī *m* note-
 book, record
com-migrāre move, go
 and live
com-mittere engage (in
 battle), entrust, expose (to)
commodum -ī *n* advantage,
 interest
com-morārī stay, linger
commōtus -a -um excited,
 passionate
com-movēre move, excite,
 cause
communicāre share
commūniō -ōnis *f* partner-
 ship, sharing
com-mūnīre fortify
commūnis -e common
com-mūtāre change
 (completely)
commūtātiō -ōnis *f* change
cōmoedia -ae *f* comedy
com-parāre (1) prepare,
 provide
com-parāre (2) compare
comparātiō -ōnis *f*
 (1) preparation,
 provision
comparātiō -ōnis *f*
 (2) comparison
com-pārere appear
com-pellere drive, force
- com-perire** -risse -rtum
 find out, learn, discover
com-plectī -plexum hug,
 embrace, surround,
 include
com-plēre -ēvisse -ētum
 fill, complete
complexus -ūs *m* embrace
com-plōrāre lament,
 bewail
complōrātiō -ōnis *f*
 lamentation
com-plūrēs -a several
com-pōnere settle,
 arrange, compose
compos -otis + *gen* in
 possession of
compositum: ex c.ō by
 prearrangement
compositus -a -um well-
 ordered, compound
com-prehendere seize,
 include
com-primere -pressisse
 -pressum compress,
 crush, suppress, rape
com-probāre approve,
 confirm
com-putāre calculate,
 reckon
cōnārī attempt, try
con-cēdere go (away),
 yield, give up, concede,
 allow
concentus -ūs *m* harmony
con-certāre fight
con-cidere -disse fall
 (down), collapse
con-cidere -disse -sum kill,
 beat
con-ciēre -cīvisse -citum
 stir up, excite
conciliāre win over
concilium -ī *n* assembly,
 league
con-cipere receive, catch,
 conceive
con-citāre stir up, incite
concitātus -a -um fast,
 rapid
con-clāmāre shout, cry out
concordia -a *f* concord
concors -rdis *adi* harmoni-
 ous, concordant
concubina -ae *f* concubine

con-cumbere -cubuisse sleep (with)	con-gerere bring together, collect	cōn-siderāre observe, reflect
con-cupiscere -īvisse desire, covet	con-gredi -ior -gressum meet, join battle, fight	cōnsiderātiō -ōnis <i>f</i> obser- vation, reflection
con-currere -rresse -rsum hurry together, clash	con-gregāre bring together, gather	cōn-sidere -sēdisse sit down, settle
concursum -ūs <i>m</i> concourse, encounter	con-icere throw, put	cōnsilium -ī <i>n</i> advice, decision, council,
con-cutere -iō-ssisse -ssum shake	coniectūra -ae <i>f</i> inferring, conjecture	intention, plan, sense
con-demnāre condemn	con-iugium -ī <i>n</i> marriage	cōn-sistere -stitisse stop, halt
con-dere -didisse -ditum put, hide, found, close	con-iunctiō -ōnis <i>f</i> union, conjunction	cōn-sociāre associate, share
condiciō -ōnis <i>f</i> condition	coniunctus -a -um con- nected, associated	cōn-solāri comfort, console
conditor -ōris <i>m</i> founder	con-iungere join, connect	cōnsonāns -antis <i>f</i> consonant
cō-nectere join together	coniūnx -iugis <i>m/f</i> consort, wife	cōnspectus -a -um con- spicuous, remarkable
cōn-ferre con-tulisse col-lātum bring (together), carry, confer, compare, apply	con-iūrāre swear together, conspire	cōnspectus -ūs <i>m</i> sight, view, survey
sē cōnferre betake oneself, go	coniūrātus -a -um sworn, joined by an oath	cōn-spicere catch sight of, see
arma/signa cōnferre join battle, fight	con-iūrāti -ōrum <i>m pl</i> the conspirators	cōnspiciuus -a -um con- spicuous, spectacular
cōnfertus -a -um dense, compact	con-iūrātiō -ōnis <i>f</i> con- spiracy, plot	cōnspirātiō -ōnis <i>f</i> agree- ment, conspiracy
cōnfessio -ōnis <i>f</i> admission, confession	con-quiēscere rest	cōnstāns -antis <i>adi</i> steady, firm
cōnfestim at once, immediately	con-quirere -sīvisse -sītum search out, investigate	cōnstantia -ae <i>f</i> steadiness, persistence
cōn-ficere make, accom- plish, exhaust, subdue, kill	cōn-salūtāre greet, hail	cōn-stāre -stitisse stand firm, remain, cost
cōn-fidentia ae <i>f</i> self- confidence	cōn-scendere -disse mount, board	cōnstāre ex consist of cōnstat it is a fact, is is known
cōn-fidere (+ <i>dat</i>) trust, be sure	cōn-sciscere -īvisse -ītum decree, inflict (on)	cōn-stituere -uisse -ūtum establish, erect, set up, fix, decide
cōnfinis -e adjacent, neighboring	cōnscius -a -um (+ <i>gen</i>) privy (to), accomplice	cōnstitutiō -ōnis <i>f</i> organization
cōn-firmāre assure, encourage	cōn-scribere enrol, compose, write	cōn-suētūdō -inis <i>f</i> custom, habit
cōn-fitēri -fessum confess	cōnscripti : patrēs c. senators	cōn-suēscere -ēvisse get used/accustomed to
cōn-flagrāre be burnt	cōn-secrāre consecrate, deify	cōn-suēvisse <i>perf</i> be accustomed
cōnflctāre harass, distress	cōn-senēscere -nuisse grow old	cōnsul -is <i>m</i> (cōs.) consul
cōn-fligere -xisse -ctum clash, fight	cōnsensus -ūs <i>m</i> concord, agreement	cōnsulāris -e consular, <i>m</i> ex-consul
cōn-fluentēs -ium <i>m pl</i> confluence	cōn-sentire agree (on)	cōnsulātus -ūs <i>m</i> consulate
cōn-fluere flow together, meet	cōn-sequi follow, overtake, achieve	cōn-sulere -uisse -ltum consult, take counsel
cōn-fugere flee for refuge	cōn-serere -uisse -rtum join	cōnsulere + <i>dat</i> look after, take care of
cōn-fundere mingle, upset, confuse	manum cōnserere join battle	
cōnfusio -ōnis <i>f</i> disorder, confusion	cōn-servāre preserve, maintain	
	cōn-servātor -ōris <i>m</i> savior, guardian	

- cōnsultāre** deliberate, debate
cōsultō *adv* deliberately
cōnsultor -ōris *m* adviser, counselor
cōnsultum -ī *n* resolution
cōn-sūmere use up, spend, exhaust
cōn-surgere stand up, rise
con-temnere -mpsisse -mptum despise, scorn
con-templāri look at, observe
contemptus -a -um despicable
con-tendere -disse -tum strain, exert (oneself), hasten, contend
contentiō -ōnis *f* tension, exertion, contest, comparison
contentus -a -um content
con-ticēscere -ticuisse fall silent
continēns -entis *adi* unbroken, adjacent
continēns -entis *f* (terra) continent
continentia -ae *f* restraint, self-control
con-tinēre -uisse -tentum keep, retain, contain
con-tingere -tigisse touch, be close to, (+ *dat*)
 -tāctum be granted to, happen
continuāre continue, prolong
continuō *adv* immediately
continuus -a -um continuous, successive
cōntiō -ōnis *f* meeting, assembly
cōntiōnārī address a meeting
contrā *prp* + *acc, adv* against, facing, on the other side, in return
contrā-dicere speak against, oppose
con-trahere contract, wrinkle
contrārius -a -um opposite, contrary
con-tremēscere -muisse tremble, quake
con-tuērī look at, contemplate
contumēlia -ae *f* insult, affront
contumeliōsus -a -um insulting, outrageous
con-turbāre mix up, confound
cōnūbium -ī *n* marriage, intermarriage
con-valēscere -luisse grow strong, recover
convallis -is *f* valley
con-vehere carry, gather
con-venire come together, meet, be agreed, be settled
 convenire (*ad* + *dat*) fit, be fitting
conventus -ūs *m* meeting
conversio -ōnis *f* rotation, revolution
con-vertere turn, change
con-vincere find guilty, convict
conviva -ae *m/f* guest
convivium -ī *n* dinner-party
con-vocāre call together
co-optāre choose (as colleague)
co-oriri break out, arise
cōpia -ae *f* abundance, means, control, *pl* resources, troops
cōpulāre join, connect
cōpulātivus -a -um copulative
coquere -xisse -ctum cook
cor cordis *n* heart
 cordi esse + *dat* be dear/pleasing
cōram *prp* + *abl, adv* before, in person
cornicen -inis *m* horn-blower, bugler
cornū -ūs *n* horn, wing (of army)
corōna -ae *f* wreath
corpus -oris *n* body
cor-rigere -rēxisse -rēctum correct
cor-ripere seize, rebuke
 sē corripere start up, hurry off
cor-rumpere spoil, corrupt, bribe
corvus -ī *m* raven
cotidiē every day
crās tomorrow
crassus -a -um thick, fat
crātis -is *f* hurdle (of wickerwork)
creāre create, appoint
crēber -bra -brum frequent, numerous
crēdere -didisse -ditum believe, trust, entrust
cremare burn, cremate
crēscere -ēvisse grow, increase
crimen -inis *n* charge, accusation
crimīnārī accuse
crinis -is *m* hair
cruciāre torture, torment
cruciātus -ūs *m* torture
crūdēlis -e cruel
crūdēlitas -ātis *f* cruelty
cruentus -a -um blood-stained, bloody
crur -ōris *m* blood
crūs -ūris *n* leg
crux -ucis *f* cross
cubāre -uisse -itum lie (in bed)
cubiculum -ī *n* bedroom
cubile -is *n* bed, couch
culīna -ae *f* kitchen
culmen -inis *n* summit, top, peak, roof
culpa -ae *f* blame, fault, guilt
culter -trī *m* knife
cultūra -a *f* cultivation
cultus -ūs *m* cultivation, care, mode of life, worship
cum *prp* + *abl* with
cum coniunctiō when, as
 cum primum + *perf* as soon as
 cum...tum... not only... but also
cūnābula -ōrum *n pl* cradle
cūnae -ārum *f pl* cradle
cūctārī hesitate

cūctātor -ōris *m* one who hesitates
cūctus -a -um whole, *pl* all
cuneus -ī *m* wedge
cupere -iō -īvisse desire
cupiditās -ātis *f* desire
cupidō -inis *f* desire, passion
cupidus -a -um (+ *gen*) desirous (of), eager (for)
cūr why
cūra -ae *f* care, anxiety, concern
 cūrae esse + dat be of concern
cūrāre care for, look after, take care, undertake
 curāre + acc., ger. undertake
cūria -ae *f* curia (division of the people, Senate-house)
currere cucurrisse run
currus -ūs *m* chariot
cursus -ūs *m* running, race, journey, course, orbit, career
curvus -a -um curved, crooked, bent
cūstōdia -ae *f* guard, custody, post
cūstōdire guard
cūstōs -ōdis *m* guardian, guard

D

dactylus -ī *m* dactyl (—UU)
damnāre condemn, sentence
damnum -ī *n* loss
dapēs -um *f pl* feast, meal, food
dare dedisse datum give
 sē dare give oneself up (to)
dē prp + abl (down) from, of, about, for, after
dea -ae *f, pl dat/abl* -ābus goddess
dē-bellāre finish the war, subdue
dēbere owe, be obliged
dēbilis -e weak

dēbilitāre weaken
dē-cēdere go away, depart, die
decem ten
December -bris (mēnsis) December
decem-virī -ōrum *m pl* commission of ten
decēre be fitting, become
dē-cernere decide, settle, fight
decies ten times
decimus -a -um tenth
dē-cipere deceive
dē-clām(it)āre make practice speeches
dē-clārāre show, declare, express
dēclīnāre decline, inflect
decor -ōris *m* beauty, grace
decorāre adorn, glorify
decōrus -a -um handsome
dēcrētum -ī *n* resolution, decree
decuma -ae *f* tithe
dē-currere -rrisse -rsum run down
decus -oris *n* honor, ornament
dē-cutere -iō -cussisse -cussum knock off
dē-decus -oris *n* disgrace, dishonor
dē-dere -didisse -ditum give up, devote
dē-dicāre dedicate
dēditio -ōnis *f* surrender, capitulation
dē-dūcere lead/bring down, launch
dē-esse dē-fuisse (+ *dat*) be missing, fail
dē-fendere -disse -ēnsum defend, maintain
dēfensāre defend
dēfensor -ōris *m* defender
dē-ferre carry, bring, report, confer, denounce
dē-fervēscere calm down
dēfessus -a -um worn out, tired
dē-ficere fail, sink, wane, defect
dē-figere fix, thrust, paralyse

dē-finire delimit
dē-flēre weep for
dē-fōrmis -e ugly
dēfōrmitās -ātis *f* ugliness
dē-fugere escape, avoid
dē-fungi finish, have done, die
dē-hinc next, then
dē-icere throw/bring down
dein afterward, then
deinceps in succession, next
dē-inde/dein afterward, then
dē-iūrāre swear
dē-lābī slip down, descend
dēlectāre delight, please
dēlectātiō -ōnis *m* delight, pleasure
dēlere -ēvisse -ētum delete, efface, destroy
dē-liberāre deliberate
dē-liberātiō -ōnis *f* liberation
dēliciae -ārum *f pl* delight, pet
dēlictum -ī *n* misdeed, offense
dē-ligāre tie up, fasten
dē-ligere -lēgisse -lēctum pick out, choose
dē-linquere misbehave, do wrong
dēlirāre be mad
dē-litēscere -tuisse hide oneself
dēlphīnus -ī *m* dolphin
dēlūbrum -ī *n* temple, shrine
dē-mandāre entrust, hand over
dē-mēns -ēntis out of one's mind, mad
dēmere -mpsisse -mptum remove
dē-mergere sink, plunge
dē-mittere let fall, drop, lower
dē-mōnstrāre point out, show
dēmum *adv* at last, only
dēnārius -ī *m* denarius (silver coin)
dēnī -ae -a ten (each)
dēnique finally, at last

- dēns** *dentis m* tooth
dēnsus -a -um thick, dense
dē-nūntiāre announce, order
dē-nuō anew, again
deorsum *adv* down
dē-pellere drive down/off, avert
dē-pōnere put/lay down, deposit
dē-populārī sack, plunder
dē-populātiō -ōnis *f* plundering
dē-portāre convey, bring back
dē-poscere demand
dē-prāvāre pervert
dē-precārī beg, entreat
dē-precātiō -ōnis *f* entreaty, plea
dē-prehendere/-prēndere seize, come on, surprise
dē-primere -essisse -essum press down, sink
dē-prōmere take out
dēpulsio -ōnis *f* rebuttal
dē-relinquere leave behind
dē-rīdēre laugh at, make fun of
dē-scendere -disse go down, descend
dē-sciscere -ivisse -itum defect
dē-scribere draw, describe
dē-serere -uisse -rtum leave, desert
dēsertus -a -um deserted
dēsiderāre long for, miss
dēsiderium -ī *n* desire, longing
dē-signāre mark out
dēsīgnātus -a -um appointed, designate
dē-silire -uisse jump down
dē-sinere -siisse -situm finish, stop, end
dē-sipere -iō be out of one's mind
dē-sistere -stitisse leave off, cease
dē-spērāre lose hope, despair (of)
dēspērātiō -ōnis *f* despair
dē-spicere look down (on), despise
dē-spondere -disse -sum betroth, engage
dēstināre designate, destine
dē-struere demolish
dē-tegere disclose
dē-tergēre wipe off
dēterior -ius *comp* worse
dē-terrere deter
dēterrīmus -a -um *sup* worst
dē-trahere pull off
dētrīmentum -ī *n* harm, loss
dē-ūrere burn
deus -ī *m*, *pl* deī/diī/dī god
dē-vehere carry, convey
dē-venire come, arrive
dē-vincere defeat completely
dē-vincire bind
dē-vocāre call away, divert
dē-vorāre swallow up, devour
dexter -t(e)ra -t(e)rum right; *f* right hand, the right
dicāre dedicate
dicere -xisse dictum say, call, speak
diciō -ōnis *f* dominion, power
dictāre dictate
dictātor -ōris *m* dictator
dictātūra -ae *f* dictatorship
dictitāre keep saying
dictum -ī *n* saying, words
dictō audiēns esse obey
diēs -ēī *m* (*f*) day, date
in diēs daily
dif-ferre dis-tulisse dilātum postpone, defer, differ
dif-ficilis -e, *sup* -illimus difficult, hard
difficultās -ātis *f* difficulty
difficulter *adv* with difficulty
dif-fidere + *dat* distrust, despair of
dif-fluere overflow
digitus -ī *m* finger
dignitās -ātis *f* worthiness, dignity, rank
dignus -a -um worthy
dī-gredi -ior -gressum go away, depart
dī-lābi fall apart, perish
dī-lacerāre tear to pieces
dī-lātāre spread, expand
dīlēctus -a -um beloved, dear
dīlēctus -ūs *m* recruitment
diligēns -entis *adi* careful, diligent
diligentia -ae *f* carefulness
diligere -ēxisse -ēctum love, be fond of
dī-lūcēscere -lūxisse dawn, become light
dī-micāre fight
dīmīcatiō -ōnis *f* fight
dīmidium -ī *n* half
dīmidius -a -um half
dī-mittere send away, dismiss
diphthongus -ī *f* diphthong
dī-rigere -rēxisse -rēctum arrange, direct
dīr-imere -ēmisse -ēmtum divide, interrupt
dī-ripere plunder, loot, rob
dī-ruere demolish
dīrus -a -um dreadful
dis-cēdere go away, depart
dis-ceptāre debate, discuss
discere didicisse learn
dis-cernere distinguish
discessus -ūs *m* departure
disciplina -ae *f* instruction, discipline
discipulus -ī *m* pupil, disciple
discordia -ae *f* disagree-ment, discord
dī-scribere divide up, distribute
discrīmen -inis *n* distinction, grave danger
discriptiō -ōnis *f* distribution
dis-cumbere -cubuisse take one's place at table
dis-currere -rrisse -rsum run in several directions
disertus -a -um eloquent
dis-icere scatter, break up
disiūnctivus -a -um separative, disjunctive
dis-iūnctus -a -um distant
dis-iungere separate

dis-pālārī wander about	dī-vulgāre make public,	ductor -ōris <i>m</i> leader
dis-pār -paris <i>adi</i> unequal,	divulge	ductus -ūs <i>m</i> leadership,
different	divum -ī <i>n</i> the open sky	command
dis-pellere drive apart	divus -a -um divine, <i>m</i> god	aquae ductus aqueduct
dis-spergere -sisse -sum	docēre -uisse doctum	dūdum <i>adv</i> a little while
scatter, disperse	teach, instruct, produce	ago
dis-plicēre + <i>dat</i> displease,	doctor -ōris <i>m</i> teacher	duellum -ī <i>n</i> war
offend	doctrīna -ae <i>f</i> teaching,	dulcis -e sweet
dis-pōnere arrange, station	instruction	dum while, as long as, till,
dis-putāre argue, discuss	doctus -a -um learned,	provided that, if only
disputātiō -ōnis <i>f</i> argu-	skilled	dum-modo provided that,
ment, discussion	documentum -ī <i>n</i> example,	if only
dissēnsiō -ōnis <i>f</i>	proof	dumtaxat only, just
disagreement	dolēre hurt, feel pain, grieve	duo -ae -o two
dis-sentire disagree	dolor -ōris <i>m</i> pain, grief	duo-decim twelve
dis-serere -uisse -rtum	dolus -ī <i>m</i> guile, deceit,	duo-decim -a -um
discuss	cunning	twelfth
dis-sidēre -sēdisse	domāre -uisse -itum tame,	duo-dē-trigintā twenty-
disagree, differ	subdue	eight
dis-similis -e unlike,	domesticus -a -um domes-	duo-dē-viginti eighteen
different	tic, household-	duplex -icis <i>adi</i> double
dis-simulāre conceal	domī <i>loc</i> at home	duplicāre double
dis-sipāre scatter, spread	domicilium -ī <i>n</i> dwelling,	dūrāre harden, hold out,
dis-suādēre advise not to	residence	last
di-stāre be distant	domina -ae <i>f</i> mistress	dūrus -a -um hard
di-stinguere -stinxisse	dominārī be master, rule	duum-virī -ōrum <i>m pl</i>
-stinctum distinguish,	dominātiō -ōnis <i>f</i> domin-	board of two men
mark, characterize	ion, power	dux ducis <i>m</i> leader, chief,
dis-trahere pull apart,	dominātus -ūs <i>m</i> domin-	general
break up	ion, power	
dis-tribuere divide,	dominus -ī <i>m</i> master	E
distribute, share	domum <i>adv</i> home	ē <i>v. ex/ē</i>
districtus -a -um busy	domus -ūs <i>f, abl</i> -ō house,	eā <i>adv</i> that way, there
dītāre enrich	home	ēbrius -a -um drunk
diū , <i>comp</i> diūtius, <i>sup</i>	dōnāre give, present with	ecce see, look, here is
diūtissimē long	dōnec as long as, until	ecquid ...? if, whether
diurnus -a -um of the day,	dōnum -ī <i>n</i> gift, present,	ec-quis/quī (if) any(one)?
daily	reward	edepol by Pollux!
diūtinus -a -um long,	dormire sleep	ē-dere -didisse
prolonged	dorsum -ī <i>n</i> back, ridge	-ditum emit, bring forth,
diūturnitās -ātis <i>f</i> long	dubitāre doubt, be in doubt	make known, publish, do
duration	dubitāre + <i>inf</i> hesitate	ē-dicere decree, fix
diūturnus -a -um long,	dubius -a -um undecided,	ē-disserere set forth,
prolonged	doubtful	expound
diversus -a -um opposite,	<i>n:</i> sine/procul	ēducāre bring up
different	dubiō without doubt,	ē-dūcere lead out, draw out
dīves -itis/dīs dītis <i>adi</i> rich,	certainly	ef-ferre ex-tulisse ē-lātum
wealthy	du-centēsimus -a -um two	carry/bring out, lift, elate
dividere -īsisse -īsum sepa-	hundredth	sē efferre exult
rate, divide, share	du-centī -ae -a two	ef-ficere make, effect,
divinitus <i>adv</i> by divine will	hundred	cause
divinus -a -um divine	dūcere -xisse ductum lead,	effigies -ēī <i>f</i> likeness,
divisiō -ōnis <i>f</i> division	guide, draw, trace,	portrait
divitiae -ārum <i>f pl</i> riches	construct, consider	ef-fringere -ēgisse -āctum
divortium -ī <i>n</i> divorce	uxōrem dūcere marry	break open

ef-fugere escape, run away, avoid	ē-nīti -nīsum strive, exert oneself	ē-vādere -sisse -sum get out, escape, pass, turn out
ef-fulgēre shine forth	ēnsis -is <i>m</i> sword	ē-vānēscere -nuisse vanish, disappear
ef-fundere shed, overflow, loosen	ē-numerāre count up, enumerate	ē-vehere carry out, <i>pass</i> ride out
effusus -a -um disorderly, headlong	eō <i>adv</i> to that place, there	ē-venire happen, fall by lot
egēns -entis poor, needy	eōdem <i>adv</i> to the same place	ēventus -ūs <i>m</i> outcome, result
egēre + <i>abl</i> need	epigramma -atis <i>n</i> epigram	ē-vertere overturn, overthrow
ego mē mihi/mī (<i>gen</i> mēi) I, me, myself	epistula -ae <i>f</i> letter	ē-vincere persuade, bring about
ego-met I (myself)	epulae -ārum <i>f</i> meal, feast	ē-vocāre call out, summon
ē-gredi -ior -gressum go out, go beyond	epulārī dine, feast	ē-volāre fly out
ēgregius -a -um outstanding, excellent	eques -itis <i>m</i> horseman, knight	ē-volvere unroll
ēgressus -ūs <i>m</i> going out	equester -tris -tre cavalry-, equestrian	ex/ē <i>prp</i> + <i>abl</i> out of, from, of, since, after, according to
eia ah! hey!	equidem indeed, for my part	ex-aequāre make equal
ē-icere throw out	equitāre ride on horseback	ex-agitāre stir, worry, harass
sē ēicere rush out	equitātus -ūs <i>m</i> cavalry	ex-animāre kill, <i>pass</i> die
ē-lābi slip out, escape	equus -ī <i>m</i> horse	ex-ārdēscere -ārisse flare up
ē-labōrāre work out, prepare	ergā <i>prp</i> + <i>acc</i> toward	ex-audire hear
ēlēctus -a -um selected, picked	ergō therefore, so	ex-cēdere go away, depart
ēlegāns -antis <i>adi</i> refined, skilful	ē-rigere -rēxisse -rēctum lift, erect, cheer	excellēns -entis <i>adi</i> outstanding
elephantus -ī <i>m</i> elephant	ē-ripere -iō -uisse -reptum snatch away, deprive of	ex-cellere be outstanding, excel
ē-lidere -sisse -sum omit, elide	errāre wander, stray	excelsus -a -um lofty, high
ē-ligere -lēgissee -lēctum choose, select	error -ōris <i>m</i> wandering, error	ex-cerpere -psisse -ptum pick out
ēloquēns -entis <i>adi</i> eloquent	ē-rubēscere -buisse blush	excessus -ūs <i>m</i> departure, death
ēloquentia -ae <i>f</i> eloquence	ē-rudire instruct, educate	ex-cidere -disse fall out, be dropped
ē-loquī express, tell	ēruditus -a -um well-instructed, learned	ex-cidere -disse -sum destroy
ē-lūcere shine forth	ē-ruere -ruisse -rutum unearth, clear up	excidium -ī <i>n</i> destruction
ē-lūcubrāre prepare by lamplight	ē-rumpere break out	ex-cipere receive, catch
ē-lūdere deceive, mock	ēruptiō -ōnis <i>f</i> sally, sortie	ex-cīre -cīvisse call out, summon
ēluviō -ōnis <i>f</i> flood, inundation	erus -ī <i>m</i> master	ex-citāre wake up, arouse
emere ēmissee ēmptum buy	ē-scendere -disse ascend, go up	excitātus -a -um loud, shrill
ē-mergere come out, emerge	esse sum fuisse futūrum esse/fore be	ex-clāmāre cry out, exclaim
ē-minēre stick out, project	ēssee edō ēdissee ēsum eat	ex-clūdere -sisse -sum shut out, cut off
ē-mittere send out, emit, utter	et and, also	ex-cōgitāre think out, devise
ēemptor -ōris <i>m</i> buyer	et...et both...and	ex-cruciāre torture, torment
ē-mūnīre fortify	et-enim and indeed, for	
ēn look, here is	etiam also, even, yet	
ē-nervāre weaken, enervate	etiam atque etiam again and again	
enim for	etiam-nunc still	
enim-vērō truly, certainly	et-sī even if, although	
	euax! bravo!	
	Eurus -ī <i>m</i> south-east wind	

ex-currere -rresse -rsum
run out, rush out
excursiō -ōnis *f* sortie, sally
ex-cūsāre excuse
exemplar -āris *n* pattern,
model
exemplum -ī *n* example,
model
ex-ercēre exercise, practice,
worry
exercitāre train, exercise
exercitātiō -ōnis *f* exercise,
practice
exercitātus -a -um prac-
ticed, proficient
exercitus -ūs *m* army
ex-haurire drain, empty,
exhaust, endure
ex-igere -ēgis -āctum
drive out, exact, require,
pass
exiguus -a -um small,
scanty
ex-imere -ēmis -ēptum
take away, remove
eximius -a -um choice,
outstanding
ex-ire -eō -iisse -itum go
out
ex-istimāre consider, think
exitus -ūs *m* exit, way out,
end
ex-onerāre unburden
exōrdium -ī *n* beginning
ex-oriri rise, arise
ex-ornāre adorn, decorate
exōrsus -ūs *m* beginning
ex-pavēscere -pāvisse
become frightened (at)
ex-pedire make ready,
extricate, explain
expeditiō -ōnis *f* foray,
raid, expedition
expeditus -a -um ready for
action
ex-pellere dive out, expel
ex-pergiscī -perrēctum
wake up
ex-periri -pertum try,
experience
ex-pers -rtis *adi + gen*
having no share in
ex-petere request, demand,
desire
ex-plānāre explain

ex-plēre -ēvisse -ētum fill,
complete, satisfy
explētivus -a -um expletive
ex-plicāre -uisse -itum
extricate, unfold, explain
ex-plōrāre reconnoitre,
investigate
explōrātor -ōris *m* scout,
spy
ex-pōnere put out, put
ashore, expose
ex-portāre export
ex-poscere ask for, demand
ex-pugnāre conquer
ex-pugnātiō -ōnis *f*
conquest
ex-quirere -sivisse -sītum
ask about, examine
exquisitus -a -um studied,
meticulous
ex-sanguis -e bloodless,
lifeless
ex-scindere demolish,
destroy
exsecrandus -a -um
accursed
ex-secrāri curse
ex-sequi pursue, go on,
execute
exsequiae -ae *f pl* funeral
ex-silire -uisse -itum jump up
exsilium -ī *n* exile
ex-sistere -stitisse appear,
arise
ex-solvere set free, release
ex-spectāre wait (for),
expect
expectātiō -ōnis *f*
expectation
ex-spirāre breathe one's
last, die
ex-stimulāre stir up, incite
ex-stinguere -stīnxisse
-stīnctum extinguish,
put out, kill, annihilate
ex-struere erect, build
exsul -is *m/f* banished
person, exile
exsulāre live in exile
ex-sultāre rejoice greatly,
exult
ex-suscitāre rouse, kindle
extemplō at once
ex-tendere -disse -tum
stretch out, extend

exter -era -erum external,
foreign
externus -a -um external,
extraneous
ex-terrēre scare, terrify
extimus -a -um *sup* outer-
most, farthest
ex-tollere raise, praise,
extol
ex-torris -e exiled,
banished
extrā *prp + acc, adv* outside
ex-trahere pull out, extract
extrāneus -a -um foreign,
stranger
extrēmus -a -um *sup* out-
ermost, utmost, last; *n*
end, utmost danger
ex-uere -uisse -ūtum take
off, deprive of
ex-ūrere burn up
exustiō -ōnis *f* conflagration
exuviae -ārum *f pl* cloth-
ing, armor

F

faber -brī *m* artisan, smith
fabricāre forge, build,
construct
fabula -ae *f* story, fable,
play
fabulārī talk, chat
fabulōsus -a -um fabulous,
celebrated
facere -iō fēcisse factum
make, do, cause esteem,
facere + *gen* value
facessere go away, be off
faciēs -ēī *f* appearance,
form, face
facile *adv, sup* -illimē
easily, readily
facilis -e, *sup* -illimus easy,
complaisant
facilitās -ātis *f* ease,
complaisance
facinus -oris *n* deed, act,
misdeed
factiō -ōnis *f* party, faction
factiōsus -a -um factious,
scheming
factum -ī *n* deed, act
factus -a -um wrought
facultās -ātis *f* possibility;
pl resources

fācundus -a -um eloquent	ferē about, almost, usually	filia -ae <i>f</i> , <i>pl dat/abl</i> -ābus daughter
fallāx -ācis <i>adi</i> deceitful	feriae -ae <i>f pl</i> festival days, holidays	filiola -ae <i>f</i> little daughter
fallere fefellisse falsum deceive, fail to keep	feriātus -a -um keeping holiday	filiolus -ī <i>m</i> little son
falsus -a -um, <i>adv</i> -ō false, deceived, wrong	ferire strike, hit, kill	filius -ī <i>m</i> son
falx -cis <i>f</i> sickle	fermē about, almost	filum -ī <i>n</i> thread, fillet
fāma -ae <i>f</i> rumor, reputation	ferōcitās -ātis <i>f</i> fierceness, ferocity	fin gere finxisse fictum form, make up, invent
famēs -is <i>f</i> hunger, famine	ferōx -ōcis <i>adi</i> fierce, ferocious	finire limit, finish, delimit
familia -ae <i>f</i> household, family, slaves	ferrātus -a -um tipped with iron	finis -is <i>m</i> boundary, end; <i>pl</i> territory
familiāris -e intimate; <i>m</i> close friend	ferre tulisse lātum carry, bring, bear, endure, report, propose	finitimus -a -um adjacent, neighboring
famula -ae <i>f</i> servant-girl, maid	ferreus -a -um of iron, iron-	firmamentum -ī <i>n</i> support, strength
famulus -ī <i>m</i> servant, slave	ferrum -ī <i>n</i> iron, steel, sword	firmāre reinforce, strengthen
fānum -ī <i>n</i> shrine, consecrated spot	fertilis -e fertile	firmitūdō -inis <i>f</i> stability, firmness
fārī speak	ferus -a -um wild	firmus -a -um strong, stable, firm
fās <i>n indēcl</i> divine law, right	fervēns -entis hot, boiling, ardent	fiscus -ī <i>m</i> public treasury
fās est it is right, it is allowed	fervere/-ēre ferbuisse boil, seethe, swarm	flāgitāre demand insistently
fascēs -ium <i>m pl</i> bundle of rods, fascēs	fessus -a -um tired, weary	flāgitōsus -a -um disgraceful
fāstī -ōrum <i>m pl</i> list of festivals, calendar	festināre hasten, hurry	flāgitium -ī <i>n</i> disgrace
fāstus -a -um: diēs fāstus court-day, workday	fēstus -a -um: diēs fēstus holiday, festival	flagrāre burn
fātālis -e fateful, destined	fētiālis -e fetal	flāmen -inis <i>m</i> flamen (priest)
fatēri fassum admit, confess, profess	fētus -a -um having young	flamma -ae <i>f</i> flame
fatigāre tire out, weary, worry	-ficere -iō -fēcisse -fectum	flāre blow
fātum -ī <i>n</i> fate, destiny, death	ficilis -e earthen, earthenware-	flātus -ūs <i>m</i> blowing, breeze
faucēs -ium <i>f pl</i> pass, defile	fictus -a -um untrue, made up	flēbilis -e plaintive
faustus -a -um fortunate, favorable	fidēlis -e faithful, loyal	flectere -xisse -xum bend, turn
fautor -ōris <i>m</i> supporter	fidere fisum esse + <i>dat</i> trust, rely on	flēre -ēvisse cry, weep (for)
favēre fāvisse + <i>dat</i> favor, support	fidēs -eī <i>f</i> trust, faith, loyalty, promise	flētus -ūs <i>m</i> weeping
favor -ōris <i>m</i> goodwill, favor	fidēs -ium <i>f pl</i> lyre	flōrēre bloom, flourish
fax facis <i>f</i> torch	fidicen -inis <i>m</i> lyre-player	flōs -ōris <i>m</i> flower
Februārius -ī (mēnsis) February	fiducia -ae <i>f</i> trust, confidence	flūctus -ūs <i>m</i> wave
fēlicitās -ātis <i>f</i> good fortune, luck	fidus -a -um faithful, reliable	fluere -ūxisse flow
fēlix -īcis <i>adi</i> fortunate, propitious	fieri factum esse be made, be done, become, happen, result	flūmen -inis <i>n</i> river
fēmina -ae <i>f</i> woman	figere -xisse -xum fix, fasten, pierce	fluvius -ī <i>m</i> river
fenestra -ae <i>f</i> window	figūra -ae <i>f</i> form, appearance	foculus -ī <i>m</i> brazier
fera -ae <i>f</i> wild animal		focus -ī <i>m</i> hearth
		foederātus -a -um federated, allied
		foeditās -ātis <i>f</i> ugliness, shame
		foedus -a -um ugly, hideous, shameful
		foedus -eris <i>n</i> treaty
		folium -ī <i>n</i> leaf

fōns fontis *m* spring,
source
forās *adv* out
fore inf fut < esse
forī -ōrum *m pl* seats
(in the circus)
foris -is *f* leaf of a door,
door
foris *adv* outside, out of
doors
fōrma -ae *f* form, shape,
beauty
formidō -inis *f* dread,
terror
fōrmōsus -a -um beautiful
fōrmula -ae *f* terms,
formula
forsitan/forsan perhaps,
maybe
fortasse perhaps, maybe
forte *adv* by chance
fortis -e strong, brave
fortitūdō -inis *f* strength,
bravery
fortuitō *adv* by chance,
fortuitously
fortūna -ae *f* fortune
fortūnātus -a -um fortunate
forum -ī *n* square
fossa -ae *f* ditch, trench
fragilis -e fragile, frail
fragmentum -ī *n* fragment,
piece
fragor -ōris *m* crash
frangere frēgisse frāctum
break, shatter
frāter -tris *m* brother
fraus -audis *f* deceit, guile
fremere -uisse growl
fremitus -ūs *m* rumble,
growl
frendere gnash one's teeth
frequēns -entis *adi* numer-
ous, frequent
fretum -ī *n* strait
frētus -e -am + *abl* relying
on, confident of
frigēre be cold
frigidus -a -um cold, chilly,
cool
frigus -oris *n* cold
frōns -ondis *f* foliage,
leaves
frōns -ontis *f* forehead,
brow, front

frūctus -ūs *m* produce,
fruit
frūgēs -um *f pl* fruit, crops
frui + *abl* enjoy
frūmentārius -a -um corn-
frumentum -ī *n* corn,
grain
frūstrā in vain
frūstrārī deceive
fuga -ae *f* flight
fugāre put to flight, rout
fugere -iō fūgisse run
away, flee
fugitivus -a -um runaway
fulcīre -sisse -tum hold up,
support
fulgēre -sisse flash, gleam
fulgor -ōris *m* flash
fulgur -uris *n* flash of
lightning
fulmen -inis *n* flash of
lightning
fūmus -ī *m* smoke
funda -ae *f* sling
fundāmentum -ī *n*
foundation
fundere fūdisse fūsum
pour, shed, rout
funditor -ōris *m* slinger
funditus *adv* to the
bottom, utterly
fundus -ī *m* bottom
fūnestus -a -um grievous,
sinister
fungī fūnctum + *abl*
discharge, complete
vītā fungī die
fūnis -is *m* rope
fūnus -eris *n* funeral, death
fūr -is *m* thief
furca -ae *f* fork, forked
frame
furere be mad, rage, rave
furor -ōris *m* madness
fūrtum -ī *n* theft
futūrus -a -um (v. esse)
future
(tempus) futūrum future

G

gallus -ī *m* cock, rooster
gaudēre gavīsum esse be
glad, be pleased
gaudium -ī *n* joy, delight
gaza -ae *f* treasure

gemellus -ī *m* twin
gemere -uisse -itum groan
(for)
gemināre double
geminus -a -um twin
gemitus -ūs *m* groaning
gemma -ae *f* precious
stone, jewel
gemmātus -a -um set with
a jewel
gena -ae *f* cheek
gener -erī *m* son-in-law
generāre beget, produce
generōsus -a -um noble
genetrix -icis *f* mother
geniālis -e marriage-,
conjugal
genitor -ōris *m* father
gēns gentis *f* people, race,
family
genū -ūs *n* knee
genus -eris *n* kind, sort,
race, gender
genus hominum human
race, mankind
gerere gessisse gestum
carry, bear, carry on, do,
act as; *pass* go on
gestāre carry
gignere genuisse genitum
beget, create, bear
glaciēs -ēī *f* ice
gladiātor -ōris *m* gladiator
gladiātōrius -a -um
gladiatorial
gladius -ī *m* sword
globōsus -a -um spherical,
round
globus -ī *m* globe, sphere,
ball, band
glōria -ae *f* glory
glōriārī boast
glōriōsus -a -um glorious,
boastful
gnāvus -a -um diligent,
active
gracilis -e, *sup* gracillimus
slender, slim
gracilitās -ātis *f* slender-
ness, thinness
gradi -ior gressum walk,
proceed
gradus -ūs *m* step, degree
Graecus -a -um Greek
grammatica -ae *f* grammar

grammaticus -a -um
grammatical
grandaevus -a -um aged
grandis -e big, large
grandō -inis *f* hail
grātēs *f pl* thanks
grātia -ae *f* favor, goodwill,
popularity, gratitude
grātiā (/meā) + *gen* for
the sake of
grātiā habēre + *dat* be
grateful
grātiās agere + *dat* thank
gratificārī + *dat* oblige,
gratify
gratuitus -a -um gratuitous,
futile
gratulārī + *dat* congratulate
grātus -a -um pleasing,
grateful
gravidus -a -um pregnant,
laden
gravis -e heavy, grave, low
gravitās -ātis *f* weight,
gravity, dignity
gremium -ī *n* lap
grex -egis *m* flock, herd,
band
gubernāre steer, govern
gubernātor -ōris *m*
steersman
gurges -itis *m* whirlpool,
flood
gustāre taste

H

habēre have, hold, make,
regard
sē habēre + *adv* get on,
be
habilis -e fit, appropriate
habitābilis -e inhabitable
habitāre dwell, live,
inhabit
habitus -ūs *m* state,
condition
hāc *adv* this way
haerēre -sisse -sum stick,
cling
haesitāre hesitate, be
uncertain
hasta -ae *f* lance
haud not
haud-quāquam by no
means

haurīre -sisse -stum draw,
bail, drink, engulf
hebes -etis dull, blunt
heia ah! come on!
hendeca-syllabus -a -um
of eleven syllables
herba -ae *f* grass, herb
hercule by Hercules!
really
hērēditārius -a -um
inherited, hereditary
hērēditās -ātis *f*
inheritance
hērēs -ēdis *m* heir
herī yesterday
hesternus -a -um of
yesterday
heu o! alas!
heus hey! hello!
hexa-meter -trī *m*
hexameter
hibern(ācul)a -ōrum *n pl*
winter camp/quarters
hibernāre spend the winter
hibernus -a -um winter-,
of winter
hic haec hoc this
hīc here
hiems -mis *f* winter
hinc from here, hence
historia -ae *f* account,
story, history
historicus -ī *m* historian
hodiē today
hodiernus -a -um today's,
of today
holus -eris *n* vegetable
homō -inis *m* human
being, person
honestās -ātis *f* honesty,
virtue
honestus -a -um honor-
able; *n* virtue
honor v. honōs
honōrāre honor
honōrificus -a -um
honorable
honōs/honor -ōris *m*
honor, high office
hōra -ae *f* hour
horrendus -a -um dreadful
horrēre bristle, stand on
end, shudder (at)
horribilis -e horrible,
terrifying

horror -ōris *m* dread,
horror
hortārī encourage, urge
hortus -ī *m* garden
hospes -itis *m* guest,
guest-friend
hospita -ae *f* (female)
guest, stranger
hospitālis -e hospitable,
guest-
hospitium -ī *n* guest
friendship/house
hostia -ae *f* sacrificial
animal
hostilis -e enemy-, hostile
hostis -is *m* enemy
hūc here, to this place
hūmānitās -ātis *f* human
feeling, culture
hūmānus -a -um human
humī *loc* on the ground
humilis -e, *sup* -illimus
low, humble, lowly
humus -ī *f* ground, earth

I

iacere -iō iēcisse iactum
throw, hurl, utter, lay
iacēre lie
iacāre throw, toss, hurl,
utter
iacūra -ae *f* throwing
away, loss
iaculārī throw (the javelin)
iaculum -ī *n* throwing-
spear, javelin
iam now, already
iambus -ī *m* iamb (U—)
iānitor -ōris *m* doorkeeper
iānuā -ae *f* door
iānuārius -ī (mēnsis)
January
ibi there
ibi-dem in the same
place
icere icisse ictum strike,
make, conclude
-icere -iō -iēcisse -iectum
ictus -ūs *m* stroke, blow
idem eadem idem the
same
identidem repeatedly
id-eō for that reason
idōneus -a -um fit,
suitable, capable

idūs -uum *fpl* the
13th/15th (of the month)

iecur -oris *n* liver

igitur therefore, then, so

ignārus -a -um ignorant,
unaware

ignāvia -ae *f* idleness,
cowardice

ignis -is *m* fire

ignōbilis -e unknown, of
low birth

ignōminiōsus -a -um
disgraceful

ignōrāre not know

ignōscere -ōvisse + *dat*
forgive

ignōtus -a -um unknown

ilicō at once

il-lacrimāre + *dat* weep
over

ille -a -ud that, the one, he

illecebra -ae *f* attraction,
allurement

illic there

il-licere -iō -ēxisse -ectum
entice, attract

illinc from there

illūc there, thither

il-lūcēscere -lūxisse dawn,
grow light

il-lūdere make game of,
fool

illūstrāre illuminate,
make clear

illūstris -e brilliant,
illustrious

imāgō -inis *f* picture,
portrait, vision

imbēcillus -a -um weak

im-bellis -e unwarlike,
cowardly

imber -bris *m* rain, shower

imitārī imitate

im-mānis -e savage,
fierce

immānitās -ātis *f* brutality,
fierceness

im-mātūrus -a -um
unripe, premature

im-memor -oris *adi* (+ *gen*)
unmindful, forgetful (of)

im-mēnsus -a -um
immeasurable, endless

im-minēre + *dat* overhang,
be imminent

im-minuere make smaller,
reduce

im-miscēre: sē i. (+ *dat*)
mingle, merge (into)

im-mittere send in, send
(into)

immō no, on the contrary

im-mōbilis -e immovable,
motionless

im-molāre sacrifice,
immolate

im-mortālis -e immortal

im-mūnis -e (+ *abl*)
exempt (from), tax-free

im-pār -aris *adi* unequal

im-partire give a share of,
impart

im-patiēns -entis *adi* not
enduring, impatient

impatientia -ae *f* impatience

im-pavidus -a -um fearless

impedimentum -ī *n*

obstacle

impedire impede, obstruct

impeditus -a -um
obstructed, encumbered

im-pellere strike, drive,
compel

im-pendēre + *dat* impend,
threaten

impēsa -ae *f* cost,
expenditure

imperāre (+ *dat*) command,
order, levy, requisition,

rule

imperātor -ōris *m* general,
emperor

imperātōrius -a -um of a
general

im-perfectus -a -um
unfinished

imperitāre (+ *dat*) govern,
be in command

imperitia -ae *f* in experi-
ence, ignorance

im-peritus -a -um
unskilled, ignorant

imperium -ī *n* command,
empire

im-pertire give a share of,
impart

impetrāre obtain (by
request)

impetus -ūs *m* onset,
attack, charge

im-piger -gra -grum
active, industrious

im-pius -a -um impious

im-plēre -ēvisse -ētum fill,
fulfill, achieve

im-plicāre -uisse -itum
enfold

im-plōrāre beseech,
implore

impluvium -ī *n* water
basin

im-pōnere place (in/on),
put

impraesentiārum at the
present moment

im-primere -pressisse-
pressum press (into),

stamp, impress

im-probus -a -um bad,
wicked

im-prōvisus -a -um
unforeseen, unexpected

ex/dē imprōvisō unex-
pectedly, suddenly

im-prūdēns -entis *adi*
unwise, incautious

im-pudēns -entis *adi*
shameless, impudent

impudentia -ae *f*
shamelessness

im-pudicus -a -um
unchaste, immoral

im-pugnāre attack, oppose

impulsus -ūs *m* impact,
impulse

impūne with impunity

impūnitās -ātis *f* impunity,
licence

īmus -a -um *sup* lowest

in *prp* + *abl* in, on, at
prp + *acc* into, on (to),

against

in-ambulāre walk up and
down

in-animus -a -um lifeless,
inanimate

inānis -e empty, gaping

in-auditus -a -um unheard
(of)

in-calēscere -luisse become
heated

in-cautus -a -um incau-
tious, unsuspecting

in-cēdere walk, advance,
occur

- in-cendere** -disse -ēsum
set on fire, inflame
- incendium** -ī *n* fire,
conflagration
- inceptum** -ī *n* undertaking,
enterprise
- in-certus** -a -um uncertain
- in-cidere** -disse occur,
present itself
- in-cidere** -disse -sum cut
- in-cipere** -iō coepisse
coepit begin
- in-citāre** set in motion,
stir up
- incitātus** -a -um fast-
moving, rapid
- in-clāmāre** shout (at)
- in-clināre** turn, bend,
incline
- in-cludere** -sisse -sum shut
up
- inclutus** -a -um famous
- in-cognitus** -a -um
unknown
- incohāre** start work on,
begin
- incola** -ae *m/f* inhabitant
- in-colere** inhabit
- incolumis** -e unharmed,
safe, intact
- incolumitās** -ātis *f* safety
- in-commodum** -ī *n* disad-
vantage, misfortune
- inconditus** -a -um unpol-
ished, rough
- in-cōspectus** -a -um
unfounded
- in-cōsultus** -a -um
thoughtless, rash
- in-crēdibilis** -e incredible,
unbelievable
- in-crepāre** -uisse -itum
rattle, clash, scold
- in-crēscere** grow, increase
- in-cultus** -a -um unculti-
vated, untilled
- in-cumbere** -cubuisse lie
down on
incumbere ad/in apply/
devote oneself to
- in-currere** -rresse -rsum
rush in, make an inroad
- in-cursiō** -ōnis *f* incursion,
inroad
- in-cūsāre** reproach, accuse
- inde** from there, thence
(forth)
- in-demnātus** -a -um
uncondemned
- index** -icis *m* list, catalog
- in-dicāre** make known,
declare
- in-dicere** notify, declare
- indiciū** -ī *n* information,
disclosure
- indigēre** be without, lack
- indignārī** resent, be
indignant
- indignatiō** -ōnis *f* indigna-
tion, resentment
- indignitās** -ātis *f* indignity,
humiliation
- in-dignus** -a -um unwor-
thy, shameful
- in-doctus** -a -um ignorant
- indolēs** -is *f* character,
nature
- in-dūcere** lead, bring (in),
introduce
- induere** -uisse -ūtum put
on (clothes)
indūtus (+ *abl*) dressed
(in)
- industria** -ae *f* hard work,
industry
- industrius** -a -um diligent,
industrious
- indūtia** -ae *f pl* armistice,
truce
- in-ēluctābilis** -e inescap-
able, inevitable
- in-ermis** -e unarmed,
defenceless
- in-ers** -ertis inactive, idle
- inertia** -ae *f* idleness, sloth
- in-esse** be (in)
- in-explorātō** *adv* without
reconnoitering
- in-expugnābilis** -e
impregnable
- in-exspectātus** -a -um
unexpected
- in-fāmis** -e disgraced
- in-fandus** -a -um horrible
- infāns** -antis *m/f* little
child, baby
- in-fectus** -a -um
unwrought, not effected
- in-felix** -icis *adi* unlucky,
unfortunate
- infēnsus** -a -um hostile
- inferior** -ius *comp* lower,
inferior
- infernus** -a -um of the
underworld
- in-ferre** in-tulisse il-lātum
bring (in), cause, inflict
- inferus** -a -um lower
- īnferī** -ōrum *m pl* the
underworld
- infestāre** make unsafe,
infest
- infestus** -a -um unsafe,
infested, hostile
- in-fidus** -a -um faithless
- in-figere** fix, fasten
- infimus** -a -um *sup* lowest,
the bottom of
- īnfinītus** -a -um unlimited,
infinite
- infirmāre** weaken, refute,
annul
- infirmatiō** -ōnis *f* invalida-
tion, rebuttal
- infirmitās** -ātis *f* weakness
- in-firmus** -a -um weak
- infitiārī** deny
- in-flammāre** kindle,
inflammate
- in-flāre** inflate, puff up,
elate
- in-flectere** bend, turn,
inflect
- in-fluere** flow into
- in-fōrmis** -e unshapely,
ugly
- īnfrā** *prp + acc, adv* below
- in-fringere** -frēgis
-frāctum break, crush
- in-gemēscere** -muisse
groan, moan
- ingenium** -ī *n* nature,
character
- ingēns** -entis *adi* huge, vast
- in-grātus** -a -um ungrateful
- in-gredi** -ior -gressum
enter, begin, walk
- in-hospitālis** -e
inhospitable
- in-hūmānus** -a -um
inhuman
- in-icere** throw/lay on,
instil
- in-imicus** -ī *m* (personal)
enemy

in-inimicus -a -um unfriendly	insignis -e noted, remarkable	inter-esse be between interesse + <i>dat</i> attend, take part in interest it matters
inīquitās -ātis <i>f</i> unfairness	in-sistere -stitisse stand (on)	inter-ficere kill
in-īquus -a -um uneven, unfair	in-solēns -entis <i>adi</i> haughty, arrogant	inter-icere place between, insert, add
in-īre -eō -iisse -itum enter (upon), begin	insolentia -ae <i>f</i> arrogance	interiectus situated between interiectis... (<i>abl</i>) after..., at the end of...
initium -ī <i>n</i> beginning	in-solitus -a -um unusual, unwonted	interim meanwhile
iniūria -ae <i>f</i> injustice, wrong	in-sōns -ontis <i>adi</i> innocent	inter-imere -ēmissee -ēmtum kill
iniūriōsus -a -um unjust, wrongful	in-spērātus -a -um unhoped for, unexpected	interior -ius <i>comp</i> interior, inner (part of)
in-iussū + <i>gen</i> without orders	in-spicere examine, inspect	inter-īre -eō -iisse die, perish
in-iustus -a -um unjust, unfair	in-stāre press, urge, insist	interitus -ūs <i>m</i> death
in-nocēns -entis <i>adi</i> inno- cent, blameless	in-staurāre renew	inter-mittere interrupt, discontinue
innocentia -ae <i>f</i> innocence, integrity	instigāre incite, urge	interniciō -ōnis <i>f</i> annihila- tion, massacre
in-numerābilis -e count- less, innumerable	instinctus -a -um roused	internus -a -um inner, internal
inopia -ae <i>f</i> lack, scarcity	in-stituere -uisse -ūtum set up, establish, start, appoint, train, instruct	inter-pellāre interrupt
inquit -iunt (he/she) says/ said	institutum -ī <i>n</i> practice, custom, usage	inter-pōnere place between
inquam I say	in-struere draw up, arrange, equip	inter-rēgnum -ī <i>n</i> interval between reigns
in-quirere -sīvisse -sītum inquire, make inquiries	instrūmentum -ī <i>n</i> tool(s), instrument	inter-rēx -rēgis <i>m</i> interme- diary regent
in-sānābilis -e incurable	in-suēscere -ēvisse -ētum become accustomed	inter-rogāre ask, question
insānia -ae <i>f</i> madness	insula -ae <i>f</i> island	inter-rumpere break up, cut, interrupt
in-sānus -a -um mad, insane	in-super in addition insuper habēre overlook, neglect	inter-vāllum -ī <i>n</i> interval, space, distance
in-satiābilis -e insatiable	in-tāctus -a -um untouched, uninjured	inter-venire (+ <i>dat</i>) turn up, occur, disturb
in-sciēns -entis <i>adi</i> not knowing, unaware	integer -gra -grum intact, unhurt, blameless	interventus -ūs <i>m</i> arrival
in-scius -a -um not knowing, unaware	intel-legere -lēxisse -lēctum understand, realize	intrā <i>prp</i> + <i>acc</i> inside, within
in-scribere write on, inscribe, entitle	in-tendere -disse -tum strain, direct, strive	intrāre enter
inscriptiō -ōnis <i>f</i> inscrip- tion, title	intentiō -ōnis <i>f</i> charge, accusation	intrō-dūcere lead/bring in, introduce
in-sepultus -a -um unburied	intentus -a -um intent, attentive	intro-īre -eō -iisse -itum go inside, enter
in-sequi follow, pursue	inter <i>prp</i> + <i>acc</i> between, among, during inter sē (with) one another	intuēri look at, watch
in-sidere -sēdisse -sessum occupy, settle, be fixed	inter-cēdere intervene, intercede	intus <i>adv</i> inside
in-sidēre -sēdisse hold, occupy, be seated	inter-clūdere -sisse -sum cut off, block	in-ultus -a -um unavenged
insidiae -ārum <i>f pl</i> ambush, plot, wiles	inter-diū by day	in-ūtilis -e useless
insidiāri (+ <i>dat</i>) lie in wait, lie in ambush	inter-dum now and then	in-vādere -sisse -sum enter, attack, invade
insidiātor -ōris <i>m</i> way- layer, bandit	inter-eā meanwhile	
insigne -is <i>n</i> mark, token, symbol		

in-validus -a -um infirm, weak
in-vehere import; *pass* ride in
 invehī in attack in words, inveigh
in-venire find, meet, devise, invent
inventiō -ōnis *f* art of devising arguments
in-vestigāre inquire into, investigate
in-veterāscere -rāvisse grow old, become fixed
in-vicem mutually, one another
in-victus -a -um unconquered, invincible
in-vidēre + *dat* envy, grudge
invidia -ae *f* envy, ill will, dislike
in-violātus -a -um unhurt
in-visere go to see
invisus -a -um odious, disliked
invītāre invite, entertain
invītus -a -um unwilling, against...’s will
in-vius -a -um trackless, impassable
in-vocāre call upon, invoke
iocōsus -a -um humorous, funny
ipse -a -um himself, that very
īra -ae *f* anger
īrāscī be angry
īrātus -a -um angry
īre eō iisse itum go
īrītāre excite, stimulate
ir-ritus -a -um invalid, ineffectual
ir-ruere rush in, charge
ir-rumpere break, force one’s way
irruptiō -ōnis *f* violent entry, assault
is ea id he, she, it, that
iste -a -ud this, that (of yours)
ita so, in such a way
ita-que therefore
item likewise, also

iter itineris *n* journey, march, way
iterāre repeat, renew
iterum again, a second time
iubēre iussisse iussum order, tell
iūcundus -a -um pleasant, delightful
iūdex -icis *m* judge
iūdicāre judge, try, decide
iūdicātiō -ōnis *f* point at issue
iūdicium -ī *n* judgement, trial, court
iugālis -e marriage-, conjugal
iūgerum -ī *n* area of ±2500 m²
iugulāre kill, slaughter
iugulum -ī *n* throat
iugum -ī *n* yoke, ridge
Iūlius -ī (mēnsis) July
iūmentum -ī *n* beast of burden/draft
iungere iūnxisse iūnctum join, combine, form
iūniōrēs -um *m pl* younger men (17–45)
Iūnius -ī (mēnsis) June
iūrāre swear
iūs iūris *n* law, right, justice, court
 iūre justly, rightly
iūs iūrandum iūris -ī *n* oath
iussū *abl* + *gen* by order of
iussum -ī *n* command, order
iūsta -ōrum *n pl* the last honors
iūstitia -ae *f* justice
iūstus -a -um just, fair, due, proper
iuvāre iūvisse iūtum help, delight
iuvenālis -e youthful
iuventus -ī *m* young bull
iuvenilis -e youthful
iuvenis -is *m* young man
iuventa -ae *f* youth
iuventūs -ūtis *f* youth, young men
iūxtā *prp* + *acc, adv* by, next to, after, alike

K
kalendae -ārum *f pl* the 1st (of the month)
kalendārium -ī *n* calendar

L
labefactāre shake, undermine
lābēs -is *f* stain, disgrace
lābi lāpsum slip, drop, fall
labor -ōris *m* work, toil
labōrāre work, take trouble, suffer
labōriōsus -a -um hard, laborious
labrum -ī *n* lip
labyrinthus -ī *m* labyrinth
lac lactis *n* milk
lacerāre tear
lacertus -ī *m* (upper) arm
laccessere -īvisse -ītum challenge, provoke
lacrima -ae *f* tear
lacrimābilis -e mournful, pitiful
lacrimāre shed tears, weep
lacrimōsus -a -um tearful, sad
lactus -a -um milky
lacus -ūs *m* lake
laedere -sisse -sum injure, hurt
laetārī rejoice, be glad
laetitia -ae *f* joy
laetus -a -um glad, happy
laevus -a -um left, *f* the left (hand)
lambere -bissee lick, wash
lāmentātiō -ōnis *f* wailing, lamentation
lāna -ae *f* wool, wool spinning
lancea -ae *f* lance, spear
laniāre tear
lapideus -a -um of stone, stone-
lapis -idis *m* stone, milestone
laqueus -ī *m* loop, noose
largīrī give generously
largitiō -ōnis *f* largesse, bribery
largitor -ōris *m* who gives generously

largus -a -um generous
lascīvia -ae *f* wantonness
latebra -ae *f* hiding-place
later -eris *m* brick
latēre be hidden, hide
latericius -a -um of brick
Latinus -a -um Latin
lātrāre bark
latrō -ōnis *m* brigand, robber
latrōcinium -ī *n* robbery
latus -eris *n* side, flank
lātus -a -um broad, wide
laudāre praise
laureātus -a -um adorned with laurel
laurus -ī *f* laurel
laus laudis *f* praise, merit
lavāre lāvisse lautum wash, bathe
laxāre loose, untie, release
lectica -ae *f* litter, sedan
lectulus -ī *m* (little) bed
lectus -ī *m* bed, couch
lēctus -a -um select, picked
lēgāre bequeath, send, delegate
lēgatiō -ōnis *f* embassy, deputation
lēgātus -ī *m* envoy, lieutenant, legate
legere lēgisse lēctum read, choose, gather
legiō -ōnis *f* legion
legiōnārius -a -um legionary
lēgitimus -a -um legal, lawful
lembus -ī *m* small boat
lēnīre placate, appease
lēnis -e gentle, mild
lentus -a -um slow
leō -ōnis *m* lion
levāre lift, raise
levis -e light, slight
lēx lēgis *f* law, condition, term
libāre make a libation, pour
libellus -ī *m* little book
libēns -entis *adi* willing, glad
libenter with pleasure, gladly

liber -bri *m* book
liber -era -erum free
liberāre free, set free, deliver
liberātor -ōris *m* deliverer, liberator
libēre: libet (+ *dat*) it pleases
liberī -ōrum *m pl* children
libertās -ātis *f* freedom, liberty
libertinus -ī *m* freedman
libidō -inis *f* desire, lust
libra -ae *f* balance, pound (327 g)
licentia -ae *f* wantonness, licence
licēre: licet + *dat* it is allowed, one may
lictor -ōris *m* lictor
ligāre bind
ligneus -a -um wooden
lignum -ī *n* wood
lilium -ī *n* lily
limen -inis *n* threshold
limes -itis *m* path, track
limus -ī *m* mud
linea -ae *f* string, line
lingua -ae *f* tongue, language
linquere liquisse lictum leave
linter -tris *m* small boat
lis litis *f* dispute, lawsuit
littera -ae *f* letter
lītus -oris *n* beach, shore
lituus -ī *m* augur's staff, trumpet
loca -ōrum *n pl* regions, parts
locāre place
locuplēs -ētis *adi* rich, wealthy
locuplētāre enrich
locus -ī *m* (*pl* -a -ōrum *n*: *v. supra*) place, position, rank, room, opportunity
longē far, by far
longinquitās -ātis *f* remoteness
longinquus -a -um remote
longitūdō -inis *f* length
longus -a -um long
loqui locūtum speak, talk

lūcēre lūxisse shine
lucerna -ae *f* lamp
lucrum -ī *n* profit, gain
luctārī wrestle
lūctus -ūs *m* grief, mourning
lūcus -ī *m* sacred grove
lūdere -sisse -sum play
lūdibrium -ī *n* toy, laughing-stock
lūdic(er) -cra -crum of sport, of games
lūdicrum -ī *n* show
lūds -ī *m* play, game, school
lūgēre -xisse mourn, grieve (over)
lūgubris -e sad, grievous
lūmen -inis *n* light
lūna -ae *f* moon
lūnāris -e of the moon, lunar
lupa -ae *f* she-wolf
lupus -ī *m* wolf
lūstrāre irradiate, purify, survey
lūstrum -ī *n* ceremony of purification
lūx lūcis *f* light, daylight
luxuria -ae *f* extravagance, luxury
luxuriārī revel, live in luxury
luxus -ūs *m* extravagance, luxury

M

māceria -ae *f* stone wall, garden wall
māchina -ae *f* machine
māchinārī devise, plot
macte virtūte (estō) well done! bravo!
macula -ae *f* stain, blemish
maculāre stain, defile
maerēre grieve
maeror -ōris *m* grief
maestitia -ae *f* sadness, sorrow
maestus -a -um sad, sorrowful
magis more
magister -trī *m* schoolmaster, teacher

magister equitum master of the horse
magistrātus -ūs *m* office, magistrate
magnificentia -ae *f* magnificence
magnificus -a -um magnificent, splendid
magnitūdō -inis *f* size, greatness
magnus -a -um big, large, great
maior -ius *comp* bigger, greater, older
maiōrēs -um *m pl* ancestors
Maius -ī (mēnsis) May
male *adv* badly, ill
male-dicere + *dat* abuse, insult
maleficium -ī *n* evil deed, crime
malitia -ae *f* wickedness
malle māluisse prefer
malum -ī *n* evil, trouble, harm
mālum -ī *n* apple
malus -a -um bad, wicked, evil
mamma -ae *f* mummy
mānāre flow, be wet, drip
mandāre assign, order
mandātum -ī *n* order
māne *indecl n, adv* morning, in the morning
manēre mānsisse remain, stay
Mānēs -ium *m pl* Manes, spirits of the dead
manifestus -a -um flagrant, plain
manipulus -ī *m* manipule
mānsuētūdō -inis *f* mildness, clemency
manus -ūs *f* hand, power, force, troop
mare -is *n* sea
margarita -ae *f* pearl
maritimus -a -um sea-, coastal
marītus -ī *m* husband
marmor -oris *n* marble
marmoreus -a -um made of marble, marble-

Mārtius -ī (mēnsis) March
māter -tris *f* mother
māteria -ae *f* material, occasion
māternus -a -um maternal
mātrimōnium -ī *n* matrimony, marriage
mātrōna -ae *f* married woman
mātrōnālis -e of a married woman
mātūrāre make haste, hurry
mātūrē quickly, early
mātūrītās -ātis *f* ripeness, maturity
mātūrus -a -um ripe, mature, timely, early
mausolēum -ī *n* mausoleum
māximē most, especially
māximus -a -um *sup* biggest, greatest, oldest
mecastor by Castor!
medēri + *dat* heal, cure, remedy
medicus -ī *m* physician, doctor
mediocris -e moderate, ordinary
meditāri think about, contemplate
meditātiō -ōnis *f* reflection, practicing
medium -ī *n* middle, centre
medius -a -um mid, middle
meherc(u)le by Hercules!
mel mellis *n* honey
melior -ius *comp* better
melius *adv* better, rather
mellitus -a -um sweet
membrum -ī *n* limb
mementō -tōte *imp* remember! don't forget!
mē-met me, myself
meminisse + *gen/acc* remember, recollect
memor -oris *adi* (+ *gen*) mindful, reminding
memorābilis -e memorable
memorāre mention, speak (of)

memoria -ae *f* memory, record
 m.ae trādere/mandāre put on record
 post hominum m.am in human memory
mendum -ī *n* mistake, error
mēns mentis *f* mind
mēnsa -ae *f* table
 mēnsa secunda dessert
mēnsis -is *m* month
mentīō -ōnis *f* mention, reference
mentīri lie
mercāri buy, purchase
mercātor -ōris *m* merchant
mercātōrius -a -um merchant-
mercātūra -ae *f* trade, commerce
mercātus -ūs *m* market, fair
mercēs -ēdis *f* wage, fee, rent
merēre/-rī earn, deserve
 bene m. dē behave well toward
mergere -sisse -sum dip, plunge, sink
meridiēs -ēī *m* midday, noon, south
meritum -ī *n* merit
meritus -a -um well-deserved
merum -ī *n* neat wine
merus -a -um pure, neat, undiluted
merx -rcis *f* commodity; *pl* goods
metallum -ī *n* metal
mētāri measure off, lay out
metere -messum reap, harvest
mētīri mēnsūm measure
metuere -uisse fear
metus -ūs *m* fear
meus -a -um, *voc mī* my, mine
micāre flicker, flash
migrāre move, migrate
miles -itis *m* soldier
miliārium -ī *n* milestone
militāre serve as a soldier

militāris -e military	moderātiō -ōnis <i>f</i> moderation, restraint	movēre mōvisse -tum move, stir, ponder
militia -ae <i>f</i> military service	moderātor -ōris <i>m</i> ruler	mox soon
militiae (<i>loc</i>) in the field, in war	moderātus -a -um restrained, moderate	mūgīre low, bellow
mille , <i>pl</i> milia -ium <i>n</i> thousand	modestia -ae <i>f</i> restraint	muliebris -e of a woman
minae -ārum <i>f pl</i> threats	modestus -a -um restrained, modest	mulier -eris <i>f</i> woman
minārī threaten	modicus -a -um moderate	multāre punish
minimē by no means, not at all	modius -ī <i>m</i> peck (8.75 l)	multi -ae -a many, a great many
minimum <i>adv</i> very little	modo only, just	multitūdō -inis <i>f</i> large number, multitude
minimus -a -um <i>sup</i> smallest, youngest	modo...modo now... now	multō + <i>comp/sup</i> much, by far
minister -trī <i>m</i> servant	modus -ī <i>m</i> manner, way, measure, size, amount, limit	multum -ī <i>n</i> , <i>adv</i> much, a good deal
ministerium -ī <i>n</i> attendance	nūllō modō by no means	multum diēi late in the day
ministra -ae <i>f</i> female servant	huius/eius modi of this/that kind	multus -a -um much, a good deal of
minitārī threaten	moenia -ium <i>n pl</i> walls	in/ad multam noctem till late in the night
minor -us <i>comp</i> smaller, younger	mōlēs -is <i>f</i> mass, bulk, effort	mundus -ī <i>m</i> world, universe
minuere -uisse -ūtum diminish, reduce	molestus -a -um troublesome	mundus -a -um clean, neat
minus -ōris <i>n</i> , <i>adv</i> less	some	mūnimentum -ī <i>n</i> fortification
sī minus if not	molestē pati/ferre be annoyed (at)	mūnīre fortify, guard, construct
mīrābilis -e marvelous, wonderful	mōliri labor, strive	mūnitiō -ōnis <i>f</i> fortification
mīrābundus -a -um wondering	mollire make soft, soften	mūnitus -a -um well fortified, secure
mīrāculum -ī <i>n</i> marvel	mollis -e soft	mūnus -eris <i>n</i> gift, task, duty
mīrārī wonder (at), be surprised	mōmentum -ī <i>n</i> moment	murmur -uris <i>n</i> mutter, murmur
mīrus -a -um surprising, strange	mōnere remind, advise, warn	mūrus -ī <i>m</i> wall
miscēre -uisse mixtum mix, mix up, stir up	monitus -ūs <i>m</i> advice, prompting	mūs mūris <i>m</i> mouse
misellus -a -um poor, wretched	mōns montis <i>m</i> mountain	Mūsa -ae <i>f</i> Muse
miser -era -erum unhappy, miserable	mōnstrāre point out, show	mūtābilis -e changeable
miserābilis -e pitiable	mōnstrum -ī <i>n</i> monster	mūtāre change, exchange
miserārī feel sorry for, pity	monumentum -ī <i>n</i> memorial, monument	mūtatiō -ōnis <i>f</i> change
miserātiō -ōnis <i>f</i> compassion, pity	mora -ae <i>f</i> delay	mūtus -a -um dumb
miserērī + <i>gen</i> feel pity for	morārī delay, stay, stop	mūtuus -a -um on loan
miseria -ae <i>f</i> misfortune, misery	morbus -ī <i>m</i> disease, illness	mūtuū dare/ sūmere lend/borrow
miserīcordia -ae <i>f</i> compassion, pity	mordēre momordisse -sum bite	
missile -is <i>n</i> missile	mori mortuum die	N
mītigāre soothe	moribundus -a -um dying	nam for
mītis -e gentle, mild, tame	mors mortis <i>f</i> death	-nam ...ever?
mittere mīsisse missum send, throw	mortālis -e mortal, human	namque for
moderārī temper, moderate	mortuus -a -um (< mori) dead	nanciscī nactum get, obtain, find, meet
	mōs mōris <i>m</i> custom, usage, manner	nāre swim
	mōtus -ūs <i>m</i> movement, rising	nārrāre relate, tell

nārrātiō -ōnis *f* narrative
nāscī nātum be born
nāsus -ī *m* nose
nāta -ae *f* daughter
natāre swim
nātiō -ōnis *f* people, nation
nātū *abl*: māior/minor *n*.
 older/younger
nātūra -ae *f* nature
nātūrālis -e natural, of
 nature
nātus -a -um (< nāscī)
 born
 XX annōs nātus 20 years
 old
nātus -ī *m* son
naufragium -ī *n* shipwreck
nauta -ae *m* sailor
nauticus -a -um nautical,
 naval
nāvālia -ium *n pl* dockyard
nāvālis -e naval
nāvicula -ae *f* boat
nāviculārius -ī *m* shipowner
nāvigāre sail
nāvigātiō -ōnis *f* sailing,
 voyage
nāvis -is *f* ship
-ne ...? if, whether
nē that not, lest, that
 nē...quidem not even
 nē multa to be brief, in
 short
nebula -ae *f* mist, fog
nec *v*. ne-que/nec
necāre kill
nec-/neque-dum and (/but)
 not yet
necessārius -a -um, *adv* -ō
 necessary
necessārius -ī *m* relative,
 friend
necesse est it is necessary,
 one must
necessitās -ātis *f* need,
 necessity
nectere -x(u)isse -xum
 attach
ne-fandus -a -um heinous
ne-fās *indēcl n* impious act,
 crime
ne-fāstus -a -um: diēs *n*.
 public holiday
negāre deny, say that...not
negitāre deny repeatedly

neglegēs -entis *adi*
 careless
neglegere -ēxisse -ctum
 neglect, disregard
negōtiārī do business,
 trade
negōtiātor -ōris *m* trader
negōtium -ī *n* business,
 activity, affair
nēmō, *acc* -inem, *dat* -inī
 no one, nobody
nepōs -ōtis *m* grandson
nēquam *adi indēcl sup*
 nēquissimus worthless,
 bad
nē-quāquam by no means,
 not at all
ne-que/nec and/but not,
 nor, not
n. ...n. neither...nor
nē-quīquam to no effect,
 in vain
ne-quīre -eō -īvisse be
 unable to
nervus -ī *m* sinew, muscle
nescio-quis someone or
 other, some
ne-scīre not know
neu *v*. nē-ve/neu
neuter -tra -trum neither
nē-ve/neu and (that) not,
 nor
n. ...n. (that) neither...
 nor
nex necis *f* killing, murder
nī *v*. nisi
nīdus -ī *m* nest
niger -gra -grum black
nihil/nīl nothing; *adv* not
 at all
nihilō + *comp* no, by no
 means
 nihilō minus/sētius
 nonetheless
nimbus -ī *m* rain-cloud
nī-mīrum *adv* without
 doubt, evidently
nimis too, too much
nimium -ī *n*, *adv* too
 much, too
nimius -a -um too big
nisi/nī if not, except, but
nīti nīsum exert oneself,
 strive
 nīti in depend on

niveus -a -um snow-white
nix nivis *f* snow
nōbilis -e well known,
 famous
nōbilitāre make famous
nōbilitās -ātis *f* renown,
 nobility, nobles
nocēre + *dat* harm, hurt
noctū by night, at night
nocturnus -a -um noctur-
 nal, at night
nōdus -ī *m* knot
nōli -īte *imp* (< nōlle) + *inf*
 don't...!
nōlle nōluisse be unwilling,
 not want
nōmen -inis *n* name, fame,
 nation
 nōmen dare offer
 oneself, enroll
nōmināre name, call
nōn not
nōnae -ārum *f pl* 5th/7th
 (of the month)
nōnāgēsīmus -a -um
 ninetyeth
nōnāgintā ninety
nōn-dum not yet
nōn-gentī -ae -a nine
 hundred
nōn-ne not?
nōn-nihil not a little,
 something
nōn-nūlli -ae -a some,
 several
nōn-numquam sometimes
nōnus -a -um ninth
nōs nōbīs we, us, ourselves
nōscere nōvisse get to
 know; *perf* know
nōscitāre recognize
noster -tra -trum our, ours
nostrum *gen* of us
nota -ae *f* mark, sign, slur
notāre mark, note, censure
Notus -ī *m* south wind
nōtus -a -um known
novellus -a -um new,
 young
novem nine
November -bris (mēnsis)
 November
nōvisse (<nōscere) know
novissimē quite recently
novissimus -a -um last

novitās -ātis *f* novelty,
inexperience
novus -a -um new,
inexperienced
nox noctis *f* night
noxa -ae *f* harm, guilt
noxius -a -um guilty
nūbere -psisse + *dat* marry
nuptum dare give in
marriage
nūbēs -is *f* cloud
nūbilus -a -um cloudy
nūdāre bare, leave
unprotected
nūdus -a -um naked, bare,
unarmed
nūgae -ārum *f pl* idle talk,
rubbish
nūllus -a -um no
num ...? if, whether
nūmen -inis *n* divine will
numerāre count
numerōsus -a -um numer-
ous, many
numerus -ī *m* number, class
nummus -ī *m* coin, sesterce
numquam never
nunc now
nūncupāre designate, call
nūntia -ae *f* messenger
nūntiāre announce, report
nūntius -ī *m* messenger,
message
nūper recently
nupta -ae *f* wife
nuptiae -ārum *f pl* wedding
nurus -ūs *f* daughter-in-
law
nusquam nowhere
nūtrire feed, suckle
nūtrix -īcis *f* nurse
nūtus -ūs *m* nod, gravita-
tion
nux nucis *f* nut
Nympha -ae *f* nymph

O

ō o!
ob *prp* + *acc* on account of,
before
ob-dūcere draw over (to
cover)
ob-equitāre ride up to
ob-icere place before,
expose

ob-iectāre expose
ob-īre -eō -iisse -itum
meet, visit, go into, enter
upon, set
obitus -ūs *m* death
ob-ligāre bind
obliquus -a -um slanting,
indirect
oblivio -ōnis *f* oblivion
oblivisci -litum + *gen/acc*
forget
ob-mūtēscere -tuisse
become speechless
ob-nūbere veil, cover
ob-oedire + *dat* obey
ob-oriri spring up
ob-rēpere creep up, steal
up
ob-rigēscere -guisse
become stiff
ob-ruere -ruisse -rutum
cover up, bury, crush
obscurāre obscure, darken
obscurus -a -um dark,
obscure, uncertain
ob-secundāre + *dat* com-
ply with, obey
ob-sequi + *dat* comply
with, obey
ob-servāre observe,
respect
obses -idis *m* hostage
ob-sidēre -sēdisse -sessum
besiege
obsidio -ōnis *f* siege
ob-sistere -stitisse resist
ob-stāre stand in the way
obstinātus -a -um stub-
born, obstinate
ob-struere bar, block
ob-stupēscere -puisse be
stunned/astounded
ob-surdēscere -duisse
become deaf
ob-temperāre + *dat* obey
ob-testāri beseech, implore
ob-tinēre -uisse -tentum
hold, gain, obtain
ob-trectāre criticize,
disparage
ob-trectātiō -ōnis *f* criti-
cism, disparagement
ob-truncāre slaughter, kill
obtūsus -a -um blunt,
dull

ob-venire fall to the lot of
ob-viam ire (+ *dat*) (go to)
meet, oppose
obvius -a -um coming to
meet
obvius esse/fieri + *dat*
meet
occāsiō -ōnis *f* opportu-
nity, chance
occāsus -ūs *m* setting
occidēns -entis *m* west
oc-cidere -disse fall, sink,
set, die, end
oc-cidere -disse -sum kill
occultāre hide
occultus -a -um hidden,
secret
occupāre occupy, take
possession of
oc-currere -rrisse + *dat*
meet
oc-cursāre run to meet
ōceanus -ī *m* ocean
ocellus -ī *m* (little) eye
ōcissimē *sup* most quickly
ōcius *comp* more quickly
octāvus -a -um eighth
octiēs eight times
octingenti -ae -a eight
hundred
octō eight
Octōber -bris (mēnsis)
October
octōgēsimus -a -um
eightieth
octōgintā eighty
oculus -ī *m* eye
ōdisse hate
odium -ī *n* hatred
odor -ōris *m* smell
of-fendere -disse -ēnsum
come upon, find
offēsa -ae *f* offense,
resentment
offēsiō -ōnis *f* setback,
misfortune
of-ferre ob-tulisse -lātum
offer, present
officium -ī *n* duty, task
ōlim once, long ago, one
day
ōmen -inis *n* omen, augury
o-mittere abandon, leave
off/out
omnino altogether

omnis -e all, every
onerāre load
onus -eris *n* burden, load
opācus -a -um shady
opem -is -e *acc gen abl*
 power, aid, assistance
opera -ae *f* effort, pains, service
 operam dare (ut + *dat*)
 apply oneself
 operae nōn est (mihi) (I)
 can't spare the time
operārius -ī *m* labourer
operīre -uisse -rtum cover
opēs -um *f pl* resources, wealth, power, influence
opifex -icis *m* workman, artisan
opīmus -a -um rich
opīnārī think, believe
opīniō -ōnis *f* opinion, belief
oportēre: oportet it is right, you should
opperīrī -ertum wait (for), await
oppidānī -ōrum *m pl* townspeople
oppidum -ī *n* town
op-plēre -ēvisse -ētum fill up, cover
op-pōnere put in the way, oppose
opportunitās -ātis *f* convenience, advantage
opportūnus -a -um convenient, exposed
op-primere -pressisse -pressum press on, overwhelm
op-pugnāre attack
oppugnātiō -ōnis *f* attack, assault
optāre wish
optimātēs -ium *m pl* the nobles/conservatives
optimus -a -um *sup* best, very good
opulentia -ae *f* sumptuousness
opulentus -a -um wealthy, powerful
opus -eris *n* work, task
opus est it is needed
ōra -ae *f* border, coast

ōrāculum -ī *n* oracle
ōrāre pray, beg
ōrātiō -ōnis *f* speech
ōrātor -ōris *m* speaker, orator, envoy
ōrātōrius -a -um oratorical
ōrātrix -icis *f* female suppliant
orbis -is *m* circle, orbit, sphere
 orbis (terrārum) the world
orbitās -ātis *f* loss of children/parents
orbus -a -um childless, orphaned
ordināre arrange, regulate
ordīrī ōrsum begin (to speak)
ōrdō -inis *m* row, rank, order, class
 (ex) ōrdine in order, in sequence
oriēns -entis *m* east
orientālis -e eastern
origō -inis *f* beginnings, origin
orīrī ortum rise, appear, spring
ōrnāmentum -ī *n* ornament, jewel
ōrnāre equip, adorn
ōrnātus -a -um ornate, distinguished
ortus -ūs *m* rising, sunrise, origin
os ossis *n* bone
ōs ōris *n* mouth, face
ōscitāre gape, yawn
ōsculārī kiss
ōsculum -ī *n* kiss
ostendere -disse show, demonstrate
ostentāre display ostentatiously
ōstiārius -ī *m* door-keeper, porter
ōstium -ī *n* door, entrance
ōtiōsus -a -um leisured, idle
ōtium -ī *n* leisure, peace
ovāre exult, rejoice
ovis -is *f* sheep
ōvum -ī *n* egg

P

pābulārī forage
pābulum -ī *n* fodder
pācāre subdue
paciscī pactum contract/ stipulate for
pactō: quō pactō how
paelex -icis *f* concubine
paene nearly, almost
paen-insula -ae *f* peninsula
paenitēre: p.et mē (+ *gen*) I regret/repent
pāgina -ae *f* page
palam openly, publicly
 palam facere make generally known
pālārī stray, be dispersed
pallēre be pale
pallēscere -luisse grow pale
pallidus -a -um pale
pallium -ī *n* cloak, mantle
palma -ae *f* palm, hand
palpitāre beat, throb
palūdamentum -ī *n* military cloak
palūs -ūdis *f* fen, swamp
pālus -ī *m* stake
pandere -disse passum spread out
pānis -is *m* bread, loaf
papae! hey!
papāver -eris *n* poppy
papȳrus -ī *f* papyrus
pār paris *adi* equal, adequate
parāre prepare, provide, get
parātus -a -um ready
parcere pepercisce + *dat* spare
parēns -entis *m/f* father, mother
 parentēs -um *m pl* parents
parere -iō peperisse -rtum give birth to, lay, produce
pārēre (+ *dat*) obey
paries -etis *m* wall (of a house)
pariter equally, together
parricida -ae *m* parricide
parricidium -ī *n* murder of near relation
pars -rtis *f* part, direction, party

- particeps** -ipis *adi + gen*
having a share in
- partim** in part, partly
partim...partim/alii
some...others
- partiri** share, divide,
distribute
- parturire** be ready to give
birth to
- partus** -ūs *m* (giving) birth
- parum** too little, not quite
- parum-per** for a short
while
- parvulus** -a -um little, tiny
- parvus** -a -um little, small
- pāscere** pāvisse pāstum
pasture, feed, feast
- passer** -eris *m* sparrow
- passim** far and wide,
everywhere
- passus** -ūs *m* pace (1.48 m)
- pāstiō** -ōnis *f* pasturage
- pāstor** -ōris *m* shepherd
- pate-facere** open, reveal
pate-fieri be revealed
- patēns** -entis *adi* open
- pater** -tris *m* father; *pl*
senators
- patera** -ae *f* bowl
- patēre** be open, spread
- paternus** -a -um of the
father, paternal
- patēscere** -tuisse open
- pati** passum suffer, bear,
allow
aegrē/molestē pati
resent, be indignant
- patiēns** -entis *adi* patient
- patientia** -ae *f* forbearance,
patience
- patrāre** carry through
- patria** -ae *f* native country/
town
- patricius** -a -um patrician
- patrimōnium** -ī *n* patri-
mony, fortune
- patrius** -a -um of the
father, paternal
- patrōcinium** -ī *n* protec-
tion, defence
- patrōnus** -ī *m* patron,
pleader, advocate
- patruus** -ī *m* father's
brother, uncle
- pauci** -ae -a few, a few
- paucitās** -ātis *f* small
number, paucity
- paulātim** little by little,
gradually
- paulisper** for a short time
- paulō** + *comp*, ante/post a
little
- paululum** a little
- paulum** a little, little
- pauper** -eris *adi* poor
- pavēre** be terrified
- pavidus** -a -um terrified
- pavor** -ōris *m* terror, fright
- pāx** pācis *f* peace
- peccāre** do wrong
- peccātum** -ī *n* error,
offense
- pectus** -oris *n* breast
- pecua** -um *n pl* farm
animals
- peculātus** -ūs *m* embezzle-
ment
- pecūlium** -ī *n* money given
to slaves
- pecūnia** -ae *f* money
- pecūniōsus** -a -um wealthy
- pecus** -udis *f* farm animal,
sheep
- pecus** -oris *n* livestock,
sheep, cattle
- pedes** -itis *m* foot-soldier
- pedester** -tris -tre pedes-
trian, infantry
- pēior** -ius *comp* worse
- pellere** pepulisse pulsum
push, drive (off)
- pellere** -pulisse -pulsum
- Penātēs** -ium *m* Penates,
tutelary gods
- pendere** pependisse pēsum
weigh, pay
- pendēre** pependisse hang
- penes** *prp + acc* in the
possession of
- penetrālia** -ium *n pl* the
interior
- penetrāre** penetrate
- penitus** *adv* from within,
deep, far
- penna** -ae *f* feather
- pēnsāre** weigh, ponder,
consider
- pēnsiō** -ōnis *f* payment,
installment
- pēnsitāre** pay
- pēnsūm** -ī *n* task
- penta-meter** -tri *m*
pentameter
- pēnūria** -ae *f* scarcity,
want
- per** *prp + acc* through,
by, during
per sē by oneself,
single-handed
- per-agere** carry out,
complete
- per-agrāre** travel over
- per-angustus** -a -um very
narrow
- per-blandus** -a -um very
charming
- per-brevis** -e very short
- per-celer** -is -e very fast
- per-cellere** -ulisse -ditum
strike (with fear)
- per-cēnsēre** enumerate
- perceptiō** -ōnis *f* gathering
- per-contāri** inquire
(about), ask
- percontātiō** -ōnis *f* inter-
rogation, question
- per-currere** -rrisse -rsum
run over, pass over
- per-cutere** -iō -cussisse
-cussum strike, hit
- per-dere** -didisse -ditum
destroy, ruin, waste, lose
- per-domāre** subjugate
- perduelliō** -ōnis *f* treason
- peregrīnus** -a -um foreign,
alien
- perennis** -e enduring,
perpetual
- per-errāre** wander through
- per-exiguus** -a -um very
small
- perfectus** -a -um perfect
- per-ferre** carry, endure
- per-ficere** complete,
accomplish
- perfidia** -ae *f* faithlessness,
treachery
- perfidus** -a -um faithless,
treacherous
- perfuga** -ae *m* deserter
- per-fugere** take refuge
- per-fugium** -ī *n* place of
refuge, shelter
- per-fundere** wet, drench,
imbue, fill

- per-fungī** + *abl* carry through, finish
pergere *per-rēxisse* proceed, go on
per-grātus -a -um very pleasing
per-hibēre report, say
periculōsus -a -um dangerous, perilous
periculum -ī *n* danger, peril
per-imere -ēmisit -ēptum destroy, kill
periocha -ae *f* summary
per-ire -eō -iisse perish, be lost
peristylum -ī *n* peristyle
peritus -a -um + *gen* practiced, expert
per-iucundus -a -um very agreeable
per-magnus -a -um very large
per-manēre remain, continue
per-miscēre mix, blend
per-mittere allow, permit, leave
permixtiō -ōnis *f* disturbance, chaos
per-molestus -a -um very troublesome
per-movēre move deeply
per-multi -ae -a a great many
per-mūnīre fortify thoroughly
per-mūtāre exchange
permūtātiō -ōnis *f* exchange
perniciēs -ēī *f* destruction
perniciōsus -a -um destructive, disastrous
per-ōrāre conclude
per-paucī -ae -a very few
per-pellere enforce
perpetuus -a -um continuous, permanent
per-rogāre ask in turn
per-saepe very often
per-sequī follow, pursue
per-sevērāre persist, continue
per-solvere pay in full, fulfill
- persōna** -ae *f* character, person
per-spicere survey, recognize
per-stāre stand firm, persist
per-suādēre -sisse + *dat* persuade, convince
per-territus -a -um terrified
per-timēscere -muisse be frightened (of)
per-tinēre (ad) relate, pertain (to)
per-turbāre upset
per-vādere -sisse -sum spread, pervade
per-vāstāre devastate completely
per-venīre get to, reach
per-volāre move rapidly, rush, fly
pēs *pedis m* foot
pessimus -a -um *sup* worst
pessum dare destroy, ruin
pesti-fer -era -erum disastrous, pernicious
pestilentia -ae *f* plague, pestilence
pestis -is *f* plague, disaster
petasus -ī *m* hat
petere -īvisse -itum make for, aim at, attack, seek, ask for, request
petitiō -ōnis *f* pursuit, candidature
phalerae -ārum *f pl* military decoration
phantasma -atis *n* ghost, apparition
pharetra -ae *f* quiver
philosophia -ae *f* philosophy
philosophus -ī *m* philosopher
pietās -ātis *f* respect, devotion, piety
piger -gra -grum lazy, torpid
pigēre: piget *mē* (+ *gen*) I am displeased, I regret
pignus -oris *n* pledge
pila -ae *f* ball
pilleus -ī *m* felt cap
pilum -ī *n* spear, javelin
- pingere** *pīnxisse* pictum paint, embroider
tabula picta painting
pīpiāre chirp
pīrāta -ae *m* pirate
pīrāticus -a -um of pirates
pirum -ī *n* pear
piscātor -ōris *m* fisherman
piscis -is *m* fish
pīus -a -um dutiful, devoted, pious
placēre + *dat* please
placidus -a -um quiet, calm, gentle
placitus -a -um pleasing, agreeable
plānē plainly, clearly
plānus -a -um plain, clear
plaudere -sisse (+ *dat*) clap, applaud
plausus -ūs *m* applause
plēbēīi -ōrum *m pl* plebeians
plēb(ē)s -is *f* the (common) people
plēnus -a -um (+ *gen/abl*) full (of)
plēri-que *plērae- plēra-* most, most people
plērumque *adv* mostly
plērus-que *plēra- plērum-* most (of), the greater part
plōrāre cry
plūma -ae *f* feather
plumbum -ī *n* lead
plūrēs -a *comp* more
plūrimī -ae -a *sup* most, a great many
plūrimum -ī *n, adv* most, very much
plūrimus -a -um very much, a lot of
plūs *plūris n, adv* more
pōcūm -ī *n* cup, glass
poēma -atis *n* poem
poena -ae *f* punishment, penalty
poenās dare suffer punishment
poēta -ae *m/f* poet
poēticus -a -um poetical
pollēns -entis *adi* strong
pollēre be strong
pollicērī promise
pollicitārī promise

pollicitatiō -ōnis <i>f</i> promise	posteritās -ātis <i>f</i> future, posterity	prae-dicāre declare
polluere -uisse -ūtum soil, violate, degrade	posterus -a -um next, following	prae-dicere foretell, prophesy
pōmērīum -ī <i>n</i> open space round town	posthāc from now on, hereafter	praedictum -ī <i>n</i> prediction, prophecy
pompa -ae <i>f</i> ceremonial procession	posticum -ī <i>n</i> backdoor	praedium -ī <i>n</i> estate
pōndō <i>indēcl</i> in weight, pounds	post-quam after, since	prae-dives -itis <i>adi</i> very rich
pondus -eris <i>n</i> weight	postrēmō <i>adv</i> finally	praedō -ōnis <i>m</i> robber, pirate
pōnere posuisse positum place, put, pitch, lay down, take off, give up	postrēmum <i>adv</i> for the last time	prae-esse (+ <i>dat</i>) be in charge (of)
positum esse (in) be situated, lie, depend	postrēmus -a -um <i>sup</i> last	praefectus -ī <i>m</i> prefect, commander
pōns pontis <i>m</i> bridge	postrī-diē on the following day	prae-ferre prefer
pontifex -icis <i>m</i> high priest	postulāre demand, require	prae-ficere put in charge of
pontus -ī <i>m</i> sea	postulātum -ī <i>n</i> demand	prae-mittere send in advance
populārī ravage, plunder	pōtāre drink	praemium -ī <i>n</i> reward, prize
populāris -e of the people, popular	potēns -entis <i>adi</i> powerful, master(ing)	prae-nōmen -inis <i>n</i> first name
populāris -is <i>m</i> fellow citizen	potentia -ae <i>f</i> power	prae-occupāre preoccupy
populus -ī <i>m</i> people, nation	potestās -ātis <i>f</i> power	prae-parāre prepare
porcus -ī <i>m</i> pig	pōtiō -ōnis <i>f</i> drinking, drink	prae-pōnere (+ <i>dat</i>) put in charge of
por-rigere stretch out	potior -ius <i>comp</i> preferable, better	prae-potēns -entis <i>adi</i> very powerful
porrō forward, ahead	potīrī + <i>abl/gen</i> take possession of, hold	praesēns -entis <i>adi</i> present, instant
porta -ae <i>f</i> gate	potissimum <i>adv sup</i> preferably, especially	(tempus) praesēns present
portāre carry	potius <i>adv comp</i> rather	prae-sentire have a presentiment of
por-tendere -disse -tum portend, presage	prae <i>prp</i> + <i>abl</i> before, for	praesertim especially
portentum -ī <i>n</i> portent, prodigy	praebere present, offer, show	praeses -idis <i>m/f</i> guardian
porticus -ūs <i>f</i> portico, colonnade	prae-cedere go on ahead, precede	praesidium -ī <i>n</i> protection, aid, garrison
portuōsus -a -um having many harbors	praeceps -ipitis <i>adi</i> headlong, precipitous	praestāns -antis <i>adi</i> outstanding
portus -ūs <i>m</i> harbor	praeceptum -ī <i>n</i> instruction, order	prae-stāre -stitisse furnish, fulfill, surpass
poscere poposcisse demand, call for	prae-cipere anticipate, advise, order	praestāt it is better
posse potuisse be able	praecipitāre throw/fall/ rush headlong	prae-sumere take for oneself, assume
possessio -ōnis <i>f</i> possession, occupation	praecipuē especially, above all	praeter <i>prp</i> + <i>acc</i> past, besides, except
possidēre -sēdisse possess, own	praecipuus -a -um outstanding, exceptional	praeter spem contrary to expectation
post <i>prp</i> + <i>acc, adv</i> behind, after, later	prae-clārus -a -um splendid, excellent	praeter-eā besides
post-eā afterward, later	praecō -ōnis <i>m</i> crier, announcer, herald	praeter-īre pass by, pass, pass over
posteā-quam after, since	praeda -ae <i>f</i> booty, prey	praeteritus -a -um past (tempus) praeteritum the past
posterī -ōrum <i>m pl</i> descendants, posterity	praedārī plunder, loot	
posterior -ius <i>comp</i> back-, hind-, later	praedātōrius -a -um plundering	

- praeter-mittere** omit, neglect, let pass
praeter-quam quod apart from the fact that
praeter-vehi ride/drive/sail past
prae-texta: toga p. toga with purple border
praetextātus -a -um wearing a toga praetexta
praetor -ōris *m* praetor, commander
praetōrium -ī *n* general's tent
praetōrius -a -um of the commander
praetōrius -ī *m* ex-praetor
praetūra -ae *f* praetorship
praeverbium -ī *n* prefix
prāt(ul)um -ī *n* meadow, lawn
prāvus -a -um faulty, wrong
precārī pray
precēs -um *f pl* prayers
prehendere -disse -ēsum grasp, seize
premere pressisse press, harass, press hard
pressum on, repress
pretiōsus -a -um precious
pretium -ī *n* price, value, reward
pridem long ago
prī-diē the day before
primō *adv* at first, first
primōrēs -um *m pl* leading men, front ranks
primum *adv* first
quam primum as soon as possible
prīmus -a -um first
princeps -ipis *adi, m* first, chief, emperor
principium -ī *n* beginning, origin, basis
prior -ius first, former, front-
prīstinus -a -um former, previous
prius *adv* before
prius-quam before
privātīm *adv* privately, personally
privātum -ī *n* private property
privātus -a -um private, holding no office
prō *prp + abl* before, on, for, instead of, as, according to
prō! o!
probāre approve of, prove
probātus -a -um acceptable, pleasing
probus -a -um good, honest, proper
prō-cedere advance, go on, succeed
procella -ae *f* violent wind, gale
procērus -a -um tall, long
prō-cidere -disse fall forward, collapse
prō-clāmāre cry out
prō-cōsul -is *m* (prōcōs.) proconsul, governor
prō-creāre engender, beget
procul far away, far (from)
procul dubiō without doubt
prō-cumbere -cubuisse lean forward, bow down
prō-cūrāre attend to, administer
prōcūrātor -ōris *m* manager, superintendent
prō-currere -rresse -rsum run forward, charge
prō-dere -didisse -ditum hand down, betray
prōd-esse prō-fuisse + *dat* be useful, do good
prōdigium -ī *n* prodigy
prōd-ire -eō -iisse -itum come forward, go forth
prōditiō -ōnis *f* betrayal
prōditor -ōris *m* traitor
prō-dūcere bring forth, extend
proelium -ī *n* battle
profectō indeed, certainly
prō-ferre fetch, produce, extend
prō-ficere progress, be successful
proficiscī -fectum set out, depart
pro-fitērī -fessum declare, offer
prō-fligāre defeat decisively, crush
pro-fugere run away, flee
profugus -a -um fleeing; *m* fugitive
pro-fundere pour out, shed
prōgeniēs -ēi *f* offspring, descent
prō-gnātus -a -um (+ *abl*) born, son (of)
prō-gredi -ior -gressum go forward, advance
prōgressiō -ōnis *f* advance
pro-hibēre keep off, prevent, forbid
prō-icere throw (forward)
pro-inde (+ *imp*) accordingly
prō-lābi slip, overbalance
prōlēs -is *f* offspring
prōlētārii -ōrum *m pl* lowest class of citizens
prōmere -mpsisse -mptum take out
prō-minēre project, stick out
prōmissum -ī *n* promise
prō-mittere promise
prō-movēre push forward, advance
prōmptū: in *p.* within reach, easy
prōmptus -a -um prompt, keen, ready
prō-mulgāre announce, publish
prōmunturium -ī *n* headland, promontory
prō-nūntiāre proclaim, announce
prōnus -a -um leaning forward, inclined
prōpatulum -ī *n* forecourt
prope *prp + acc, adv* near, nearly
properāre hurry
properē quickly
propinquus -a -um near, close, *m* relative
propior -ius *comp* nearer, closer

propius *adv comp* nearer
prō-pōnere set up, propose
prōpositum -ī *n* objective, point
prō-praetor -ōris *m* propraetor
proprius -a -um own, proper
propter *prp + acc, adv* because of, near
propter-eā therefore
prōra -ae *f* prow
prō-scribere proscribe, outlaw
prō-sequi accompany, honor
prō-silire -uisse spring forth
prosperus -a -um successful, favorable
prō-spicere look out, look ahead
prō-sternere knock down, overthrow
prō-tegere protect
prōtinus at once
prō-trahere pull out, draw out
prō-vehī -vectum sail out
prōventus -ūs *m* growth, crop, harvest
prō-vidēre see to it, take care
prōvincia -ae *f* province, charge
prō-vocāre challenge, appeal
prōvocātiō -ōnis *f* appeal
prō-volāre rush forth
proximus -a -um *sup* nearest, next
proximus -ī *m* close relative
prūdēns -entis *adi* prudent, clever
prudentia -ae *f* intelligence, proficiency
pruīna -ae *f* hoarfrost, rime
pūbēs -eris *adi* mature, grown-up
pūblicānus -ī *m* tax-gatherer, publican
pūblicāre confiscate
pūblicum -ī *n* public funds

pūblicus -a -um public, state-
rēs pūblica affairs of state, the state
pudēns -entis *adi* modest, virtuous
pudēre pudet *mē (+ gen)* I am ashamed (of)
pudibundus -a -um shamefaced
pudicitia -ae *f* chastity, virtue
pudicus -a -um chaste
pudor -ōris *m* shame, decency
puella -ae *f* girl
puer -erī *m* boy, slave; *pl* children
puerilis -e of children
pueritia -ae *f* boyhood
puerulus -ī *m* small boy
pugna -ae *f* fight
pugnāre fight
pugnātor -ōris *m* fighter, combatant
pugnus -ī *m* fist
pulcher -chra -chrum beautiful, fine
pulchritūdō -inis *f* beauty
pullus -ī *m* young one, chicken
pullus -a -um somber, grey
pulmō -ōnis *m* lung
pulsāre strike, hit, knock (at)
pulsus -ūs *m* thrust, impulse
pulvīnar -āris *n* couch for the gods
pulvis -eris *m* dust
pūnctum -ī *n* dot, point, speck
pūnīre punish
puppis -is *f, acc -im, abl -ī* stern, poop
pūrgāre clean, purge, excuse
purpura -ae *f* purple
pūrus -a -um clean, pure
putāre think, suppose

Q

quā which way, where
(sī/nē/num) **quā** by any road, anywhere

quā-cumque wherever
quadrāgēsīmus -a -um fortieth
quadrāgintā forty
quadrātus -a -um square
quadriennium -ī *n* four years
quadrigae -ārum *f pl* team of four horses
quadrīngentēsīmus -a -um four hundredth
quadrīngenti -ae -a four hundred
quaerere -sīvisse -sītum look for, seek, ask (for)
quaesō I ask you, please
quaestiō -ōnis *f* inquiry, question
quaestor -ōris *m* quaestor
quaestōrius -a -um fit to be a quaestor
quaestūra -ae *f* quaestorship
quaestus -ūs *m* income, profit
quālis -e what sort of, (such) as
quālis-cumque of whatever sort
quālitās -ātis *f* quality
quam how, as, than
quam + sup as...as possible
quam-diū how long, (as long) as
quam-ob-rem why
quamquam although
quam-vīs however, although
quandō when, seeing that
(sī/nē/num) **quandō** at any time, ever
quantitās -ātis *f* quantity, size
quantō + comp (tantō...) how much, the...(the...)
quantum -ī *n, adv* how much, (as much) as
quanti gen pretiī of what worth
quantus -a -um how large, (as large) as
quantus-cumque -a -um- however great/much
quā-propter why

quā-rē why, therefore, hence
quārtum/quārtō *adv* for
the fourth time
quārtus -a -um fourth
quārta pars fourth,
quarter
quasi as, like, as if
quassāre shake, damage,
batter
quater four times
quaterē -iō shake
quaternī -ae -a four (each)
quattuor four
quattuor-decim fourteen
-que and
quercus -ī *f* oak
querēlla -ae *f* complaint
querī questum complain,
grumble
querimōnia -ae *f* complaint,
protest
quī quae quod who, which,
he who
quī quae quod (...?) what,
which
quī qua quod (sī/nē...) any
quia because
quic-quam -quid *v.* quid-
quī-cumque quae- quod-
whoever, whatever, any
quid (*v.* quis) what,
anything
quid *adv* why
quī-dam quae- quod-/quid-
a certain, some(one)
quidem indeed, certainly
nē quidem not even
quidnī why not
quid-quam/quic-quam
anything
quid-quid/quic-quid
whatever, anything that
quiēs -ētis *f* rest, repose,
sleep
quiēscere -ēvisse rest
quiētus -a -um quiet
quī-libet quae- quod- no
matter what/which
quīn why not, do...! come!
quīn (etiam) indeed,
even
(nōn...) quīn + *conī*
(but) that
quī-nam *v.* quis-nam
quīn-decim fifteen

quīndecim-virī -ōrum *m pl*
board of fifteen priests
quīngentēsīmus -a -um
five hundredth
quīn-genti -ae -a five
hundred
quīnī -ae -a five (each)
quīnquāgēsīmus -a -um
fiftieth
quīnquāgintā fifty
quīnque five
quīnquennium -ī *n* five
years
quīnque-rēmīs (nāvis)
having five banks of oars
quīnquiēs five times
Quīntilis -is (mēnsis) July
quīntum/quīntō *adv* for
the fifth time
quīntus -a -um fifth
quippe (quī/quae) inas-
much as, for
quīre -eō -īvisse be able to
Quīritēs -ium *m pl* Roman
citizens
quis quae quid who, what
quis quid (sī/num/nē...) anyone, anything
quis-nam (quī-) quid-nam
who/what ever?
quis-quam anyone
quis-que quae- quod- each
quis-quis anyone who,
whoever
quī-vīs quae- quod- no
matter what, any
quō *adv* where (to)
quō + *comp* (eō...) the...
(the...)
quō + *conī* in order that
(thereby)
quo-ad until
quō-circā hence, therefore
quō-cumque *adv* wherever
quod (= quia) because, that
quod sī if however, but if
quod *n* what, which, that
which
quō-modo how
quondam once, some day
quoniam since, seeing
that, as
quoque also, too
quot *indēcl* how many,
(as many) as

quot-annīs every year
quotiēs how often, as
often as
quotiēs-cumque every
time that
quo-ūsque how long?
till when?

R

rabiēs -ēī *f* rage, fury
radius -ī *m* ray
rādix -īcis *f* root, foot, base
rāmus -ī *m* branch, bough
rapere -iō -uisse -ptum
carry off, *pass* rush off
rapidus -a -um rushing,
rapid
rapīna -ae *f* carrying off,
plunder
raptim hurriedly
rārō *adv* rarely, seldom
rārus -a -um rare
ratiō -ōnis *f* account,
consideration, reason,
method, affair
rationem habēre + *gen*
take into account
ratiōnālis -e of reasoning
ratis -is *f* raft
ratus -a -um valid, fixed,
certain
prō ratā parte in
proportion
re-bellāre reopen the war,
revolt
re-cēdere go back, retire
recēns -entis *adi* fresh
re-cidere reccidisse fall
back
re-cidere -disse -sum cut
off, remove
reciperāre recover,
recapture
re-cipere receive, admit,
accept
sē recipere retire, return,
recover
recitāre read aloud
re-cognōscere recognize
re-conciliāre win back,
reconcile
re-cordārī call to mind,
recollect
recordātiō -ōnis *f*
recollection

re-creāre restore, revive	religiōsus -a -um sacred	re-pugnāre fight back, resist
rēctor -ōris <i>m</i> ruler, governor	re-linquere leave	repulsa -ae <i>f</i> defeat (in an election)
rēctus -a -um straight, direct, straightforward, right, correct	reliquiae -ārum <i>fpl</i> remnants, remains	re-putāre think over, reflect on
rēctā (viā) straight	reliquum -ī <i>n</i> remainder, future	re-quiēscere rest
re-cumbere -cubuisse lie down	reliquus -a -um remaining, left	re-quirere -sivisse -sītum seek, ask
re-cūsāre reject, refuse	re-mandāre send back word	rērī ratum reckon, think, believe
red-dere -didisse -ditum give back, render	re-manēre remain, stay behind	rēs reī <i>f</i> thing, matter, affair
red-igere -ēgisse -āctum drive back, bring, reduce	remedium -ī <i>n</i> remedy	rēs (publica) affairs of state, the state
red-imere -ēmissee -ēmtum ransom	rēmex -igis <i>m</i> oarsman, rower	re-scindere demolish, cancel, annul
redimire encircle, surround	rēmigāre row	re-sidere -sēdisse sink back, subside
red-ire -eō -iisse -itum go back, return	re-minisci + <i>gen/acc</i> recollect	re-sistere -stitisse + <i>dat</i> halt, resist
red-ire ad sē redire return to one's senses	remissio -ōnis <i>f</i> relaxation	re-sonāre resound
reditus -ūs <i>m</i> return	remissus -a -um gentle, relaxed	re-spergere -sisse -sum sprinkle, splatter
red-ducere lead back, bring back	re-mittere send back, relax	re-spicere look back (at), heed, regard, have regard for
red-undāre overflow, be exuberant	re-morārī delay	re-spondere -disse -sum answer
re-fellere -lisse refute	remōtus -a -um remote, distant	respōnsum -ī <i>n</i> answer
re-ferre rettulisse relātum bring back, return, report, enter, refer	re-movēre remove	re-stāre -stitisse remain, be left
re-ferre (dē) make a proposal	rēmūs -ī <i>m</i> oar	restat (ut) it remains
rē-ferre rē-fert (meā) it is important (for me)	re-nāscī be reborn, be re-created	re-stinguere -stīnxisse -stīnctum put out, extinguish
re-ficere restore, repair	re-novāre renew, resume	restis -is <i>f</i> rope
re-fugere flee back, escape, recoil	re-nūtiāre report, renounce	re-stituere -uisse -ūtum rebuild, restore, reinstate
rēgālis -e royal	re-parāre repair, restore, renew	re-surgere rise again, be restored
regere rēxisse rēctum direct, guide, govern	re-pellere reppulisse -pulsum drive back, repel, rebuff	re-tardāre delay, hold up
rēgia -ae <i>f</i> royal palace	repēns -entis <i>adi</i> sudden, unexpected	rēte -is <i>n</i> net
rēgīna -ae <i>f</i> queen	repente <i>adv</i> suddenly	re-ticēre keep silent
rēgiō -ōnis <i>f</i> region, district	repentinus -a -um sudden	re-tinēre -uisse -tentum hold back
rēgius -a -um royal	rēpere -psisse -ptum crawl	re-trahere pull back, bring back
rēgnāre reign, rule	reperire repperisse repertum find, discover, devise, invent	retrō back
rēgnum -ī <i>n</i> kingship, kingdom, reign	re-petere return to, repeat, claim back, recall	reus -ī <i>m</i> defendant, accused
re-gredi -ior -gressum go back, return	rēs repetere claim return of property	re-vehere bring back
rēgula -ae <i>f</i> ruler	re-pōnere put back	re-venire come back
rēgulus -ī <i>m</i> petty king, prince	re-portāre carry back, bring home	reverti -tisse -sum return, come back
re-laxāre relax, relieve	re-prehendere blame, censure	re-vincere conquer
religiō -ōnis <i>f</i> fear of the gods, religion	re-primere -essisse -essum check, repress, restrain	
	repudiāre reject, refuse to accept	

re-visere revisit, visit
re-vocāre call back, recall, revoke
rēx rēgis *m* king
rhētor -oris *m* teacher of rhetoric
ridēre -sisse -sum laugh, make fun of
ridiculus -a -um ridiculous
rigāre irrigate
rigēre be stiff
rīpa -ae *f* bank
-ripere -iō -uisse -reptum
rīsus -ūs *m* laughter, laugh
rīte *adv* with due rites, properly
rītus -ūs *m* rites, ceremonies
rīvus -ī *m* brook, channel
rixa -ae *f* quarrel, brawl
rōbur -oris *n* oak, strength, force
rōbustus -a -um strong, robust
rogāre ask, ask for
rogātiō -ōnis *f* proposed law, bill
rogitāre ask (repeatedly)
rogus -ī *m* funeral pyre
Rōmānus -a -um Roman
rosa -ae *f* rose
rōstra -ōrum *n pl* speakers' platform
rōstrātus -a -um having a beaked prow
rōstrum -ī *n* beak, beaked prow
rota -ae *f* wheel
rotundus -a -um round
ruber -bra -brum red
rubēre be red, blush
rudis -e crude, rude
ruere ruisse rush, tumble down
ruīna -ae *f* collapse, ruin
rūmor -ōris *m* rumor
rumpere rūpisse ruptum burst, break, break off
rūpēs -is *f* crag, rock
ruptor -ōris *m* one who breaks
rūrī *loc* in the country
rūrus *adv* again
rūs rūris *n* the country

rūsticus -a -um rural, rustic, farm-
rutilus -a -um red

S

sacculus -ī *m* purse
saccus -ī *m* sack
sacer -cra -crum holy, sacred
sacerdōs -ōtis *m/f* priest, priestess
sacrāre consecrate
sacrārium -ī *n* sanctuary
sacrificāre make a sacrifice
sacrificium -ī *n* sacrifice
sacrum -ī *n* sacred object, sacrifice
saeculum -ī *n* generation, age, century
saepe -ius -issimē often
saepire surround
saevitia -ae *f* savageness, cruelty
saevus -a -um fierce, cruel
sagitta -ae *f* arrow
sagittārius -ī *m* archer, bowman
sāl salis *m* salt, wit
salinae -ārum *f pl* salt-pans
salire -uisse jump
saltāre dance
saltem at least, anyhow
saltus -ūs *m* wooded hills
salūber -bris -bre healthy, salutary
salūs -ūtis *f* health, salvation, safety
 salūtem dicere + *dat* greet
salūtāre greet
salūtāris -e wholesome, salutary
salvāre save
salvē -ēte hallo, good morning
salvēre iubēre greet
salvus -a -um safe, unharmed
sānāre heal, cure
sānctus -a -um holy
sānē certainly, quite
sanguineus -a -um blood-stained, bloodshot
sanguinulentus -a -um blood-stained

sanguis -inis *m* blood, race, relationship
sānus -a -um healthy, well
sapere -iō -iisse be wise, have sense
sapiēns -entis *adi* wise
sapientia -ae *f* wisdom
sarcina -ae *f* pack, kit
sarmentum -ī *n* brush-wood, branch
satelles -itis *m* henchman, attendant
satis enough, rather
satius *comp* < satis better, preferable
saucius -a -um wounded
saxum -ī *n* rock
scaena -ae *f* scene, stage
scaenicus -a -um theatrical
scālae -ārum *f pl* ladder
scalpellum -ī *n* scalpel, surgical knife
scamnum -ī *n* stool
scandere -disse -ānsum climb, mount
scelerātus -a -um accursed, criminal
scelerestus -a -um criminal, wicked
scelus -eris *n* crime
scēptum -ī *n* sceptre
sciēns -entis *adi* + *gen* having knowledge of
scientia -ae *f* knowledge
scilicet of course
scindere -idisse -issum tear, tear up
scīre know
scīscitārī inquire, ask
scopulus -ī *m* rock
scortum -ī *n* prostitute, whore
scribere -psisse -ptum write, describe, enroll
scriptor -ōris *m* writer
scriptum -ī *n* writing, book
scrīptūra -ae *f* tax on grazing rights
scrūtārī examine, search
scūtum -ī *n* shield
sē/sēsē *acc/abl, dat* sibi himself, each other
secāre -uisse -ctum cut
sē-cernere separate, detach
sēcrētō *adv* in private

sēcrētum -ī *n* seclusion,
privacy
secundō *adv* for the
second time
secundum *prp* + *acc* along,
after, according to
secundus -a -um second,
favorable
secūris -is *f*, *acc* -im, *abl* -ī
axe
secus *adv* otherwise
sed but
sēdāre allay, appease, calm
sē-decim sixteen
sedere sēdisse sit
sēdēs -is *f* seat, abode,
dwelling
sēditio -ōnis *f* discord,
insurrection
sēditiosus -a -um seditious
sēgnis -e slothful, inactive
sē-iungere separate
sella -ae *f* stool, chair
semel once
sēmen -inis *n* seed,
offspring
sē-met himself, themselves
sēmi-animis -e half-alive
sēmi-ermis -e half-armed
sēmi-somnus -a -um half-
asleep
semper always
sempiternus -a -um ever-
lasting, eternal
senātor -ōris *m* senator
senātus -ūs *m* senate,
assembly, sitting
senecta -ae *f* old age
senectūs -ūtis *f* old age
senescere -nuisse grow old,
weaken
senex senis *m* old man
sēnī -ae -a six (each)
senior -ōris *comp* older
sēnsim gradually, little by
little
sēnsus -ūs *m* sense,
sensation
sententia -ae *f* opinion,
sentence
sentire sēnsisse -sum feel,
sense, think
sepelire -īvisse
-ultum bury
septem seven

September -bris (mēnsis)
September
septen-decim seventeen
septēnī -ae -a seven (each)
septentrionālis -e northern
septentrionēs -um *m pl*
north
septimus -a -um seventh
septingentēsimus -a -um
seven hundredth
septin-gentī -ae -a seven
hundred
septuagēsimus -a -um
seventieth
septuagintā seventy
sepulcrum -ī *n* tomb, grave
sequī secūtum follow
serēnus -a -um clear,
cloudless, calm
serere sēvisse satum sow,
plant
sērius *comp adv* < sērō
later, too late
sērius -a -um serious
sermō -ōnis *m* talk,
language
serō *adv, comp* sērius late
serpens -entis *m* snake,
serpent
sērus -a -um late
serva -ae *f* female slave
servāre preserve, save
servātor -ōris *m* savior
servilis -e of a slave, servile
servīre + *dat* be a slave,
serve
servitium -ī *n* slavery
servitūs -ūtis *f* slavery
servus -ī *m* slave, servant
sescentēsimus -a -um six
hundredth
ses-centī -ae -a six
hundred
sēsē *v. sē*
sēstertius -ī *m* sesterce
(coin)
sētius nihilō sētius none
the less
seu *v. sī-ve/seu*
sevērus -a -um stern,
severe
sex six
sexagēsimus -a -um
sixtieth
sexagintā sixty

sexiēs six times
Sextilis -is (mēnsis) August
sextus -a -um sixth
sī if
sīc in this way, so, thus
siccāre dry, drain
siccus -a -um dry
sīc-ut/-utī just as, as
sīdere sēdisse sessum sit
down, settle
sīdus -eris *n* star, heavenly
body
signāre mark, seal, stamp
significāre indicate, mean
significātiō -ōnis *f* intima-
tion, meaning
signum -ī *n* sign, seal,
signal, statue, ensign
silentium -ī *n* silence
silēre be silent
silva -ae *f* wood, forest
silvestris -e of the woods,
wild
similis -e (+ *gen/dat*), *sup*
-illimus similar, like
vērī similis probable,
convincing
simplex -icis *adi* simple,
single, plain
simul together, at the same
time
simul (atque) + *perf* as
soon as
simulacrum -ī *n* image,
statue
simulāre pretend
simultās -ātis *f* enmity,
quarrel
sīn but if
sine *prp* + *abl* without
sinere sīvisse situm let,
allow
singulāris -e single,
singular, unique
singulī -ae -a one (each),
each
sinister -tra -trum left, *f*
the left (hand)
sinus -ūs *m* bay, fold (of
toga), breast
sī-quidem seeing that,
since
sistere halt, stop
sitire be thirsty
sitis -is *f* thirst

situs -a -um situated,
based, dependent
situs -ūs *m* position,
situation
sī-ve/seu or, or if
s. ...s. whether...or
socer -erī *m* father-in-law
sociālis -e of allies, social
sociāre join, unite
societās -ātis *f* partnership,
alliance
socius -ī *m* companion,
partner, ally
socordia -ae *f* sluggishness,
indolence
sōl -is *m* sun
sōlārī comfort
solēre -itum esse be
accustomed
sōlitūdō -inis *f* loneliness,
lonely place
solitus -a -um usual
solium -ī *n* throne
sollicitāre solicit, incite
solum -ī *n* soil, ground,
floor
solum *adv* only
sōlus -a -um alone, lonely
solūtus -a -um *ōrātiō* s.a
prose
solvere -visse solūtum
untie, loosen, dissolve,
abolish, discharge, pay
nāvem solvere cast off,
set sail
somnium -ī *n* dream
somnus -ī *m* sleep
sonāre -uisse sound
sonitus -ūs *m* noise, sound
sonus -ī *m* sound
sōpire cause to sleep, stun
sōpītus sleeping, asleep
sordēs -ium *f pl* dirt
sordidus -a -um dirty,
mean, base
soror -ōris *f* sister
sors -rtis *f* lot, drawing lots,
fortune
sortīrī draw lots
sōspes -itis *adi* safe and
sound
spargere -sisse -sum scatter
spatium -ī *n* space,
distance, interval, walk,
time, period

speciēs -ēī *f* sight,
appearance, shape,
semblance, sort, species
spectāculum -ī *n* sight,
spectacle, *pl* seats
spectāre watch, look at
spectāre ad face, tend to,
aim at
spectātor -ōris *m* spectator
spectātus -a -um manifest,
undisputed
speculārī spy, reconnoiter
speculātor -ōris *m* scout,
spy
speculum -ī *n* mirror
specus -ūs *m* cave, grotto
spelunca -ae *f* cave, grotto
spērāre hope (for)
spernere sprēvisse -ētum
disdain, scorn
spēs -ēī *f* hope
sphaera -ae *f* globe, sphere
-spicere -iō -spexisse
-spectum
spirāre breathe, blow
splendēre shine
splendidus -a -um shining,
splendid
splendor -ōris *m* bright-
ness, splendor
spolia -ōrum *n pl* spoils,
booty
spoliāre strip (of arms),
rob
spondēre spondidisse
spōnsum pledge,
promise, betroth
spondēus -ī *m* spondee
(—)
spōnsus -ī *m* fiancé
sponte (meā/suā) of my/
his own accord
stabilis -e firm, stable
stabulum -ī *n* stable
stadium -ī *n* running-
track
stāgnum -ī *n* pool, pond
stāre stetisse stand, endure,
cost
statim at once
statiō -ōnis *f* post, guard,
anchorage
stativa -ōrum *n pl* perma-
nent camp
statua -ae *f* statue

statuere -uisse -ūtum fix,
determine, decide
status -ūs *m* state, con-
dition, order
stēlla -ae *f* star
stēllifer -era -erum star-
bearing
sterilis -e barren, sterile
sternere strāvisse
strātum spread, knock
down
viam sternere pave a
road
stillāre drip
stilus -ī *m* stylus, writing
stimulāre spur on,
stimulate
stipendium -ī *n* soldier's
pay, service
stīpes -itis *m* stake, stick
stirps -pis *f* origin, stock,
offspring
strāgēs -is *f* slaughter
strāmentum -ī *n* straw
strēnuus -a -um active,
vigorous
strepere -uisse make a
noise
strepitus -ūs *m* noise, din
stringere -īnxisse -ictum
draw, unsheathe
strophē -ae *f* verse, stanza
struere -ūxisse -ūctum
arrange, contrive, devise
studēre + *dat* devote
oneself to
studiōsus -a -um (+ *gen*)
interested (in)
studium -ī *n* interest, study
stultitia -ae *f* stupidity,
folly
stultus -a -um stupid,
foolish
stupe-factus -a -um
amazed, stupefied
stupēre be aghast
stuprāre violate, rape
stuprum -ī *n* rape
suādēre -sisse -sum + *dat*
advise
sub *prp* + *abl/acc* under, near
sub-agrestis -e somewhat
boorish
sub-dere -didisse -ditum
set (spurs to)

sub-dūcere draw up,
beach, lead off
sub-icere put under,
subject, add
sub-iectus -a -um + *dat*
situated under
sub-igere -ēgisse -āctum
subdue, drive, force
sub-inde immediately
afterward
sub-ire -eō -iisse -itum go
under, undergo
subitō *adv* suddenly
subitus -a -um sudden
sub-legere appoint
sublimis -e high (up), aloft
sub-mergere sink
sub-mittere lower
sub-movēre remove, drive
off
sub-nixus -a -um + *abl*
resting on, relying on
sub-scribere write
underneath
subsellium -ī *n* bench
subsidium -ī *n* support,
help, resource
subter *adv* below,
underneath
sub-terrāneus -a -um
underground
sub-urbānus -a -um near
the city
sub-venire + *dat* come to
help
suc-cedere (+ *dat*) enter,
succeed, follow
successor -ōris *m* successor
successus -ūs *m* success
suc-cingere surround
suc-clāmāre shout in
response
suc-cumbere -cubuisse + *dat*
yield, submit
suc-currere -rrisse + *dat*
(run to) help
sūdor -ōris *m* sweat
suf-ficere appoint,
substitute
suffixum -ī *n* suffix
suf-frāgārī vote for, support
suffrāgium -ī *n* vote
sūmere -mpsisse
-mptum take, take up,
adopt, assume

summa -ae *f* total, sum,
main part
summus -a -um *sup* high-
est, greatest, top of
sūmptus -ūs *m* expendi-
ture, expense
su-ove-aurilia -ium *n pl*
purificatory sacrifice
super *prp* + *acc, adv* on, on
top (of), above
prp + *abl* on, about
superāre cross, surpass,
overcome, defeat,
remain
superbia -ae *f* arrogance,
pride
superbus -a -um haughty,
proud
super-eminēre stand out
above
super-esse be left, be over,
survive
super-fundere pour over,
spread
superior -ius *comp* higher,
superior, former
superus -a -um upper
super-venire (+ *dat*)
appear, surprise
suppeditāre supply
supplémentum -ī *n*
reinforcement
sup-plēre -ēvisse -ētum fill
up, reinforce
supplex -icis *adi* suppliant
supplicatiō -ōnis *f* thanks-
giving
supplicium -ī *n* (capital)
punishment
suprā *prp* + *acc* above, on,
over
adv above, further back
suprēmus -a -um *sup* high-
est, sovereign
surdus -a -um deaf
surgere sur-rēxisse rise, get
up
sur-ripere steal
sūsum *adv* up, upward
sūs suis *f* pig
sus-cipere take up, receive,
adopt
suscitāre wake up, rouse
suspectus -a -um sus-
pected, suspect

sus-pendere -disse -ēnsūm
hang, suspend
suspicārī guess, suspect
su-spicere look up (at)
suspiciō -ōnis *f* suspicion
sustentāre sustain,
maintain, endure
sus-tinēre -uisse -tentum
support, sustain, maintain,
endure
suus -a -um his/her/their
(own)
syllaba -ae *f* syllable
synōnymum -ī *n* synonym

T

tabella -ae *f* (writing-)
tablet
tabellārius -ī *m* letter-
carrier
taberna -ae *f* shop, stall
tabernāculum -ī *n* tent
tabernārius -ī *m* shop-
keeper
tābescere -buisse waste
away, decay
tabula -ae *f* (writing-)
tablet, painting
tabulārium -ī *n* record-
office
tacēre be silent (about)
tacitus -a -um silent
taedēre taedet mē (+ *gen*)
I am tired/sick of
taeter -tra -trum foul,
horrible
talentum -ī *n* talent
tālis -e such
tam so, as
tam-diū so long, as long
tamen nevertheless, yet
tam-etsī although
tam-quam as, like, as
though
tandem at last, do...! then
(...?)
tangere tetigisse tāctum
touch
tantum -ī *n* so much
tantī *gen pretii* of such
worth
alterum tantum twice as
much
tantum *adv* so much, only
tantum-modo only, merely

tantun-dem just as much	terni -ae -a three (each)	trabs -bis <i>f</i> beam, ship
tantus -a -um so big, so great	terra -ae <i>f</i> earth, ground, country	tractāre handle, treat, manage
tardāre delay	terrere frighten	trā-dere -didisse -ditum hand over, deliver, tell
tardus -a -um slow, late	terrestris -e earthly, terrestrial	trā-dūcere move (across), pass
tata -ae <i>m</i> daddy	terribilis -e terrible	tragicus -a -um tragic
taurus -ī <i>m</i> bull	terror -ōris <i>m</i> fright, terror	tragoedia -ae <i>f</i> tragedy
tēctum -ī <i>n</i> roof, house	tertium/tertiō <i>adv</i> for the third time	trāgula -ae <i>f</i> spear, javelin
tēctus -a -um covered, decked	tertius -a -um third	trahere -āxisse -actum drag, pull, draw, derive, draw out, protract
tegere tēxisse tēctum cover, conceal	testāmentum -ī <i>n</i> will, testament	trā-icere take across, cross, pierce
tellūs -ūris <i>f</i> earth	testārī call to witness	trā-natāre swim across
tēlum -ī <i>n</i> spear, weapon	testis -is <i>m/f</i> witness	tranquillitās -ātis <i>f</i> calmness
temerārius -a -um reckless	thalamus -ī <i>m</i> bedroom	tranquillus -a -um calm, still
temere <i>adv</i> heedlessly	theātrum -ī <i>n</i> theater	trāns <i>prp</i> + <i>acc</i> across, over, beyond
temeritās -ātis <i>f</i> recklessness	thema -atis <i>n</i> stem, theme	trān-scendere -disse climb across, cross
temperantia -ae <i>f</i> self-control, moderation	thermae -ārum <i>fpl</i> public baths	trāns-ferre transfer, convey, carry
temperāre moderate, temper, refrain	thēsaurus -ī <i>m</i> treasure	trāns-figere pierce
temperātiō -ōnis <i>f</i> organizing power	tibiae -ārum <i>fpl</i> flute	trāns-fuga -ae <i>m</i> deserter
temperātus -a -um moderate, restrained	tībīcen -īnis <i>m</i> flute-player	trāns-fugere go over, desert
tempestās -ātis <i>f</i> storm, period	tigris -is <i>f</i> tiger	trāns-gredi -ior -gressum cross
tempestivus -a -um timely, suitable	timere fear, be afraid (of)	trāns-igere -ēgisse -āctum carry through, finish
templum -ī <i>n</i> temple, (sacred) space	timidus -a -um fearful, timid	trān-silire -uisse jump over
temptāre try (to influence), attack	timor -ōris <i>m</i> fear	trāns-īre -eō -iisse -itum cross, pass, go over
tempus -oris <i>n</i> time, opportunity	tingere tīnxisse tīnctum wet, soak	trānsitiō -ōnis <i>f</i> crossing over, defection
tendere tetendisse stretch, spread, lay, make	tirō -ōnis <i>m</i> recruit	trānsitus -ūs <i>m</i> crossing, passage
tentum/tēsum one's way, insist	titulus -ī <i>m</i> title	trāns-marīnus -a -um from beyond the seas
tenebrae -ārum <i>fpl</i> darkness	toga -ae <i>f</i> toga	trāns-mittere send over, cross
tenebricōsus -a -um dark	togātus -a -um wearing the toga	trāns-portāre carry across, transport
tener -era -erum tender, delicate	tolerābilis -e tolerable	trāns-vehere carry (<i>pass</i> sail) across
tenere -uisse -ntum hold, keep (back), reach, hold one's course, sail	tolerāre bear, endure	trāns-versus -a -um placed crosswise
tenuis -e thin	tollere sus-tulisse sublātum raise, pick up, remove, abolish, put an end to	trecentēsimus -a -um three hundredth
ter three times	tonāre -uisse thunder	
terere trīvisse trītum wear out, use up, spend	tonitrus -ūs <i>m</i> thunder	
tergere -sisse -sum wipe	torquātus -a -um wearing a collar	
tergum -ī <i>n</i> back	torquis -is <i>m</i> collar	
terminus -ī <i>m</i> boundary (-stone)	torrere -uisse tōstum scorch, parch	
	torridus -a -um scorched, parched	
	torus -ī <i>m</i> bed	
	tot indēcl so many	
	tot-idem indēcl as many	
	totiēs so many times	
	tōtus -a -um the whole of, all	

tre-centī -ae -a three hundred
trē-decim thirteen
tremere -uisse tremble
trepidāre be in panic, tremble
trepidātiō -ōnis *f* alarm, panic
trepidus -a -um alarmed, in panic
trēs tria three
tribuere -uisse -ūtum grant, attribute
tribūnal -ālis *n* dais, platform
tribūnātus -ūs *m* office of tribune
tribūnus -ī *m* tribune
tribus -ūs *f* tribe (division of citizens)
tribūtum -ī *n* tax
trīcēsīmus -a -um thirtieth
trīclīnium -ī *n* dining-room
tridēns -entis *m* trident
trīduum -ī *n* three days
triennium -ī *n* three years
triēns -entis *m* third of an as
trigeminus -a -um triplet
trīgintā thirty
trīnī -ae -a three
trirēmīs -e trireme
tristis -e sad
tristitia -ae *f* sadness
trīticum -ī *n* wheat
trīumphālis -e triumphal
trīumphāre celebrate a triumph
trīumphus -ī *m* triumph
trīum-virī -ōrum *m pl* commission of three
trīum-virālis -e of the triumvirs
trochaeus -ī *m* trochee (—U)
trucidāre slaughter
trux -ucis *adi* savage, grim
tū tē tibi (*gen* tui) you, yourself
tuba -ae *f* trumpet
tubicen -inis *m* trumpeter
tuērī tūtum guard, protect, look at
tugurium -ī *n* hut

tum then
 cum...tum... not only... but also...
tumēre swell
tumidus -a -um swollen
tumulōsus -a -um hilly
tumultuārī make an uproar
tumultuārius -a -um casual, unplanned
tumultus -ūs *m* uproar
tumulus -ī *m* hillock, burial-mound
tunc then
tunica -ae *f* tunic
turba -ae *f* disorder, throng, crowd
turbāre stir up, disturb, upset
turbidus -a -um agitated, stormy
turgid(ul)us -a -um swollen
turma -ae *f* squadron
turmātim in squadrons
turpis -e ugly, foul, shameful
turris -is, *acc* -im, *abl* -ī tower
tūtārī protect
tūtō *adv* safely
tūtōr -ōris *m* guardian
tūtus -a -um safe
tuus -a -um your, yours
tyrannis -idis *f* tyranny
tyrannus -ī *m* tyrant

U
ūber -eris *n* udder
ūber -eris *adi* fertile
ūbertās -ātis *f* fruitfulness
ubi where
 ubi (primum) + *perf* as soon as
ubi-cumque wherever
ubī-que everywhere
ūdus -a -um wet
ulciscī ultum revenge, avenge
ūllus -a -um any
ulterior -ius *comp* farther, more distant
ultimus -a -um *sup* most distant, last
 ad ultimum finally

ultor -ōris *m* avenger
ultrā *prp* + *acc, adv* beyond, further
ultrīx -īcis *adi f* avenging
ultrō spontaneously
 ultrō citrō(que) back and forth
ululāre howl
ululātus -ūs *m* howling
umbra -a *f* shade, shadow
umerus -ī *m* shoulder
ūmidus -a -um wet, moist
umquam ever
ūnā *adv* together
unda -ae *f* wave
unde from where
ūn-dē-centum ninety-nine
ūn-decim eleven
ūndecimus -a -um eleventh
ūn-dē-trīgintā twenty-nine
ūn-dē-vicēsīmus -a -um nineteenth
ūn-dē-vīgintī nineteen
undique from all sides
unguis -is *m* nail, claw
ūnī -ae -a one
ūnicē particularly
ūnicus -a -um one and only, sole
ūniversus -a -um the whole of, entire
ūnus -a -um one, only
 ad ūnum without exception
ūnus-quisque each one
urbānus -a -um of the city, urban
urbs -bis *f* city
ūrere ussisse ustum burn
urgēre -sisse press, oppress
usquam anywhere
ūsque up (to), all the time
ūsus -ūs *m* use, practice, usage
 ūsū venīre occur
 ūsui/ex ūsū esse be of use
ut/utī like, as, how
 ut + *coni* that, in order that, to
 ut (primum) + *perf* as soon as

ut-cumque no matter how, however
uter *utra utrum* which (of the two)
uter-que *utra- utrum-* each of the two, both
utī *v. ut*
ūtī *ūsum + abl* use, enjoy
ūtilis *-e* useful
ūtilitās *-ātis f* interest, advantage
utinam I wish that, if only...!
utpote namely
utrimque on/from both sides
utrobique in both places
utrum... an ... or...? whether... or
ūva *-ae f* grape
uxor *-ōris f* wife
uxōrius *-a -um* attached to one's wife

V

vacuus *-a -um* empty
vādere advance, go
vadum *-ī n* ford; *pl* shallows
vagāri wander, roam
vāgīna *-ae f* sheath
vāgīre wail, squall
vāgītus *-ūs f* wail, squall
vagus *-a -um* wandering, roaming
valdē strongly, very (much)
valē *-ēte* farewell, goodbye
valēns *-entis adi* strong
valēre be strong, be well
valētūdō *-inis f* health, illness
validus *-a -um* strong
vāllāre fortify, defend
vallis *-is f* valley
vāllum *-ī n* rampart
vāllus *-ī m* stake (for a palisade)
vānus *-a -um* empty, useless, vain
varietās *-ātis f* variety, diversity
varius *-a -um* varied, different
vās *vāsis n, pl -a -ōrum* vessel, bowl
vāstāre lay waste, ravage
vāstus *-a -um* desolate, vast, huge
vātēs *-is m/f* prophet(ess), seer
-ve or
vectigal *-ālis n* (indirect) tax
vectigālis *-e* tax-paying, tributary
vehemēns *-entis adi* violent
vehere *vēxisse* vectum carry, convey; *pass* ride, sail, travel
vehiculum *-ī n* waggon, vehicle
vel or, even
vēlāre cover
velle *volō voluisse* want, be willing
vēlōx *-ōcis adi* swift, rapid
vēlum *-ī n* sail
vel-ut like, as
vēna *-ae f* vein
vēnālis *-e* for sale
vēnārī go hunting, hunt
vēnātor *-ōris m* hunter
vēn-dere *-didisse* sell
venenātus *-a -um* poisoned, poisonous
venenum *-ī n* poison
venia *-ae f* favor, leave, pardon
venīre *vēnisse* ventum come
vēn-īre *-eō -iisse* be sold
venter *-tris m* belly, stomach
ventitāre come frequently
ventus *-ī m* wind
vēnun-dare put up for sale
venustus *-a -um* charming
vēr *vēris n* spring
verbera *-um n pl* lashes, flogging
verberāre beat, flog
verbum *-ī n* word, verb
verērī fear
vergere slope, point, turn
vērō really, however, but neque/nec *vērō* but not
versāre turn over, ponder
versārī turn, move about, be
versiculus *-ī m* short verse
versus *-ūs m* line, verse
versus *ad...v.* toward
vertere *-tisse -sum* turn, change
vertex *-icis m* whirlpool, peak, pole
vērūm but
vērūm *-ī n* truth
vērī similis probable, convincing
vērūs *-a -um* true, real, proper
vesci *+ abl* feed on, eat
vesper *-erī m* evening
vesperī *adv* in the evening
vester *-tra -trum* your, yours
vestibulum *-ī n* forecourt
vestigium *-ī n* footprint, trace
vestimentum *-ī n* garment, clothing
vestīre dress
vestis *-is f* clothes, cloth
vestrum *gen* of you
vetāre forbid
vetus *-eris, sup -errimus* old
vetustās *-ātis f* age
vetustus *-a -um* ancient, old
vexāre harass, trouble, ravage
vexillum *-ī n* standard, ensign
via *-ae f* road, way, street
viaticum *-ī n* provision for a journey
vicem in/per *vicem* in turn, mutually
vicēsīmus *-a -um* twentieth
vicinitās *-ātis f* neighbor-hood, vicinity
vicinus *-a -um* neighboring
vicissim in turn
victimā *-ae f* victim
victor *-ōris m, adi* con-queror, victorious
victōria *-ae f* victory
victrīx *-icis adi f* victorious
vīcus *-ī m* street, village
vidēlicet evidently, of course

vidēre vīdisse vīsum see;
pass seem

vidua -ae *f* widow

vigēre be vigorous

vigil -is *adi* wakeful,
watchful

vigilāns -antis *adi* waking,
wakeful

vigilāre be awake

vigilia -ae *f* night watch,
vigil

vīgintī twenty

vigor -ōris *m* vigor

vilis -e cheap

vilitās -ātis *f* cheapness,
low price

villa -ae *f* country house,
villa

vincere vīcissee victum
defeat, overcome, win

vincire -nxisse -nctum tie

vinc(u)lum -ī *n* bond,
chain

vindicāre claim, avenge

vīnea -ae *f* vineyard,
mantlet

vīnum -ī *n* wine

violāre violate

violentus -a -um, *adv* -nter
violent, impetuous

vir -ī *m* man, husband

vīrēs -ium *f pl* strength

virga -ae *f* rod

virginitās -ātis *f* virginity

virgō -inis *f* maiden, young
girl

virilis -e male

virītim man by man, evenly

virtūs -ūtis *f* valor, courage

vīs, *acc* vim, *abl* vī force,
violence, power, value,
quantity, number

viscera -um *n pl* internal
organs

vīsere -sissee go and see,
visit

vīsum -ī *n* sight

vīsus -ūs *m* sight

vīta -ae *f* life

vītāre avoid

vītis -is *f* vine, centurion's
staff

vitium -ī *n* defect, fault,
vice

vituperāre criticize, blame

vīvere vīxissee live, be alive

vīvus -a -um living, alive,
live

vix hardly

vix-dum scarcely yet, only
just

vocābulum -ī *n* word

vōcālis -is *f* vowel

vocāre call, summon,
invite

vocāre in + *acc* bring
into, expose to

volāre fly

volitāre fly about, flutter

volucris -is *f* bird

voluntārius -a -um

voluntary

voluntās -ātis *f* will

voluptās -ātis *f* pleasure,
delight

volūtāre roll, *pass* whirl

volvere -vissee volūtum roll,
turn (over), ponder; *pass*
turn, revolve

vorāgō -inis *f* abyss,
whirlpool

vorāre swallow, devour

vōs vōbīs you, yourselves

vōs-met you, yourselves

vovēre vōvissee vōtum
promise, vow

vōx vōcis *f* voice

vulgāris -e common,
everyday

vulgō *adv* commonly

vulgus -ī *n* the (common)
people

vulnerāre wound

vulnus -eris *n* wound

vultur -is *m* vulture

vultus -ūs *m* countenance,
face

Z

zephyrus -ī *m* west wind

zōna -ae *f* girdle, zone

Grammatica Latina

THE PARTS OF SPEECH

The parts of speech, or word classes, are:

- **Noun** (or **substantive**), e.g. *Mārcus, Rōma, puer, oppidum leō, aqua, color, pugna, mors*, etc.
- **Adjective**, e.g. *Rōmānus, bonus, pulcher, brevis*, etc.
- **Pronoun**, e.g. *tū, nōs, is, hic, ille, quis, quī, nēmō*, etc.
- **Verb**, e.g. *amāre, habēre, venīre, emere, īre, esse*, etc.
- **Adverb**, e.g. *bene, rēctē, fortiter, ita, nōn, hīc*, etc.
- **Conjunction**, e.g. *et, neque, sed, aut, quia, dum, sī, ut*, etc.
- **Preposition**, e.g. *in, ab, ad, post, inter, sine, dē*, etc.
- **Interjection**, e.g. *ō, ei, heu, heus, ecce*, etc.
- **Numerals** are nouns and adjectives which denote numbers, e.g. *trēs, tertius, ternī*.
- **Adverbs, conjunctions, prepositions and interjections** are **indeclinable words**, so-called **particles**.

NOUNS

Gender, number, case

There are three **genders**: **masculine**, e.g. *servus*, **feminine**, e.g. *ancilla*, and **neuter**, e.g. *oppidum*.

There are two **numbers**: **singular**, e.g. *servus*, and **plural**, e.g. *servī*. Nouns which have no singular are called **plūrālia tantum**.

There are six **cases**: **nominative**, e.g. *servus*, **accusative**, e.g. *servum*, **genitive**, e.g. *servī*, **dative**, e.g. *servō*, **ablative**, e.g. *(ā) servō*, and **vocative**, e.g. *serve*.

Stem and ending

The **stem** is the main part of a word, e.g. *serv-*, *ancill-*, *oppid-*, *magn-*, *brev-*, to which various inflectional **endings** are added, e.g. *-um, -ī, -am, -ae, -ō, -ēs, -ibus*.

In the examples in this book the stem is separated from the ending with a thin vertical stroke [|], e.g. *serv|us, serv|ī*.

parts of speech:
nouns (substantives)
adjectives
pronouns
verbs
adverbs
conjunctions
prepositions
interjections

numerals

particles

genders: masc., m.
 fem., f.
 neut., n.

numbers: sing. pl.
cases: nom.
 acc.
 gen.
 dat.
 abl.
 voc.

stems: *serv-*, *ancill-*,
 oppid-, etc.

endings: *-ī, -am, -ae*,
 etc.

declension (decl.)
 1st decl.: gen. -ae
 2nd decl.: gen. -ī
 3rd decl.: gen. -is
 4th decl.: gen. -ūs
 5th decl.: gen. -ēī/-eī

-a -ae
 -am -ās
 -ae -ārum
 -ae -īs
 -ā -īs

-us/- -ī
 -um -ōs
 -ī -ōrum
 -ō -īs
 -ō -īs
 -e

-um -a
 -um -a
 -ī -ōrum
 -ō -īs
 -ō -īs

Declensions

There are five declensions:

1st declension: gen. sing. -ae, e.g. *īnsul|a* -ae.

2nd declension: gen. sing. -ī, e.g. *serv|us* -ī, *oppid|um* -ī.

3rd declension: gen. sing. -is, e.g. *sōl sōl|is*, *urb|s* -is.

4th declension: gen. sing. -ūs, e.g. *man|us* -ūs.

5th declension: gen. sing. -ēī/-eī, e.g. *di|ēs* -ēī, *r|ēs* -eī.

First Declension

Genitive: sing. -ae, pl. -ārum.

Example: *īnsul|a* -ae f.

	sing.	pl.
nom.	<i>īnsul a</i>	<i>īnsul ae</i>
acc.	<i>īnsul am</i>	<i>īnsul ās</i>
gen.	<i>īnsul ae</i>	<i>īnsul ārum</i>
dat.	<i>īnsul ae</i>	<i>īnsul īs</i>
abl.	<i>īnsul ā</i>	<i>īnsul īs</i>

Masculine (male persons): *nauta*, *agricola*, *aurīga*, *pīrāta*, *poēta*, etc.

Second Declension

Genitive: sing. -ī, pl. -ōrum.

1. Masculine.

Examples: *equ|us* -ī, *liber libr|ī*, *puer puer|ī*.

	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
nom.	<i>equ us</i>	<i>equ ī</i>	<i>liber</i>	<i>libr ī</i>	<i>puer</i>	<i>puer ī</i>
acc.	<i>equ um</i>	<i>equ ōs</i>	<i>libr um</i>	<i>libr ōs</i>	<i>puer um</i>	<i>puer ōs</i>
gen.	<i>equ ī</i>	<i>equ ōrum</i>	<i>libr ī</i>	<i>libr ōrum</i>	<i>puer ī</i>	<i>puer ōrum</i>
dat.	<i>equ ō</i>	<i>equ īs</i>	<i>libr ō</i>	<i>libr īs</i>	<i>puer ō</i>	<i>puer īs</i>
abl.	<i>equ ō</i>	<i>equ īs</i>	<i>libr ō</i>	<i>libr īs</i>	<i>puer ō</i>	<i>puer īs</i>
voc.	<i>equ e</i>					

A few are feminine, e.g. *hum|us* -ī, *papyr|us* -ī, *Aegypt|us* -ī, *Rhod|us* -ī.

Nom. sing. -ius, voc. -ī: *Iūlius*, *Iūli!* *filius*, *fili!*

2. Neuter.

Example: *verb|um* -ī.

	sing.	pl.
nom.	<i>verb um</i>	<i>verb a</i>
acc.	<i>verb um</i>	<i>verb a</i>
gen.	<i>verb ī</i>	<i>verb ōrum</i>
dat.	<i>verb ō</i>	<i>verb īs</i>
abl.	<i>verb ō</i>	<i>verb īs</i>

Third Declension

Genitive: sing. *-is*, pl. *-um/-ium*.

[A] Genitive plural: *-um*.

1. Masculine and feminine.

Examples: *sōl sōl|is* m., *leō leōn|is* m., *vōx vōc|is* f.

	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.		
nom.	<i>sōl</i>	<i>sōl ēs</i>	<i>leō</i>	<i>leōn ēs</i>	<i>vōx</i>	<i>vōc ēs</i>	-/s	-ēs
acc.	<i>sōl em</i>	<i>sōl ēs</i>	<i>leōn em</i>	<i>leōn ēs</i>	<i>vōc em</i>	<i>vōc ēs</i>	-em	-ēs
gen.	<i>sōl is</i>	<i>sōl um</i>	<i>leōn is</i>	<i>leōn um</i>	<i>vōc is</i>	<i>vōc um</i>	-is	-um
dat.	<i>sōl ī</i>	<i>sōl ibus</i>	<i>leōn ī</i>	<i>leōn ibus</i>	<i>vōc ī</i>	<i>vōc ibus</i>	-ī	-ibus
abl.	<i>sōl e</i>	<i>sōl ibus</i>	<i>leōn e</i>	<i>leōn ibus</i>	<i>vōc e</i>	<i>vōc ibus</i>	-e	-ibus

[1] Nom. *-er*, gen. *-r|is*: *pater patr|is* m., *māter matr|is* f.

[2] Nom. *-or*, gen. *-ōr|is*: *pāstor -ōr|is* m.

[3] Nom. *-ōs*, gen. *-ōr|is*: *flōs flōr|is* m.

[4] Nom. *-ō*, gen. *-in|is*: *virgō -in|is* f., *homō -in|is* m.

[5] Nom. *-x*, gen. *-g|is*: *lēx lēg|is* f., *rēx rēg|is* m.

[6] Nom. *-ex*, gen. *-ic|is*: *index -ic|is* m.

[7] Nom. *-s*, gen. *-t|is*: *aetās -āt|is* f., *mīles -it|is* m.

[8] Nom. *-s*, gen. *-d|is*: *laus laud|is* f., *pēs ped|is* m.

[9] Irregular nouns: *sanguis -in|is* m.; *coniūnx -iug|is* m./f.; *senex sen|is* m.; *bōs bov|is* m./f., pl. *bov|ēs boum*, dat./abl. *bōbus/būbus*.

2. Neuter

Examples: *ōs ōr|is*, *corpus corpor|is*, *opus -er|is*, *nōmen nōmin|is*.

	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.		
nom.	<i>ōs</i>	<i>ōr a</i>	<i>corpus</i>	<i>corpor a</i>	-	-a
acc.	<i>ōs</i>	<i>ōr a</i>	<i>corpus</i>	<i>corpor a</i>	-	-a
gen.	<i>ōr is</i>	<i>ōr um</i>	<i>corpor is</i>	<i>corpor um</i>	-is	-um
dat.	<i>ōr ī</i>	<i>ōr ibus</i>	<i>corpor ī</i>	<i>corpor ibus</i>	-ī	-ibus
abl.	<i>ōr e</i>	<i>ōr ibus</i>	<i>corpor e</i>	<i>corpor ibus</i>	-e	-ibus
nom.	<i>opus</i>	<i>oper a</i>	<i>nōmen</i>	<i>nōmin a</i>		
acc.	<i>opus</i>	<i>oper a</i>	<i>nōmen</i>	<i>nōmin a</i>		
gen.	<i>oper is</i>	<i>oper um</i>	<i>nōmin is</i>	<i>nōmin um</i>		
dat.	<i>oper ī</i>	<i>oper ibus</i>	<i>nōmin ī</i>	<i>nōmin ibus</i>		
abl.	<i>oper e</i>	<i>oper ibus</i>	<i>nōmin e</i>	<i>nōmin ibus</i>		

Irregular nouns: *cor cord|is*; *caput capit|is*; *lac lact|is*; *os oss|is* (gen. pl. *-ium*); *mel mell|is*; *iter itiner|is*; *vās vās|is*, pl. *vās|a -ōrum* (2nd decl.); *thema -at|is*.

-ma -mat|is

-(i)s -ēs
-em -ēs
-is -ium
-ī -ibus
-e -ibus

-is, acc. -im, abl. -ī

-ēs -is

-x -c|is

[B] Genitive plural: -ium.

1. Masculine and feminine.

Examples: *nāv|is* -is f., *urb|s* -is f., *mōns mont|is* m.

	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
nom.	<i>nāv is</i>	<i>nāv ēs</i>	<i>urb s</i>	<i>urb ēs</i>	<i>mōns</i>	<i>mont ēs</i>
acc.	<i>nāv em</i>	<i>nāv ēs</i>	<i>urb em</i>	<i>urb ēs</i>	<i>mont em</i>	<i>mont ēs</i>
gen.	<i>nāv is</i>	<i>nāv ium</i>	<i>urb is</i>	<i>urb ium</i>	<i>mont is</i>	<i>mont ium</i>
dat.	<i>nāv ī</i>	<i>nāv ibus</i>	<i>urb ī</i>	<i>urb ibus</i>	<i>mont ī</i>	<i>mont ibus</i>
abl.	<i>nāv e</i>	<i>nāv ibus</i>	<i>urb e</i>	<i>urb ibus</i>	<i>mont e</i>	<i>mont ibus</i>

[1] Nom. -is, acc. -im (pl. -īs), abl. -ī: *pupp|is* -is f., *Tiber|is* -is m.

[2] Nom. -ēs, gen. -is: *nūb|ēs* -is f.

[3] Nom. -x, gen. -c|is: *falx falc|is* f.

[4] Irregular nouns: *nox noct|is* f.; *nix niv|is* f.; *carō carn|is* f.;
as ass|is m.; *vīs*, acc. *vim*, abl. *vī*, pl. *vīr|ēs* -ium f.

2. Neuter

Examples: *mar|e* -is, *animal -āl|is*.

-e/- -ia
-e/- -ia
-is -ium
-ī -ibus
-ī -ibus

	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
nom.	<i>mar e</i>	<i>mar ia</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>animāl ia</i>
acc.	<i>mar e</i>	<i>mar ia</i>	<i>animal</i>	<i>animāl ia</i>
gen.	<i>mar is</i>	<i>mar ium</i>	<i>animāl is</i>	<i>animāl ium</i>
dat.	<i>mar ī</i>	<i>mar ibus</i>	<i>animāl ī</i>	<i>animāl ibus</i>
abl.	<i>mar ī</i>	<i>mar ibus</i>	<i>animāl ī</i>	<i>animāl ibus</i>

Fourth Declension

Genitive: sing. -ūs, pl. -uum.

Examples: *port|us* -ūs m., *corn|ū* -ūs n.

-us -ūs -ū -ua
-um -ūs -ū -ua
-ūs -uum -ūs -uum
-uī -ibus -ū -ibus
-ū -ibus -ū -ibus

	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
nom.	<i>port us</i>	<i>port ūs</i>	<i>corn ū</i>	<i>corn ua</i>
acc.	<i>port um</i>	<i>port ūs</i>	<i>corn ū</i>	<i>corn ua</i>
gen.	<i>port ūs</i>	<i>port uum</i>	<i>corn ūs</i>	<i>corn uum</i>
dat.	<i>port uī</i>	<i>port ibus</i>	<i>corn ū</i>	<i>corn ibus</i>
abl.	<i>port ū</i>	<i>port ibus</i>	<i>corn ū</i>	<i>corn ibus</i>

dom|us -ūs f., abl. -ō, pl. *dom|ūs* -ōrum (-uum), acc. -ōs.

Fifth Declension

Genitive: sing. -ēī/-eī, pl. -ērum.

Examples: *di|ēs* -ēī m. (f.), *rēs reī* f.

-ēs -ēs
-em -ēs
-ēī/-eī -ērum
-ēī/-eī -ēbus
-ē -ēbus

nom.	<i>di ēs</i>	<i>di ēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>	<i>rēs</i>
acc.	<i>di em</i>	<i>di ēs</i>	<i>rem</i>	<i>rēs</i>
gen.	<i>di ēī</i>	<i>di ērum</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>rērum</i>
dat.	<i>di ēī</i>	<i>di ēbus</i>	<i>reī</i>	<i>rēbus</i>
abl.	<i>di ē</i>	<i>di ēbus</i>	<i>rē</i>	<i>rēbus</i>

ADJECTIVES

First and Second Declensions

[A] Genitive singular *-ī -ae -ī*.Example: *bon|us -a -um*.

	sing.			pl.		
	masc.	fem.	neut.	masc.	fem.	neut.
nom.	<i>bon us</i>	<i>bon a</i>	<i>bon um</i>	<i>bon ī</i>	<i>bon ae</i>	<i>bon a</i>
acc.	<i>bon um</i>	<i>bon am</i>	<i>bon um</i>	<i>bon ōs</i>	<i>bon ās</i>	<i>bon a</i>
gen.	<i>bon ī</i>	<i>bon ae</i>	<i>bon ī</i>	<i>bon ōrum</i>	<i>bon ārum</i>	<i>bon ōrum</i>
dat.	<i>bon ō</i>	<i>bon ae</i>	<i>bon ō</i>	<i>bon īs</i>	<i>bon īs</i>	<i>bon īs</i>
abl.	<i>bon ō</i>	<i>bon ā</i>	<i>bon ō</i>	<i>bon īs</i>	<i>bon īs</i>	<i>bon īs</i>
voc.	<i>bon e</i>					

Examples: *niger -gr|a -gr|um, liber -er|a -er|um*.

	sing. masc.	fem.	neut.	sing. masc.	fem.	neut.
nom.	<i>niger</i>	<i>nigr a</i>	<i>nigr um</i>	<i>liber</i>	<i>liber a</i>	<i>liber um</i>
acc.	<i>nigr um</i>	<i>nigr am</i>	<i>nigr um</i>	<i>liber um</i>	<i>liber am</i>	<i>liber um</i>

etc. (as above, but voc. = nom. *-er*)[B] Genitive singular *-īus*.Example: *sōl|us -a -um, gen. -īus, dat. -ī*.

	sing. nom.	masc.	fem.	neut.	pl. (as <i>bon ī -ae -a</i>)
acc.	<i>sōl um</i>	<i>sōl am</i>	<i>sōl um</i>		
gen.	<i>sōl īus</i>	<i>sōl īus</i>	<i>sōl īus</i>		
dat.	<i>sōl ī</i>	<i>sōl ī</i>	<i>sōl ī</i>		
abl.	<i>sōl ō</i>	<i>sōl ā</i>	<i>sōl ō</i>		

Third Declension

[A] Genitive plural *-ium* (abl. sing. *-ī*).Example: *brev|is -e*.

	sing.		pl.	
	masc./fem.	neut.	masc./fem.	neut.
nom.	<i>brev is</i>	<i>brev e</i>	<i>brev ēs</i>	<i>brev ia</i>
acc.	<i>brev em</i>	<i>brev e</i>	<i>brev ēs</i>	<i>brev ia</i>
gen.	<i>brev is</i>	<i>brev is</i>	<i>brev ium</i>	<i>brev ium</i>
dat.	<i>brev ī</i>	<i>brev ī</i>	<i>brev ibus</i>	<i>brev ibus</i>
abl.	<i>brev ī</i>	<i>brev ī</i>	<i>brev ibus</i>	<i>brev ibus</i>

Examples: *ācer ācr|is ācr|e, celer -er|is -er|e*.

	sing. masc.	fem.	neut.	sing. masc.	fem.	neut.
nom.	<i>ācer</i>	<i>ācr is</i>	<i>ācr e</i>	<i>celer</i>	<i>celer is</i>	<i>celer e</i>
acc.	<i>ācr em</i>	<i>ācr e</i>		<i>celer em</i>		<i>celer e</i>

etc. (as above) etc. (as above)

Examples: *fēlix, gen. -īc|is; ingēns, gen. -ent|is* (*-x < -c|s, -ns < -nt|s*)

	sing. nom.	masc./fem.	neut.	sing. nom.	masc./fem.	neut.
acc.	<i>fēlic em</i>	<i>fēlic em</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>ingent em</i>	<i>ingent em</i>	<i>ingēns</i>
gen.	<i>fēlic is</i>	<i>fēlic is</i>	<i>fēlic is</i>	<i>ingent is</i>	<i>ingent is</i>	<i>ingent is</i>

etc. (as above) etc. (as above)

<i>-us</i>	<i>-a</i>	<i>-um</i>
<i>-um</i>	<i>-am</i>	<i>-um</i>
<i>-ī</i>	<i>-ae</i>	<i>-ī</i>
<i>-ō</i>	<i>-ae</i>	<i>-ō</i>
<i>-ō</i>	<i>-ā</i>	<i>-ō</i>
<i>-ī</i>	<i>-ae</i>	<i>-a</i>
<i>-ōs</i>	<i>-ās</i>	<i>-a</i>
<i>-ōrum</i>	<i>-ārum</i>	<i>-ōrum</i>
<i>-is</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>-is</i>
<i>-is</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>-is</i>
<i>-er</i>	<i>-(e)r a</i>	<i>-(e)r um</i>

<i>-us</i>	<i>-a</i>	<i>-um</i>
<i>-um</i>	<i>-am</i>	<i>-um</i>
<i>-īus</i>	<i>-īus</i>	<i>-īus</i>
<i>-ī</i>	<i>-ī</i>	<i>-ī</i>
<i>-ō</i>	<i>-ā</i>	<i>-ō</i>

<i>-is</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-ēs</i>	<i>-ia</i>
<i>-em</i>	<i>-e</i>	<i>-ēs</i>	<i>-ia</i>
<i>-is</i>	<i>-is</i>	<i>-ium</i>	<i>-ium</i>
<i>-ī</i>	<i>-ī</i>	<i>-ibus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>
<i>-ī</i>	<i>-ī</i>	<i>-ibus</i>	<i>-ibus</i>

<i>-er</i>	<i>-(e)r is</i>	<i>-(e)r e</i>
<i>-(e)r em</i>	<i>-(e)r e</i>	

<i>-s</i>	<i>-s</i>
<i>-em</i>	<i>-s</i>
<i>-is</i>	<i>-is</i>

-	-
-em	-
-is	-is
-ī	-ī
-e	-e
-ēs	-a
-ium	-ium
-ibus	-ibus
-ibus	-ibus

degrees:
positive (pos.)
comparative (comp.)
superlative (sup.)

-us -a -um / -(i)s (-e)
-ior -ius -iōr|is
-issim|us -a -um

-er -il|is
-(e)rior -ilior
-errim|us -illim|us

[B] Genitive plural -um (abl. sing. -e).

Examples: *prior prius*, gen. *priōr|is*; *vetus*, gen. *veter|is*.

	masc./fem.	neut.	masc./fem.	neut.
sing. nom.	<i>prior</i>	<i>prius</i>	<i>vetus</i>	<i>vetus</i>
acc.	<i>priōr em</i>	<i>prius</i>	<i>veter em</i>	<i>vetus</i>
gen.	<i>priōr is</i>	<i>priōr is</i>	<i>veter is</i>	<i>veter is</i>
dat.	<i>priōr ī</i>	<i>priōr ī</i>	<i>veter ī</i>	<i>veter ī</i>
abl.	<i>priōr e</i>	<i>priōr e</i>	<i>veter e</i>	<i>veter e</i>
pl. nom.	<i>priōr ēs</i>	<i>priōr a</i>	<i>veter ēs</i>	<i>veter a</i>
acc.	<i>priōr ēs</i>	<i>priōr a</i>	<i>veter ēs</i>	<i>veter a</i>
gen.	<i>priōr um</i>	<i>priōr um</i>	<i>veter um</i>	<i>veter um</i>
dat.	<i>priōr ibus</i>	<i>priōr ibus</i>	<i>veter ibus</i>	<i>veter ibus</i>
abl.	<i>priōr ibus</i>	<i>priōr ibus</i>	<i>veter ibus</i>	<i>veter ibus</i>

So *pauper* (m./f.), gen. -er|is; *dives*, gen. *dīvit|is*.

Comparison

There are three **degrees**: **positive**, e.g. *longus*, **comparative**, e.g. *longior*, and **superlative**, e.g. *longissimus*.

The comparative ends in -ior and is declined like *prior*. The superlative ends in -issim|us (-im|us) and is declined like *bon|us*.

[A] Superlative -issim|us.

pos.	<i>long us -a -um</i>	<i>brev is -e</i>	<i>fēlix -īc is</i>
comp.	<i>long ior -ius -iōr is</i>	<i>brev ior -ius -iōr is</i>	<i>fēlic ior -ius -iōr is</i>
sup.	<i>long issim us -a -um</i>	<i>brev issim us -a -um</i>	<i>fēlic issim us -a -um</i>

[B] Superlative -rim|us, -lim|us.

pos.	<i>piger -gr a -gr um</i>	<i>celer -er is -er e</i>	<i>facil is -e</i>
comp.	<i>pigr ior -ius -iōr is</i>	<i>celer ior -ius -iōr is</i>	<i>facil ior -ius -iōr is</i>
sup.	<i>piger rim us -a -um</i>	<i>celer rim us -a -um</i>	<i>facil lim us -a -um</i>

[C] Irregular comparison

positive	comparative	superlative
<i>bon us -a -um</i>	<i>melior -ius -iōr is</i>	<i>optim us -a -um</i>
<i>mal us -a -um</i>	<i>pēior -ius -iōr is</i>	<i>pessim us -a -um</i>
<i>magn us -a -um</i>	<i>māior -ius -iōr is</i>	<i>māxim us -a -um</i>
<i>parv us -a -um</i>	<i>minor minus -ōr is</i>	<i>minim us -a -um</i>
<i>mult um -ī</i>	<i>plūs plūr is</i>	<i>plūrim um -ī</i>
<i>mult ī -ae -a</i>	<i>plūr ēs -a -ium</i>	<i>plūrim ī -ae -a</i>
<i>(infrā) infer us</i>	<i>inferior -ius -iōr is</i>	<i>īnfim us/īm us -a -um</i>
<i>(suprā) super us</i>	<i>superior -ius -iōr is</i>	<i>suprēm us/summ us -a -um</i>
<i>(intrā)</i>	<i>interior -ius -iōr is</i>	<i>intim us -a -um</i>
<i>(extrā)</i>	<i>exterior -ius -iōr is</i>	<i>extrēm us -a -um</i>
<i>(citā)</i>	<i>citerior -ius -iōr is</i>	<i>citim us -a -um</i>
<i>(ultrā)</i>	<i>ulterior -ius -iōr is</i>	<i>ultim us -a -um</i>
<i>(prae)</i>	<i>prior -ius -iōr is</i>	<i>prim us -a -um</i>
<i>(post)</i>	<i>posterior -ius -iōr is</i>	<i>postrēm us -a -um</i>
<i>(prope)</i>	<i>propior -ius -iōr is</i>	<i>proxim us -a -um</i>
<i>vetus -er is</i>	<i>vetustior -ius -iōr is</i>	<i>veterrim us -a -um</i>

ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

Adjectives of the 1st/2nd declension form adverbs in *-ē*, e.g. *rēct|us* > *rēct|ē*.

Adjectives of the 3rd declension form adverbs in *-iter*, e.g. *fort|is* > *fort|iter*.

The comparative of the adverbs ends in *-ius* (= neuter of the adjective), e.g. *rēct|ius*, the superlative ends in *-issimē* (*-imē*), e.g. *rēct|issimē*.

Adjective declension	Adverb positive	comparative	superlative
1st/2nd <i>rēct us -a -um</i>	<i>rēctē</i>	<i>rēctius</i>	<i>rēctissimē</i>
<i>pulcher -chr a -um</i>	<i>pulchrē</i>	<i>pulchrius</i>	<i>pulcherrimē</i>
<i>miser -er a -er um</i>	<i>miserē</i>	<i>miserius</i>	<i>miserrimē</i>
3rd <i>fort is -e</i>	<i>fortiter</i>	<i>fortius</i>	<i>fortissimē</i>
<i>ācer ācr is ācr e</i>	<i>ācriter</i>	<i>ācrius</i>	<i>ācerrimē</i>
<i>celer -er is -er e</i>	<i>celeriter</i>	<i>celerius</i>	<i>celerrimē</i>
<i>fēlix</i>	<i>fēliciter</i>	<i>fēlicius</i>	<i>fēlicissimē</i>

Nom. sing. -ns, adverb *-nter*: *prūdēns -ent|is*, adv. *prūdenter*.

Some adjectives of the 1st/2nd declension form adverbs in *-ō*, e.g. *certō*, *falsō*, *necessāriō*, *rārō*, *subitō*, *tūtō*, *prīmō*, *postrēmō* (adjectives: *cert|us*, *fals|us*, *necessāri|us*, etc.).

Irregular adverbs: *bene* < *bon|us*, *male* < *mal|us*, *valdē* < *valid|us*, *facile* < *facil|is*, *difficulter* < *difficil|is*, *audācter* < *audāx*.

-ē

-iter

-ius

-issimē

-nter (< -ntiter)

-ō

Roman	Arabic
I	1
II	2
III	3
IV	4
V	5
VI	6
VII	7
VIII	8
IX	9
X	10
XI	11
XII	12
XIII	13
XIV	14
XV	15
XVI	16
XVII	17
XVIII	18
XIX	19
XX	20
XXI	21
XXX	30
XL	40
L	50
LX	60
LXX	70
LXXX	80
XC	90
C	100
CC	200
CCC	300
CCCC	400
D	500
DC	600
DCC	700
DCCC	800
DCCCC	900
M	1000
MM	2000

NUMERALS

Cardinal numbers	Ordinal numbers	Distributive numbers
<i>ūn us -a -um</i>	<i>prīm us -a -um</i>	<i>singul i -ae -a (ūn i)</i>
<i>du o -ae -o</i>	<i>secund us</i>	<i>bīn i</i>
<i>tr ēs -ia</i>	<i>terti us</i>	<i>tern i (trīn i)</i>
<i>quattuor</i>	<i>quārt us</i>	<i>quatern i</i>
<i>quīnque</i>	<i>quīnt us</i>	<i>quīn i</i>
<i>sex</i>	<i>sext us</i>	<i>sēn i</i>
<i>septem</i>	<i>septim us</i>	<i>septēn i</i>
<i>octō</i>	<i>octāv us</i>	<i>octōn i</i>
<i>novem</i>	<i>nōn us</i>	<i>novēn i</i>
<i>decem</i>	<i>decim us</i>	<i>dēn i</i>
<i>ūn-decim</i>	<i>ūn-decim us</i>	<i>ūn-dēn i</i>
<i>duo-decim</i>	<i>duo-decim us</i>	<i>duo-dēn i</i>
<i>trē-decim</i>	<i>terti us decim us</i>	<i>tern i dēn i</i>
<i>quattuor-decim</i>	<i>quārt us decim us</i>	<i>quatern i dēn i</i>
<i>quīn-decim</i>	<i>quīnt us decim us</i>	<i>quīn i dēn i</i>
<i>sē-decim</i>	<i>sext us decim us</i>	<i>sēn i dēn i</i>
<i>septen-decim</i>	<i>septim us decim us</i>	<i>septēn i dēn i</i>
<i>duo-dē-vigintī</i>	<i>duo-dē-vicēsīm us</i>	<i>duo-dē-vicēn i</i>
<i>ūn-dē-vigintī</i>	<i>ūn-dē-vicēsīm us</i>	<i>ūn-dē-vicēn i</i>
<i>vigintī</i>	<i>vicēsīm us</i>	<i>vicēn i</i>
<i>vigintī ūn us</i>	<i>vicēsīm us prīm us</i>	<i>vicēn i singul i</i>
<i>/ūn us et vigintī</i>	<i>/ūn us et vicēsīm us</i>	<i>/singul i et vicēn i</i>
<i>trigintā</i>	<i>tricēsīm us</i>	<i>tricēn i</i>
<i>quadrāgintā</i>	<i>quadrāgēsīm us</i>	<i>quadrāgēn i</i>
<i>quīnquāgintā</i>	<i>quīnquāgēsīm us</i>	<i>quīnquāgēn i</i>
<i>sexāgintā</i>	<i>sexāgēsīm us</i>	<i>sexāgēn i</i>
<i>septuāgintā</i>	<i>septuāgēsīm us</i>	<i>septuāgēn i</i>
<i>octōgintā</i>	<i>octōgēsīm us</i>	<i>octōgēn i</i>
<i>nōnāgintā</i>	<i>nōnāgēsīm us</i>	<i>nōnāgēn i</i>
<i>centum</i>	<i>centēsīm us</i>	<i>centēn i</i>
<i>ducent i -ae -a</i>	<i>ducentēsīm us</i>	<i>ducēn i</i>
<i>trecent i</i>	<i>trecentēsīm us</i>	<i>trecēn i</i>
<i>quadrīngent i</i>	<i>quadrīngentēsīm us</i>	<i>quadrīngēn i</i>
<i>quīngent i</i>	<i>quīngentēsīm us</i>	<i>quīngēn i</i>
<i>sescent i</i>	<i>sescentēsīm us</i>	<i>sescēn i</i>
<i>septīngent i</i>	<i>septīngentēsīm us</i>	<i>septīngēn i</i>
<i>octīngent i</i>	<i>octīngentēsīm us</i>	<i>octīngēn i</i>
<i>nōngent i</i>	<i>nōngentēsīm us</i>	<i>nōngēn i</i>
<i>mille</i>	<i>millēsīm us</i>	<i>singula milia</i>
<i>duo milia</i>	<i>bis millēsīm us</i>	<i>bīna milia</i>

[1] *ūn|us -a -um* is declined like *sōl|us*: gen. *-ūs*, dat. *-ī*.

[2] *du|o -ae -o* and *tr|ēs -ia*:

	masc.	fem.	neut.	masc./fem.	neut.
nom.	<i>du o</i>	<i>du ae</i>	<i>du o</i>	<i>tr ēs</i>	<i>tr ia</i>
acc.	<i>du ōs/o</i>	<i>du ās</i>	<i>du o</i>	<i>tr ēs</i>	<i>tr ia</i>
gen.	<i>du ōrum</i>	<i>du ārum</i>	<i>du ōrum</i>	<i>tr ium</i>	<i>tr ium</i>
dat.	<i>du ōbus</i>	<i>du ābus</i>	<i>du ōbus</i>	<i>tr ibus</i>	<i>tr ibus</i>
abl.	<i>du ōbus</i>	<i>du ābus</i>	<i>du ōbus</i>	<i>tr ibus</i>	<i>tr ibus</i>

[3] *mīl|ia -ium* (n. pl.) is declined like *mar|ia* (3rd decl.).

Numeral adverbs

1× semel	6× sexiēs	11× ūndeciēs	40× quadrāgiēs	90× nōnāgiēs
2× bis	7× septiēs	12× duodeciēs	50× quīnquāgiēs	100× centiēs
3× ter	8× octiēs	13× ter deciēs	60× sexāgiēs	200× ducentiēs
4× quater	9× noviēs	20× viciēs	70× septuāgiēs	300× trecentiēs
5× quīnquiēs	10× deciēs	30× triciēs	80× octōgiēs	1000× miliēs

PRONOUNS

Personal Pronouns

1st person			2nd person		
	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.	
nom.	<i>ego</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tū</i>	<i>vōs</i>	
acc.	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōs</i>	
gen.	<i>meī</i>	<i>nostrī/nostrum</i>	<i>tuī</i>	<i>vestrī/vestrum</i>	
dat.	<i>mihi</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tibi</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	
abl.	<i>mē</i>	<i>nōbīs</i>	<i>tē</i>	<i>vōbīs</i>	

3rd person and demonstrative pronoun							
	sing. masc.	fem.	neut.	pl. masc.	fem.	neut.	reflexive pronoun
nom.	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>ī</i>	<i>ae</i>	<i>a</i>	
acc.	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eos</i>	<i>as</i>	<i>a</i>	<i>sē</i>
gen.	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eius</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	<i>earum</i>	<i>eōrum</i>	
dat.	<i>ei</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>īs</i>	<i>īs</i>	<i>īs</i>	<i>sibi</i>
abl.	<i>eō</i>	<i>eā</i>	<i>eō</i>	<i>īs</i>	<i>īs</i>	<i>īs</i>	<i>sē</i>

objective gen.:

nostrī, vestrī

partitive gen.:

*nostrum, vestrum**mī = mihi*nom. pl. *eī = iī**sēsē = sē**eīs = iīs*

Possessive Pronouns

	sing.	pl.
1st pers.	<i>me us -a -um</i>	<i>noster -tr a -tr um</i>
2nd pers.	<i>tu us -a -um</i>	<i>vester -tr a -tr um</i>
3rd pers.	<i>su us -a -um</i> (reflexive)	

eius, eōrum, earum (gen. of *is ea id*)*me|us*, voc. sing. *mī*.

Demonstrative Pronouns

	sing. masc.	fem.	neut.	pl. masc.	fem.	neut.
[1] nom.	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hī</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
acc.	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hōs</i>	<i>hās</i>	<i>haec</i>
gen.	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>huius</i>	<i>hōrum</i>	<i>hārum</i>	<i>hōrum</i>
dat.	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
abl.	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hāc</i>	<i>hōc</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>	<i>hīs</i>
[2] nom.	<i>ill e</i>	<i>ill a</i>	<i>ill ud</i>	<i>ill ī</i>	<i>ill ae</i>	<i>ill a</i>
acc.	<i>ill um</i>	<i>ill am</i>	<i>ill ud</i>	<i>ill ōs</i>	<i>ill ās</i>	<i>ill a</i>
gen.	<i>ill ius</i>	<i>ill ius</i>	<i>ill ius</i>	<i>ill ōrum</i>	<i>ill ārum</i>	<i>ill ōrum</i>
dat.	<i>ill ī</i>	<i>ill ī</i>	<i>ill ī</i>	<i>ill īs</i>	<i>ill īs</i>	<i>ill īs</i>
abl.	<i>ill ō</i>	<i>ill ā</i>	<i>ill ō</i>	<i>ill īs</i>	<i>ill īs</i>	<i>ill īs</i>

[3] *ist|e -a -ud* is declined like *ill|e -a -ud*.[4] *ips|e -a -um* is declined like *ill|e* except neut. sing. *ips|um*.[5] *is ea id*, demonstrative and personal: see above.[6] *ī-dem ea-dem idem* (< *is ea id* + *-dem*):

	sing. masc.	fem.	neut.	pl. masc.	fem.	neut.
nom.	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>īdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
acc.	<i>eundem</i>	<i>eandem</i>	<i>idem</i>	<i>eōsdem</i>	<i>eāsdem</i>	<i>eadem</i>
gen.	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eiusdem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>	<i>eārundem</i>	<i>eōrundem</i>
dat.	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>eīdem</i>	<i>iīsdem</i>	<i>iīsdem</i>	<i>iīsdem</i>
abl.	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>eādem</i>	<i>eōdem</i>	<i>iīsdem</i>	<i>iīsdem</i>	<i>iīsdem</i>

īdem < *is-dem**-n-dem* < *-m-dem*nom. pl. *eīdem* = *iīdem**eīsdem* = *iīsdem*

Interrogative Pronouns

[1] *quis quae quid* (subst.); *quī/quis... quae... quod...* (adj.).

	sing.			pl.		
	masc.	fem.	neut.	masc.	fem.	neut.
nom.	<i>quis/quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quid/quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
acc.	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quid/quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
gen.	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
dat.	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
abl.	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

[2] *uter utr|a utr|um*, gen. *utr|īus*, dat. *utr|ī* (like *sōl|us*, but nom. m. sing. *uter*).

Relative Pronoun

[1] *quī quae quod*

	sing.			pl.		
	masc.	fem.	neut.	masc.	fem.	neut.
nom.	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quī</i>	<i>quae</i>	<i>quae</i>
acc.	<i>quem</i>	<i>quam</i>	<i>quod</i>	<i>quōs</i>	<i>quās</i>	<i>quae</i>
gen.	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>cuius</i>	<i>quōrum</i>	<i>quārum</i>	<i>quōrum</i>
dat.	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>cui</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>
abl.	<i>quō</i>	<i>quā</i>	<i>quō</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>	<i>quibus</i>

[2] *quī- quae- quod-cumque* (indefinite relative) = *quis-quis quid-quid/quic-quid* (indecl. subst.).

Indefinite Pronouns

[1] *nēmō*, acc. *nēmīn|em*, dat. *nēmīn|ī*.

[2] *nihil*, neuter (indecl.).

[3] *ūll|us -a -um* and *nūll|us -a -um* are declined like *sōl|us*.

[4] *neuter -tr|a -tr|um* and *uter-que utr|a-que utr|um-que* are declined like *uter*: gen. *neutr|īus*, *utr|īus-que*.

[5] *alter -er|a -er|um*, gen. *-er|īus*, dat. *-er|ī*.

[6] *ali|us -a -ud*, dat. *ali|ī* (gen. *alter|īus*).

The following pronouns are declined like *quis/quī*:

[7] *ali-quis/-quī -qua -quid/-quod* and (*sī, nisi, nē, num*) *quis/quī qua quid/quod*.

[8] *quis-quam quid-quam/quic-quam*.

[9] *quī-dam quae-dam quid-dam/quod-dam*, acc. sing. m. *quen-dam*, f. *quan-dam*, gen. pl. m./n. *quōrun-dam*, f. *quārun-dam*.

[10] *quis-que quae-que quid-que/quod-que*.

[11] *quī- quae- quid-/quod-vīs = quī- quae- quid-/quod-libet*.

nēmō < *ne-* + *homō*

nīl = *nihil*

neuter < *ne-* + *uter*

n. pl. (*ali-*)*qua*

-*n-dam* < -*m-dam*

VERBS

Voice and Mood

The **voice** of the verb is either **active**, e.g. *amat*, or **passive**, e.g. *amātur*. Verbs which have no active voice (except participles and gerund), e.g. *cōnārī*, *loquī*, are called **deponent** verbs.

The **moods** of the verb are: **infinitive**, e.g. *amāre*, **imperative**, e.g. *amā*, **indicative**, e.g. *amat*, and **subjunctive**, e.g. *amet*.

Tense, Number, Person

The **tenses** of the verb are: **present**, e.g. *amat*, **future**, e.g. *amābit*, **imperfect**, e.g. *amābat*, **perfect**, e.g. *amāvit*, **pluperfect**, e.g. *amāverat*, and **future perfect**, e.g. *amāverit*.

The **numbers** of the verb are: **singular**, e.g. *amat*, and **plural**, e.g. *amant*.

The **persons** of the verb are: **1st person**, e.g. *amō*, **2nd person**, e.g. *amās*, and **3rd person**, e.g. *amat*. Verbs which have no 1st and 2nd persons, e.g. *licēre* and *pudēre*, are called **impersonal**.

Conjugations

There are four **conjugations**:

- [1] **1st conjugation**: inf. *-āre*, *-ārī* e.g. *amāre*, *cōnārī*.
- [2] **2nd conjugation**: inf. *-ēre*, *-ērī* e.g. *monēre*, *verērī*.
- [3] **3rd conjugation**: inf. *-ere*, *-ī* e.g. *legere*, *ūtī*.
- [4] **4th conjugation**: inf. *-īre*, *-īrī* e.g. *audīre*, *partīrī*.

Stem

Verbal stems:

The **present stem**, e.g. *amā-*, *monē-*, *leg-*, *audī-*.

The **perfect stem**, e.g. *amāv-*, *monu-*, *lēg-*, *audīv-*.

The **supine stem**, e.g. *amāt-*, *monit-*, *lēct-*, *audīt-*.

Personal endings

	Active		Passive	
	sing.	pl.	sing.	pl.
pers. 1	<i>-m/-ō</i>	<i>-mus</i>	<i>-r/-or</i>	<i>-mur</i>
pers. 2	<i>-s</i>	<i>-tis</i>	<i>-ris</i>	<i>-minī</i>
pers. 3	<i>-t</i>	<i>-nt</i>	<i>-tur</i>	<i>-ntur</i>

[2] Endings of the perfect indicative active:

	sing.	pl.
pers. 1	<i>~ī</i>	<i>~imus</i>
pers. 2	<i>~istī</i>	<i>~istis</i>
pers. 3	<i>~it</i>	<i>~ērunt (~ēre)</i>

voice: act.
pass.

mood: inf. ind.
imp. subj.

tense: pres. perf.
imperf.

pluperf. fut. fut. perf.

number: sing.
pl.

person: 1
2
3

conjugations:

[1] *-āre/-ārī*

[2] *-ēre/-ērī*

[3] *-ere/-ī*

[4] *-īre/-īrī*

verbal stems:

present stem [-]

perfect stem [~]

supine stem [≈]

after a consonant:

-ō -imus -or -imur
-is -itis -eris -imini
-it -unt -itur -untur

Conjugation

[A] Active

Infinitive

[1, 2, 4] [3]
-re -ere

~isse
≈ūr|us -a -um esse

present

[1] amā|re [2] monē|re [3] leg|ere [4] audī|re

perfect

amāv|isse monu|isse lēg|isse audīv|isse

future

amāt|ūr|um esse monit|ūr|um esse lēct|ūr|um esse audīt|ūr|um esse

Indicative

present

[1, 2, 4] [3]
-ō -ō
-s -is
-t -it
-mus -imus
-tis -itis
-(u)nt -unt

[1, 2] [3, 4]
-ba|m -ēba|m
-bā|s -ēbā|s
-ba|t -ēba|t
-bā|mus -ēbā|mus
-bā|tis -ēbā|tis
-ba|nt -ēba|nt

[1, 2] [3, 4]
-b|ō -a|m
-b|is -ē|s
-b|it -ē|t
-b|imus -ē|mus
-b|itis -ē|tis
-b|unt -ē|nt

~ī
~istī
~it
~imus
~istis
~erunt

~era|m
~erā|s
~era|t
~erā|mus
~erā|tis
~era|nt

~er|ō
~er|is
~er|it
~er|imus
~er|itis
~er|nt

sing. 1 am|ō mone|ō leg|ō audī|ō
2 amā|s monē|s lēg|is audī|s
3 amā|t mone|t lēg|it audī|t
pl. 1 amā|mus monē|mus lēg|imus audī|mus
2 amā|tis monē|tis lēg|itis audī|itis
3 amā|nt mone|nt lēg|unt audī|unt

imperfect

sing. 1 amā|ba|m monē|ba|m lēg|ēba|m audī|ēba|m
2 amā|bā|s monē|bā|s lēg|ēbā|s audī|ēbā|s
3 amā|ba|t monē|ba|t lēg|ēba|t audī|ēba|t
pl. 1 amā|bā|mus monē|bā|mus lēg|ēbā|mus audī|ēbā|mus
2 amā|bā|tis monē|bā|tis lēg|ēbā|tis audī|ēbā|tis
3 amā|ba|nt monē|ba|nt lēg|ēba|nt audī|ēba|nt

future

sing. 1 amā|b|ō monē|b|ō leg|a|m audī|a|m
2 amā|b|is monē|b|is lēg|ē|s audī|ē|s
3 amā|b|it monē|b|it lēg|e|t audī|e|t
pl. 1 amā|b|imus monē|b|imus lēg|ē|mus audī|ē|mus
2 amā|b|itis monē|b|itis lēg|ē|tis audī|ē|tis
3 amā|b|unt monē|b|unt lēg|e|nt audī|e|nt

perfect

sing. 1 amāv|ī monu|ī lēg|ī audīv|ī
2 amāv|istī monu|istī lēg|istī audīv|istī
3 amāv|it monu|it lēg|it audīv|it
pl. 1 amāv|imus monu|imus lēg|imus audīv|imus
2 amāv|istis monu|istis lēg|istis audīv|istis
3 amāv|ērunt monu|ērunt lēg|ērunt audīv|ērunt

pluperfect

sing. 1 amāv|era|m monu|era|m lēg|era|m audīv|era|m
2 amāv|erā|s monu|erā|s lēg|erā|s audīv|erā|s
3 amāv|era|t monu|era|t lēg|era|t audīv|era|t
pl. 1 amāv|erā|mus monu|erā|mus lēg|erā|mus audīv|erā|mus
2 amāv|erā|tis monu|erā|tis lēg|erā|tis audīv|erā|tis
3 amāv|era|nt monu|era|nt lēg|era|nt audīv|era|nt

future perfect

sing. 1 amāv|er|ō monu|er|ō lēg|er|ō audīv|er|ō
2 amāv|er|is monu|er|is lēg|er|is audīv|er|is
3 amāv|er|it monu|er|it lēg|er|it audīv|er|it
pl. 1 amāv|er|imus monu|er|imus lēg|er|imus audīv|er|imus
2 amāv|er|itis monu|er|itis lēg|er|itis audīv|er|itis
3 amāv|er|nt monu|er|nt lēg|er|nt audīv|er|nt

Subjunctive**present**

sing.1	am e m	mone a m	leg a m	audi a m	[1]	[2, 3, 4]
2	am ē s	mone ā s	leg ā s	audi ā s	(-) e m	-a m
3	am e t	mone a t	leg a t	audi a t	(-) ē s	-ā s
pl.1	am ē mus	mone ā mus	leg ā mus	audi ā mus	(-) e t	-a t
2	am ē tis	mone ā tis	leg ā tis	audi ā tis	(-) ē mus	-ā mus
3	am e nt	mone a nt	leg a nt	audi a nt	(-) ē tis	-ā tis
					(-) e nt	-a nt

imperfect

sing.1	amā re m	monē re m	leg ere m	audi re m	[1, 2, 4]	[3]
2	amā rē s	monē rē s	leg erē s	audi rē s	-re m	-ere m
3	amā re t	monē re t	leg ere t	audi re t	-rē s	-erē s
pl.1	amā rē mus	monē rē mus	leg erē mus	audi rē mus	-re t	-ere t
2	amā rē tis	monē rē tis	leg erē tis	audi rē tis	-rē mus	-erē mus
3	amā re nt	monē re nt	leg ere nt	audi re nt	-rē tis	-erē tis
					-re nt	-ere nt

perfect

sing.1	amāv eri m	monu eri m	lēg eri m	audi v eri m	≈eri m	
2	amāv eri s	monu eri s	lēg eri s	audi v eri s	≈eri s	
3	amāv eri t	monu eri t	lēg eri t	audi v eri t	≈eri t	
pl.1	amāv eri mus	monu eri mus	lēg eri mus	audi v eri mus	≈eri mus	
2	amāv eri tis	monu eri tis	lēg eri tis	audi v eri tis	≈eri tis	
3	amāv eri nt	monu eri nt	lēg eri nt	audi v eri nt	≈eri nt	

pluperfect

sing.1	amāv isse m	monu isse m	lēg isse m	audi v isse m	≈isse m	
2	amāv issē s	monu issē s	lēg issē s	audi v issē s	≈issē s	
3	amāv isse t	monu isse t	lēg isse t	audi v isse t	≈isse t	
pl.1	amāv issē mus	monu issē mus	lēg issē mus	audi v issē mus	≈issē mus	
2	amāv issē tis	monu issē tis	lēg issē tis	audi v issē tis	≈issē tis	
3	amāv isse nt	monu isse nt	lēg isse nt	audi v isse nt	≈isse nt	

Imperative**present**

sing.	amā	monē	leg e	audi	[1, 2, 4]	[3]
pl.	amā te	monē te	leg ite	audi te	-	-e
future					-te	-ite
sing.	amā tō	monē tō	leg itō	audi tō	-tō	-itō
pl.	amā tōte	monē tōte	leg itōte	audi tōte	-tōte	-itōte

Participle**present**

	amā ns -ant is	monē ns -ent is	leg ēns	audi ēns -ent is	[1, 2]	[3, 4]
			-ent is		-ns	-ēns
future					-nt is	-ent is

future

	amāt ūr us	monit ūr us	lēct ūr us	audit ūr us	≈ūr us -a -um
	-a -um	-a -um	-a -um	-a -um	

Supine

I	amāt um	monit um	lēct um	audit um	≈um
II	amāt ū	monit ū	lēct ū	audit ū	≈ū

Gerund

acc.	ama nd um	mone nd um	leg end um	audi end um	[1, 2]	[3, 4]
gen.	ama nd ī	mone nd ī	leg end ī	audi end ī	-nd um	-end um
abl.	ama nd ō	mone nd ō	leg end ō	audi end ō	-nd ī	-end ī
					-nd ō	-end ō

		[B] Passive			
		Infinitive			
[1, 2, 4]	[3]	present			
-rī	-ī	[1] amā rī	[2] monē rī	[3] leg ī	[4] audī rī
≈us -a -um esse		perfect			
		amāt um esse	monit um esse	lēct um esse	audīt um esse
≈um īrī		future			
		amāt um īrī	monit um īrī	lēct um īrī	audīt um īrī
		Indicative			
		present			
[1, 2, 4]	[3]	sing.			
-or	-or	1 am or	1 mone or	1 leg or	1 audi or
-ris	-eris	2 amā ris	2 monē ris	2 leg eris	2 audī ris
-tur	-itur	3 amā tur	3 monē tur	3 leg itur	3 audī tur
-mur	-imur	pl.			
-minī	-iminī	1 amā mur	1 monē mur	1 leg imur	1 audī mur
-(u)ntur	-untur	2 amā minī	2 monē minī	2 leg iminī	2 audī minī
		3 amā ntur	3 mone ntur	3 leg untur	3 audi untur
		imperfect			
[1, 2]	[3, 4]	sing.			
-ba r	-ēba r	1 amā ba r	1 monē ba r	1 leg ēba r	1 audi ēba r
-bā ris	-ēbā ris	2 amā bā ris	2 monē bā ris	2 leg ēbā ris	2 audī ēbā ris
-bā tur	-ēbā tur	3 amā bā tur	3 monē bā tur	3 leg ēbā tur	3 audī ēbā tur
-bā mur	-ēbā mur	pl.			
-bā minī	-ēbā minī	1 amā bā mur	1 monē bā mur	1 leg ēbā mur	1 audī ēbā mur
-ba ntur	-ēba ntur	2 amā bā minī	2 monē bā minī	2 leg ēbā minī	2 audī ēbā minī
		3 amā ba ntur	3 monē ba ntur	3 leg ēba ntur	3 audi ēba ntur
		future			
[1, 2]	[3, 4]	sing.			
-b or	-a r	1 amā b or	1 monē b or	1 leg a r	1 audi a r
-b eris	-ē ris	2 amā b eris	2 monē b eris	2 leg ē ris	2 audī ē ris
-b itur	-ē tur	3 amā b itur	3 monē b itur	3 leg ē tur	3 audī ē tur
-b imur	-ē mur	pl.			
-b iminī	-ē minī	1 amā b imur	1 monē b imur	1 leg ē mur	1 audī ē mur
-b untur	-e ntur	2 amā b iminī	2 monē b iminī	2 leg ē minī	2 audī ē minī
		3 amā b untur	3 monē b untur	3 leg e ntur	3 audi e ntur
		perfect			
≈us -a (-um)		sing.			
sum		1 amāt us	1 monit us	1 lēct us	1 audīt us
es		2 sum	2 sum	2 sum	2 sum
est		3 est	3 est	3 est	3 est
≈ī -ae (-a)		amāt ī	monit ī	lēct ī	audīt ī
sumus		pl.			
estis		1 umus	1 sumus	1 sumus	1 sumus
sunt		2 estis	2 estis	2 estis	2 estis
		3 sunt	3 sunt	3 sunt	3 sunt
		pluperfect			
≈us -a (-um)		sing.			
eram		1 amāt us	1 monit us	1 lēct us	1 audīt us
erās		2 eram	2 eram	2 eram	2 eram
erat		3 erās	3 erās	3 erās	3 erās
≈ī -ae (-a)		amāt ī	monit ī	lēct ī	audīt ī
erāmus		pl.			
erātis		1 erāmus	1 erāmus	1 erāmus	1 erāmus
erant		2 erātis	2 erātis	2 erātis	2 erātis
		3 erant	3 erant	3 erant	3 erant

future perfect					
	<i>amāt us</i>	<i>monit us</i>	<i>lēct us</i>	<i>audīt us</i>	≈ <i>us -a (-um)</i>
sing.1	<i>erō</i>	<i>erō</i>	<i>erō</i>	<i>erō</i>	<i>erō</i>
2	<i>eris</i>	<i>eris</i>	<i>eris</i>	<i>eris</i>	<i>eris</i>
3	<i>erit</i>	<i>erit</i>	<i>erit</i>	<i>erit</i>	<i>erit</i>
	<i>amāt ī</i>	<i>monit ī</i>	<i>lēct ī</i>	<i>audīt ī</i>	≈ <i>ī -ae (-a)</i>
pl.1	<i>erimus</i>	<i>erimus</i>	<i>erimus</i>	<i>erimus</i>	<i>erimus</i>
2	<i>eritis</i>	<i>eritis</i>	<i>eritis</i>	<i>eritis</i>	<i>eritis</i>
3	<i>erunt</i>	<i>erunt</i>	<i>erunt</i>	<i>erunt</i>	<i>erunt</i>
Subjunctive					
Present					[1] [2, 3, 4]
sing.1	<i>am e r</i>	<i>mone a r</i>	<i>leg a r</i>	<i>audi a r</i>	(-) <i>r</i> - <i>a r</i>
2	<i>am ē ris</i>	<i>mone ā ris</i>	<i>leg ā ris</i>	<i>audi ā ris</i>	(-) <i>ē ris</i> - <i>ā ris</i>
3	<i>am ē tur</i>	<i>mone ā tur</i>	<i>leg ā tur</i>	<i>audi ā tur</i>	(-) <i>ē tur</i> - <i>ā tur</i>
pl.1	<i>am ē mur</i>	<i>mone ā mur</i>	<i>leg ā mur</i>	<i>audi ā mur</i>	(-) <i>ē mur</i> - <i>ā mur</i>
2	<i>am ē minī</i>	<i>mone ā minī</i>	<i>leg ā minī</i>	<i>audi ā minī</i>	(-) <i>ē minī</i> - <i>ā minī</i>
3	<i>am e ntur</i>	<i>mone a ntur</i>	<i>leg a ntur</i>	<i>audi a ntur</i>	(-) <i>e ntur</i> - <i>a ntur</i>
Imperfect					[1, 2, 4] [3]
sing.1	<i>amā re r</i>	<i>monē re r</i>	<i>leg ere r</i>	<i>audi re r</i>	- <i>re r</i> - <i>ere r</i>
2	<i>amā rē ris</i>	<i>monē rē ris</i>	<i>leg erē ris</i>	<i>audi rē ris</i>	- <i>rē ris</i> - <i>erē ris</i>
3	<i>amā rē tur</i>	<i>monē rē tur</i>	<i>leg erē tur</i>	<i>audi rē tur</i>	- <i>rē tur</i> - <i>erē tur</i>
pl.1	<i>amā rē mur</i>	<i>monē rē mur</i>	<i>leg erē mur</i>	<i>audi rē mur</i>	- <i>rē mur</i> - <i>erē mur</i>
2	<i>amā rē minī</i>	<i>monē rē minī</i>	<i>leg erē minī</i>	<i>audi rē minī</i>	- <i>rē minī</i> - <i>erē minī</i>
3	<i>amā re ntur</i>	<i>monē re ntur</i>	<i>leg ere ntur</i>	<i>audi re ntur</i>	- <i>re ntur</i> - <i>ere ntur</i>
Perfect					≈ <i>us -a (-um)</i>
	<i>amāt us</i>	<i>monit us</i>	<i>lēct us</i>	<i>audīt us</i>	<i>sim</i>
sing.1	<i>sim</i>	<i>sim</i>	<i>sim</i>	<i>sim</i>	<i>sīs</i>
2	<i>sīs</i>	<i>sīs</i>	<i>sīs</i>	<i>sīs</i>	<i>sit</i>
3	<i>sit</i>	<i>sit</i>	<i>sit</i>	<i>sit</i>	
	<i>amāt ī</i>	<i>monit ī</i>	<i>lēct ī</i>	<i>audīt ī</i>	≈ <i>ī -ae (-a)</i>
pl.1	<i>simus</i>	<i>simus</i>	<i>simus</i>	<i>simus</i>	<i>sītis</i>
2	<i>sītis</i>	<i>sītis</i>	<i>sītis</i>	<i>sītis</i>	<i>sint</i>
3	<i>sint</i>	<i>sint</i>	<i>sint</i>	<i>sint</i>	
Pluperfect					≈ <i>us -a (-um)</i>
	<i>amāt us</i>	<i>monit us</i>	<i>lēct us</i>	<i>audīt us</i>	<i>essem</i>
sing.1	<i>essem</i>	<i>essem</i>	<i>essem</i>	<i>essem</i>	<i>essēs</i>
2	<i>essēs</i>	<i>essēs</i>	<i>essēs</i>	<i>essēs</i>	<i>esset</i>
3	<i>esset</i>	<i>esset</i>	<i>esset</i>	<i>esset</i>	
	<i>amāt ī</i>	<i>monit ī</i>	<i>lēct ī</i>	<i>audīt ī</i>	≈ <i>ī -ae (-a)</i>
pl.1	<i>essēmus</i>	<i>essēmus</i>	<i>essēmus</i>	<i>essēmus</i>	<i>essētis</i>
2	<i>essētis</i>	<i>essētis</i>	<i>essētis</i>	<i>essētis</i>	<i>essent</i>
3	<i>essent</i>	<i>essent</i>	<i>essent</i>	<i>essent</i>	
Participle					
Perfect					≈ <i>us -a -um</i>
	<i>amāt us</i>	<i>monit us</i>	<i>lēct us</i>	<i>audīt us</i>	
	<i>-a -um</i>	<i>-a -um</i>	<i>-a -um</i>	<i>-a -um</i>	
Gerundive					[1, 2] [3, 4]
	<i>ama nd us</i>	<i>mone nd us</i>	<i>leg end us</i>	<i>audi end us</i>	- <i>nd us -a</i> - <i>end us -a</i>
	<i>-a -um</i>	<i>-a -um</i>	<i>-a -um</i>	<i>-a -um</i>	- <i>um</i> - <i>um</i>

[1, 2, 4] [3]
 -rī -ī
 ≈us -a -um esse
 ≈ūr|us -a -um esse

3rd pers. sing.
 ≈(i)tur
 ≈(ē)bā|tur
 -b|itur -ē|tur
 ≈us -a -um est
 ≈us -a -um erat
 ≈us -a -um erit

(-)(ē)tur -ā|tur
 ≈(e)rē|tur
 ≈us -a -um sit
 ≈us -a -um esset

[1, 2, 4] [3]
 -re -ere
 -minī -iminī

[1, 2] [3, 4]
 -ns -ēns
 ≈us -a -um
 ≈ūr|us -a -um
 -um -ū

[1, 2] [3, 4]
 -nd|um -end|um

-nd|us -a -um
 -end|us -a -um

i > e before *r*

cape|re < *capi|re
 capi < *capi|ī
 pati < *pati|ī

cape|ris < *capi|ris
 pate|ris < *pati|ris

Deponent verbs

Infinitive

pres.	cōnā rī	verē rī	ūt ī	parti rī
perf.	cōnāt um esse	verit um esse	ūs um esse	partit um esse
fut.	cōnāt ūr um esse	verit ūr um esse	ūs ūr um esse	partit ūr um esse

Indicative

pres.	cōnā tur	verē tur	ūt itur	parti tur
imperf.	cōnā bā tur	verē bā tur	ūt ēbā tur	parti ēbā tur
fut.	cōnā b itur	verē b itur	ūt ē tur	parti ē tur
perf.	cōnāt us est	verit us est	ūs us est	partit us est
pluperf.	cōnāt us erat	verit us erat	ūs us erat	partit us erat
fut. perf.	cōnāt us erit	verit us erit	ūs us erit	partit us erit

Subjunctive

pres.	cōn ē tur	verē ā tur	ūt ā tur	parti ā tur
imperf.	cōnā rē tur	verē rē tur	ūt erē tur	parti rē tur
perf.	cōnāt us sit	verit us sit	ūs us sit	partit us sit
pluperf.	cōnāt us esset	verit us esset	ūs us esset	partit us esset

Imperative

sing.	cōnā re	verē re	ūt ere	parti re
pl.	cōnā minī	verē minī	ūt iminī	parti minī

Participle

pres.	cōnā ns	verē ns	ūt ēns	parti ēns
perf.	cōnāt us	verit us	ūs us	partit us
fut.	cōnāt ūr us	verit ūr us	ūs ūr us	partit ūr us

Supine

cōnāt um -ū	verit um -ū	ūs um -ū	partit um -ū
-------------	-------------	----------	--------------

Gerund

cōnā nd um	verē nd um	ūt end um	parti end um
------------	------------	-----------	--------------

Gerundive

cōnā nd us	verē nd us	ūt end us	parti end us
------------	------------	-----------	--------------

Third conjugation: present stem -i

Examples: *capere*, *patī* (present stem: *capi-*, *pati-*)

Infinitive	act.	pass.	dep.
present	cape re	cap ī	pat ī

Indicative

present			
sing. 1	capi ō	capi or	pati or
2	capi s	cape ris	pate ris
3	capi t	capi tur	pati tur
pl. 1	capi mus	capi mur	pati mur
2	capi tis	capi minī	pati minī
3	capi unt	capi untur	pati untur

imperfect

sing. 1	capi ēba m	capi ēba r	pati ēba r
2	capi ēbā s	capi ēbā ris	pati ēbā ris
3	capi ēba t	capi ēbā tur	pati ēbā tur
pl. 1	capi ēbā mus	capi ēbā mur	pati ēbā mur
2	capi ēbā tis	capi ēbā minī	pati ēbā minī
3	capi ēba nt	capi ēba ntur	pati ēba ntur

future			
sing. 1	<i>capi a m</i>	<i>capi a r</i>	<i>pati a r</i>
2	<i>capi ē s</i>	<i>capi ē ris</i>	<i>pati ē ris</i>
3	<i>capi e t</i>	<i>capi ē tur</i>	<i>pati ē tur</i>
pl. 1	<i>capi ē mus</i>	<i>capi ē mur</i>	<i>pati ē mur</i>
2	<i>capi ē tis</i>	<i>capi ē minī</i>	<i>pati ē minī</i>
3	<i>capi e nt</i>	<i>capi e ntur</i>	<i>pati e ntur</i>
Subjunctive			
present			
sing. 1	<i>capi a m</i>	<i>capi a r</i>	<i>pati a r</i>
2	<i>capi ā s</i>	<i>capi ā ris</i>	<i>pati ā ris</i>
3	<i>capi a t</i>	<i>capi ā tur</i>	<i>pati ā tur</i>
pl. 1	<i>capi ā mus</i>	<i>capi ā mur</i>	<i>pati ā mur</i>
2	<i>capi ā tis</i>	<i>capi ā minī</i>	<i>pati ā minī</i>
3	<i>capi a nt</i>	<i>capi a ntur</i>	<i>pati a ntur</i>
imperfect			
sing. 1	<i>cape re m</i>	<i>cape re r</i>	<i>pate re r</i>
2	<i>cape rē s</i>	<i>cape rē ris</i>	<i>pate rē ris</i>
3	<i>cape re t</i>	<i>cape rē tur</i>	<i>pate rē tur</i>
pl. 1	<i>cape rē mus</i>	<i>cape rē mur</i>	<i>pate rē mur</i>
2	<i>cape rē tis</i>	<i>cape rē minī</i>	<i>pate rē minī</i>
3	<i>cape re nt</i>	<i>cape re ntur</i>	<i>pate re ntur</i>
Imperative			
sing.	<i>cape</i>		<i>pate re</i>
pl.	<i>capi te</i>		<i>pati minī</i>
Participle			
present	<i>capi ēns -ent is</i>		<i>pati ēns -ent is</i>
Gerund	<i>capi end um</i>		<i>pati end um</i>
Gerundive		<i>capi end us</i>	<i>pati end us</i>

cape|rem < **capi|rem*

cape < **capi*

Irregular verbs I: present stem

1. Infinitive *es|se* (stem *es-*, *er-*, *s-*)

Indicative			Subjunctive		Imperative	
pres.	imperf.	fut.	pres.	imperf.	pres.	fut.
<i>s um</i>	<i>er a m</i>	<i>er ō</i>	<i>s i m</i>	<i>es se m</i>	<i>es</i>	<i>es tō</i>
<i>es</i>	<i>er ā s</i>	<i>er is</i>	<i>s i s</i>	<i>es sē s</i>	<i>es te</i>	<i>es tōte</i>
<i>es t</i>	<i>er a t</i>	<i>er it</i>	<i>s i t</i>	<i>es se t</i>		
<i>s umus</i>	<i>er ā mus</i>	<i>er imus</i>	<i>s i mus</i>	<i>es sē mus</i>		
<i>es tis</i>	<i>er ā tis</i>	<i>er itis</i>	<i>s i tis</i>	<i>es sē tis</i>		
<i>s unt</i>	<i>er a nt</i>	<i>er unt</i>	<i>s i nt</i>	<i>es se nt</i>		

er- ante vōcālem

in composite verbs:

ab- ad- de- in- inter- prae-

prōd- super-esse

prōd-est prō-sunt

prōd-e... prō-s...

de-est dē-sunt

in-est in-sunt

2. Infinitive *posse*

Indicative			Subjunctive	
pres.	imperf.	fut.	pres.	imperf.
<i>pos-sum</i>	<i>pot-eram</i>	<i>pot-erō</i>	<i>pos-sim</i>	<i>possem</i>
<i>pot-es</i>	<i>pot-erās</i>	<i>pot-eris</i>	<i>pos-sīs</i>	<i>possēs</i>
<i>pot-est</i>	<i>pot-erat</i>	<i>pot-erit</i>	<i>pos-sit</i>	<i>posset</i>
<i>pos-sumus</i>	<i>pot-erāmus</i>	<i>pot-erimus</i>	<i>pos-sīmus</i>	<i>possēmus</i>
<i>pot-estis</i>	<i>pot-erātis</i>	<i>pot-eritis</i>	<i>pos-sitis</i>	<i>possētis</i>
<i>pos-sunt</i>	<i>pot-erant</i>	<i>pot-erunt</i>	<i>pos-sint</i>	<i>possent</i>

pot-e...

pos-s...

nölle < *ne-* + *velle*
mälle < *magis* + *velle*

3. Infinitive *velle, nölle, mälle*

Indicative

pres.	<i>vol ō</i> <i>vīs</i> <i>vul t</i> <i>vol umus</i> <i>vul tis</i> <i>vol unt</i>	<i>nōl ō</i> <i>nōn vīs</i> <i>nōn vult</i> <i>nōl umus</i> <i>nōn vultis</i> <i>nōl unt</i>	<i>māl ō</i> <i>māvīs</i> <i>māvult</i> <i>māl umus</i> <i>māvultis</i> <i>māl unt</i>
imperf.	<i>vol ēba m</i> <i>vol ēbā s</i>	<i>nōl ēba m</i> <i>nōl ēbā s</i>	<i>māl ēba m</i> <i>māl ēbā s</i>
fut.	<i>vol a m</i> <i>vol ē s</i>	<i>nōl a m</i> <i>nōl ē s</i>	<i>māl a m</i> <i>māl ē s</i>

Subjunctive

pres.	<i>vel i m</i> <i>vel i s</i> <i>vel i t</i> <i>vel i mus</i> <i>vel i tis</i> <i>vel i nt</i>	<i>nōl i m</i> <i>nōl i s</i> <i>nōl i t</i> <i>nōl i mus</i> <i>nōl i tis</i> <i>nōl i nt</i>	<i>māl i m</i> <i>māl i s</i> <i>māl i t</i> <i>māl i mus</i> <i>māl i tis</i> <i>māl i nt</i>
imperf.	<i>velle m</i> <i>vellē s</i> <i>velle t</i> <i>vellē mus</i> <i>vellē tis</i> <i>velle nt</i>	<i>nölle m</i> <i>nöllē s</i> <i>nölle t</i> <i>nöllē mus</i> <i>nöllē tis</i> <i>nölle nt</i>	<i>mälle m</i> <i>mällē s</i> <i>mälle t</i> <i>mällē mus</i> <i>mällē tis</i> <i>mälle nt</i>

Participle

pres.	<i>vol ēns</i>	<i>nōl ēns</i>
-------	----------------	----------------

Imperative

sing.	<i>nōl i</i>
pl.	<i>nōl īte</i>

nōl|i -ite + inf.

4. Infinitive *i|re*

Indicative

pres.	imperf.	fut.
<i>e ō</i>	<i>i ba m</i>	<i>i b ō</i>
<i>i s</i>	<i>i bā s</i>	<i>i b is</i>
<i>i t</i>	<i>i ba t</i>	<i>i b it</i>
<i>i mus</i>	<i>i bā mus</i>	<i>i b imus</i>
<i>i tis</i>	<i>i bā tis</i>	<i>i b itis</i>
<i>e unt</i>	<i>i ba nt</i>	<i>i b unt</i>

Subjunctive

pres.	imperf.
<i>e a m</i>	<i>i rē m</i>
<i>e ā s</i>	<i>i rē s</i>
<i>e a t</i>	<i>i rē t</i>
<i>e ā mus</i>	<i>i rē mus</i>
<i>e ā tis</i>	<i>i rē tis</i>
<i>e a nt</i>	<i>i rē nt</i>

Imperative

pres.	fut.
<i>i</i>	<i>i tō</i>
<i>i te</i>	<i>i tōte</i>
Participium	
<i>i ēns</i>	<i>e unt is</i>
Gerundium	
<i>e und um</i>	

passive (impersonal)

i|rī
i|tur i|bā|tur i|b|itur
e|ā|tur i|rē|tur
 gerundive:
e|und|um (est)

5. Infinitive *fi|erī*

Indicative

pres.	imperf.	fut.
<i>fi ō</i>	<i>fi ēba m</i>	<i>fi a m</i>
<i>fi s</i>	<i>fi ēbā s</i>	<i>fi ē s</i>
<i>fi t</i>	<i>fi ēba t</i>	<i>fi ē t</i>
<i>fi mus</i>	<i>fi ēbā mus</i>	<i>fi ē mus</i>
<i>fi tis</i>	<i>fi ēbā tis</i>	<i>fi ē tis</i>
<i>fi unt</i>	<i>fi ēba nt</i>	<i>fi ē nt</i>

Subjunctive

imperf.
<i>fi ere m</i>
<i>fi erē s</i>
<i>fi ere t</i>
<i>fi erē mus</i>
<i>fi erē tis</i>
<i>fi ere nt</i>

6. Infinitive: active *fer|re*, passive *fer|rī*

Indicative

	act.	pass.		act.	pass.
pres.	<i>fer ō</i> <i>fer s</i> <i>fer t</i> <i>fer imus</i> <i>fer tis</i> <i>fer unt</i>	<i>fer or</i> <i>fer ris</i> <i>fer tur</i> <i>fer imur</i> <i>fer imini</i> <i>fer untur</i>	imperf.	<i>fer ēba m</i> <i>fer ēba s</i>	<i>fer ēba r</i> <i>fer ēba ris</i>
			fut.	<i>fer a m</i> <i>fer ē s</i> <i>fer e t</i>	<i>fer a r</i> <i>fer ē ris</i> <i>fer ē tur</i>

Subjunctive

pres.	<i>fer a m</i> <i>fer ā s</i> <i>fer a t</i> <i>fer ā mus</i> <i>fer ā tis</i> <i>fer a nt</i>	<i>fer a r</i> <i>fer ā ris</i> <i>fer ā tur</i> <i>fer ā mur</i> <i>fer ā mini</i> <i>fer a ntur</i>	imperf.	<i>fer re m</i> <i>fer rē s</i> <i>fer re t</i> <i>fer rē mus</i> <i>fer rē tis</i> <i>fer re nt</i>	<i>fer re r</i> <i>fer rē ris</i> <i>fer rē tur</i> <i>fer rē mur</i> <i>fer rē mini</i> <i>fer re ntur</i>

Imperative

		Participle
pres.	<i>fer fer te</i>	<i>fer ēns</i>
fut.	<i>fer tō -tōte</i>	

Gerund

fer|end|um

Gerundive

*fer|end|us*7. Infinitive: act. *ēs|se*, pass. *ed|ī*

Indicative

	pres.	imperf.	fut.		pres.	imperf.
	<i>ed ō</i>	<i>ed ēba m</i>	<i>ed a m</i>		<i>ed i m (-a m)</i>	<i>ēs se m</i>
	<i>ēs</i>	<i>ed ēba s</i>	<i>ed ē s</i>		<i>ed i s (-ā s)</i>	<i>ēs sē s</i>
	<i>ēs t</i>	<i>ed ēba t</i>	<i>ed e t</i>		<i>ed i t (-a t)</i>	<i>ēs se t</i>
	<i>ed imus</i>	<i>ed ēba mus</i>	<i>ed ē mus</i>		<i>ed i mus (-ā mus)</i>	<i>ēs sē mus</i>
	<i>ēs tis</i>	<i>ed ēba tis</i>	<i>ed ē tis</i>		<i>ed i tis (-ā tis)</i>	<i>ēs sē tis</i>
	<i>ed unt</i>	<i>ed ēba nt</i>	<i>ed e nt</i>		<i>ed i nt (-a nt)</i>	<i>ēs se nt</i>

pass. ind. pres. 3rd pers.
ēs|tur ed|untur

Imperative

pres.	<i>ēs ēs te</i>
fut.	<i>ēs tō -tōte</i>

Participle

ed|ēns

Gerund

ed|end|um

Gerundive

*ed|end|us*8. Infinitive *da|re*

Present stem *da-* (short *a*): *da|re*, *da|mus*, *da|ba|m*, *da|b|ō*, *da|re|m*, etc., except *dā* (imp.), *dā|s* (ind. pres. 2 sing.), *dā|ns* (pres. part.).

Defective verbs

9. *ait*

Indicative

pres.	<i>āi ō</i>	--	imperf.	<i>āi ēba m</i>	<i>āi ēba mus</i>
	<i>āi s</i>	--		<i>āi ēba s</i>	<i>āi ēba tis</i>
	<i>āi t</i>	<i>āi unt</i>		<i>āi ēba t</i>	<i>āi ēba nt</i>

*ain'? = ais-ne?*10. *inquit*

Indicative

pres.	<i>inquam</i>	--	fut.	--
	<i>inquis</i>	--		<i>inquiēs</i>
	<i>inquit</i>	<i>inquiunt</i>		<i>inquiet</i>

11. Verbs without present stem:

memin|isse (imperative: *memen|tō -tōte*)*ōd|isse***Irregular verbs II: perfect and supine stems****First conjugation**

	pres. inf.	perf. inf.	perf. part./sup.
<i>ac-cubāre</i>	1. <i>cubā re</i>	<i>cubu isse</i>	<i>cubit um</i>
	2. <i>vetā re</i>	<i>vetu isse</i>	<i>vetit um</i>
<i>ex-plicāre</i>	3. <i>im-plicā re</i>	<i>-plicu isse</i>	<i>-plicit um</i>
	4. <i>secā re</i>	<i>secu isse</i>	<i>sect um</i>
<i>ad-iuvāre</i>	5. <i>iuvā re</i>	<i>iūv isse</i>	<i>iūt um</i>
	6. <i>lavā re</i>	<i>lāv isse</i>	<i>laut um/lavāt um</i>
	7. <i>stā re</i>	<i>stet isse</i>	
<i>prae-stāre</i>	8. <i>cōn-stā re</i>	<i>-stit isse</i>	
<i>circum-dare</i>	9. <i>da re</i>	<i>ded isse</i>	<i>dat um</i>

Second conjugation

	10. <i>docē re</i>	<i>docu isse</i>	<i>doct um</i>
	11. <i>miscē re</i>	<i>miscu isse</i>	<i>mixt um</i>
	12. <i>tenē re</i>	<i>tenu isse</i>	<i>tent um</i>
<i>abs- re- sus-tinēre</i>	13. <i>con-tinē re</i>	<i>-tinu isse</i>	<i>-tent um</i>
	14. <i>cēnsē re</i>	<i>cēnsu isse</i>	<i>cēns um</i>
	15. <i>dēlē re</i>	<i>dēlēv isse</i>	<i>dēlēt um</i>
	16. <i>flē re</i>	<i>flēv isse</i>	<i>flēt um</i>
<i>com- ex-plēre</i>	17. <i>im-plē re</i>	<i>-plēv isse</i>	<i>-plēt um</i>
	18. <i>cavē re</i>	<i>cāv isse</i>	<i>caut um</i>
	19. <i>favē re</i>	<i>fāv isse</i>	<i>faut um</i>
<i>per- re-movēre</i>	20. <i>movē re</i>	<i>mōv isse</i>	<i>mōt um</i>
	21. <i>sedē re</i>	<i>sēd isse</i>	<i>sess um</i>
	22. <i>possidē re</i>	<i>possēd isse</i>	<i>possess um</i>
<i>in-vidēre</i>	23. <i>vidē re</i>	<i>vīd isse</i>	<i>vīs um</i>
	24. <i>augē re</i>	<i>aux isse</i>	<i>auct um</i>
	25. <i>lūcē re</i>	<i>lūx isse</i>	
	26. <i>lūgē re</i>	<i>lūx isse</i>	
	27. <i>iubē re</i>	<i>iuss isse</i>	<i>iuss um</i>
<i>dē-rīdēre</i>	28. <i>rīdē re</i>	<i>rīs isse</i>	<i>rīs um</i>
<i>dis-per-suādēre</i>	29. <i>suādē re</i>	<i>suās isse</i>	<i>suās um</i>
<i>dē-tergēre</i>	30. <i>tergē re</i>	<i>ters isse</i>	<i>ters um</i>
<i>re-manēre</i>	31. <i>manē re</i>	<i>māns isse</i>	<i>māns um</i>
	32. <i>re-spondē re</i>	<i>-spond isse</i>	<i>-spōns um</i>
	33. <i>mordē re</i>	<i>momord isse</i>	<i>mors um</i>
	34. <i>fatē rī</i>	<i>fass um esse</i>	
	35. <i>cōn-fitē rī</i>	<i>-fess um esse</i>	
	36. <i>solē re</i>	<i>solit um esse</i>	
	37. <i>audē re</i>	<i>aus um esse</i>	
	38. <i>gaudē re</i>	<i>gavis um esse</i>	

Third conjugation

39. leg ere	lēg isse	lēct um	
40. ē-lig ere	-lēg isse	-lēct um	
41. em ere	ēm isse	ēmt um	
42. red-im ere	-ēm isse	-ēmt um	
43. cōn-sid ere	-sēd isse		
44. ēs se ed ō	ēd isse	ēs um	
45. ag ere	ēg isse	āct um	
46. cōg ere	co-ēg isse	co-āct um	
47. cap ere -iō	cēp isse	capt um	
48. ac-cip ere -iō	-cēp isse	-cept um	re-cipere
49. fac ere -iō	fēc isse	fact um	imp. fac!
50. af-fic ere -iō	-fēc isse	-fect um	cōn- ef- inter- per- ficere
51. iac ere -iō	iēc isse	iact um	
52. ab-ic ere -iō	-iēc isse	-iect um	
53. fug ere -iō	fūg isse		ad- ē- prō-icere
54. vinc ere	vīc isse	vict um	au- ef-fugere
55. fund ere	fūd isse	fūs um	
56. re-linqu ere	-līqu isse	-lict um	ef-fundere
57. rump ere	rūp isse	rupt um	
58. frang ere	frēg isse	frāct um	ē-rumpere
59. carp ere	carps isse	carpt um	
60. dic ere	dīx isse	dict um	imp. dīc! dūc!
61. dūc ere	dūx isse	duct um	ab- ē- re-dūcere
62. scrib ere	scrips isse	script um	īn-scribere
63. nūb ere	nūps isse	nupt um	
64. a-spic ere -iō	-spex isse	-spect um	cōn- dē- prō- re- su-
65. al-lic ere -iō	-lēx isse	-lect um	spicere
66. reg ere	rēx isse	rēct um	
67. cor-rig ere	-rēx isse	-rēct um	
68. per ere	per-rēx isse		
69. surg ere	sur-rēx isse		
70. dīlig ere	dīlēx isse	dīlēct um	
71. intelleg ere	intellēx isse	intellēct um	
72. negleg ere	neglēx isse	neglēct um	
73. cīng ere	cīnx isse	cīnct um	
74. iung ere	iūnx isse	iūnct um	ad- con- dis-iungere
75. coqu ere	cox isse	coct um	
76. trah ere	trāx isse	tract um	con- dē- re-trahere
77. veh ere	vēx isse	vect um	ad- in-vehere
78. īn-stru ere	-strūx isse	-strūct um	
79. flu ere	flūx isse		īn-fluere
80. vīv ere	vīx isse		part. fut. vīct ūr us
81. sūm ere	sūmps isse	sūmpt um	cōn-sūmere
82. prōm ere	prōmps isse	prōmpt um	
83. dēm ere	dēmps isse	dēmpt um	

	84. ger ere	gess isse	gest um
	85. ūr ere	uss isse	ust um
	86. fig ere	fix isse	fix um
in-flectere	87. flect ere	flex isse	flex um
ac-dis-prō-re-cēdere	88. cēd ere	cess isse	cess um
	89. claud ere	claus isse	claus um
	90. in-clūd ere	-clūs isse	-clūs um
	91. dīvid ere	dīvīs isse	dīvīs um
	92. lūd ere	lūs isse	lūs um
	93. laed ere	laes isse	laes um
	94. ē-līd ere	-līs isse	-līs um
	95. plaud ere	plaus isse	plaus um
ā-ad-dī-per-prō-re-mittere	96. mitt ere	mīs isse	miss um
	97. quat ere -iō	--	quass um
	98. per-cut ere -iō	-cuss isse	-cuss um
sub-mergere	99. merg ere	mers isse	mers um
	100. sparg ere	spars isse	spars um
	101. a-sperg ere	-spers isse	-spers um
	102. prem ere	press isse	press um
	103. im-prim ere	-press isse	-press um
	104. contemn ere	contēmps isse	contēpt um
	105. stern ere	strāv isse	strāt um
	106. cern ere	crēv isse	crēt um
	107. ser ere	sēv isse	sat um
	108. arcess ere	arcessīv isse	arcessīt um
	109. cup ere -iō	cupīv isse	cupīt um
	110. sap ere -iō	sapī isse	
	111. pet ere	petīv isse	petīt um
	112. quaer ere	quaesīv isse	quaesīt um
	113. re-quir ere	-quisīv isse	-quisīt um
	114. sin ere	siv isse	sit um
	115. dēsīn ere	dēsī isse	dēsīt um
ap-dē-ex-im-prae-re-pōnere	116. pōn ere	posu isse	posit um
	117. al ere	alu isse	alt um
in-colere	118. col ere	colu isse	cult um
	119. dēser ere	dēseru isse	dēsert um
	120. rap ere -iō	rapu isse	rapt um
sur-ripere	121. ē-rip ere -iō	-ripu isse	-rept um
	122. trem ere	tremu isse	
	123. frem ere	fremu isse	
re-cumbere	124. ac-cumb ere	-cubu isse	
	125. tang ere	tetig isse	tāct um
	126. cad ere	cecid isse	
oc-cidere	127. ac-cid ere	-cid isse	
	128. caed ere	cecid isse	caes um
	129. oc-cid ere	-cid isse	-cīs um

130. curr ere	cucurr isse	curs um	
131. ac-curr ere	-curr isse	-curs um	ex- oc- per- prō-currere
132. par ere -iō	peper isse	part um	
133. pell ere	pepul isse	puls um	
134. parc ere	peperc isse		
135. can ere	cecin isse		
136. fall ere	fefell isse		per- red- trā-dere
137. ad-d ere	-did isse	-dit um	
138. crēd ere	crēdid isse	crēdit um	
139. vēnd ere	vēndid isse		dē- re-sistere
140. cōn-sist ere	-stit isse		
141. scind ere	scid isse	sciss um	
142. bib ere	bib isse		
143. dēfend ere	dēfend isse	dēfēns um	ap- re-prehendere
144.prehend ere	prehend isse	prehēns um	cōn- dē-scendere
145. a-scend ere	-scend isse	-scēns um	
146. ac-cend ere	-cend isse	-cēns um	
147. ostend ere	ostend isse	ostent um	ā- con-vertere
148. vert ere	vert isse	vers um	
149. minu ere	minu isse	minūt um	
150. statu ere	statu isse	statūt um	
151. cōn-stitu ere	-stitu isse	-stitūt um	
152. indu ere	indu isse	indūt um	
153. metu ere	metu isse		
154. solv ere	solv isse	solūt um	ē-volvere
155. volv ere	volv isse	volūt um	re-quiēscere
156. quiēsc ere	quiēv isse		
157. crēsc ere	crēv isse		
158. ērubēsc ere	ērubu isse		
159. nōsc ere	nōv isse		
160. ignōsc ere	ignōv isse	ignōt um	
161. cognōsc ere	cognōv isse	cognitum	
162. pāsc ere	pāv isse	pāstum	
163. posc ere	poposc isse		
164. disc ere	didic isse		
165. fer re	tul isse	lāt um	
166. af-fer re	at-tul isse	ad lātum	
167. au-fer re	abs-tul isse	ab lātum	
168. ef-fer re	ex-tul isse	ē-lāt um	
169. of-fer re	ob-tul isse	ob-lāt um	
170. re-fer re	rettul isse	re-lāt um	per- prae- prō- trāns- ferre
171. toll ere	sustul isse	sublāt um	
172. in-cip ere -iō	coep isse	coept um	
173. fid ere	fīs um esse		cōn-fidere
174. revert ī	revert isse	revers um	
175. loqu ī	locūt um esse		col-loquī

<i>cōn- per-sequī</i>	176. <i>sequ ī</i>	<i>secūt um esse</i>	
	177. <i>quer ī</i>	<i>quest um esse</i>	
	178. <i>mor ī -ior</i>	<i>mortu um esse</i>	
	179. <i>pat ī -ior</i>	<i>pass um esse</i>	
<i>prō-gredi</i>	180. <i>ē-gred ī -ior</i>	<i>-gress um esse</i>	
	181. <i>ūt ī</i>	<i>ūs um esse</i>	
	182. <i>complex ī</i>	<i>complex um esse</i>	
	183. <i>lāb ī</i>	<i>lāps um esse</i>	
	184. <i>nāsc ī</i>	<i>nāt um esse</i>	
	185. <i>proficīsc ī</i>	<i>profect um esse</i>	
	186. <i>oblīvīsc ī</i>	<i>oblīt um esse</i>	
	Fourth conjugation		
	187. <i>aperī re</i>	<i>aperu isse</i>	<i>apert um</i>
	188. <i>operī re</i>	<i>operu isse</i>	<i>opert um</i>
	189. <i>salī re</i>	<i>salu isse</i>	
<i>circum- prō-silire</i>	190. <i>dē-silī re</i>	<i>-silu isse</i>	
<i>ex-haurire</i>	191. <i>haurī re</i>	<i>haus isse</i>	<i>haust um</i>
	192. <i>vincī re</i>	<i>vīnx isse</i>	<i>vīnct um</i>
	193. <i>sentī re</i>	<i>sēns isse</i>	<i>sēns um</i>
<i>ad- con- in- per- re- venīre</i>	194. <i>venī re</i>	<i>vēn isse</i>	<i>vent um</i>
	195. <i>reperī re</i>	<i>repper isse</i>	<i>reper um</i>
<i>ab- ad- ex- per- red-</i>	196. <i>ī re e ō</i>	<i>ī isse</i>	<i>it um</i>
<i>sub- trāns-īre</i>	197. <i>opperī rī</i>	<i>oppert um esse</i>	
<i>pres. stem orī-/ori-</i>	198. <i>orī rī ori tur</i>	<i>ort um esse</i>	
	Irregular verbs III		
	pres. inf.		perf. inf.
	199. <i>vel le vol ō</i>		<i>volu isse</i>
	200. <i>nōl le</i>		<i>nōlu isse</i>
<i>inter- prae- super- esse</i>	201. <i>māl le</i>		<i>mālu isse</i>
	202. <i>es se sum</i>		<i>fu isse</i>
fut. part. <i>futūr us</i>	203. <i>posse pos-sum</i>		<i>potu isse</i>
fut. inf. <i>futūr um esse, fore</i>	204. <i>ab-esse</i>		<i>ā-fu isse</i>
	205. <i>ad-esse ad-/as-sum</i>		<i>af-fu isse</i>
	206. <i>de-esse dē-sum</i>		<i>dē-fu isse</i>
	207. <i>prōd-esse prō-sum prō-fu isse</i>		
	208. <i>fī erī fī ō</i>		<i>fact um esse</i>

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

(Numbers refer to the lists of irregular verbs by conjugation that begin on page 349.)

A

abdūcere 61
abesse 204
abicere 52
abīre 196
abstinēre 13
accēdere 88
accendere 146
accidere 127
accipere 48
accubāre 1
accumbere 124
accurrere 131
addere 137
adesse 205
adicere 52
adīre 196
adiungere 74
adiuvāre 5
admittere 96
advehere 77
advenīre 194
afferre 166
afficere 50
agere 45
alere 117
allicere 65
āmittere 96
aperīre 187
appōnere 116
apprehendere 144
arcessere 108
ascendere 145
aspergere 101
aspicere 64
audēre 37
auferre 167
aufugere 53
augēre 24
āvertere 148

B

bibere 142

C

cadere 126
caedere 128
canere 135

capere 47
carpere 59
cavēre 18
cēdere 88
cēnsēre 14
cernere 106
cingere 73
circumdare 9
circumsilīre 190
claudere 89
cōgere 46
cognōscere 161
colere 118
colloquī 175
complectī 182
complēre 17
cōnficere 50
cōnfidere 173
cōnfitērī 35
coniungere 74
cōnscendere 145
cōnsequī 176
cōnsidere 43
cōnsistere 140
cōnspicere 64
cōnstāre 8
cōnstituere 151
cōnsūmere 81
contemnere 104
continēre 13
contrahere 76
convenīre 194
convertere 148
coquere 75
corrigere 67
crēdere 138
crēscere 157
cubāre 1
cupere 109
currere 130

D

dare 9
dēesse 206
dēfendere 143
dēlēre 15
dēmere 83

dēpōnere 116
dēridēre 28
dēscendere 145
dēserere 119
dēsilīre 190
dēsinerere 115
dēsistere 140
dēspicere 64
dētergēre 30
dētrahere 76
dīcere 60
diligere 70
dīmittere 96
discēdere 88
discere 164
disiungere 74
dissuādēre 29
dividere 91
docēre 10
dūcere 61

E

ēducere 61
efferre 168
efficere 50
effugere 53
effundere 55
ēgredī 180
ēicere 52
ēlīdere 94
ēligere 40
emere 41
ēripere 121
ērubēscere 158
ērumpere 57
esse 202
ēsse 44
ēvolvere 155
excurrere 131
exhaurīre 191
exīre 196
explēre 17
expōnere 116

F

facere 49
fallere 136
fatērī 34

favēre 19
ferre 165
fidere 173
fierī 208
figere 86
flectere 87
flēre 16
fluere 79
frangere 58
fremere 123
fugere 53
fundere 55

G

gaudēre 38
gerere 84

H

haurīre 191

I

iacere 51
ignōscere 160
implēre 17
implicāre 3
impōnere 116
imprimere 103
incipere 172
inclūdere 90
incolere 118
induere 152
inflectere 87
īnfluere 79
īnscrībere 62
īnstruere 78
intellegere 71
interesse 202
interficere 50
invehere 77
invenīre 194
invidēre 23
īre 196
iubēre 27
iungere 74
iuvāre 5

L

lābī 183
laedere 93

lavāre 6
legere 39
loquī 175
lūcēre 25
lūdere 92
lūgēre 26

M

mālle 201
manēre 31
mergere 99
metuere 153
minuere 149
miscēre 11
mittere 96
mordēre 33
mori 178
movēre 20

N

nāscī 184
neglegere 72
nōlle 200
nōscere 159
nūbere 63

O

oblivīscī 186
occidere 127
occidere 129
occurrere 131
offerre 169
operīre 188
opperīri 197
orīri 198
ostendere 147

P

parcere 134
parere 132
pāscere 162
patī 179
pellere 133

percurrere 131
percutere 98
perdere 137
perferre 165
perficere 50
pergere 68
perīre 196
permittere 96
permovēre 20
persequī 176
persuādēre 29
pervenīre 194
petere 111
plaudere 95
pōnere 116
poscere 163
posse 203
possidēre 22
praeesse 202
praeferre 165
praepōnere 116
praestāre 8
prehendere 144
premere 102
prōcēdere 88
prōcurrere 131
prōdesse 207
prōferre 165
proficīscī 185
prōgredi 180
prōicere 52
prōmere 82
prōmittere 96
prōsilīre 190
prōspicere 64

Q

quaerere 112
quater 97
querī 177
quiēscere 156

R

rapere 120
recēdere 88
recipere 48
recumbere 124
reddere 137
redimere 42
redīre 196
reducere 61
referre 170
regere 66
relinquere 56
remanēre 31
remittere 96
removēre 20
reperīre 195
repōnere 116
reprehendere 144
requiēscere 156
requirere 113
resistere 140
respondēre 32
retinēre 13
retrahere 76
revenīre 194
revertī 174
rīdēre 28
rumpere 57

S

salīre 189
sapere 110
scindere 141
scribere 62
secāre 4
sedēre 21
sentīre 193
sequī 176
serere 107
sinere 114
solēre 36

solvere 154
spargere 100
stāre 7
statuere 150
sternere 105
suādēre 29
subīre 196
submergere 99
sūmere 81
superesse 202
surgere 69
surripere 121
susplicere 64
sustinēre 13

T

tangere 125
tenēre 12
tergēre 30
tollere 171
trādere 137
trahere 76
trānsferre 165
trānsire 196
tremere 122

U

ūrere 85
ūtī 181

V

vehere 77
velle 199
vēndere 139
venīre 194
vertere 148
vetāre 2
vidēre 23
vincere 54
vincīre 192
vīvere 80
volvere 155

INDEX OF NOUNS, ADJECTIVES AND VERBS

Nouns

1st Declension

Gen. sing. -ae, pl. -ārum

Feminine

<i>āla</i>	<i>fenestra</i>	<i>littera</i>	<i>puella</i>
<i>amīca</i>	<i>fera</i>	<i>lucerna</i>	<i>pugna</i>
<i>amicitia</i>	<i>filia</i>	<i>lūna</i>	<i>rēgula</i>
<i>ancilla</i>	<i>fōrma</i>	<i>mamma</i>	<i>ripa</i>
<i>anima</i>	<i>fortūna</i>	<i>margarīta</i>	<i>rosa</i>
<i>aqua</i>	<i>fossa</i>	<i>māteria</i>	<i>sagitta</i>
<i>aquila</i>	<i>fuga</i>	<i>mātrōna</i>	<i>scaena</i>
<i>arānea</i>	<i>gemma</i>	<i>memoria</i>	<i>sella</i>
<i>audācia</i>	<i>gena</i>	<i>mēnsa</i>	<i>sententia</i>
<i>bēstia</i>	<i>glōria</i>	<i>mora</i>	<i>silva</i>
<i>catēna</i>	<i>grammatica</i>	<i>Mūsa</i>	<i>stēlla</i>
<i>cauda</i>	<i>grātia</i>	<i>nātūra</i>	<i>syllaba</i>
<i>causa</i>	<i>hasta</i>	<i>nāvicula</i>	<i>tabella</i>
<i>cēna</i>	<i>herba</i>	<i>nota</i>	<i>tabula</i>
<i>cēra</i>	<i>hōra</i>	<i>opera</i>	<i>terra</i>
<i>charta</i>	<i>iactūra</i>	<i>ōra</i>	<i>toga</i>
<i>columna</i>	<i>iānuā</i>	<i>paenīnsula</i>	<i>tunica</i>
<i>cōmoedia</i>	<i>iniūria</i>	<i>pāgina</i>	<i>turba</i>
<i>cōpia</i>	<i>inopia</i>	<i>palma</i>	<i>umbra</i>
<i>culīna</i>	<i>insula</i>	<i>patientia</i>	<i>uva</i>
<i>cūra</i>	<i>invidia</i>	<i>patria</i>	<i>vēna</i>
<i>dea</i>	<i>ira</i>	<i>pecūnia</i>	<i>via</i>
<i>domina</i>	<i>lacrima</i>	<i>pena</i>	<i>victōria</i>
<i>epistula</i>	<i>laetitia</i>	<i>persōna</i>	<i>vigilia</i>
<i>fābula</i>	<i>lāna</i>	<i>pila</i>	<i>villa</i>
<i>fāma</i>	<i>lectica</i>	<i>poena</i>	<i>vīnea</i>
<i>familia</i>	<i>linea</i>	<i>porta</i>	<i>virga</i>
<i>fēmina</i>	<i>lingua</i>	<i>prōvincia</i>	<i>vīta</i>
(pl.)			
<i>cūnae</i>	<i>dīvitiae</i>	<i>nōnae</i>	<i>tenebrae</i>
<i>dēliciae</i>	<i>kalendae</i>	<i>nūgae</i>	<i>tībiae</i>
Masculine (/feminine)			
<i>agricola</i>	<i>convīva</i>	<i>nauta</i>	<i>poēta</i>
<i>aurīga</i>	<i>incola</i>	<i>parricīda</i>	<i>pīrāta</i>

2nd Declension

Gen. sing. -ī, pl. -ōrum

1. Nom. sing. -us (-r)

Masculine

<i>agnus</i>	<i>deus</i>	<i>locus</i>	<i>pugnus</i>
<i>amicus</i>	<i>digitus</i>	<i>lūdus</i>	<i>pullus</i>
<i>animus</i>	<i>discipulus</i>	<i>lupus</i>	<i>rāmus</i>
<i>annus</i>	<i>dominus</i>	<i>maritus</i>	<i>remus</i>
<i>ānulus</i>	<i>equus</i>	<i>medicus</i>	<i>rivus</i>
<i>asinus</i>	<i>erus</i>	<i>modus</i>	<i>sacculus</i>
<i>avunculus</i>	<i>filius</i>	<i>mundus</i>	<i>saccus</i>
<i>barbarus</i>	<i>fluvius</i>	<i>mūrus</i>	<i>servus</i>
<i>cachinnus</i>	<i>fundus</i>	<i>nāsus</i>	<i>sēstertius</i>
<i>calamus</i>	<i>gallus</i>	<i>nīdus</i>	<i>somnus</i>
<i>calceus</i>	<i>gladius</i>	<i>numerus</i>	<i>sonus</i>
<i>campus</i>	<i>hortus</i>	<i>nummus</i>	<i>stilus</i>
<i>capillus</i>	<i>inimicus</i>	<i>nūntius</i>	<i>tabernārius</i>
<i>cibus</i>	<i>labyrinthus</i>	<i>ōceanus</i>	<i>taurus</i>
<i>circus</i>	<i>lacertus</i>	<i>ocellus</i>	<i>titulus</i>
<i>cocus</i>	<i>lectus</i>	<i>oculus</i>	<i>tyrannus</i>
<i>colōnus</i>	<i>lēgātus</i>	<i>ōstiārius</i>	<i>umerus</i>
<i>delphīnus</i>	<i>libellus</i>	<i>petasus</i>	<i>ventus</i>
<i>dēnārius</i>	<i>libertīnus</i>	<i>populus</i>	<i>zephyrus</i>

(nom. sing. -er)

<i>ager agrī</i>	<i>faber -brī</i>	<i>magister -trī</i>	<i>puer -erī</i>
<i>culter -trī</i>	<i>liber -brī</i>	<i>minister -trī</i>	<i>vesper -erī</i>

(pl.)

liberī

Feminine

<i>humus</i>	<i>papyrus</i>	<i>Aegyptus</i>	<i>Rhodus</i>
--------------	----------------	-----------------	---------------

2. Nom. sing. -um, plur -a

Neuter

<i>aedificium</i>	<i>exemplum</i>	<i>mōnstrum</i>	<i>scamnum</i>
<i>aequinoctium</i>	<i>factum</i>	<i>negōtium</i>	<i>scūtum</i>
<i>arātrum</i>	<i>fātum</i>	<i>odiūm</i>	<i>saeculum</i>
<i>argentum</i>	<i>ferrum</i>	<i>officiūm</i>	<i>saxum</i>
<i>ātrium</i>	<i>filum</i>	<i>oppidum</i>	<i>scalpellum</i>
<i>aurum</i>	<i>folium</i>	<i>ōrnāmentum</i>	<i>signum</i>
<i>auxilium</i>	<i>forum</i>	<i>ōsculum</i>	<i>silentium</i>
<i>baculum</i>	<i>fretum</i>	<i>ōstium</i>	<i>solum</i>
<i>balneum</i>	<i>frūmentum</i>	<i>ōtium</i>	<i>speculum</i>
<i>bāsium</i>	<i>fūrtum</i>	<i>ōvum</i>	<i>stipendium</i>
<i>bellum</i>	<i>gaudium</i>	<i>pābulum</i>	<i>studium</i>
<i>beneficium</i>	<i>gremium</i>	<i>pallium</i>	<i>supplicium</i>
<i>bonum</i>	<i>imperium</i>	<i>pecūlium</i>	<i>talentum</i>
<i>brachium</i>	<i>impluvium</i>	<i>pēnsium</i>	<i>tēctum</i>
<i>caelum</i>	<i>ingenium</i>	<i>pericūlum</i>	<i>templum</i>
<i>capitulum</i>	<i>initium</i>	<i>peristylum</i>	<i>tergum</i>
<i>cerebrum</i>	<i>īnstrūmentum</i>	<i>pīlum</i>	<i>theātrum</i>
<i>colloquium</i>	<i>labrum</i>	<i>pirum</i>	<i>triclinium</i>
<i>collum</i>	<i>lignum</i>	<i>pōculum</i>	<i>vāllum</i>
<i>cōnsilium</i>	<i>lilium</i>	<i>praedium</i>	<i>vēlum</i>
<i>convivium</i>	<i>lucrum</i>	<i>praemium</i>	<i>verbum</i>
<i>cubiculum</i>	<i>maleficium</i>	<i>pretium</i>	<i>vestigium</i>
<i>dictum</i>	<i>malum</i>	<i>prīncipium</i>	<i>vestimentum</i>
<i>dōnum</i>	<i>mālum</i>	<i>prōmissum</i>	<i>vinum</i>
<i>dorsum</i>	<i>mendum</i>	<i>respōsum</i>	<i>vocābulum</i>

(pl.)

<i>arma -ōrum</i>	<i>castra -ōrum</i>	<i>loca -ōrum</i>	<i>vāsa -ōrum</i>
-------------------	---------------------	-------------------	-------------------

3rd Declension

Gen. sing. -is

1. Gen. pl. -um

Masculine

<i>āēr āeris</i>	<i>gladiātor -ōris</i>	<i>piscātor -ōris</i>
<i>amor -ōris</i>	<i>grex -egis</i>	<i>praedō -ōnis</i>
<i>arātor -ōris</i>	<i>gubernātor -ōris</i>	<i>princeps -ipis</i>
<i>bōs bovis</i>	<i>homō -inis</i>	<i>pudor -ōris</i>
<i>calor -ōris</i>	<i>hospes -itis</i>	<i>pulmō -ōnis</i>
<i>carcer -eris</i>	<i>iānitor -ōris</i>	<i>rēx rēgis</i>
<i>cardō -inis</i>	<i>imperātor -ōris</i>	<i>rūmor -ōris</i>
<i>clāmor -ōris</i>	<i>iuvenis -is</i>	<i>sacerdōs -ōtis</i>
<i>color -ōris</i>	<i>labor -ōris</i>	<i>sāl salis</i>
<i>comes -itis</i>	<i>leō -ōnis</i>	<i>sanguis -inis</i>
<i>coniūnx -iugis</i>	<i>mercātor -ōris</i>	<i>senex senis</i>
<i>cruor -ōris</i>	<i>mīles -itis</i>	<i>sermō -ōnis</i>
<i>dolor -ōris</i>	<i>mōs mōris</i>	<i>sōl sōlis</i>
<i>dux ducis</i>	<i>ōrdō -inis</i>	<i>spectātor -ōris</i>
<i>eques -itis</i>	<i>passer -eris</i>	<i>tībicen -inis</i>
<i>fīdīcen -inis</i>	<i>pāstor -ōris</i>	<i>tīmor -ōris</i>
<i>flōs -ōris</i>	<i>pater -tris</i>	<i>victor -ōris</i>
<i>frāter -tris</i>	<i>pedes -itis</i>	
<i>fūr fūris</i>	<i>pēs pedis</i>	

(pl.)

parentēs -um *septentrionēs -um*

Feminine

<i>aestās -ātis</i>	<i>māter -tris</i>	<i>quālītās -ātis</i>
<i>aetās -ātis</i>	<i>mentīō -ōnis</i>	<i>ratīō -ōnis</i>
<i>arbor -oris</i>	<i>mercēs -ēdis</i>	<i>salūs -ūtis</i>
<i>condiciō -ōnis</i>	<i>mulier -eris</i>	<i>servitūs -ūtis</i>
<i>crux -ucis</i>	<i>multitūdō -inis</i>	<i>significātiō -ōnis</i>
<i>cupiditās -ātis</i>	<i>nārratiō -ōnis</i>	<i>soror -ōris</i>
<i>expugnātiō -ōnis</i>	<i>nāvigātiō -ōnis</i>	<i>tempestās -ātis</i>
<i>fēlicitās -ātis</i>	<i>nex necis</i>	<i>tranquillitās -ātis</i>
<i>hiems -mis</i>	<i>nūtrīx -īcis</i>	<i>uxor -ōris</i>
<i>imāgō -inis</i>	<i>nux nucis</i>	<i>valētūdō -inis</i>
<i>laus laudis</i>	<i>ōrātiō -ōnis</i>	<i>virgō -inis</i>
<i>legiō -ōnis</i>	<i>pāx pācis</i>	<i>virtūs -ūtis</i>
<i>lēx lēgis</i>	<i>potestās -ātis</i>	<i>voluntās -ātis</i>
<i>libertās -ātis</i>	<i>pōtiō -ōnis</i>	<i>vorāgō -inis</i>
<i>lūx lūcis</i>	<i>pulchritūdō -inis</i>	<i>vōx vōcis</i>

(pl.)

frūgēs -um *opēs -um* *precēs -um*

Neuter (pl. nom. /acc. -a)

<i>agmen -inis</i>	<i>holus -eris</i>	<i>pectus -oris</i>
<i>caput -itis</i>	<i>iecur -oris</i>	<i>pecus -oris</i>
<i>carmen -inis</i>	<i>iter itineris</i>	<i>phantasma -atis</i>
<i>certāmen -inis</i>	<i>iūs iūris</i>	<i>praenōmen -inis</i>
<i>cognōmen -inis</i>	<i>lac lactis</i>	<i>rūs rūris</i>
<i>cor cordis</i>	<i>latus -eris</i>	<i>scelus -eris</i>
<i>corpus -oris</i>	<i>līmen -inis</i>	<i>sēmen -inis</i>
<i>crūs -ūris</i>	<i>litus -oris</i>	<i>tempus -oris</i>
<i>epigramma -atis</i>	<i>mel mellis</i>	<i>thema -atis</i>
<i>flūmen -inis</i>	<i>mūnus -eris</i>	<i>vās vāsis</i>
<i>frīgus -oris</i>	<i>nōmen -inis</i>	<i>vēr vēris</i>
<i>fulgur -uris</i>	<i>opus -eris</i>	<i>vulnus -eris</i>
<i>genus -eris</i>	<i>ōs ōris</i>	

(pl.)

verbera -um *viscera -um*

2. Gen. pl. -ium

Masculine

<i>amnis</i>	<i>hostis</i>	<i>oriēns -entis</i>
<i>as assis</i>	<i>ignis</i>	<i>orbis</i>
<i>civis</i>	<i>imber -bris</i>	<i>pānis</i>
<i>collis</i>	<i>infāns -antis</i>	<i>piscis</i>
<i>dēns dentis</i>	<i>mēnsis</i>	<i>pōns pontis</i>
<i>ēnsis</i>	<i>mōns montis</i>	<i>testis</i>
<i>finis</i>	<i>occidēns -entis</i>	<i>venter -tris</i>

Feminine

<i>apis</i>	<i>famēs -is</i>	<i>ovis</i>
<i>ars artis</i>	<i>foris</i>	<i>pars partis</i>
<i>auris</i>	<i>frōns -ontis</i>	<i>puppis</i>
<i>avis</i>	<i>gēns gentis</i>	<i>ratis</i>
<i>caedēs -is</i>	<i>mēns mentis</i>	<i>sitis</i>
<i>carō carnis</i>	<i>merx -rcis</i>	<i>urbs -bis</i>
<i>classis</i>	<i>mors -rtis</i>	<i>vallis</i>
<i>clāvis</i>	<i>nāvis</i>	<i>vestis</i>
<i>cohors -rtis</i>	<i>nix nivis</i>	<i>vītis</i>
<i>cōnsonāns -antis</i>	<i>nox noctis</i>	<i>vōcālis</i>
<i>falx -cis</i>	<i>nūbēs -is</i>	

(pl.)

<i>fidēs -ium</i>	<i>sordēs -ium</i>	<i>vīrēs -ium</i>
-------------------	--------------------	-------------------

Neuter

<i>animal -ālis</i>	<i>mare -is</i>	<i>rēte -is</i>
---------------------	-----------------	-----------------

(pl.)

<i>mīlia -ium</i>	<i>moenia -ium</i>	
-------------------	--------------------	--

4th Declension

Gen. sing. -ūs, pl. -uum

Masculine

<i>affectus</i>	<i>cursus</i>	<i>impetus</i>	<i>sinus</i>
<i>arcus</i>	<i>equitātus</i>	<i>lacus</i>	<i>strepitus</i>
<i>cantus</i>	<i>exercitus</i>	<i>metus</i>	<i>tonitrus</i>
<i>cāsus</i>	<i>exitus</i>	<i>passus</i>	<i>tumultus</i>
<i>cōnspectus</i>	<i>flūctus</i>	<i>portus</i>	<i>versus</i>
<i>currus</i>	<i>gradus</i>	<i>rīsus</i>	<i>vultus</i>

Feminine

<i>anus</i>	<i>domus</i>	<i>manus</i>	
-------------	--------------	--------------	--

(pl.)

īdūs -uum

Neuter

<i>cornū</i>	<i>genū</i>		
--------------	-------------	--	--

5th Declension

Gen. sing. -ēī/-eī (pl. -ērum)

Feminine

<i>aciēs -ēī</i>	<i>glaciēs -ēī</i>	<i>fidēs -eī</i>	<i>spēs -eī</i>
<i>faciēs -ēī</i>	<i>speciēs -ēī</i>	<i>rēs rei</i>	

Masculine

<i>diēs -ēī</i>	<i>merīdiēs -ēī</i>		
-----------------	---------------------	--	--

ADJECTIVES

1st/2nd Declension

Nom. sing. m. -us, f. -a, n. -um

<i>acerbus</i>	<i>ferus</i>	<i>mellitus</i>	<i>rēctus</i>
<i>acūtus</i>	<i>fessus</i>	<i>mercātorius</i>	<i>reliquus</i>
<i>adversus</i>	<i>fīdus</i>	<i>merus</i>	<i>rīdīculus</i>
<i>aegrōtus</i>	<i>foedus</i>	<i>meus</i>	<i>Rōmānus</i>
<i>aequus</i>	<i>fōrmōsus</i>	<i>minimus</i>	<i>rūsticus</i>
<i>albus</i>	<i>frigidus</i>	<i>mīrus</i>	<i>saevus</i>
<i>aliēnus</i>	<i>fugitīvus</i>	<i>misellus</i>	<i>salvus</i>
<i>altus</i>	<i>futūrus</i>	<i>molestus</i>	<i>sānus</i>
<i>amicus</i>	<i>gemmātus</i>	<i>mortuus</i>	<i>scaenicus</i>
<i>amoenus</i>	<i>gladiātōrius</i>	<i>mundus</i>	<i>scelestus</i>
<i>angustus</i>	<i>glōriōsus</i>	<i>mūtus</i>	<i>secundus</i>
<i>antiquus</i>	<i>grātus</i>	<i>mūtuus</i>	<i>septimus</i>
<i>apertus</i>	<i>gravidus</i>	<i>necessārius</i>	<i>serēnus</i>
<i>arduus</i>	<i>horrendus</i>	<i>nimius</i>	<i>sērius</i>
<i>argenteus</i>	<i>ignārus</i>	<i>niveus</i>	<i>sevērus</i>
<i>armātus</i>	<i>ignōtus</i>	<i>nōnus</i>	<i>sextus</i>
<i>asinīnus</i>	<i>immātūrus</i>	<i>nōtus</i>	<i>siccus</i>
<i>attentus</i>	<i>improbus</i>	<i>novus</i>	<i>situs</i>
<i>aureus</i>	<i>īmus</i>	<i>nūbilus</i>	<i>sordidus</i>
<i>avārus</i>	<i>incertus</i>	<i>nūdus</i>	<i>studiōsus</i>
<i>barbarus</i>	<i>inconditus</i>	<i>obscurus</i>	<i>stultus</i>
<i>beātus</i>	<i>indignus</i>	<i>octāvus</i>	<i>summus</i>
<i>bellus</i>	<i>indoctus</i>	<i>optimus</i>	<i>superbus</i>
<i>bonus</i>	<i>industrius</i>	<i>otīōsus</i>	<i>superus</i>
<i>caecus</i>	<i>īferus</i>	<i>pallidus</i>	<i>surdus</i>
<i>calidus</i>	<i>īfestus</i>	<i>parātus</i>	<i>suus</i>
<i>candidus</i>	<i>īfidus</i>	<i>parvulus</i>	<i>tacitus</i>
<i>cārus</i>	<i>īfimus</i>	<i>parvus</i>	<i>tantus</i>
<i>cautus</i>	<i>inhūmānus</i>	<i>pecūniōsus</i>	<i>tardus</i>
<i>celsus</i>	<i>inimicus</i>	<i>periculōsus</i>	<i>temerārius</i>
<i>centēsīmus</i>	<i>iniūstus</i>	<i>perpetuus</i>	<i>tenebricōsus</i>
<i>certus</i>	<i>internus</i>	<i>perterritus</i>	<i>timidus</i>
<i>cēterus</i>	<i>invalidus</i>	<i>pessimus</i>	<i>tertius</i>
<i>clārus</i>	<i>iocōsus</i>	<i>plānus</i>	<i>togātus</i>
<i>claudus</i>	<i>īrātus</i>	<i>plēnus</i>	<i>tranquillus</i>
<i>clausus</i>	<i>iūcundus</i>	<i>poēticus</i>	<i>turbidus</i>
<i>contrārius</i>	<i>iūstus</i>	<i>postrēmus</i>	<i>turgidus</i>
<i>crassus</i>	<i>laetus</i>	<i>praeteritus</i>	<i>tūtus</i>
<i>cruentus</i>	<i>laevus</i>	<i>prāvus</i>	<i>tuus</i>
<i>cūnctus</i>	<i>largus</i>	<i>pretiōsus</i>	<i>ultimus</i>
<i>cupidus</i>	<i>Latinus</i>	<i>primus</i>	<i>ūmidus</i>
<i>decimus</i>	<i>lātus</i>	<i>privātus</i>	<i>ūniversus</i>
<i>dignus</i>	<i>legiōnārius</i>	<i>propinquus</i>	<i>urbānus</i>
<i>dimidius</i>	<i>ligneus</i>	<i>proprius</i>	<i>vacuus</i>
<i>dīrus</i>	<i>longus</i>	<i>proximus</i>	<i>validus</i>
<i>doctus</i>	<i>maestus</i>	<i>pūblicus</i>	<i>varius</i>
<i>dubius</i>	<i>magnificus</i>	<i>pūrus</i>	<i>venustus</i>
<i>dūrus</i>	<i>magnus</i>	<i>quantus</i>	<i>vērus</i>
<i>ēbrius</i>	<i>malus</i>	<i>quārtus</i>	<i>vīvus</i>
<i>ēgregius</i>	<i>maritimus</i>	<i>quiētus</i>	<i>-issimus</i>
<i>exiguus</i>	<i>mātūrus</i>	<i>quīntus</i>	<i>sup.</i>
<i>falsus</i>	<i>māximus</i>	<i>rapidus</i>	<i>-ēsīmus</i>
<i>ferreus</i>	<i>medius</i>	<i>rārus</i>	<i>num.</i>

(pl.)

<i>ceteri</i>	<i>pauci</i>	<i>singuli</i>	<i>ducenti</i>
<i>multi</i>	<i>plēri-que</i>	<i>binī</i>	<i>trecenti</i>
<i>nōnnūlli</i>	<i>plūrimī</i>	<i>cēt.</i>	<i>cēt.</i>

Nom. sing. -er -(e)ra -(e)rum

<i>aeger -gra -grum</i>	<i>niger -gra -grum</i>	<i>ruber -bra -brum</i>
<i>āter -tra -trum</i>	<i>noster -tra -trum</i>	<i>sinister -tra -trum</i>
<i>dexter -tra -trum</i>	<i>piger -gra -grum</i>	<i>vester -tra -trum</i>
<i>impiger -gra -grum</i>	<i>pulcher -chra</i>	<i>liber -era -erum</i>
<i>integer -gra -grum</i>	<i>-chrum</i>	<i>miser -era -erum</i>

3rd Declension

Nom. sing. m./f. -is, n. -e

<i>brevis</i>	<i>fertilis</i>	<i>levis</i>	<i>rudis</i>
<i>circēnsis</i>	<i>fortis</i>	<i>militāris</i>	<i>similis</i>
<i>commūnis</i>	<i>gracilis</i>	<i>mīrābilis</i>	<i>tālis</i>
<i>crūdēlis</i>	<i>gravis</i>	<i>mollis</i>	<i>tenuis</i>
<i>dēbilis</i>	<i>humilis</i>	<i>mortālis</i>	<i>terribilis</i>
<i>difficilis</i>	<i>immortālis</i>	<i>nōbilis</i>	<i>tristis</i>
<i>dūlcis</i>	<i>incolumis</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>turpis</i>
<i>facilis</i>	<i>inermis</i>	<i>quālis</i>	<i>vilis</i>

Nom. sing. m./f./n. -ns, gen. -ntis

<i>absēns</i>	<i>dēpōnēns</i>	<i>ingēns</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>
<i>amāns</i>	<i>diligēns</i>	<i>neglegēns</i>	<i>sapiēns</i>
<i>clēmēns</i>	<i>frequēns</i>	<i>patiēns</i>	<i>-ns part.</i>
<i>cōnstāns</i>	<i>impatiēns</i>	<i>praesēns</i>	<i>pres.</i>

Nom. sing. m./f./n. -x, gen. -cis

<i>audāx</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>infēlix</i>
<i>fallāx</i>	<i>ferōx</i>	<i>vēlōx</i>

Nom. sing. m. -er, f. -(e)ris, n. -(e)re

<i>ācer ācris</i>	<i>celer -eris</i>	<i>September -bris</i>
<i>Octōber -bris</i>	<i>November -bris</i>	<i>December -bris</i>

VERBS

1st Conjugation

Inf. pres. act. -āre, pass. -ārī

<i>aberrāre</i>	<i>dare</i>	<i>iuvāre</i>	<i>properāre</i>
<i>accubāre</i>	<i>dēlectāre</i>	<i>labōrāre</i>	<i>pugnāre</i>
<i>accūsāre</i>	<i>dēmōnstrāre</i>	<i>lacrimāre</i>	<i>pulsāre</i>
<i>adiuvāre</i>	<i>dēsiderāre</i>	<i>lātrāre</i>	<i>putāre</i>
<i>adōrāre</i>	<i>dēspērāre</i>	<i>laudāre</i>	<i>recitāre</i>
<i>aedificāre</i>	<i>dēvorāre</i>	<i>lavāre</i>	<i>rēgnāre</i>
<i>aegrōtāre</i>	<i>dictāre</i>	<i>levāre</i>	<i>rēmigāre</i>
<i>aestimāre</i>	<i>dōnāre</i>	<i>liberāre</i>	<i>repugnāre</i>
<i>affirmāre</i>	<i>dubitāre</i>	<i>memorāre</i>	<i>revocāre</i>
<i>amāre</i>	<i>ēducāre</i>	<i>militāre</i>	<i>rigāre</i>
<i>ambulāre</i>	<i>errāre</i>	<i>mōnstrāre</i>	<i>rogāre</i>
<i>appellāre</i>	<i>ēvolāre</i>	<i>mūtāre</i>	<i>rogitāre</i>
<i>apportāre</i>	<i>excitāre</i>	<i>nārrāre</i>	<i>salūtāre</i>
<i>appropinquāre</i>	<i>exclāmāre</i>	<i>natāre</i>	<i>salvāre</i>
<i>arāre</i>	<i>excōgitāre</i>	<i>nāvigāre</i>	<i>sānāre</i>
<i>armāre</i>	<i>excruciāre</i>	<i>necāre</i>	<i>secāre</i>
<i>bālāre</i>	<i>excūsāre</i>	<i>negāre</i>	<i>servāre</i>
<i>cantāre</i>	<i>existimāre</i>	<i>nōmināre</i>	<i>signāre</i>
<i>cēnāre</i>	<i>exōrnāre</i>	<i>numerāre</i>	<i>significāre</i>
<i>certāre</i>	<i>explānāre</i>	<i>nūntiāre</i>	<i>spectāre</i>
<i>cessāre</i>	<i>expugnāre</i>	<i>occultāre</i>	<i>spērāre</i>
<i>circumdare</i>	<i>expectāre</i>	<i>oppugnāre</i>	<i>spīrāre</i>
<i>clāmāre</i>	<i>fatigāre</i>	<i>optāre</i>	<i>stāre</i>
<i>cōgitāre</i>	<i>flāre</i>	<i>ōrāre</i>	<i>suscitāre</i>
<i>commemorāre</i>	<i>gubernāre</i>	<i>ōrdināre</i>	<i>turbāre</i>
<i>comparāre</i>	<i>gustāre</i>	<i>ōrnāre</i>	<i>ululāre</i>
<i>computāre</i>	<i>habitāre</i>	<i>ōscitāre</i>	<i>verberāre</i>
<i>cōnstāre</i>	<i>iactāre</i>	<i>palpitāre</i>	<i>vetāre</i>
<i>conturbāre</i>	<i>ignōrāre</i>	<i>parāre</i>	<i>vigilāre</i>
<i>convocāre</i>	<i>illūstrāre</i>	<i>perturbāre</i>	<i>vitāre</i>
<i>cōpulāre</i>	<i>imperāre</i>	<i>pipiāre</i>	<i>vocāre</i>
<i>cruciāre</i>	<i>implicāre</i>	<i>plōrāre</i>	<i>volāre</i>
<i>cubāre</i>	<i>interpellāre</i>	<i>portāre</i>	<i>vorāre</i>
<i>cūrāre</i>	<i>interrogāre</i>	<i>postulāre</i>	<i>vulnerāre</i>
	<i>intrāre</i>	<i>pōtāre</i>	
	<i>invocāre</i>	<i>praestāre</i>	

Deponent verbs

<i>admirārī</i>	<i>fārī</i>	<i>luctārī</i>	<i>tumultuārī</i>
<i>arbitrārī</i>	<i>hortārī</i>	<i>minārī</i>	<i>versārī</i>
<i>comitārī</i>	<i>fābulārī</i>	<i>mīrārī</i>	
<i>cōnārī</i>	<i>imitārī</i>	<i>ōsculārī</i>	
<i>cōnsōlārī</i>	<i>laetārī</i>	<i>precārī</i>	

2nd Conjugation

Inf. pres. act. -ēre, pass. -ērī

<i>abstinēre</i>	<i>favēre</i>	<i>merēre</i>	<i>retinēre</i>
<i>appārēre</i>	<i>flēre</i>	<i>miscēre</i>	<i>ridēre</i>
<i>audēre</i>	<i>frigēre</i>	<i>monēre</i>	<i>rubēre</i>
<i>augēre</i>	<i>gaudēre</i>	<i>mordēre</i>	<i>salvēre</i>
<i>carēre</i>	<i>habēre</i>	<i>movēre</i>	<i>sedēre</i>
<i>cavēre</i>	<i>horrēre</i>	<i>nocēre</i>	<i>silēre</i>
<i>cēnsēre</i>	<i>iacēre</i>	<i>oportēre</i>	<i>solēre</i>
<i>complēre</i>	<i>impendēre</i>	<i>pallēre</i>	<i>studēre</i>
<i>continēre</i>	<i>implēre</i>	<i>pārēre</i>	<i>stupēre</i>
<i>dēbēre</i>	<i>invidēre</i>	<i>patēre</i>	<i>suādēre</i>
<i>decēre</i>	<i>iubēre</i>	<i>permovēre</i>	<i>sustinēre</i>
<i>dēlēre</i>	<i>latēre</i>	<i>persuādēre</i>	<i>tacēre</i>
<i>dēridēre</i>	<i>libēre</i>	<i>placēre</i>	<i>tenēre</i>
<i>dētergēre</i>	<i>licēre</i>	<i>possidēre</i>	<i>tergēre</i>
<i>dēterrēre</i>	<i>lucēre</i>	<i>pudēre</i>	<i>terrēre</i>
<i>dissuādēre</i>	<i>lūgēre</i>	<i>remanēre</i>	<i>timēre</i>
<i>docēre</i>	<i>maerēre</i>	<i>removēre</i>	<i>valēre</i>
<i>dolēre</i>	<i>manēre</i>	<i>respondēre</i>	<i>vidēre</i>

Deponent verbs

<i>cōnfitērī</i>	<i>intuērī</i>	<i>verērī</i>
<i>fatērī</i>	<i>tuērī</i>	

3rd Conjugation

Inf. pres. act. -ere, pass. -ī

1. Ind. pres. pers. 1 sing. -ō, -or

<i>abdūcere</i>	<i>coquere</i>	<i>inclūdere</i>	<i>quaerere</i>
<i>accēdere</i>	<i>corrigere</i>	<i>incolere</i>	<i>quiēscere</i>
<i>accendere</i>	<i>crēdere</i>	<i>induere</i>	<i>recēdere</i>
<i>accidere</i>	<i>crēscere</i>	<i>inflectere</i>	<i>recognōscere</i>
<i>accumbere</i>	<i>currere</i>	<i>influere</i>	<i>recumbere</i>
<i>accurrere</i>	<i>dēfendere</i>	<i>inscribere</i>	<i>reddere</i>
<i>addere</i>	<i>dēmere</i>	<i>instruere</i>	<i>redimere</i>
<i>adiungere</i>	<i>dēscendere</i>	<i>intellegere</i>	<i>reducere</i>
<i>admittere</i>	<i>dēserere</i>	<i>invehere</i>	<i>regere</i>
<i>adnectere</i>	<i>dēsinere</i>	<i>iungere</i>	<i>relinquere</i>
<i>advehere</i>	<i>dēsistere</i>	<i>laedere</i>	<i>remittere</i>
<i>agere</i>	<i>dētrahere</i>	<i>legere</i>	<i>repōnere</i>
<i>alere</i>	<i>dīcere</i>	<i>lūdere</i>	<i>reprehendere</i>
<i>animadvertere</i>	<i>dīligere</i>	<i>mergere</i>	<i>requiēscere</i>
<i>āmittere</i>	<i>dīmittere</i>	<i>metere</i>	<i>requirere</i>
<i>appōnere</i>	<i>discēdere</i>	<i>metuere</i>	<i>resistere</i>
<i>apprehendere</i>	<i>discere</i>	<i>minuere</i>	<i>retrahere</i>
<i>arcessere</i>	<i>disiungere</i>	<i>mittere</i>	<i>rumpere</i>
<i>ascendere</i>	<i>dīvidere</i>	<i>neglegere</i>	<i>scindere</i>
<i>aspergere</i>	<i>dūcere</i>	<i>nōscere</i>	<i>scribere</i>
<i>āvertere</i>	<i>ēducere</i>	<i>nūbere</i>	<i>serere</i>
<i>bibere</i>	<i>effundere</i>	<i>occidere</i>	<i>sinere</i>
<i>cadere</i>	<i>ēlīdere</i>	<i>occidere</i>	<i>solvere</i>
<i>caedere</i>	<i>ēligere</i>	<i>occurrere</i>	<i>spargere</i>
<i>canere</i>	<i>emere</i>	<i>ostendere</i>	<i>statuere</i>
<i>carpere</i>	<i>ērubēscere</i>	<i>parcere</i>	<i>sternere</i>
<i>cēdere</i>	<i>ērumpere</i>	<i>pāscere</i>	<i>submergere</i>
<i>cernere</i>	<i>ēvolvere</i>	<i>pellere</i>	<i>sūmere</i>
<i>cingere</i>	<i>excurrere</i>	<i>percurrere</i>	<i>surgere</i>
<i>claudere</i>	<i>expōnere</i>	<i>perdere</i>	<i>tangere</i>
<i>cōgere</i>	<i>extendere</i>	<i>pergere</i>	<i>tollere</i>
<i>cognōscere</i>	<i>fallere</i>	<i>permittere</i>	<i>trādere</i>
<i>colere</i>	<i>fidere</i>	<i>petere</i>	<i>trahere</i>
<i>cōnfidere</i>	<i>figere</i>	<i>plaudere</i>	<i>tremere</i>
<i>coniungere</i>	<i>flectere</i>	<i>pōnere</i>	<i>ūrere</i>
<i>cōnscendere</i>	<i>fluere</i>	<i>poscere</i>	<i>vehere</i>
<i>cōnsīdere</i>	<i>frangere</i>	<i>praepōnere</i>	<i>vēndere</i>
<i>cōnsistere</i>	<i>fremere</i>	<i>prehendere</i>	<i>vertere</i>
<i>cōstituere</i>	<i>fundere</i>	<i>premere</i>	<i>vincere</i>
<i>cōsūmere</i>	<i>gerere</i>	<i>prōcēdere</i>	<i>visere</i>
<i>contemnere</i>	<i>ignōscere</i>	<i>prōcurrere</i>	<i>vivere</i>
<i>contrahere</i>	<i>impōnere</i>	<i>prōmere</i>	
<i>convertere</i>	<i>imprimere</i>	<i>prōmittere</i>	

Deponent verbs

<i>colloquī</i>	<i>lābī</i>	<i>persequī</i>	<i>revertī</i>
<i>complectī</i>	<i>loquī</i>	<i>proficīscī</i>	<i>sequī</i>
<i>cōnsequī</i>	<i>nāscī</i>	<i>querī</i>	<i>ūtī</i>
<i>fruī</i>	<i>oblīvīscī</i>	<i>reminīscī</i>	

2. Ind. pres. pers. 1 sing. -iō, -ior

<i>abicere</i>	<i>cōspicere</i>	<i>iacere</i>	<i>rapere</i>
<i>accipere</i>	<i>cupere</i>	<i>incipere</i>	<i>recipere</i>
<i>adicere</i>	<i>dēspicere</i>	<i>interficere</i>	<i>sapere</i>
<i>afficere</i>	<i>efficere</i>	<i>parere</i>	<i>surripere</i>
<i>allicere</i>	<i>effugere</i>	<i>percutere</i>	<i>suscipere</i>
<i>aspicere</i>	<i>ēicere</i>	<i>perficere</i>	<i>suspiciere</i>
<i>aufugere</i>	<i>ēripere</i>	<i>prōicere</i>	
<i>capere</i>	<i>facere</i>	<i>prōspicere</i>	
<i>cōficere</i>	<i>fugere</i>	<i>quater</i>	

Deponent verbs

<i>ēgredi</i>	<i>mori</i>	<i>pati</i>	<i>prōgredi</i>
---------------	-------------	-------------	-----------------

4th Conjugation

Inf. pres. act. -īre, pass. -īrī

<i>advenīre</i>	<i>exaudīre</i>	<i>oboedīre</i>	<i>scīre</i>
<i>aperīre</i>	<i>exhaurīre</i>	<i>operīre</i>	<i>sentīre</i>
<i>audīre</i>	<i>finīre</i>	<i>pervenīre</i>	<i>servīre</i>
<i>circumsilīre</i>	<i>haurīre</i>	<i>prōsilīre</i>	<i>vāgīre</i>
<i>convenīre</i>	<i>invenīre</i>	<i>pūnīre</i>	<i>venīre</i>
<i>custōdīre</i>	<i>mollīre</i>	<i>reperīre</i>	<i>vestīre</i>
<i>dēsīlīre</i>	<i>mūnīre</i>	<i>revenīre</i>	<i>vincīre</i>
<i>dormīre</i>	<i>nescīre</i>	<i>salīre</i>	

Deponent verbs

<i>largīrī</i>	<i>opperīrī</i>	<i>mentīrī</i>	<i>orīrī</i>
<i>partīrī</i>			

GRAMMATICAL TERMS

LATIN	ABBREVIATIONS	ENGLISH
ablātīvus (cāsus)	<i>abl</i>	ablative
accūsātīvus (cāsus)	<i>acc</i>	accusative
āctīvum (genus)	<i>āct</i>	active
adiectīvum (nōmen)	<i>adi</i>	adjective
adverbium ī <i>n</i>	<i>adv</i>	adverb
appellātīvum (nōmen)		appellative
cāsus ūs <i>m</i>		case
comparātiō ōnis <i>f</i>		comparison
comparātīvus (gradus)	<i>comp</i>	comparative
coniugātiō ōnis <i>f</i>		conjugation
coniūnctiō ōnis <i>f</i>	<i>coni</i>	conjunction
coniūnctīvus (modus)	<i>coni</i>	subjunctive
datīvus (cāsus)	<i>dat</i>	dative
dēclinātiō ōnis <i>f</i>	<i>dēcl</i>	declension
dēmōnstrātīvum (prōnōmen)		demonstrative
dēpōnentia (verba)	<i>dēp</i>	deponent
fēmininum (genus)	<i>f, fēm</i>	feminine
futūrum (tempus)	<i>fut</i>	future
futūrum perfectum (tempus)	<i>fut perf</i>	future perfect
genetīvus (cāsus)	<i>gen</i>	genitive
genus (nōminis/verbī)		gender/voice
gerundium ī <i>n</i> / gerundivum ī <i>n</i>		gerund/gerundive
imperātīvus (modus)	<i>imp, imper</i>	imperative
imperfectum (tempus praeteritum)	<i>imperf</i>	imperfect
indēclinābile (vocābulum)	<i>indēcl</i>	indeclinable
indēfinitum (prōnōmen)		indefinite
indicātīvus (modus)	<i>ind</i>	indicative
īnfinītīvus (modus)	<i>īnf</i>	infinitive
interiectiō ōnis <i>f</i>		interjection
interrogātīvum (prōnōmen)		interrogative
locātīvus (cāsus)	<i>loc</i>	locative
masculinum (genus)	<i>m, masc</i>	masculine

modus (verbī)		mode
neutrum (genus)	<i>n, neutr</i>	neuter
nōminātīvus (cāsus)	<i>nōm</i>	nominative
optātīvus (modus)		optative
pars ōrātiōnis		part of speech
participium ī <i>n</i>	<i>part</i>	participle
passīvum (genus)	<i>pass</i>	passive
perfectum (tempus praeteritum)	<i>perf</i>	perfect
persōna ae <i>f</i>	<i>pers</i>	person
persōnāle (prōnōmen)		personal
plūrālis (numerus)	<i>pl, plūr</i>	plural
plūsquamperfectum (tempus praet.)	<i>plūsqu</i>	pluperfect
positīvus (gradus)	<i>pos</i>	positive
possessīvum (prōnōmen)		possessive
praepositiō ōnis <i>f</i>	<i>prp, praep</i>	preposition
praesēns (tempus)	<i>praes</i>	present
praeteritum (tempus)	<i>praet</i>	preterite, past tense
prōnōmen inis <i>n</i>	<i>prōn</i>	pronoun
propriūm (nōmen)		proper name
relātīvum (prōnōmen)	<i>rel</i>	relative
singulāris (numerus)	<i>sg, sing</i>	singular
superlātīvus (gradus)	<i>sup</i>	superlative
supīnum		supine
tempus (verbī)		tense
verbum	<i>vb</i>	verb
vocātīvus (cāsus)	<i>voc</i>	vocative

Index

- ablative
 - absolute, 76; examples, 80; perfect participles in, 63
 - cause, 12
 - comitātus*, with, 36
 - comparison, 35
 - degree of difference, 67; examples, 89
 - description, 103
 - examples of usage, 89
 - locative, 44; of plural place names, 75
 - means, with certain verbs, 26
 - opus est*, with, 79
 - origin, source, 12
 - place, 5, 104
 - plēnus*, verbs formed with, 20
 - respect, 35
 - separation, 5, 103
 - time when, examples, 89
 - time, duration, 105
- accidit ut*, 16
- adjective
 - comparison of, 6
 - summus, medius, infimus*, 8, 108
- accusative
 - duration of time, 105
 - exclamation, 34
 - exclamation, with infinitive, 35
 - gerund/gerundive for purpose, 3, 4, 61
 - supine, for purpose, 61
- adverb
 - neuter for, 112
 - numerical, 106
 - ut* as adverb of manner, 9
- adjectives
 - comparative meaning “too,” 88
 - dative with, 21
 - genitive with, 29, 81
 - eus, -ius, -uus*: comparison, 6
 - objective genitive with, 81
 - superlatives in *-limus, a, um*, 69
 - summus, medius, infimus*, 8, 108
 - agitur dē, rēs agitur*, 108
 - alius...alius*, 22
 - alter...alter*, 22
 - anaphora, 182, 335.23, 341
 - antequam*, 14, 22
 - with subjunctive, 56
 - archaisms, 88, 102
 - audēre*, semi-deponent, 110
 - cēnsēre*, 94
 - certiōrem facere/fieri*, 30
 - chiasmus, 192.74
 - comitātus*, with ablative, 36
 - commands, negative, 49
 - complēre*, 20
 - conditions
 - apodosis vs. protasis, 52
 - contrafactual, 47; indicative in, 40, 82, 83
 - ideal, future less vivid, “should/would,” 47
 - iterative subjunctive in, 54
 - ōrātiō obliqua* in, 52, 66
 - summary of, 50
 - cōnfidere*, semi-deponent, 110

- conjunctions, xxxiii
 cum...tum, 58
 disjunctive *an*, 40
 priusquam, *antequam*, 14, 22, 27, 56
 temporal, 12, 22
 summary of, 22
cōnstat, impersonal, 47
cōsulere, 108
convenit, impersonal, 48
cum
 with indicative, 14
 with subjunctive, 15
 cum...tum, 58
 cum primum, 22
 dative
 adjectives, with, 21
 attraction, by, 74
 compound verb, with, 18
 cōsulere, with, 108
 disadvantage, 25
 ethical, 110
 impersonal *certum*, with, 21
 interest, reference, 19
 purpose, 2, 96, 103
 separation, 25
dēbēre
 in contrafactual conditions, 82
 past tense, with present infinitive, 65
 deliberative questions, 49, 92
diēs, feminine, 85
difficulter, 79
diffidere, semi-deponent, 110
dōnō dare, 96
dōnum dōnare, 96
dubitāre, 39
dum, 12, 22
 with subjunctive, 43
dummodo, 43
est, it is possible, 87
 euphemisms, 90
ēvenit ut, 16
 exclamation
 accusative of, 34
 accusative and infinitive of, 35
 interrogative pronouns in, 44
extrēmus, -a, -um, 108
fās, 21
ferre, 75
fidere, semi-deponent, 110
fieri potest, 7, 16
fit ut, 16
fore, 65
fore ut/ futurum esse ut instead of future passive infinitive, 79
forem, 65
frui, 26
fungi, 26
gaudēre, semi-deponent, 110
 genitive
 accumulation of, 10
 adjectives, with, 29, 61
 charge or accusation, 82
 description, 8, 103
 epexegetical (explanatory), 111
 gerund/gerundive preceding *causā/ gratiā* (purpose), 61
 objective: adjectives, with, 81;
 personal pronouns, 41; with verbs, 38
 partitive: neuter pronoun, with, 74;
 personal pronouns, 41
 verbs formed from *plēnus*, with, 20
 gerund, gerundive, 3, 4, 61, 77
 archaic spelling of, 62
 gerundive for gerund + object, 77
 object of verb of effecting, 4
 instead of future passive infinitive, 85
 purpose, 3, 4, 61
 heteroclitic nouns, 107
 historical infinitive, 72
 examples, 80
 historical present, 11
 hyperbaton, 342.328
 indirect commands, 23, 67, 84
 indirect discourse

- conditions in, 52, 66
- implied, 55
- nominative and infinitive, 4
- pronoun change in, 68
- reflexive pronouns in, 25
- subordinate clauses in, 1
- infimus*, -a, -um, 8, 108
- interest, impersonal, 112
- ipse* = *ille*, 85
- iussū*, 49
- iuvāre*, 20
- libra*, 88
- locative, 44, 75
- medius*, -a, -um, 8, 108
- meminisse*, 39
- meter, 10
- miserēre*/ *miserēri*, 39
- mōs est ut*, 16
- names, Greek, 18, 28
- necesse est*, with subjunctive, 109
 - in contrafactual conditions, 82
- noun
 - 1st declension dative/ ablative in
 - ābus, 7
 - duum, ending in, 105
 - ennium, ending in, 104
 - 2nd declension genitive -um =
 - ōrum, 62
 - heteroclitic, 107
 - verbal, 4th declension, 27, 48
- numerical adverbs, 106
- obīre*, 87
- obliviscī*, 39
- obviam*, 36
- operam dare*, 96
- oportēre*
 - past tense, with present infinitive, 65
 - with subjunctive, 109
 - in contrafactual conditions, 82
- opus esse*, 79
 - in contrafactual conditions, 82
- paenitēre*, 38
- participles, 45
 - ablative absolute, 76; examples, 80; perfect participles in, 63
 - examples of translation, 45
 - deponent verbs, 63
 - future, for purpose, 61
- passive periphrastic, 3
- perdere*, 7
- perīre*, 7
- pigēre*, 39
- placēre* as semi-deponent, 110
- plēnus*, -a, -um, 20
- poenās dare*, 20
- pondus*, 88
- posse*
 - past tense, with present infinitive, 40, 65
 - in contrafactual conditions, 40
- postquam*, 14, 22, 27
- postulandī*, *verba*. See indirect commands
- potirī*, 26
- praestāre*, 27
- praeteritiō*, 339.259
- priusquam*, 14, 22
 - with subjunctive, 56
- pronouns
 - change from direct to indirect discourse, 68
 - cumque, suffix, 29
 - met, suffix, 29
 - indefinite, 57
 - interrogatives, in exclamations, 44
 - personal pronouns, genitive, 41
 - reflexive, in indirect statement, 25
- pudēre*, 38
- purpose, 9
 - gerund/gerundive + *ad*, 61
 - genitive of gerund/gerundive preceding *causā*/*gratiā*, 61
 - negation in, 59
 - relative clause: *quī* = *ut is*, 31, 61, 95; *quō* + comparative, 61, 95
 - purpose vs. result, 58
 - summary, 60

- quaesō*, 111
quam
 quam primum, 75
 superative, with, 102
quasi, 84
quīn, 42
 with *dubitāre*, 39, 42
quōminus, 91
- relative clauses
 causal (*quī = cum is*), 32
 characteristic, 98. *See also* relative clauses: descriptive/generic
 comparative, 93
 consecutive, 16, 58. *See also* result
 descriptive/ generic, 32, 55
 fear, 93
 final , 58. *See also* purpose
 indirect commands, 23, 84; resolutions of the senate, 84
 indirect discourse, in 1, 31
 purpose (*quī = ut is*), 31, 61
 purpose vs. result, 58
 result, 9; noun clauses of, 7, 16
 tendency, 32, 55. *See also* relative clauses: descriptive/generic
rēferre, 101
res gestae, 169.222
rēs repetere, 70
- result
 negation in, 59
 noun clauses of, 7
 vs. purpose, 58
 words signaling, 59
 sequence of tense in, 58, 59
- rhetorical questions, 50, 93, 108
- senātus cōsultum*, 94
sententia, 94
 sequence of tense, 16, 52
 in purpose/result clauses, 58, 59
simul atque, 22
solēre, semi-deponent, 110
stāre, compounds of, 43
 subjunctive
 comparative clauses, 93
 conditions, in, 47
 descriptive/generic clauses, 32, 55
 hindering, clauses of, 91
 independent clauses, in, 49; deliberative questions, 49; hortatory, 49; jussive, 49; negative commands, 49; potential, 46; rhetorical questions, 50, 93, 108; wishes, 49
 indirect commands, 23, 25, 84
 potential, 46, 91; generalizing (indefinite), 46, 92; cautious assertion, 92, 93; deliberative questions, 49, 92; rhetorical questions, 50, 93, 108
 purpose. *See* purpose
 reported reason, 55
 result. *See* result
 sequence of tense, 16, 52, 59
 subordinate clauses, in indirect discourse, 1, 31, 52
 wishes, 33, 41, 92
 subordinate clauses
 indirect discourse, in, 1
summus, 8, 108
 supine
 accusative of purpose, 61, 78
 ablative of respect with adjectives, 35
 motion implied, 78
- taedēre*, 38
tamquam, 84
 temporal conjunctions, 12, 22, 56
- tense
 historical present, 11
 sequence of, 16, 52
 perfect/pluperfect passive, 84
- ut*, 13, 22
 interrogative adverb, 33
 possibilities with, 9
 temporal conjunction, 13, 22
 ut primum, 13, 22
ūsū venīre, 97
ubi, 13, 22
 ubi primum, 13, 22
uter, uterque, 69

- utrimque*, 70
ūtī (ūtor), 26
uti (ut), 64
- velle
 subjunctive, with, 41, 109
- velut*, 70
- vēndere*, 6
- vēnīre*, 6
- variātiō*: variation of expression, 54, 71, 90
- verbs
 2nd sing. passive ending in *-re*, 16
 3rd pl. perfect in *-ēre*, 17
 ablative with, 26
 compound, dative with, 18
 compound, dative and accusative with, 19
 deponent, participles, 63
 esse, omission of, 74
 fitting, necessary, possible w/ infinitive, 65
 historical infinitive, 72, 80
 historical present, 11
 impersonal: passive of intransitives, 37; passive periphrastic, 37; passives, examples, 76; *cōnstāre*, 47, 87; *convenīre*, 48; *interesse*, 112; *iuvāre*, 20; *miserēre*, 39; *paenitēre*, 38; *pigēre*, 39; *praestāre*, 27; *pudēre*, 38; *rēferre*, 101; *taedēre*, 38
 perfect tense, syncopated, 95
 semi-deponent, 110
 summary of *-ere* endings, 17
- vescī*, 26
- vīsum est*, 170.276
- wishes, 33
- word order: “sandwich” effect, 24

“Jeanne Marie Neumann’s *A Companion to Roma Aeterna* provides students, instructors, and homeschoolers with a treasure trove of learning that will enable them to fully benefit from Ørberg’s absurdly underused *Roma Aeterna*.”

—James Dobreff, Department of Classics and Religious Studies,
University of Massachusetts Boston

A sequel to her widely used *A Companion to Familia Romana* (now in its second edition), Jeanne Marie Neumann’s *A Companion to Roma Aeterna* offers a running commentary, in English, of the Latin grammar covered in Hans H. Ørberg’s *Roma Aeterna*, and includes the complete text of the Ørberg ancillaries *Grammatica Latina* and *Latin-English Vocabulary II*. It also serves as a substitute for Ørberg’s *Instructions*, on which it is based.

Though designed especially for those approaching *Roma Aeterna* at an accelerated pace, this volume will be useful to anyone seeking an explicit exposition of that volume’s implicitly presented grammar. In addition to many revisions of the text, *A Companion to Roma Aeterna* also includes new units on cultural context, tied to the narrative content of the chapter.

JEANNE MARIE NEUMANN is Professor of Classics at Davidson College, where she has taught Latin, Greek, and Classical Civilization since 1994, and was awarded the College’s most distinguished teaching award in 2005. She has conducted numerous seminars and workshops for Latin teachers at all levels of instruction, and has received national recognition for her educational outreach.

Cover illustration: Colorization by Steve Morrison of an illustration by Peer Lauritzen.
Copyright © 2017 by Hackett Publishing Company, Inc.

Focus an imprint of
Hackett Publishing Company

